Hitachi Construction Machinery Co., Ltd.
URL:https://www.hitachicm.com/global/

PRINTED IN JAPAN (A) 2024, 06

ZX135US-7H • 245USLC-7H • 345USLC-7H HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR OPERATOR'S MANUAL

ENMDHE-NA1-3

PART NO. ENMDHE-NA1-3

HITACHI

Reliable Solutions

Operator's Manual

ZAXIS 135US-7H 245USLC-7H 345USLC-7H

Hydraulic Excavator

Serial No.	
ZX135US-7H	000001 and up
ZX245USLC-7H	000001 and up
ZX345USLC-7H	000001 and up

CALIFORNIA

Proposition 65 Warning

Diesel engine exhaust and some of its constituents are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, and other reproductive harm.

INTRODUCTION

Read this manual carefully to learn how to operate and service your machine correctly. Failure to do so could result in personal injury or machine damage.

This standard specification machine can be operated under the following conditions without being modified.
Atmospheric Temperature: –20 °C to 40 °C (–4 °F to 104 °F) Altitude: 0 m to 2000 m (0 ft to 6600 ft)

In case the machine is used under conditions other than described above, consult a dealer authorized by Hitachi Construction Machinery ("Authorized Dealer").

This manual should be considered a permanent part of your machine and should remain with the machine when you sell it.

This machine is of metric design. Measurements in this manual are metric. Use only metric hardware and tools as specified.

Right-hand and left-hand sides are determined by facing in the direction of forward travel.

Write product identification numbers in the Machine Numbers section. Accurately record all the numbers to help in tracing the machine should it be stolen. Authorized Dealer also needs these numbers when you order parts. If this manual is kept on the machine, also file the identification numbers in a secure place off the machine.

Be sure to use fuel that complies with JIS K-2204, EN-590 or ASTM D-975. Also use fuel that complies with solid contamination level of class 18/16/13 of ISO4406-1999 (solid contamination includes dust). If the fuel specified above is not used, exhaust gas that exceeds the regulation values may be discharged, causing serious problem on the engine. Consult Authorized Dealer.

Warranty is provided as a part of Hitachi Construction Machinery's support program for customers who operate and maintain their equipment as described in this manual. The warranty is explained on the warranty certificate which you should have received from Authorized Dealer.

This warranty provides you the assurance that Hitachi Construction Machinery will back its products where defects appear within the warranty period. In some circumstances, Hitachi Construction Machinery also provides field improvements, often without charge to the customer, even if the product is out of warranty. **Should the equipment be abused, or modified to change its performance beyond the original factory specifications, the warranty will become void and field improvements may be denied.** Setting fuel delivery above specifications or otherwise overpowering machines will result in such action.

Only qualified, experienced operators officially licensed (according to local law) should be allowed to operate the machine. Moreover, only officially licensed personnel should be allowed to inspect and service the machine.

PRIOR TO OPERATING THIS MACHINE, INCLUDING COMMUNICATION SYSTEM, IN A COUNTRY OTHER THAN A COUNTRY OF ITS INTENDED USE, IT MAY BE NECESSARY TO MAKE MODIFICATIONS TO IT SO THAT IT COMPLIES WITH THE LOCAL REGULATORY STANDARDS (INCLUDING SAFETY STANDARDS) AND LEGAL REQUIREMENTS OF THAT PARTICULAR COUNTRY. PLEASE DO NOT EXPORT OR OPERATE THIS MACHINE OUTSIDE OF THE COUNTRY OF ITS INTENDED USE UNTIL SUCH COMPLIANCE HAS BEEN CONFIRMED. PLEASE CONTACT HITACHI CONSTRUCTION MACHINERY CO., LTD. OR ANY OF OUR AUTHORIZED DISTRIBUTOR OR DEALER IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS CONCERNING COMPLIANCE.

In this manual, urea water is indicated as DEF/ AdBlue®.

"DEF" stands for the Diesel Exhaust Fluid.

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V. (VDA).

Jubilee® is a registered trademark of the L Robinson & Co (Gillingham) Limited.
Hycolin® is a registered trademark of the USUI CO., LTD.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Hitachi Construction Machinery Co., Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

All information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest product information available at the time of publication. The right is reserved to make changes at any time without notice.

©2024 Hitachi Construction Machinery Co., Ltd.
All rights reserved.

MEMO

INDEX

MACHINE NUMBERS
INTENDED USE
SAFETY
BEFORE OPERATION
OPERATOR'S STATION
BREAK-IN
OPERATING THE ENGINE
DRIVING THE MACHINE
OPERATING THE MACHINE
TRANSPORTING
MAINTENANCE
MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS
HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT
STORAGE
TROUBLESHOOTING
SPECIFICATIONS
OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES
INDEX

MEMO

CONTENTS

MACHINE NUMBERS 1

INTENDED USE 1

Intended Use 1

SAFETY S-1

Recognize Safety Information S-1
Understand Signal Words S-1
Follow Safety Instructions S-2
Prepare for Emergencies S-3
Wear Appropriate Clothing S-3
Inspect Machine S-4
General Precautions for the Cab S-5
Use Handrail and Steps S-5
Adjust the Operator's Seat S-6
Ensure Safety Before Leaving or Standing up from Operator's Seat S-6
Fasten Your Seat Belt S-6
Move and Operate Machine Safely S-7
Start the Engine Only from Operator's Seat S-7
Jump Starting S-8
Keep Riders off Machine S-8
Precautions for Operations S-9
Perform Job Site Risk Assessment Beforehand S-10
Install OPG (Operator Protective Guard) S-11
Restriction of Attachment Installation S-11
Provide Signals for Jobs Involving Multiple Machines S-11
Confirm Direction of Machine Travel S-12
Drive Machine Safely S-13
Avoid Injury from Rollaway Accidents S-15
Avoid Accidents from Reversing and Swing Operation S-16
Keep People Clear from Working Area S-17
Never Position the Bucket Over Anyone S-17
Avoid Undercutting S-18
Avoid Tipping S-18
Never Undercut a High Bank S-19
Dig with Caution S-19
Caution with an Overhead Obstacle S-20
Avoid Power Lines S-20
Precautions for Lightning S-21
Object Handling S-21
Protect Against Flying Debris and Falling Object S-22
Park Machine Safely S-23
Handle Fluids Safely–Avoid Fires S-24
Transport Safely S-25
Practice Maintenance Safely S-26
Warn Others of Service Work S-27
Support Machine Properly S-28
Stay Clear of Moving Parts S-28
Prevent Parts from Flying S-29
Avoid Injury from Attachment Falling Accident S-29
Prevent Burns S-30
Replace Rubber Hoses Periodically S-31
Avoid High-Pressure Fluids S-31
Prevent Fires S-32
Check for Oil Leaks: S-32
Check for Short circuits: S-32
Clean up Flammable Materials: S-33
Check Key Switch: S-33
Check Heat Shields: S-33
Evacuating in Case of Fire S-34
Beware of Exhaust Fumes S-34
Precautions for Welding and Grinding S-35
Avoid Heating Near Pressurized Fluid Lines S-35
Avoid Applying Heat to Lines Containing Flammable Fluids S-35
Precautions for Handling Accumulator and Gas Damper S-36
Remove Paint Before Welding or Heating S-36
Beware of Asbestos and Silica Dust and Other Contamination S-36
Prevent Battery Explosions S-37
Service Air Conditioning System Safely S-37
Handle Chemical Products Safely S-38
Dispose of Waste Properly S-38
Never Ride Attachment S-39
Notes on Aftertreatment Device S-39
Precautions for Communication Terminal S-39
Precautions for Communication Terminal Equipment S-40
Notes on Protection by Operator's Station when the Machine Rolls Over S-41
Visibility Map for Machine Model ZX135US-7H with Monoblock Boom Personal Hazard S-42
Conditions: Driver's visibility on 1mRB and VTC are evaluated under ISO 5006. ..... S-42
Visibility Map for Machine Model ZX245USLC-7H with Monoblock Boom Personal Hazard S-44
Conditions: Driver's visibility on 1mRB and VTC are evaluated under ISO 5006. ..... S-44
Visibility Map for Machine Model ZX345USLC-7H with Monoblock Boom Personal Hazard S-46
Conditions: Driver's visibility on 1mRB and VTC are evaluated under ISO 5006. ..... S-46
Aerial Angle (Surround View) Visibility Map for ZX135US-7H S-48
Aerial Angle (Surround View) Visibility Map for ZX245USLC-7H S-50
Aerial Angle (Surround View) Visibility Map for ZX345USLC-7H S-52
Safety Signs S-54

BEFORE OPERATION 1-1

Name of Components 1-1
Getting ON and OFF the Machine 1-2
About Aftertreatment Device 1-3

OPERATOR'S STATION 1-5

CONTENTS

Layout of Equipment in Operator's Station (Illustration Contents)(ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H) 1-5
Layout of Equipment in Operator's Station (Illustration Contents)(ZX345USLC-7H) 1-8
Multi Function Monitor 1-10
Summary 1-10
Basic Operation of Multi-Function Monitor 1-11
Basic Screen (Illustration Content) 1-18
Alarm Display and Description of Alarms 1-22
Aftertreatment Device 1-30
Engine Output Restriction Suspend 1-35
Attachments 1-37
Information 1-48
Display 1-63
Settings 1-74
Auto Air Conditioner 1-88
Summary 1-88
Name of Components 1-89
Air Conditioner Display (Monitor) 1-91
Air Conditioner Operation (When Operating with Switches) 1-92
Air Conditioner Operation (When Operating with Monitor) 1-94
Tips for Optimal Air Conditioner Usage 1-102
Audio Operation 1-105
Summary 1-105
Features 1-105
Name of Components and Control Guide (Switches) 1-106
Monitor Display 1-108
Operating the Audio System from the Multi-Monitor 1-110
Switch Panel (Content of Illustration) 1-123
Engine Control Dial 1-124
Auto-Idle Switch 1-124
Travel Mode Switch 1-124
Power Mode Switch 1-125
Work Light Switch 1-125
Wiper/Washer Switch 1-126
Key Switch 1-128
Switch Panels (for Options) 1-129
Seat Heater Switch 1-130
Rear Light Switch (Optional) 1-131
Perimeter Lights Switch (Option) 1-131
Rotating Lamp Switch (Optional) 1-131
Travel Alarm Deactivation Switch 1-131
Overload Alarm Switch (Optional) (ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H) 1-132
Quick Coupler Switch 1-132
Electrical Control Main Switch 1-133
Control Lever 1-134
AUX Function Lever 1 1-134
AUX Function Lever 2 (Optional)(Except ZX345USLC-7H) 1-135
Facilities in Operator's Station 1-138
12/24V Power Socket 1-138
Room Light Switch 1-142
Pilot Shut-off Lever 1-143
Control Lever Auto-Lock 1-144
Engine Stop Switch 1-146
Magazine Rack 1-147
Net Hooks 1-148
Drink Holders 1-149
Fuse Box 1-150
Installing a Fire Extinguisher (Optional) 1-153
Handling the Cab Door and Window 1-154
Adjusting Operator's Seat and Console 1-166
Adjusting the Operator's Seat (Air Suspension Type) 1-167
Seat Belt 1-170
Aerial Angle 1-171
Switching the Monitor Display 1-174
Screen Description 1-175
Installation and Adjustment of Mirrors 1-180
Mirror Installation Locations (ZX135US-7H) 1-181
Mirror Installation Locations (ZX245USLC-7H) 1-182
Mirror Installation Locations (ZX345USLC-7H) 1-183
Emergency Exit 1-184
Battery Disconnect Switch 1-186
Switch Operation 1-187

BREAK-IN 2-1

Observe Engine Operation Closely 2-1
Every 8 Hours or Daily 2-1
After the First 50 Hours 2-1
After the First 100 Hours 2-1

OPERATING THE ENGINE 3-1

Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting 3-1
Before Starting the Engine 3-3
Starting the Engine 3-4
Check Instruments After Starting 3-10
Using the Booster Battery 3-11
Stopping the Engine 3-14
Engine Auto-Stop at Extremely Low Temperatures 3-16

DRIVING THE MACHINE 4-1

Travel Levers and Pedals 4-1
Travel Mode Switch 4-3
Travel Alarm 4-4
Traveling on Soft Ground 4-5
Raising One Track Using the Boom and Arm 4-6
Retrieval 4-7
Operating in Water or Mud 4-8
Parking the Machine on Slopes 4-9
Parking 4-9
Prohibition of Sudden Control Operations when Traveling at High Speed 4-10

CONTENTS

Prohibition of Traveling for Long Periods 4-10

OPERATING THE MACHINE 5-1

Control Lever (ISO Pattern) 5-1
Pilot Shut-Off Lever 5-2
Warming-Up Operation 5-3
Engine Speed Control 5-5
Auto-Idle 5-6
Auto Shut-Down 5-8
Aftertreatment Device Manual Regeneration 5-12
Attachments 5-15
Power Boost Switch 5-18
Power Mode 5-19
Attachment Settings 5-20
Operating Backhoe 5-21
Shovel 5-22
Grading Operation 5-23
Do Not Strike the Ground with Bucket Teeth 5-23
Avoid Hammer Work 5-24
Avoid Abusive Operation 5-24
Never Move an Object Sideways with the Bucket 5-25
Retracting the Arm and Bucket 5-25
Never use Wide Track Shoes on Rough Ground 5-26
Using the Track Frame Shackle Hole 5-26
Pilot Accumulator Function (Optional) 5-27
How to Lower Boom in Case of Emergency and When Engine Stops (Without hose-rupture safety valve) 5-29
How to Lower Front Equipment and Attachment in Case of Emergency and When Engine Stops (With hose-rupture safety valve)(Optional) (ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H) 5-31
Precautions for After Operations 5-33

TRANSPORTING 6-1

Transporting by Road 6-1
Loading/Unloading on a Trailer 6-2
Loading 6-3
Fastening the Machine for Transport 6-5
Unloading 6-6
Lifting Machine 6-7
Lifting 6-7

MAINTENANCE 7-1

Correct Maintenance and Inspection Procedures 7-1
Layout 7-3
Inspection and Maintenance Intervals 7-6
Maintenance Guide Table 7-6
Preparation for Inspection and Maintenance 7-10
Hood and Access Covers 7-11
Maintenance Guide 7-14
Periodic Replacement of Parts 7-23
Kind of Oils 7-24
List of Consumable Parts 7-28
A. Greasing 7-31
Front Joint Pins 7-31
Swing Bearing 7-35
Swing Gear 7-36
B. Engine 7-39
Check Engine Oil Level 7-39
Change Engine Oil 7-42
Replace Engine Oil Filter 7-42
Check and Clean around the Engine 7-46
Check the Blowby Hose 7-47
Replace Oil Separator Element 7-48
C. Transmission 7-49
Pump Transmission 7-49
Swing Reduction Gear 7-51
Gear Oil in Travel Device 7-55
D. Hydraulic System 7-57
Check Hydraulic Oil Level 7-59
Change Hydraulic Oil 7-61
Suction Filter Cleaning 7-66
Replace Full-Flow Filter 7-67
Replace Pilot Oil Filter 7-68
Replace Air Breather Element 7-70
Check Hoses and Lines 7-71
E. Fuel System 7-77
Drain Fuel Tank Sump 7-80
Drain Fuel Pre-Filter 7-81
Replace Fuel Main Filter Element 7-86
Replace Fuel Pre-Filter Element 7-89
Check Fuel Hoses 7-92
F. Air Cleaner 7-93
Clean and Replace Air Cleaner Element (Outer). 7-93
Replace Air Cleaner Element (Inner) 7-98
G. Cooling System 7-99
Check Coolant Level 7-100
Inspect V-belt 7-102
Check and adjust V-belt tension 7-103
Change Coolant 7-105
Clean Radiator, Oil Cooler and Intercooler Core 7-107
Clean Oil Cooler, Radiator and Intercooler Front Screen 7-110
Clean Air Conditioner Condenser 7-111
Clean fuel oil cooler 7-111
Drain Intercooler (Only ZX135US-7H) 7-111
H. Electrical System 7-112
Battery 7-113
Replace Fuses 7-120
I. Miscellaneous 7-125
Change Bucket 7-125
Convert Bucket Connection Into Face Shovel 7-127
Adjust Bucket Linkage 7-129
Remove Travel Levers 7-130
Check and Replace Seat Belt 7-131
Clean Mobile Phone (Smartphone) Holder 7-132

CONTENTS

Clean Drink Holder....7-133
Clean Storage Pocket....7-134
Wide View Wiper (Parallel Link Wiper) Maintenance (ZX135US-7H (Optional))....7-135
Clean Rain Visor....7-138
Grease Cab Door Hinge....7-138
Grease Console Height Adjustment Pin....7-139
Check Windshield Washer Fluid Level....7-140
Check & Adjust Track Sag....7-141
Clean and Replace Air Conditioner Filter....7-146
Check Air Conditioner....7-150
Clean Cab Floor....7-153
Retighten Engine Cylinder Head Bolt....7-155
Inspect and Adjust Valve Clearance....7-155
Measure Engine Compression Pressure....7-155
Check Starter and Alternator....7-155
Check and Clean EGR Valve....7-155
EGR Cooler Cleaning....7-155
Check Turbo Charger....7-155
Check and Clean Injector....7-156
Check Gas Damper....7-156
Tightening and Retightening Torque of Nuts and Bolts....7-157
J. Aftertreatment Device....7-193
Check and Clean Aftertreatment Device....7-193
K. Urea SCR System....7-194
Check DEF....7-195
Replace DEF Supply Module Main Filter....7-204
Replace DEF Tank Water Supply Inlet Filter....7-207
L. Aerial Angle....7-208
Daily Check of Camera Images used to Compose the Aerial Angle....7-208
Check Camera Images Used to Compose the Aerial Angle....7-209

MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS.... 8-1

HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT.... 9-1

STORAGE.... 10-1

TROUBLESHOOTING.... 11-1

SPECIFICATIONS.... 12-1

Specifications ZX135US-7H....12-1
Dimensions ZX135US-7H....12-2
Working Ranges (Grouser shoe) ZX135US-7H....12-3
Shoe Types and Applications ZX135US-7H....12-4
Bucket Types and Applications ZX135US-7H....12-5
Specifications ZX245USLC-7H....12-6
Dimensions ZX245USLC-7H....12-7
Working Ranges (Grouser shoe) ZX245USLC-7H....12-8
Shoe Types and Applications ZX245USLC-7H....12-9
Bucket Types and Applications ZX245USLC-7H....12-10
Specifications ZX345USLC-7H....12-12
Dimensions ZX345USLC-7H....12-13
Working Ranges (Grouser shoe) ZX345USLC-7H....12-14
Shoe Types and Applications ZX345USLC-7H....12-15
Bucket Types and Applications ZX345USLC-7H....12-16
Machine Capacities....12-18
ZX135US-7H (Mono block boom)....12-19
ZX245USLC-7H (Mono block boom)....12-25
ZX345USLC-7H (Mono block boom)....12-26
Noise Level Inside of Cab....12-27

OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES.... 13-1

Long Arm....13-1
Long Arm Operation --- If Equipped....13-1
Blade....13-2
Blade Lever....13-2
Avoid Hitting Blade with Front-End Attachment....13-3
Blade Maintenance....13-4
Specifications....13-5
Working Ranges (Grouser shoe)....13-6
Shoe Types and Applications....13-7
Attachment Pedal....13-8
1-Pedal Travel Operation (Optional)....13-8
Control Lever (2 Way Multi Valve)....13-10
Hydraulic Breaker, Crusher, Quick Coupler....13-12
Selecting a Breaker or Crusher....13-12
Precautions for Operation....13-12
Warnings about the Piping of Breakers and Crushers....13-12
Piping for Breaker and Crusher....13-13
Breaker Relief Valve Pressure Adjustment....13-14
Precautions for Breaker Operation....13-15
Change Hydraulic Oil and Replace Full-Flow Filter Element....13-20
Cautions on Crusher Operation....13-21
Never Use a Hydraulic-Driven Attachment (Breaker, Crusher, etc.) for Slinging Work....13-22
Attachment....13-23
Attachment Connections....13-24
Precautions when Retracting the Arm and Bucket....13-26
How to Use Quick Couplers....13-26
Thumb and Quick Coupler....13-27
Thumb and Quick Coupler....13-27
Attachment Switch....13-30
Precautions During Operation....13-32
How to Use the Quick Couplers....13-35
Installation of Bucket....13-36
Removal of Bucket....13-39

CONTENTS

Inspection and Maintenance 13-41
Specifications ZX135US-7H with Thumb and Quick Coupler.....13-50
Working Ranges (Grouser Shoe) ZX135US-7H.... 13-51
Bucket Types and Applications ZX135US-7H for Thumb and Quick Coupler 13-52

INDEX..... 16-1

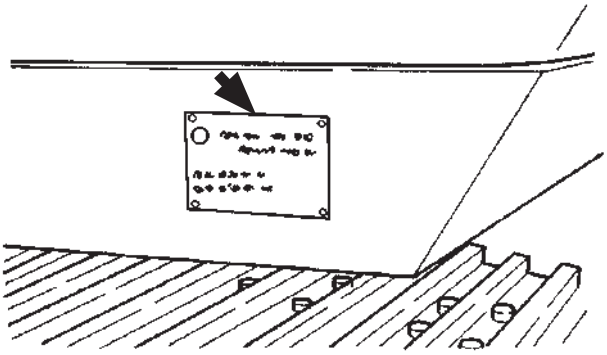
MACHINE NUMBERS

The product identification number discussed in this chapter is a number unique to each machine. It is necessary to have it when making inquiries about the machine. Please enter the ID number of your machine in the blank in this chapter.

Base Machine

Product Model :

Product Identification Number :



M157-00-001-1 ja

Product Identification Number :

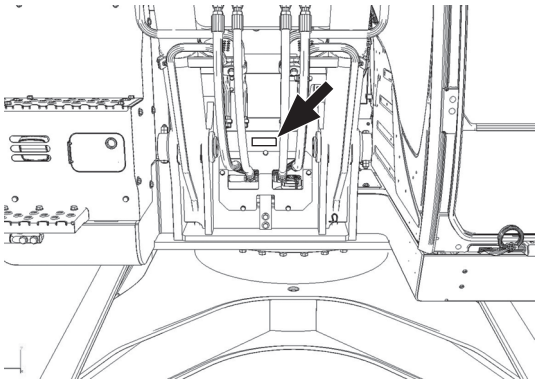
NOTE

HCM++++++++++

Marks to indicate the start and end of the PIN

PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (PIN)

MADR-00-000 en_GB



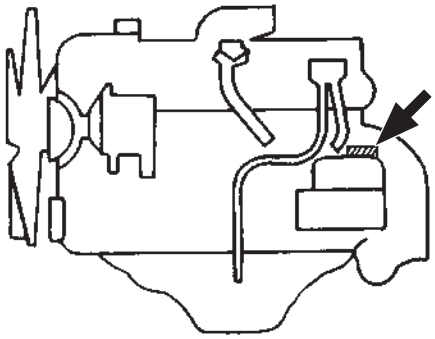
MDA4-00-001-1 ja

MACHINE NUMBERS

Engine

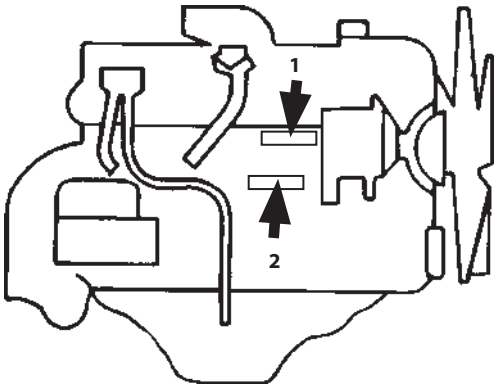
Model :

Manufacturer's Serial Number :



ZX135US-7H

M178-00-002-1 ja



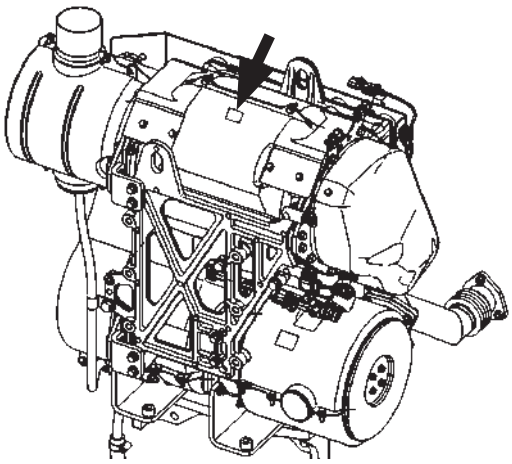
HCME-MDAA-00-001-2 ja

1 ZX345USLC-7H 2 ZX245USLC-7H

SCR Catalyst

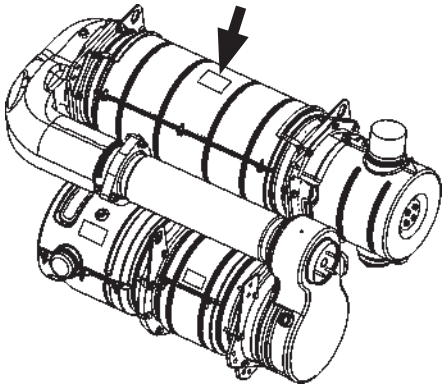
Model :

Manufacturer's Serial Number :



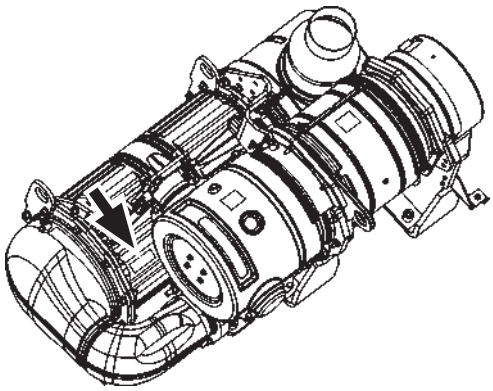
ZX135US-7H

MDC1-00-002-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDC1-00-001-1 ja



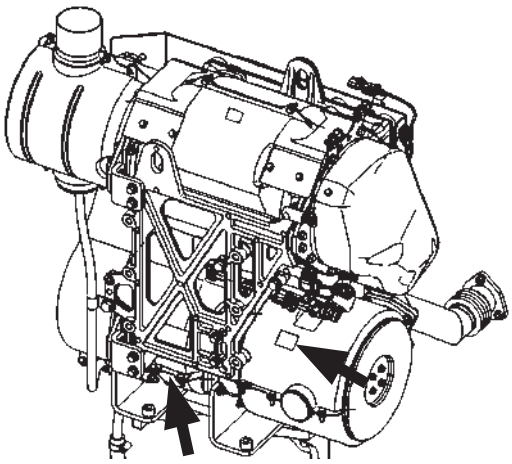
ZX345USLC-7H

MDC1-01-510-1 ja

DOC (Oxidation Catalyst)

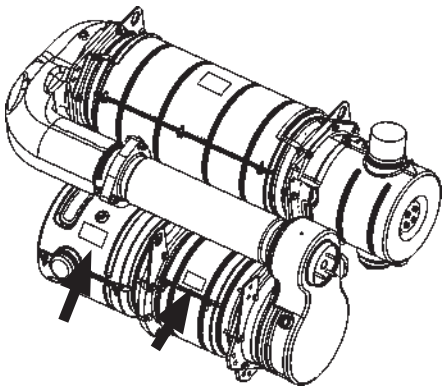
Model :

Manufacturer's Serial Number :



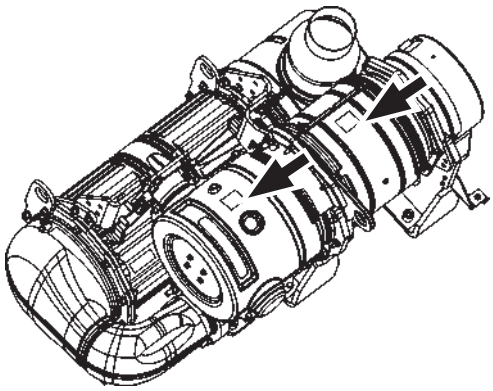
ZX135US-7H

MDC1-00-002-2 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDC1-00-001-2 ja



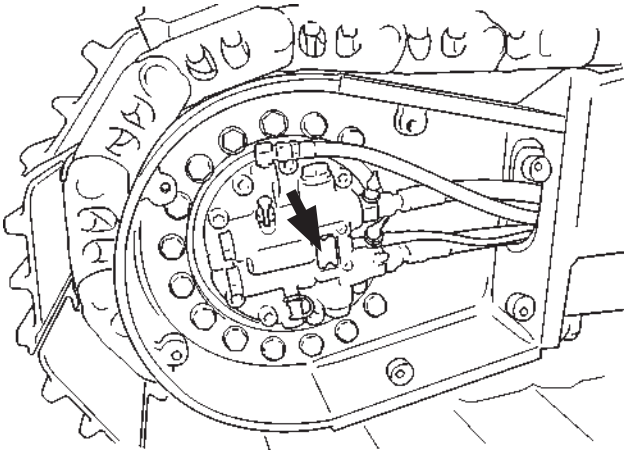
ZX345USLC-7H

MDC1-01-510-2 ja

Travel Motor

Right side
TYPE :
MFG. NO. :

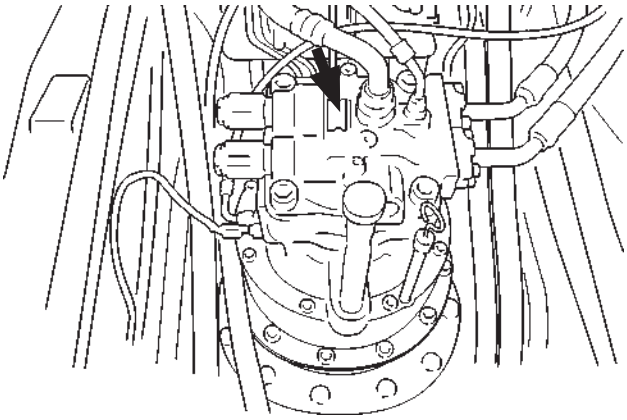
Left side
TYPE :
MFG. NO. :



M178-07-047-2 ja

Swing Motor

Model :
Product identification number :

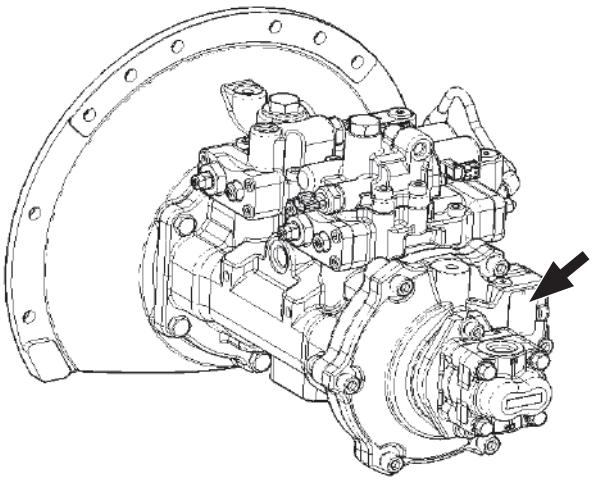


M178-07-086-1 ja

Hydraulic Pump

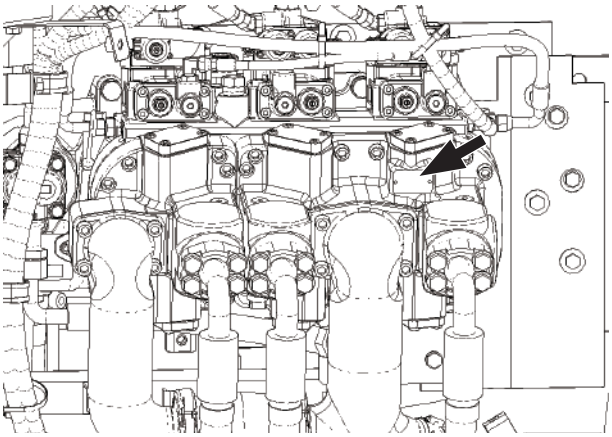
Model :

Manufacturer's Serial Number :



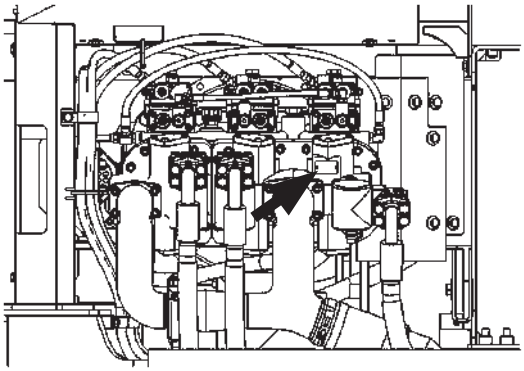
ZX135US-7H

MDA4-00-002-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-00-003-1 ja

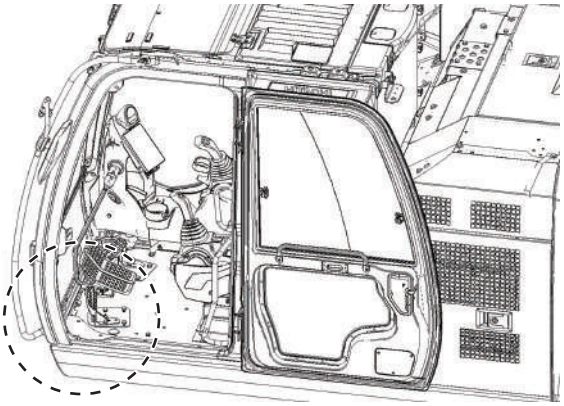


ZX345USLC-7H

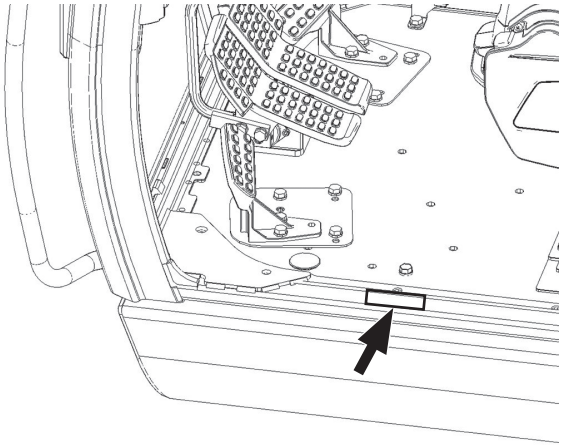
MDD5-00-002-1 ja

Cab

Product identification number :



MDA4-00-004-1 ja



MDA4-00-005-1 ja

Intended Use

This machine is designed and intended to be used for excavating with a bucket or working with tools/attachments described in this manual or approved in writing by the manufacturer.
Risk assessment related to the specific application and working conditions of the machine may require additional safety measures such as protective guards, safety glazing, filtration of cabin air, Hose Rupture Valves, overload warning device, suitable lifting device and the lifting capacity chart etc. to be installed, enabling the machine to be operated safely under the specific conditions. Consult Authorized Dealer for further information on possibilities to adapt the machine accordingly.
Local regulations and instructions must be respected when using the machine. Using this machine and its equipment for operations other than those intended or approved by the manufacturer, are prohibited.

Modifications

No modification affecting the intended use or structural integrity and therefore safety of the machine should be made without written approval of the manufacturer. Modifications which are not approved include the use of unauthorized accessories, assemblies, parts or attachments, including but not limiting to those connected with a coupling device.
Any legal or natural person performing unapproved modifications to the machine assumes all liability directly or indirectly related to the modification.
The manufacturer reserves the right to reject any warranty claim arising from or related to unapproved modifications.

MEMO

Recognize Safety Information

- These are the **SAFETY ALERT SYMBOLS**.
  - When you see these symbols on your machine or in this manual, be alert to the potential for injury to persons.
  - Follow recommended precautions and safe operating practices.

SA-2644 ja

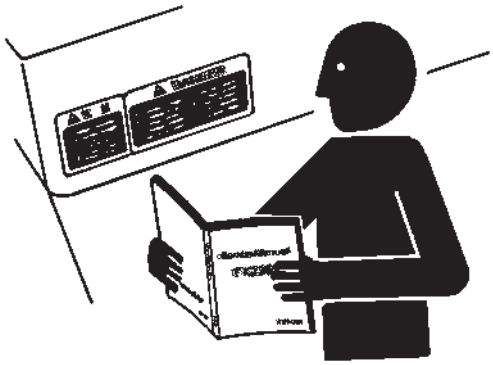
Understand Signal Words

- On machine safety signs, signal words designating the degree or level of hazard - DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION are used with the safety alert symbol.
  - **DANGER** indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
  - **WARNING** indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
  - **CAUTION** indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury.
  - **DANGER or WARNING safety signs** are located near specific hazards. General precautions are listed on **CAUTION safety signs**.
  - Some safety signs are occasionally used on this machine that do not use any of the designated signal words mentioned above after the safety alert symbol.
- To avoid confusing machine protection with personal safety messages, a signal word IMPORTANT indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in damage to the machine.

SA-632 en_GB

- NOTE: Indicates an additional explanation for a piece of information.

Follow Safety Instructions



SA-003 ja

- Carefully read and follow all safety instructions on the machine and in this manual.
- Safety signs should be readable and replaced when necessary.
  - If a safety sign or this manual is damaged or missing, order a replacement from Authorized Dealer in the same way you order other replacement parts (be sure to state machine model and serial number when ordering).
- Learn how to operate the machine and its controls correctly and safely.
- Only trained, qualified and authorized personnel should operate the machine.
- Keep your machine in proper working condition.
  - Unauthorized modifications of the machine may impair its function and/or safety and affect machine life.
  - Do not modify any machine parts without authorization. Failure to do so may deteriorate the safety, function, and/or service life of the machine and may void Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty. Modifying machine without authorization may deteriorate the safety, function, performance, service life of the machine, and/or void Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.
  - Never attempt to modify or disassemble the inlet/exhaust parts of the engine and the aftertreatment device. Avoid shocks to the aftertreatment device, such as striking or dropping objects onto the device. Failure to do so may affect the exhaust gas purifying function, possibly damaging it or lowering its performance.
- Attachments and/or optional parts or equipment not matching machine characteristics and capacities may cause injuries to persons, machine trouble and/or damage to material. If you are not sure of the suitability of attachments, optional parts, and/or equipment, contact Authorized Dealer. The safety messages in this SAFETY chapter are intended to illustrate basic safety procedures when working with machines. However, it is impossible to cover every hazardous situation you may encounter in these safety messages. Adequate measures resulting from job site risk assessment allow safe operation of machines. If you have any questions, you should first consult your supervisor and/or Authorized Dealer before operating or performing maintenance work on the machine.

Prepare for Emergencies

- Be prepared for a fire or an accident.
  - Keep a first aid kit and fire extinguisher on hand.
  - Thoroughly read and understand the label attached on the fire extinguisher to use it properly.
  - To ensure that a fire extinguisher can be always used when necessary, check and service the fire extinguisher at the recommended intervals as specified in the fire extinguisher manual.
  - Establish emergency procedure guidelines to cope with fires and accidents.
  - Keep emergency numbers for doctors, ambulance service, hospital, and fire department posted near your telephone.

SA-437 ja

Wear Appropriate Clothing

- Wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate to the job.

  You may need:
  - A hard hat
  - Safety shoes
  - Safety glasses, goggles, or face shield
  - Hand protection
  - Personal fall protection equipment
  - Hearing protection
  - Reflective clothing
  - Wet weather gear
  - Respirator or filter mask

  Be sure to wear the correct equipment and clothing for the job.
  - Avoid wearing loose clothing, jewelry, or other items that can catch on control levers or other parts of the machine.
- Operating equipment safely requires the full attention of the operator. Do not wear radio or music headphones while operating the machine.

SA-438 ja

Inspect Machine

- Inspect your machine carefully each day or shift before you start operating it to ensure the machine is in full working order.
  - During the inspection be sure to cover all points described in the "Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting" section in the operator's manual.

SA-435 ja

General Precautions for the Cab

- Before entering the cab, thoroughly remove all dirt and/or oil such as mud, grease, soil or stones from the soles of your work boots. If a control such as a pedal is operated with dirt and/or oil on the soles of the operator's work boots, the operator's foot may slip off the pedal, potentially resulting in a personal accident.
- Keep your cab clean. Parts, tools, soil, stones, cans or lunch box or other obstacles may fold up or turn over, potentially blocking control levers or pedals which may result in unintended movement of the machine with the risk of accidents, serious injury or death.
- Avoid storing transparent bottles in the cab. Do not attach any transparent type window decorations on the windowpanes as they may focus sunlight, possibly starting a fire.
- Refrain from listening to the radio or using music headphones or mobile telephones in the cab while operating the machine.
- Keep all flammable materials and/or explosives away from the machine.
- After using the ashtray, always cover it to extinguish the match and/or tobacco.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the cab. When the temperature in the cab increases, the lighter may explode.
- Using floor mat non-suitable for machine may be displaced and interfere with pedal movement during operation, potentially resulting in serious injury or death. Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Floor Mat is specially designed and tested to suit with the machine, hense it is recommended to use the Genuine Floor Mat.

Use Handrail and Steps

- Falling is one of the major causes of injury.
  - When you get on and off the machine, always face the machine and maintain a three-point contact with the steps and handrails.
  - Do not use any controls as hand-holds.
  - Never jump on or off the machine. Never mount or dismount a moving machine.
  - Before getting on or off the machine, check the condition of the steps and handrails for sticking of slippery material like grease or mud. Thoroughly remove such material if stuck.
  - Repair any damage to the steps and/or handrails before using the machine. Retighten loose bolts.
  - Never get on and off the machine with tools or other items in your hands.

SA-439 ja

Adjust the Operator's Seat

SA-378 ja

- A seat which is poorly adjusted for the individual operator, or the work to be undertaken, may quickly fatigue the operator leading to loss of focus and maloperation.
  - The seat should be adjusted whenever the operator of the machine changes.
  - The operator should be able to fully depress the pedals in any direction and to operate the control levers in any direction while his back remains against the seat back.
  - If not, adjust the seat and check again.
  - Depending on the work, the seat may need to be moved forward or backward to improve visibility into the working area. Do not stand up from your seat while operating the machine.
  - Adjust the mirrors to maximize visibility into areas without direct visibility, in particular areas close to the machine. For mirror adjustment, refer to the mirror adjustment section of this manual.

Ensure Safety Before Leaving or Standing up from Operator's Seat

- Before leaving the operator's seat, be sure to first lower the front attachment to the ground and move the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position. Turn the key switch OFF to stop the engine. Leaving the operator's seat without stopping the engine may allow the machine to unexpectedly move when a body part unintentionally comes in contact with a control lever and/or pedal, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Before standing up from the operator's seat to open or close a window or to adjust the seat position and so on, be sure to first lower the front attachment to the ground and move the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position. Failure to do so may allow the machine to unexpectedly move when a body part unintentionally comes in contact with a control lever and/or pedal, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.
- Before leaving the machine, close all windows, doors, and access covers and lock them.

Fasten Your Seat Belt

- Be sure to remain seated with the seat belt securely fastened at all times when the machine is in operation to minimize the chance of injury from an accident.
  - If the machine should overturn, the seat belt keeps the operator within the safe zone provided by the cab structure. Failure to use the seat belt may result in the operator being injured, thrown from the cab and subsequently crushed by the overturning machine, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.
  - Prior to operating the machine, thoroughly examine webbing, buckle and attaching hardware. If any item is damaged or worn, replace the seat belt or component before operating the machine.
  - We recommend that the seat belt is replaced every three years regardless of its apparent condition.

SA-237 ja

Move and Operate Machine Safely

- Be aware of bystanders.
  - Take extra care not to run over bystanders. Confirm the location of bystanders before moving, swinging, or operating the machine.
  - Always keep the travel alarm and horn in working condition (if equipped). It allows you to warn people when you plan to start moving the machine.
  - Use a signal person when moving, swinging, or operating the machine in confined areas. Coordinate hand signals before starting the machine.
  - Use appropriate illumination. Check that all lights are functioning correctly before operating the machine. If any faulty illumination is present, immediately repair it.

SA-426 ja

  - Ensure the cab door, windows, doors and covers are closed and securely locked.
  - Check the mirrors and the monitor in the cab for visibility.
    Keep mirrors, camera lenses and the monitor display clean. Repair or replace any defective part(s).
    Refer to Aerial Angle section for information on cleaning the camera lenses and the monitor display.

Start the Engine Only from Operator's Seat

- Inappropriate engine starting procedures may cause the machine to run away, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
  - Start the engine only while seated in the operator's seat.
  - Never start the engine while standing on the track or ground.
  - Do not start engine by shorting across starter terminals.
  - Before starting the engine, confirm that all control levers are in neutral position and the pilot shut-off lever in the LOCK position.
  - Before starting the engine, confirm the safety around the machine and sound the horn to alert bystanders.

SA-444 ja

Jump Starting

- Battery gas can explode, resulting in serious injury.
  - If the engine must be jump started, be sure to follow the instructions shown in the "OPERATING THE ENGINE" chapter in the operator's manual.
  - The operator must be in the operator's seat so that the machine will be under control when the engine starts. Jump starting is a two-person operation.
  - If battery is frozen, warm and defrost before use.
  - Failure to follow correct jump starting procedures could result in a battery explosion or a runaway machine.

SA-032 ja

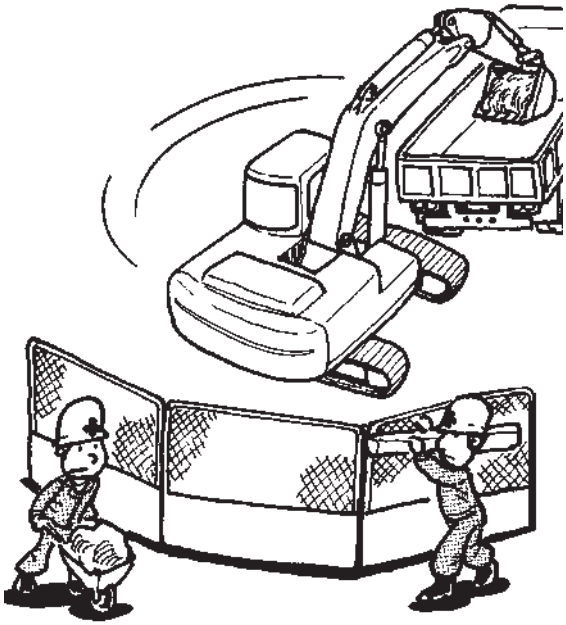
Keep Riders off Machine

- Riders on machine are subject to injury such as being struck by foreign objects or being thrown off the machine.
  - Only the operator should be on the machine. Keep riders off.
  - Riders also distract the operator and obstruct the operator's view, resulting in the machine being operated in an unsafe manner.

SA-379 ja

Precautions for Operations

- Investigate and perform job site risk assessment before starting operations.
  - Be sure to wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate for the job, when operating the machine.
  - Keep bystanders and obstacles clear from the area of machine operation. Keep bystanders away from areas where there is risk of, such as from flying objects.
  - Always be aware of the surroundings while operating. When working in a confined area surrounded by obstacles, take care not to hit the upperstructure against obstacles.
  - When loading onto the dump truck, bring the bucket over the dump body from the rear side. Take care not to swing the bucket over the cab or over any person.



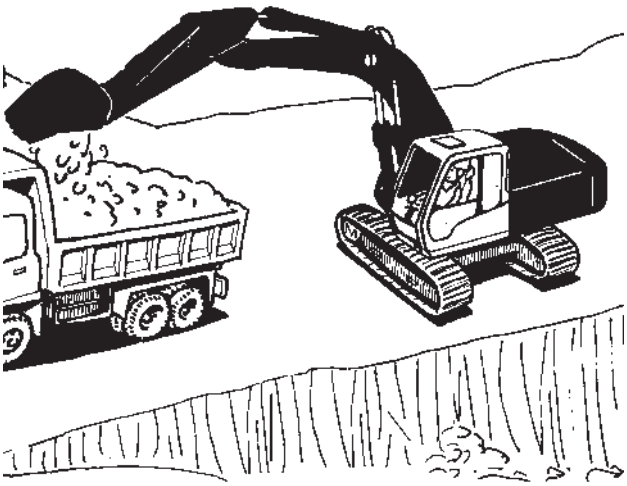
M178-05-007 ja

Perform Job Site Risk Assessment Beforehand

- Make a work plan. Use machines appropriate to the work and job site.
- Investigate the configuration and ground conditions of the job site beforehand to prevent the machine from falling and to prevent the ground, stockpiles or banks from collapsing.
- When working at the edge of an excavation or on a road shoulder, the machine could fall, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
  - Reinforce ground, edges and road shoulders as necessary. Keep the machine well back from the edges of excavations and road shoulders.

SA-380 ja

- When working on an incline or on a road shoulder, employ a signal person as required.
- Confirm that your machine is equipped with a FOPS cab before working in areas where the possibility of falling stones or debris exist.
- When the ground footing is weak, reinforce the ground before starting work.
  - When working on frozen ground, be extremely alert. As ambient temperatures rise, footing becomes loose and slippery.
- Beware the possibility of fire when operating the machine near flammable materials such as dry grass.
- When working close to an excavation or at road shoulders, operate the machine with the tracks positioned perpendicular to the cliff face with travel motors at the rear, so that the machine can more easily evacuate if the cliff face collapses.
  - If working on the bottom of a cliff or a high bank is required, be sure to investigate the area first and confirm that no danger of the cliff or bank collapsing. In case of a risk of cliff or bank collapsing, do not work in the area.
  - Soft ground may collapse when the machine is operated on it, possibly causing the machine to fall. When working on soft ground is required, be sure to reinforce the ground first using steel plates strong and firm enough to easily support the machine.
  - Note that there is always a possibility of machine tipping over when working on rough terrain or on slopes. To reduce the risk of tipping over:
    - Reduce the engine speed.
    - Select slow travel speed mode.
    - Operate the machine slowly and be cautious with machine movements.



M104-05-016 ja

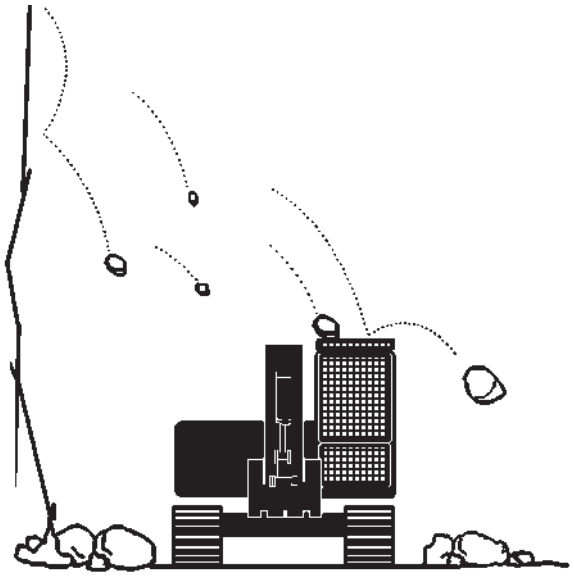
Install OPG (Operator Protective Guard)

In case the machine is operated in areas where the possibility of falling stones or debris exist, equip guards on the cab. It is highly recommended to use Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Guards which is properly designed and manufactured for the machine.

Consult Authorized Dealer for installing the OPG.

In order not to impair operator protection:

Replace damaged OPG. Never attempt to repair or modify a guard.



SA-490 ja

Restriction of Attachment Installation

Do not install an attachment which exceeds the permissible weight for the concerning machine configuration. Take into account the additional weight of any payload.

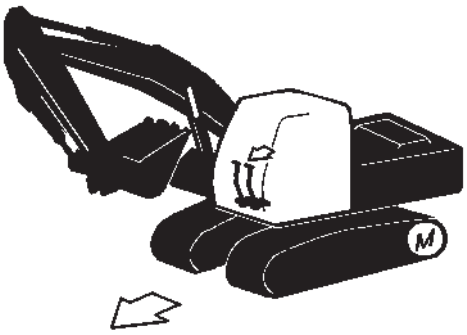
Provide Signals for Jobs Involving Multiple Machines

- For jobs involving multiple machines, provide signals known and understood by all personnel involved. Also, appoint a signal person to coordinate the work. Make sure that all personnel obey the signal person's directions.

SA-481 ja

Confirm Direction of Machine Travel

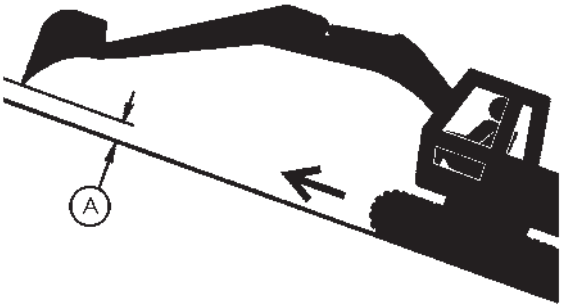
- Incorrect travel pedal/lever operation may result in serious injury or death.
  - Before traveling with the machine, confirm the position of the undercarriage in relation to the operator's station. Arrows on the inner side of the trackframe indicated the forward position of the undercarriage. If the travel motors are visible in front of the cab, the machine will move in opposite direction compared to lever/pedal movement.



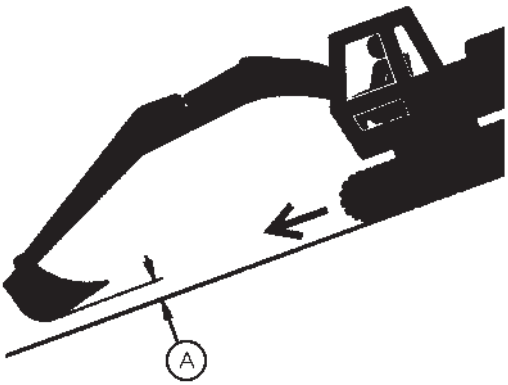
SA-491 ja

Drive Machine Safely

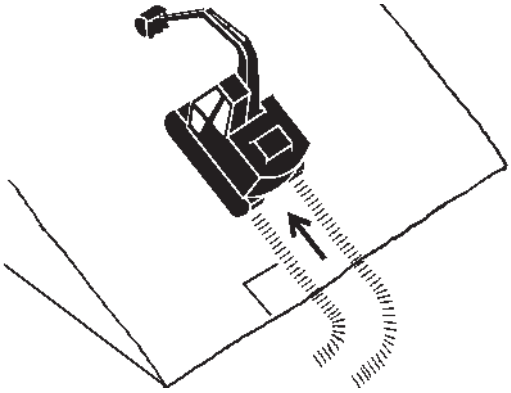
- Before driving the machine, always confirm that the travel levers/pedals direction corresponds to the direction you wish to drive.
  - Avoid traveling over obstructions. Soil, fragments of rocks, and/or metal pieces may scatter around the machine. Do not allow bystanders near the machine while traveling.
- Travelling on a slope may cause the machine to slip or overturn, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
  - Never attempt to ascend or descend slopes steeper than 35 degrees.
  - Always fasten the seat belt.
  - When driving up or down a slope, keep the bucket facing the direction of travel, approximately 0.2 to 0.3 m (8 to 12 in)(see A on the right) above the ground.
  - If the machine starts to skid or becomes unstable, immediately lower the bucket to the ground and stop.
  - Driving across the face of a slope or steering on a slope may cause the machine to skid or turnover. If the direction must be changed, move the machine to level ground, then, change the direction to ensure safe operation.



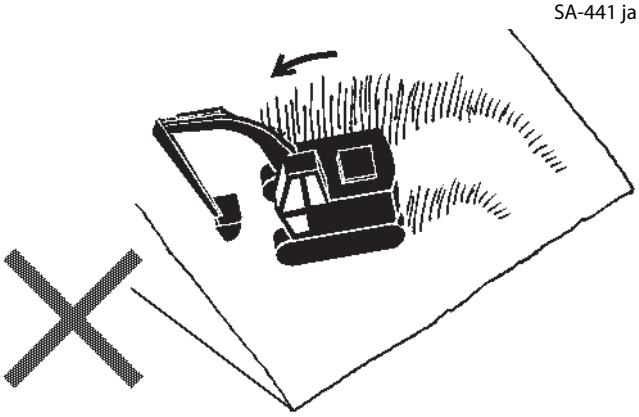
SA-387 ja



SA-388 ja

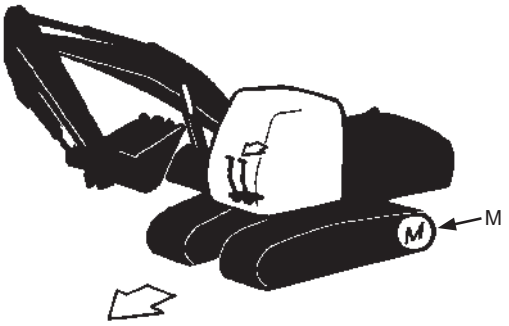


SA-441 ja

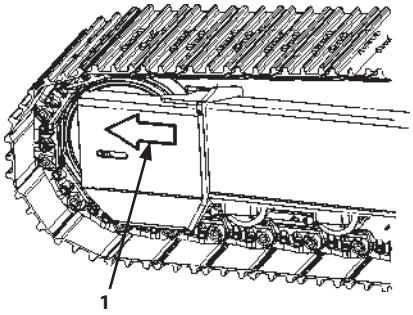


SA-442 ja

- Avoid swinging the upperstructure on slopes. The machine may tip over. Before swinging, preferably travel to level ground before swinging the upperstructure. If swinging is unavoidable, carefully operate the upperstructure and boom at slow speed.
- If the engine stalls on a slope, immediately lower the bucket to the ground. Return the control levers to neutral. Then, restart the engine.
- Warm up the machine, including the hydraulic oil, before ascending steep slopes. If hydraulic oil has not warmed up sufficiently, necessary performance may not be available.
- Use a signal person when moving, swinging or operating the machine in confined spaces. Ensure mutual understanding of hand signals before starting the machine.
- Before moving machine, determine which way to move travel pedals/levers for the direction you want to go. When the travel motors (M) are in the rear, pushing down on the front of the travel pedals or pushing the levers forward moves the machine forward. An arrow-mark (1) is affixed on the inside surface of the side frame to indicate the machine forward direction.
- Select a travel route that is as flat as possible. Steer the machine as straight as possible, making small gradual changes in direction.
- Before traveling on them, confirm the strength of bridges and road shoulders, and reinforce if necessary.
- Use wood plates in order not to damage the road surface. Be careful of steering when operating on asphalt roads in summer.
- When crossing rail road tracks, use wood plates in order not to damage them.
- When crossing a river, measure the depth of the river using the bucket, and cross slowly. Do not cross the river when the depth of the river is deeper than the upper edge of the upper roller.
- When traveling on rough terrain, reduce engine speed. Select slow travel speed. Slower speed will reduce the possiblility of damage to the machine.



M104-05-008-2 ja

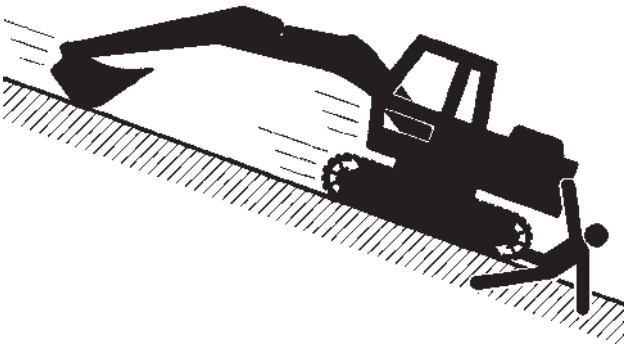


M178-03-001-2 ja

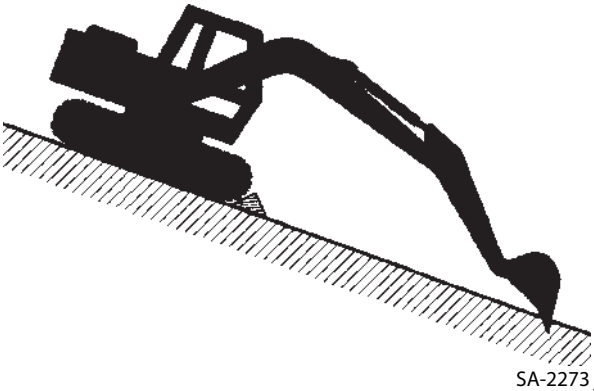
- Avoid operations that may damage the track and undercarriage components.
- In winter time, always clean snow and ice from track shoes before loading and unloading the machine, to prevent the machine from slipping.

Avoid Injury from Rollaway Accidents

- Do not try to enter a moving machine. Serious injury or death may result if you attempt to mount or stop a moving machine.
- To avoid rollaways:
  - Park the machine on a level ground.
  - Position the machine to prevent rolling.
  - Park at a reasonable distance from other machines.
  - Lower the bucket or work tool to the ground. Thrust the bucket teeth into the ground if you must park on a slope.
  - Set the pilot shut-off lever to LOCK position.
  - Block both tracks.



SA-391 ja

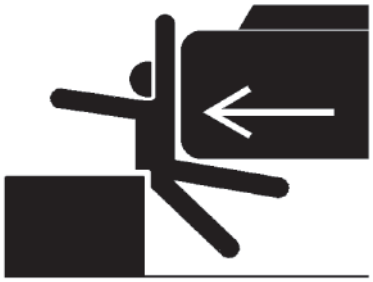


SA-2273 ja

Avoid Accidents from Reversing and Swing Operation

- If any person is present near the machine when reversing the machine or swinging the upperstructure, the machine may hit or run over that person, resulting in serious injury or death.
  To avoid accidents:
  - Before you reverse or swing the machine, be sure that no bystanders are IN THE WORK AREA. Always be alert for bystanders moving into the work area. Use the horn to warn bystanders before moving machine.
  - Use a signal person during reversing if your view is obstructed. Always keep the signal person in view.
  - Keep windows, mirrors, and lights clean and functional.
  - Dust, heavy rain, fog, etc., can reduce visibility. As visibility decreases, adapt machine movements accordingly to maintain safe operation and use proper lighting.

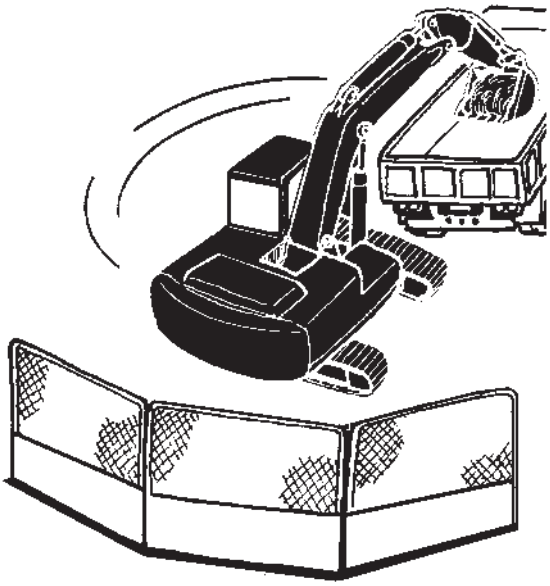
SA-383 ja



SA-384 ja

Keep People Clear from Working Area

- Bystanders in the vicinity of an operating machine may be hit severely by the swinging front attachment or counterweight, be caught by other objects, and/or be struck by flying objects, resulting in serious injury or death.
  - Set up barriers to keep bystanders away from areas where risk exist. Use appropriate measures to prevent anyone from entering the machine's work area, e.g. setting up barriers.
  - Follow instructions and respect local regulations concerning segregation of persons and machines.



SA-386 ja

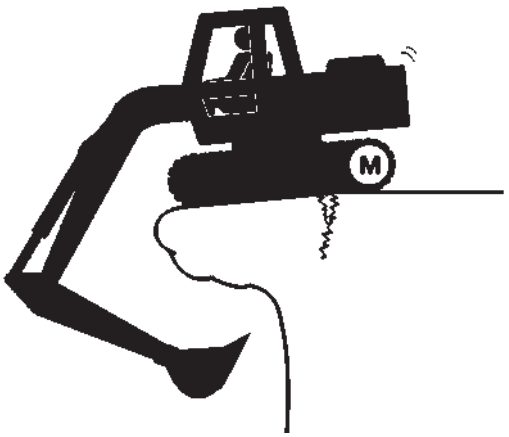
Never Position the Bucket Over Anyone

- Never lift, move, or swing the bucket above anyone or above the truck cab.
  Serious injury or machine damage may result due to bucket load spill or due to collision with the bucket.

SA-487 ja

Avoid Undercutting

- Ensure stability of the ground before starting work. Keep sufficient clearance from the excavation to avoid change in stability of the ground, potentially causing it to slide away.
  - In order to be able to move the machine away from the edge of an excavation if the ground should collapse despite the precautions taken, always position the undercarriage perpendicular to the edge of the excavation with the travel motors at the rear.
  - If the ground starts to collapse and moving the machine away from the edge is not possible, lower the front attachment in such cases to minimize the risk of tip-over.

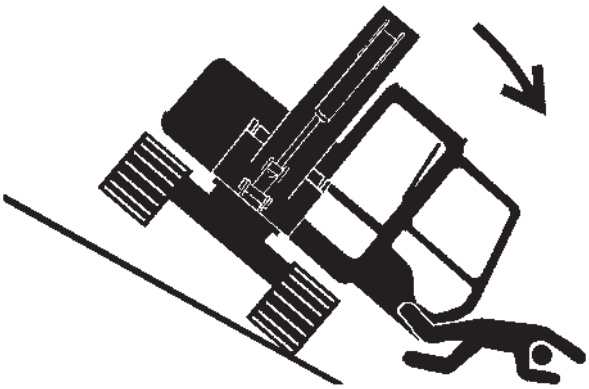


SA-488 ja

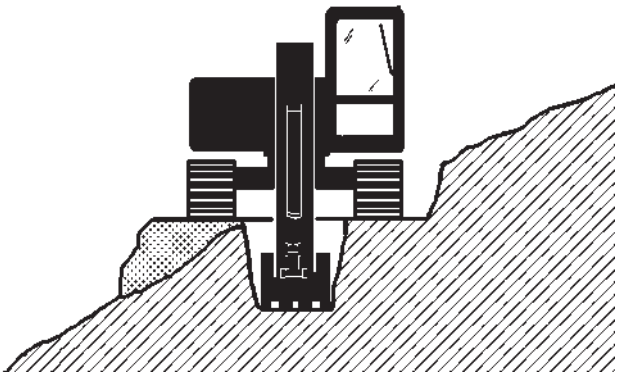
Avoid Tipping

Fasten your seat belt
Do not attempt to jump clear of a machine tipping over.
Machine will tip over faster than you can jump free
--- Serious or fatal crushing injuries will result

- The danger of tipping is always present when operating on a slope, possibly resulting in serious injury or death. To avoid tipping:
  - Be extra careful before operating on a slope.
  - Prepare the operating area, allowing the machine to work on flat, level ground.
  - Keep the bucket low to the ground and close to the machine.
  - Reduce operating speeds and movements.
  - Avoid changing direction when traveling on slopes.
  - NEVER attempt to travel across a slope steeper than 15 degrees if crossing the slope is unavoidable.
- Be careful when working on frozen ground.
  - Temperature increases will cause the ground to become soft and make ground travel unstable.



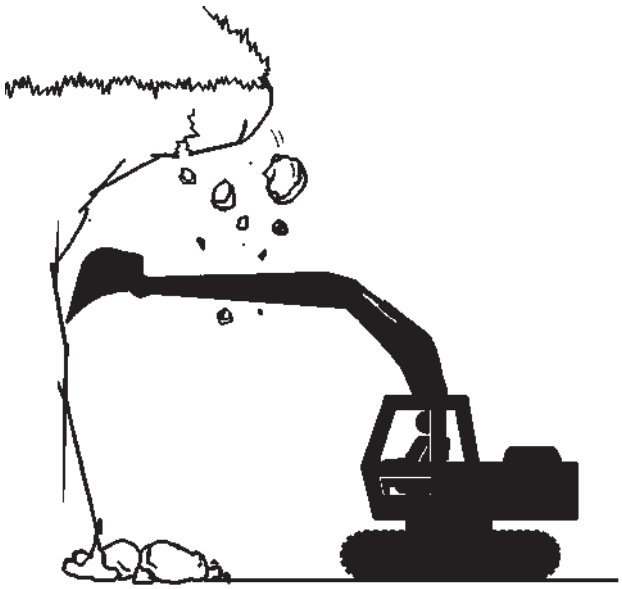
SA-012 ja



SA-440 ja

Never Undercut a High Bank

- The edges could collapse or a land slide could occur causing serious injury or death.



SA-489 ja

Dig with Caution

- Accidental damaging of underground cables or gas lines may cause an electric shock, explosion and/or fire, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
  - Before digging confirm the location of cables, gas lines, and water lines.
  - Respect the minimum distance required from cables, gas lines, and water lines.
  - If a fiber optic cable should be accidentally damaged, do not look into the end. Doing so may result in serious eye injury.

SA-382 ja

Caution with an Overhead Obstacle

- If the front attachment or any other part of the machine hits an overhead obstacle, such as a bridge both the machine and the overhead obstacle may be damaged, and injury may result as well.
  - Take care to avoid hitting overhead obstacles with the attachment, boom, arm or cab.

SA-389 ja

Avoid Power Lines

- Serious injury or death can result if the machine or front attachments are not kept at a safe distance from electric overhead lines.
  - When operating near an electric overhead line, never move any part of the machine or load to within 3 m plus twice the line insulator length of overhead wires.
  - Check and comply with any local regulations that may apply.
  - Wet ground will expand the area that could cause any person on it to be affected by electric shock. Keep all bystanders or co-workers away from the site.

SA-381 ja

Precautions for Lightning

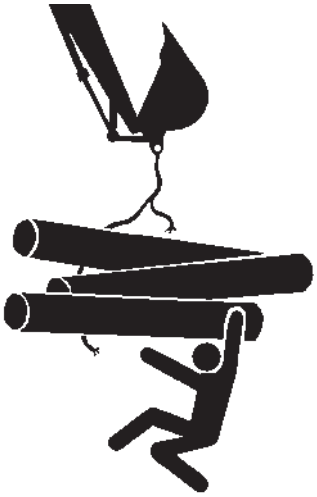
- Lightning may strike the machine.
  If lightning comes close, immediately stop the operation, and take the following action:
  - When you are around the machine or operating cabless machine, evacuate to a safe place far away from the machine.
  - When you are in the cab, stay in the cab until lightning has passed and safety is assured. Close the cab doors and windows. Lower the bucket to the ground and stop the engine. Put your hands on your lap to avoid contact with any metal surfaces. Never go out of the cab.

If lightning strikes the machine or near the machine, check all of the machine safety devices for any failure after lightning has passed and safety is assured. If any trouble is found, operate the machine only after repairing it.

SA-2715 ja

Object Handling

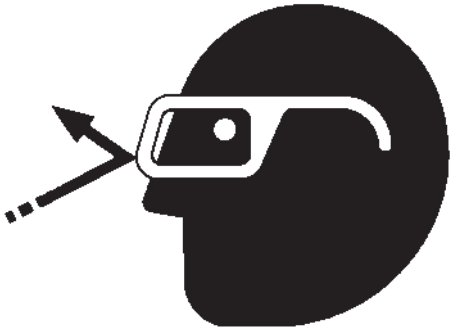
- If a lifted load should fall, any person nearby may be struck by the falling load or may be crushed underneath it, resulting in serious injury or death.
  - When using the machine for lifting operations, be sure to comply with all local regulations.
  - Do not use damaged chains or frayed cables, slings, or ropes.
  - Before lifting, position the upperstructure with the travel motors at the rear.
  - Move the load slowly and carefully. Never move it suddenly.
  - Keep all persons well away from the load.
  - Never move a load over a person's head.
  - Do not allow anyone to approach the load until it is safely and securely situated on supporting blocks or on the ground.
  - Never attach a sling or chain to the bucket teeth. They may come off, causing the load to fall.



SA-014 ja

Protect Against Flying Debris and Falling Object

- During hammer operation, debris from earth, rock or metal may fly in all directions, resulting in a serious injury or death.
  - When driving the connecting pins in or out, wear hard hat and face shield, goggle or safety glasses.



SA-432 ja

- During machine operation, debris from earth, rock or metal may fly off from the track and bucket, potentially resulting in a serious injury or death.
  - Ensure nobody is present in or around the work area while machine is operating.
  - Always close the front windows, doors, door windows and the overhead window when operating the machine.

SA-344 ja

- Falling of accumulated earth or dirt onto people may result in a serious injury or death.
  - Before performing maintenance or inspection under carriage, remove accumulated debris.

SA-527 ja

Park Machine Safely

- To avoid accidents:
  - Park machine on a firm, level surface.
  - Lower bucket and blade to the ground.
  - Set pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
  - Turn auto-idle switch OFF.
  - Run engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
  - Turn key switch to OFF to stop engine.
  - Remove the key from the key switch.
  - Close windows, roof vent, and cab door.
  - Lock all access doors and compartments.

SA-2590 ja

SA-390 ja

Handle Fluids Safely–Avoid Fires

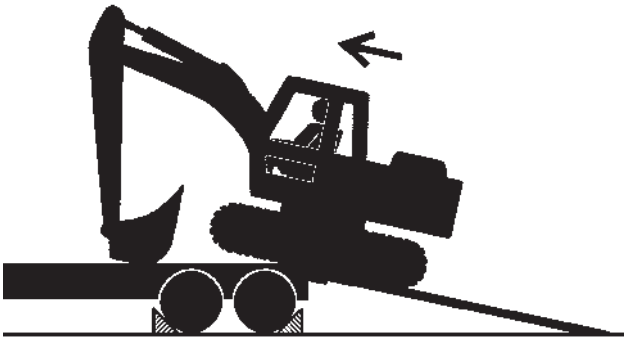
- Handle fuel with care; it is highly flammable. If fuel ignites, an explosion and/or a fire may occur, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
  - Do not refuel the machine while smoking or when near open flame or sparks.
  - Always stop the engine before refueling the machine.
  - Fill the fuel tank outdoors.
  - Discharge static electricity before fueling.
- All fuels, most lubricants, and some coolants are flammable.
  - Store flammable fluids well away from fire hazards.
  - Do not incinerate or puncture pressurized containers.
  - Do not store oily rags on the machine; they can ignite and burn spontaneously.
  - Securely tighten the fuel and oil filler caps.

SA-018 ja

SA-019 ja

Transport Safely

- Take extra care when loading or unloading the machine onto or from a truck or trailer as the machine may turn over.
  - Observe the related regulations and rules for safe transportation.
  - Confirm length, width, height and weight of the machine and select an appropriate truck or trailer for the machine to be transported.
  - Be sure to use a signal person.
  - Always follow the following precautions for loading or unloading:



SA-395 ja

1. Place machine and truck or trailer on solid and level ground.
2. Always use a ramp or deck strong enough to support the machine weight to drive on or from a truck or trailer.
3. Fasten operator's seat belt before starting driving the machine.
4. Turn auto-idle switch OFF.
5. Always select the slow speed mode with the travel mode switch.
6. To avoid instability, never load or unload the machine onto or off a truck or trailer using the front attachment functions when driving up or down the ramp.
7. Never steer the machine while on the ramp. If the traveling direction must be changed while on the ramp, unload the machine from the ramp, reposition the machine on the ground, then try loading again.
8. At the top end of the ramp where it meets the flatbed, there is a change in angle. Take care when traveling over it.The machine will tip forward or backward.
9. Place blocks in front of and behind the tires of the machine, if applicable. Securely fasten the machine to the truck or trailer deck with wire ropes.

Be sure to further follow the details described in the "TRANSPORTING" section.

Practice Maintenance Safely

- To avoid accidents:
  - Understand service procedures before starting work.
  - Keep the work area clean and dry.
  - Do not spray water or steam inside cab.
  - Never lubricate or service the machine while the engine is running.
  - Keep hands, feet and clothing away from moving parts.

SA-028 ja

Before servicing the machine:

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.
4. Run the engine at low idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
5. Turn the key switch to OFF to stop engine.
6. Relieve the pressure in the hydraulic system according to the pressure relief procedure. (Refer to chapter-5 "Guide to Releasing Pressure in the Hydraulic Circuit".)
7. Remove the key from the key switch.
8. Attach a "Do Not Operate" tag on the control lever.
9. Set pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
10. Allow the engine to cool.

- If a maintenance procedure must be performed with the engine running, do not leave the machine unattended.
- If the machine must be raised, maintain a 90 to 110˚ angle between the boom and arm. Securely support any machine elements that must be raised for service work.
- Inspect the machine periodically in accordance with the "MAINTENANCE" chapter of this manual and repair or replace as necessary.
- Keep all parts in good condition and properly installed.
- Fix damage immediately. Replace worn or broken parts. Remove any buildup of grease, oil or debris.

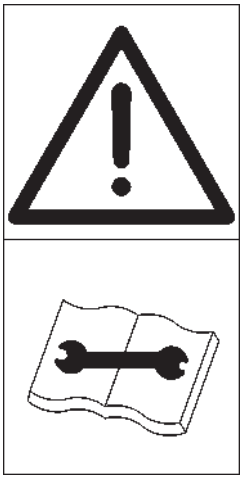
SA-527 ja

- When cleaning parts, always use nonflammable detergent oil. Never use highly flammable oil such as fuel oil or gasoline to clean parts or surfaces.
- Turn the battery disconnect switch to OFF before maintaining the electrical systems or performing welding on the machine.
- Sufficiently illuminate the work site. Use a maintenance work light when working under or inside the machine.
- Always use a work light protected with a guard. If the light bulb is broken, spilled fuel, oil, antifreeze fluid, or window washer fluid may catch fire.

SA-037 ja

Warn Others of Service Work

- Unexpected machine movement can cause serious injury.
  - Before performing any work on the machine, attach a "Do Not Operate" tag on the control lever.
    This tag is available from Authorized Dealer.



SS2045102-4 ja

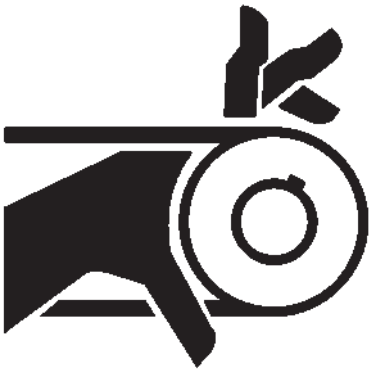
Support Machine Properly

- Never attempt to work on the machine without securing the machine first.
  - Always lower the attachment to the ground before you work on the machine.
  - If you must work on a lifted machine or attachment, securely support the machine or attachment. Do not support the machine on cinder blocks, hollow tires, or props that may crumble under continuous load. Do not work under a machine that is supported solely by a jack.

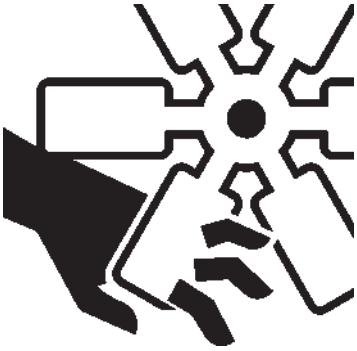
SA-527 ja

Stay Clear of Moving Parts

- Entanglement in moving parts can cause serious injury.
  - To prevent accidents, do not remove guards to ensure that hands, feet, clothing, jewelry and hair do not become entangled when working around rotating parts.



SA-026 ja



SA-2294 ja

Prevent Parts from Flying

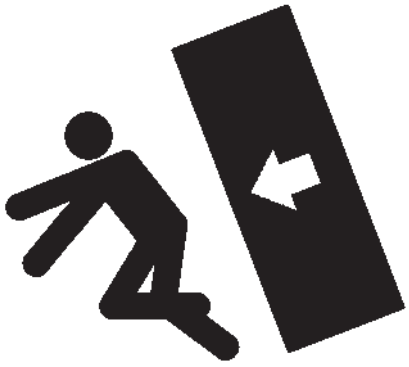
- Grease in the track adjuster is under high pressure. Failure to follow the precautions below may result in serious injury, blindness, or death.
  - Do not attempt to remove GREASE FITTING or VALVE ASSEMBLY.
  - Do not attempt to remove the valve stop plate.
  - As pieces may fly off, be sure to keep body and face away from valve.
  - Never attempt to disassemble the track adjuster. Inadvertent disassembling of the track adjuster may cause the parts such as a spring to fly off, possibly resulting in severe injury or death.

SA-344 ja

- Travel reduction gears are under pressure.
  - As pieces may fly off, be sure to keep body and face away from AIR RELEASE PLUG to avoid injury.
  - GEAR OIL is hot. Wait for GEAR OIL to cool, then gradually loosen AIR RELEASE PLUG to release pressure.

Avoid Injury from Attachment Falling Accident

- Stored attachments such as buckets, hydraulic hammers, and blades can fall and cause serious injury or death.
  - To avoid possible injury from attachment falling accident, use a platform when replacing an attachment.
  - Securely store attachments such as a bucket, blade, breaker and other parts to prevent falling.
  - Keep bystanders away from attachment storage areas.



SA-034 ja

Prevent Burns

Hot spraying fluids:

- After operation, engine coolant is hot and under pressure. Hot water or steam is contained in the engine, expansion tank and heater lines.
  Skin contact with escaping hot water or steam can cause severe burns.
  - Avoid possible injury from hot spraying water. DO NOT remove the expansion tank cap until the engine is cooled down. When opening, turn the cap slowly to the first stop. Allow all pressure to be released before removing the cap.

SA-039 ja

The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Push the pressure release button on the tank cap to release pressure before carefully removing the cap. Hot fluids and surfaces:

- Engine oil, gear oil and hydraulic oil also become hot during operation.
  The engine, hoses, lines and other parts become hot as well.
- Wait for the oil and components to cool down before starting any maintenance or inspection work.

SA-225 ja

Replace Rubber Hoses Periodically

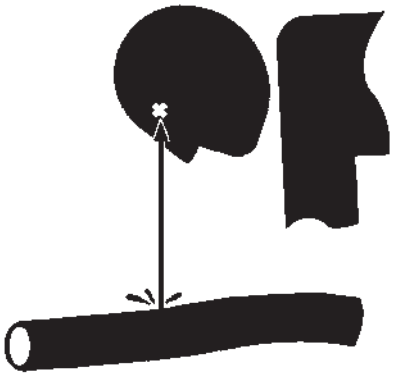
- Rubber hoses under pressure may break due to aging, fatigue, and abrasion. It is very difficult to gauge the extent of deterioration of rubber hoses by inspection alone. Therefore:
  - Periodically replace the rubber hoses. (See the page of "Periodic replacement of parts" in the operator's manual.)
- Failure to periodically replace rubber hoses may cause a fire, fluid injection into skin, or the front attachment to fall, which may result in serious injury or death.

SA-019 ja

Avoid High-Pressure Fluids

- Fluids such as diesel fuel or hydraulic oil under pressure can penetrate the skin or eyes causing serious injury, blindness or death.
  - Avoid this hazard by relieving pressure before disconnecting hydraulic or other lines.
  - Tighten all connections before applying pressure.
  - Search for leaks with a piece of cardboard; take care to protect hands and body from high-pressure fluids. Wear a face shield or goggles for eye protection.
  - If an accident occurs, see medical assistance immediately. Any fluid injected into the skin must be surgically removed within a few hours or gangrene may result.

SA-031 ja



SA-292 ja

SA-044 ja

Prevent Fires

Check for Oil Leaks:

- Fuel, hydraulic oil and lubricant leaks can cause fires.
  - Check for oil leaks due to missing or loose clamps, kinked hoses, damaged lines or hoses that rub against each other, damage to the oil cooler, and loose oil cooler flange bolts.
  - Tighten, repair or replace any missing, loose or damaged clamps, lines, hoses, oil cooler and oil cooler flange bolts.
  - Do not bend or strike high-pressure lines.
  - Never install bent or damaged lines, pipes, or hoses.
  - Replace fuel hoses and hydraulic hoses periodically even if there is no abnormality in their external appearance.

SA-019 ja

Check for Short circuits:

- Short circuits can cause fires.
  - Clean and tighten all electrical connections.
  - Check before each shift or after eight (8) to ten (10) hours operation for loose, kinked, hardened or damaged electrical cables and wires.
  - Check before each shift or after eight (8) to ten (10) hours operation for missing or damaged terminal caps.
  - DO NOT OPERATE MACHINE if cable or wires are loose, kinked, etc.
  - Never attempt to modify electric wirings.

Clean up Flammable Materials:

- Spilled fuel and oil, trash, grease, debris, accumulated dust (such as coal, wood, paper), and other flammable materials may cause fires.
  - Prevent fires by inspecting and cleaning the machine daily, in particular clean high temperature parts such as the exhaust outlet and muffler.
  - Do not wrap high temperature parts such as a muffler or exhaust pipe with oil absorbents.
  - Do not store oily cloths on the machine as they are vulnerable to catching fire.
  - Keep flammable materials away from sparks, hot surfaces, exhaust gases or open flames.
  - Wire screens may be provided for openings in the engine compartment covers to prevent larger flammable materials such as dead leaves from entering. However, small flammable materials which can pass through the wire screen may cause fires. Check and clean the machine every day and immediately remove accumulated flammable materials.

Check Key Switch:

- If a fire breaks out, failure to stop the engine will escalate the fire, hampering fire fighting.
  - Always check key switch function before operating the machine every day:
    1. Start the engine and run it at slow idle.
    2. Turn the key switch to the OFF position to confirm that the engine stops.
  - If any abnormalities are found, be sure to repair them before operating the machine.

Check Heat Shields:

- Damaged or missing heat shields may cause fires.
  - Damaged or missing heat shields must be repaired or replaced before operating the machine.
  - If hydraulic hoses break while the engine cover is open, splattered oil on the high temperature parts such as muffler may cause fire. Always keep the engine cover closed while operating the machine.

Evacuating in Case of Fire

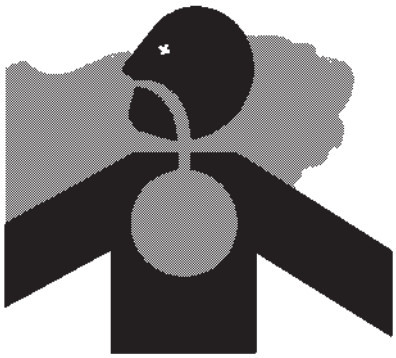
- In case of fire, evacuate the machine in the following way:
  - Stop the engine by turning the key switch to the OFF position if there is time.
  - Leave the machine
  - Use a fire extinguisher if there is time.
- In an emergency, if the cab door or front window can not be opened, break the front or rear window pane with the emergency evacuation hammer to escape from the cab. Read the explanation pages on the Emergency Evacuation Method for details.

SA-393 ja

SS-1510 ja

Beware of Exhaust Fumes

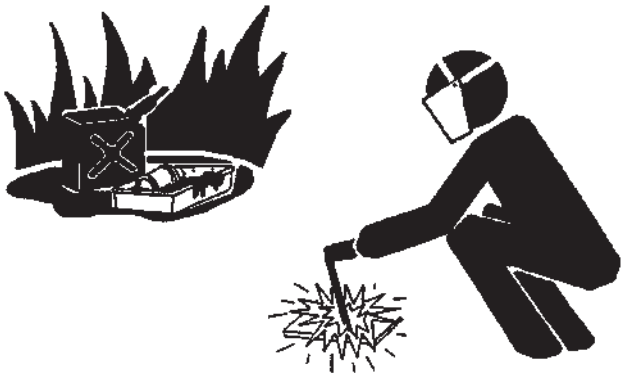
- Prevent asphyxiation. Engine exhaust fumes can cause sickness or death.
  - If you must operate the machine in a building, be sure there is adequate ventilation.
  - White smoke may be generated during the aftertreatment device regeneration. Do not perform aftertreatment device manual regeneration indoor.



SA-016 ja

Precautions for Welding and Grinding

- Welding may generate gas and/or small fires.
  - Be sure to perform welding in a well ventilated and prepared area. Store flammable materials in a safe place before starting welding.
  - Only qualified personnel should perform welding. Never allow an unqualified person to perform welding.
  - Turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position before performing welding on the machine.
- Grinding on the machine may create fire hazards. Store flammable materials in a safe place before starting grinding.



SA-818 ja

- After finishing welding and grinding, recheck that there are no abnormalities such as the area surrounding the welded area still smoldering.

Avoid Heating Near Pressurized Fluid Lines

- Flammable spray can be generated by heating near pressurized fluid lines, resulting in severe burns to yourself and bystanders.
  - Do not heat by welding, soldering, or using a torch near pressurized fluid lines or other flammable materials.
  - Pressurized lines can be accidentally cut when heat goes beyond the immediate flame area. Install temporary fire-resistant guards to protect hoses or other materials before engaging in welding, soldering, etc.

SA-030 ja

Avoid Applying Heat to Lines Containing Flammable Fluids

- Do not weld or cut pipes or tubes that contain flammable fluids.
- Clean pipes and tubes thoroughly with non-flammable solvent before welding or cutting.

Precautions for Handling Accumulator and Gas Damper

High-pressure nitrogen gas is sealed in the accumulator and the gas damper. Inappropriate handling may cause explosion, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.

Strictly comply with the following items:

- Do not disassemble the unit.
- Keep the units away from open flames and fire.
- Do not bore a hole or cut the unit.
- Avoid giving shocks to the unit.
- Respect the environment when disposing the unit. Consult Authorized Dealer.

Remove Paint Before Welding or Heating

- Hazardous fumes can be generated when paint is heated by welding, soldering or using a torch. If inhaled, these fumes may cause sickness.
  - Avoid potentially toxic fumes and dust.
  - Work outside in a well-ventilated area. Dispose of paint and solvent properly.
  - Remove paint before welding or heating:
    1. If you sand or grind paint, avoid breathing the dust.
       Wear an approved respirator.
    2. If you use solvent or paint stripper, remove stripper with soap and water before welding. Remove solvent or paint stripper containers and other flammable materials from area. Allow fumes to disperse at least 15 minutes before welding or heating.

SA-029 ja

Beware of Asbestos and Silica Dust and Other Contamination

- Take care not to inhale dust produced in the work site. Keep cab door and windows closed and install additional filtration systems if necessary.
  - Depending on the work site conditions, the risk of inhaling asbestos fiber, silica dust or other contaminations may exist.
  - Keep bystanders out of the work site during operation.

SA-029 ja

Prevent Battery Explosions

- Battery gas can explode.
  - Keep sparks, and flames away from the top of battery.
  - Never check battery charge by placing a metal object across the posts. Use a voltmeter or hydrometer.
  - Do not charge a frozen battery; it may explode. Gently warm the battery to 16 ˚C (60 ˚F) first.
  - Do not continue to use or charge the battery when electrolyte level is lower than specified. Explosion of the battery may result.
  - Loose terminals may produce sparks. Securely tighten all terminals.
  - Connect terminals to the correct electrical poles. Failure to do so may cause damage to the electrical parts or fire.

SA-032 ja

- Battery electrolyte is poisonous. If the battery should explode, battery electrolyte may be splashed into eyes, possibly resulting in blindness.
  - Be sure to wear eye protection when checking electrolyte specific gravity.

Service Air Conditioning System Safely

- If air conditioner refrigerant contacts your eyes or skin, it could potentially cause blindness or frostbite.
  - Refer to the instructions described on the container for proper use when handling the refrigerant.
  - Use a recovery and recycling system to avoid leaking refrigerant into the atmosphere.
  - Never touch the refrigerant.

SA-405 ja

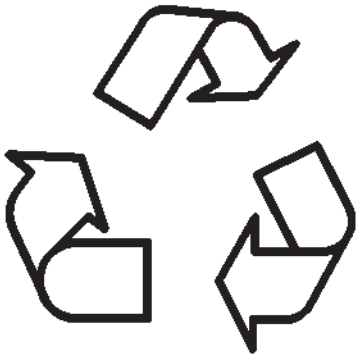
Handle Chemical Products Safely

- Direct exposure to hazardous chemicals can cause serious injury. Potentially hazardous chemicals used with your machine include such items as lubricants, coolants, paints, and adhesives.
  - Safety Data Sheet (SDS) provides specific details on chemical products: physical and health hazards, safety procedures, and emergency response techniques.
  - Check the SDS before you start any job using a hazardous chemical. That way you will know exactly what the risks are and how to do the job safely. Then follow procedures and use recommended equipment.
  - See Authorized Dealer for SDS's (available only in English) on chemical products used with your machine.

SA-2579 ja

Dispose of Waste Properly

- Improperly disposing of waste can threaten the environment and ecology. Potentially harmful waste used with Hitachi Construction Machinery equipment includes such items as oil, fuel, coolant, DEF/AdBlue®, brake fluid, filters, and batteries.
  - When draining waste liquid from the machine, catch it in a container large enough to hold all of the waste liquid.
  - Do not pour waste onto the ground, down a drain, or into any water source.
  - Inquire with your local environmental or recycling center or Authorized Dealer, for the proper way to recycle or dispose of oil, fuel, coolant, DEF, brake fluid, solvent, filters, batteries, and other waste.



SA-226 ja

Never Ride Attachment

Never allow anyone to ride on attachments or the load. This is an extremely dangerous practice.

Notes on Aftertreatment Device

The aftertreatment device removes particulate matter (PM) and NOx (Nitrogen Oxide) from the exhaust gas. Do not make any modifications affecting the functionality of the aftertreatment device. In case of damage to the aftertreatment device, have its functionality checked by Authorized Dealer.

Exhaust gas from the aftertreatment device, muffler, exhaust piping and tail piping becomes hot during and right after engine running and regeneration of aftertreatment device. Keep away from the exhaust system or hot gas from the exhaust piping during regeneration. Be careful to avoid skin contact with exhaust gas or hot sufaces. It may cause severe burns.

- White smoke may be generated during aftertreatment device regeneration. Do not attempt to perform aftertreatment device manual regeneration in a badly ventilated area.
- Do not touch water coming directly out of the aftertreatment device. The water is mildly-acidic by oxidation catalyst mounted in the aftertreatment device. If filter water spills on your skin, immediately flush with clean water.

Precautions for Communication Terminal

- Non-compliant radio communication equipment and associated parts, and/or improper installation of radio communication equipment may affect and disturb the machine's electronic parts, potentially causing involuntary movement of the machine.
- Improper installation of electrical equipment may cause machine failure and/or a fire on the machine.
- Be sure to consult Authorized Dealer when installing radio communication equipment or additional electrical parts, or when replacing electrical parts.

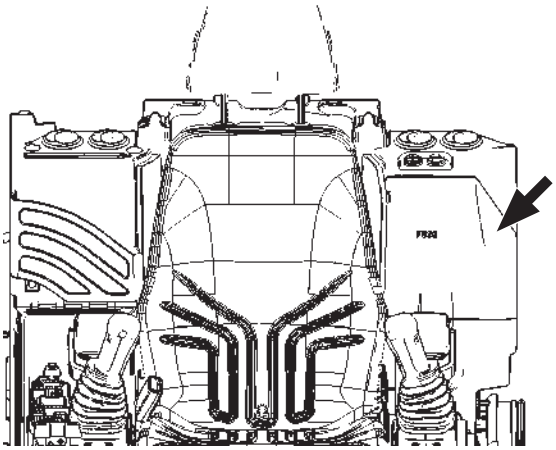
Never attempt to disassemble or modify the electrical/electronic components. If replacement or modification of such components is required, contact Authorized Dealer.

Precautions for Communication Terminal Equipment

This machine is installed with a communication terminal emitting radio waves behind the operator's seat. There is a possibility that a medical device, including an implantable device such as a cardiac pacemaker, could be affected and malfunction due to the electrical waves emitted from the communication terminal.

For those who uses medical devices as above should adjust the operator's seat position to keep the distance between medical device and the communication terminal are at least 15 centimeters (6 inches) at all times.

If this condition cannot be met, please contact Authorized Dealer and have the person in charge stop the communication terminal from functioning completely and confirm that no radio waves are emitted before operating the machine.



SA-2792-1 ja

The effect of radio waves from communication terminal on the human body can be evaluated by measuring Specific Absorption Rate ("SAR"), which is a measure of the amount of radio frequency energy absorbed by the body when using a wireless application such as a mobile phone.

All communication terminal installed in this machine comply with technical standards and international guidelines regarding the absorption of radio waves by the human body.

There are two SAR measurement method and the safety standards, 2.0 W/kg (4.4 W/lb) (measured by 10 g (0.35 oz) per unit) and 1.6 W/kg (3.5 W/lb) (measured by 1 g (0.04 oz) per unit), either one is adopted depending on the country.

This machine is equipped with a communication terminal model HPRO-100, HPRO-4G, HPRO-4G V2, or QConnect. Consult Authorized Dealer for the model of communication terminal.

Specific Absorption Rate ("SAR") of communication terminal.

The values in ( ) are based on Taiwanese regulations.

	HPRO-100	HPRO-4G *	HPRO-4G V2	QConnect *
1.6 W/kg (3.5 W/lb) (1 g (0.04 oz)/unit)	0.51 W/kg (1.12 W/lb)	0.91 W/kg (2.0 W/lb)	0.74 W/kg (1.63 W/lb)	-
2.0 W/kg (4.4 W/lb) (10 g (0.35 oz)/unit)	0.12 W/kg (0.26 W/lb)	0.50 W/kg (1.1 W/lb)	0.44 W/kg (0.97 W/lb)	-
		(0.31 W/kg (0.68 W/lb))		(0.25 W/kg (0.55 W/lb))

This data was measured by having each type of communication terminal used with this machine, and a human body set apart by 3 centimeters (1.18 inches).

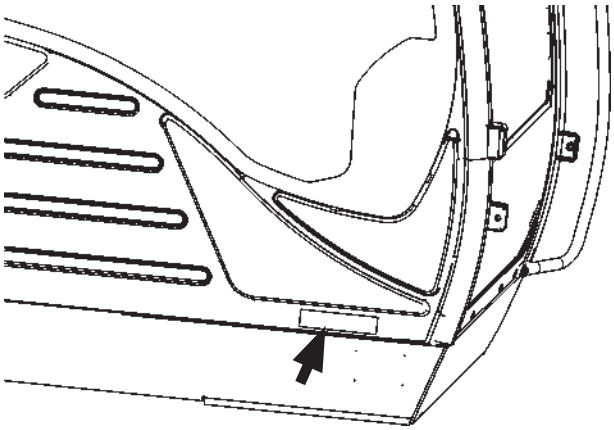
* Precautions in Taiwan:

Under the Taiwanese regulations, the maximum SAR value is set as the standard value 2 W/kg (4.4 W/lb). The actual measurement value is 0.25 W/kg (0.55 W/lb) using QConnect, and 0.31 W/kg (0.68 W/lb) using HPRO-4G.

- Do not attempt to disassemble, repair, modification and displacement of the communication terminal, antenna and cables. Failure to do so may cause damage or fire on the machine and the communication terminal. (Before removing or installing the communication terminal, consult Authorized Dealer.)
- Do not pinch or forcibly pull cables, cords and connectors. Failure to do so may cause damage or fire on the machine and the communication terminal due to short/broken circuit.

Notes on Protection by Operator's Station when the Machine Rolls Over

The cab incorporates a structure to protect the operator by absorbing impact energy when the machine rolls over (Roll-Over Protective Structure (ROPS)). However, when modifying the machine or installing a special attachment causing the machine mass to exceed the maximum operating mass indicated on the ROPS certification label, the cab cannot fulfill its protective function, possibly causing serious injury or death.



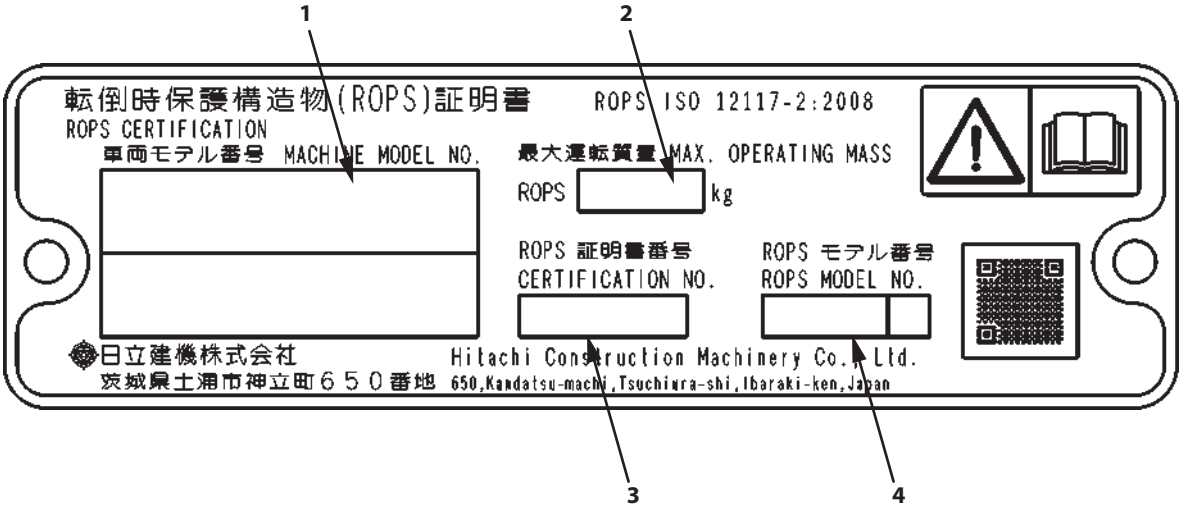
SS-3636-1 ja

In order to safeguard the protective structure, follow the instructions below.

- Consult Authorized Dealer before welding parts or drilling a hole on the cab. Modifications to the structure which possibly reduce the cab strength are not allowed.
- Be sure to always fasten the seat belt when operating the machine. If the machine rolls over without operator having fastening the seat belt, the operator may be thrown out of the cab and/or may become crushed under the machine.

The ROPS certification is valid under the following conditions.

- The actual machine mass is lower than the maximum operating mass described in the ROPS certification.
- The ROPS is properly installed.
- No modification is made to the ROPS.
- The ROPS is free from damage.



SS-3944-1 ja

1	Applicable Machine Model Number	2	Maximum operating mass assuring the ROPS	3	Certificate number of the ROPS	4	ROPS Model Number

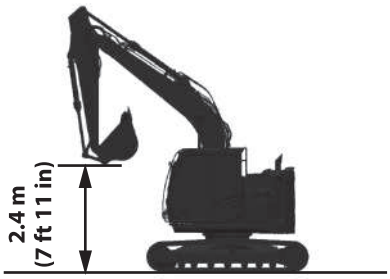
Visibility Map for Machine Model ZX135US-7H with Monoblock Boom Personal Hazard

This machine complies with the essential health and safety requirements for visibility set out by Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC. The map shows the residual maskings (blind spots) observed by a seated operator (wearing the recommended seat restraint) in the cab using direct vision and the standard visual aids supplied with the machine. Additionally, operators are encouraged to adjust the mirrors provided to the machine to show the area as shown below.

This map shows an approximation of the residual masking. This can be used as a guide when conducting a site risk assessment, utilized for site management and to consider additional visual aids.

Conditions: Driver's visibility on 1mRB and VTC are evaluated under ISO 5006.

Test Height (on 1m (3 ft 3 in) RB):	1.2 m (3 ft 11 in) to 1.5 m (4 ft 11 in)
(1m (3 ft 3 in) RB to VTC/on VTC):	Ground Level
Operator eye Height::	1.2 m (3 ft 11 in) from the cab floor
Machine Configuration:	Monoblock Boom
Machine Position:	Travel Position (For the detail position, see the image below)
Applicable visual aids:	1. standard mirror (s) 2. standard camera (s)



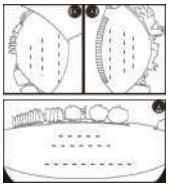
Machine Position Image

MDA4-VM-001-2 ja

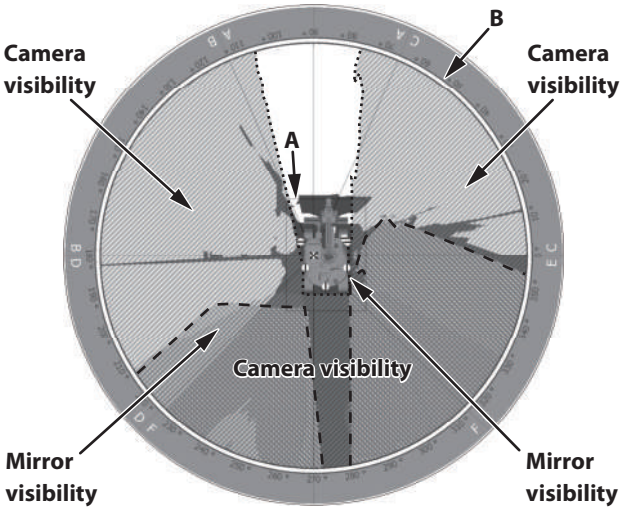
⊗ : Operator's eye point
A : 1 m (3 ft 3 in) Rectangular Boundary (1mRB)
B : 12 m (39 ft 4 in) Visibility Test Circle (VTC)
⊖ : Standard Mirror (s)
⦶ : Standard camera (s)

: Masking area
: Mirror visibility
: Camera visibility

Monitor display
Surrounding Image

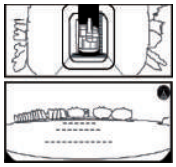


Monitor display
Image to Left Side + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear

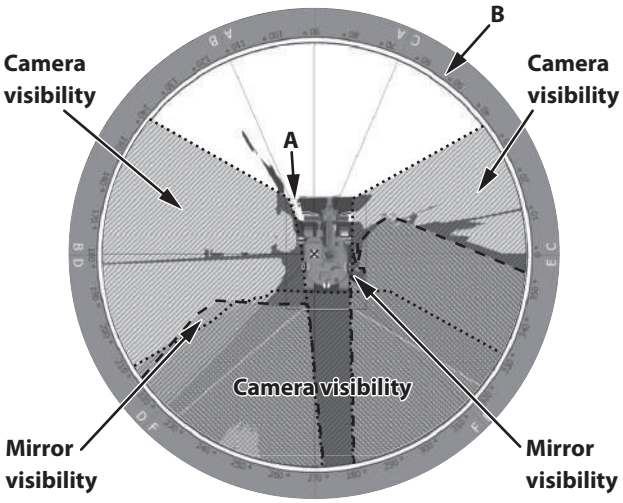


Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image" "Image to Left Side + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear"

MDHE-VM-007-1 en_GB

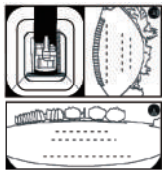


Monitor display
Surrounding Image + Image to Rear

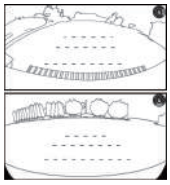


Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image + Image to Rear"

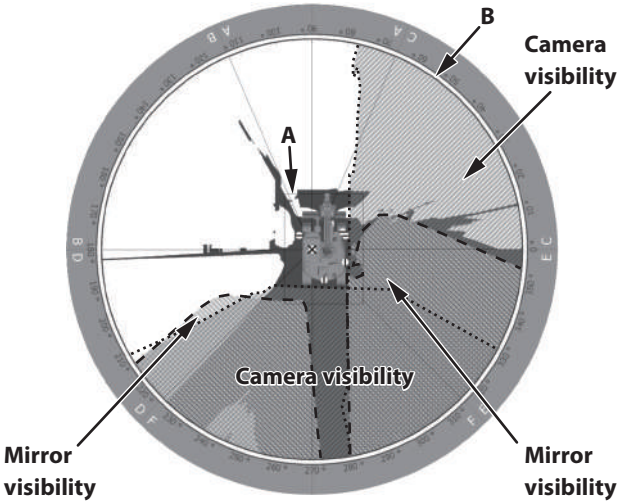
MDHE-VM-008-1 en_GB



Monitor display
Surrounding Image + Image to Right Side
+ Image to Rear



Monitor display
Image to Right Side + Image to Rear



Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear"
"Image to Right Side + Image to Rear"

MDHE-VM-009-1 en_GB

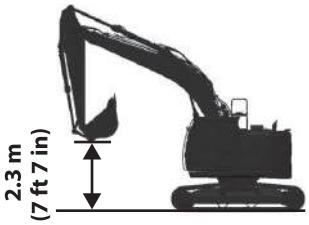
Visibility Map for Machine Model ZX245USLC-7H with Monoblock Boom Personal Hazard

This machine complies with the essential health and safety requirements for visibility set out by Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC. The map shows the residual maskings (blind spots) observed by a seated operator (wearing the recommended seat restraint) in the cab using direct vision and the standard visual aids supplied with the machine. Additionally, operators are encouraged to adjust the mirrors provided to the machine to show the area as shown below.

This map shows an approximation of the residual masking. This can be used as a guide when conducting a site risk assessment, utilized for site management and to consider additional visual aids.

Conditions: Driver's visibility on 1mRB and VTC are evaluated under ISO 5006.

Test Height (on 1m (3 ft 3 in) RB):	1.2 m (3 ft 11 in) to 1.5 m (4 ft 11 in)
(1m (3 ft 3 in) RB to VTC/on VTC):	Ground Level
Operator eye Height:	1.2 m (3 ft 11 in) from the cab floor
Machine Configuration:	Monoblock Boom
Machine Position:	Travel Position (For the detail position, see the image below)
Applicable visual aids:	1. standard mirror (s) 2. standard camera (s)



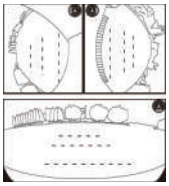
Machine Position Image

MDA4-VM-009-2 ja

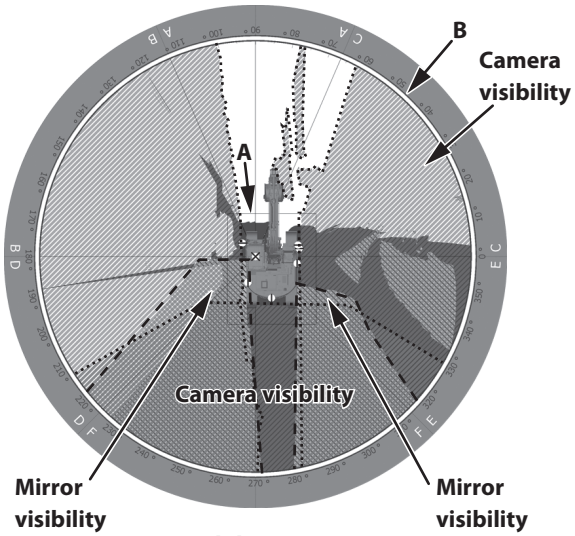
⊗ : Operator's eye point
A : 1 m (3 ft 3 in) Rectangular Boundary (1mRB)
B : 12 m (39 ft 4 in) Visibility Test Circle (VTC)
⊖ : Standard Mirror (s)
⦶ : Standard camera (s)

: Masking area
: Mirror visibility
: Camera visibility

Monitor display
Surrounding Image

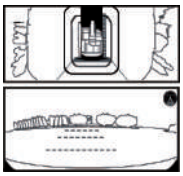


Monitor display
Image to Left Side + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear

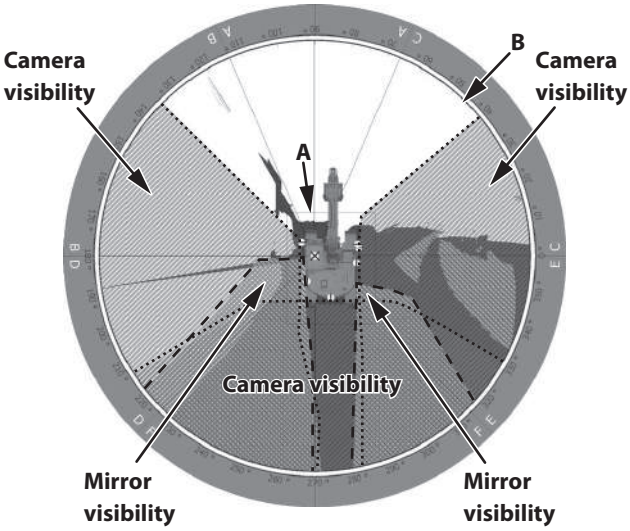


Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image" "Image to Left Side + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear"

MDA4-VM-010-1 en_GB

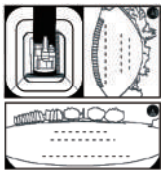


Monitor display
Surrounding Image + Image to Rear

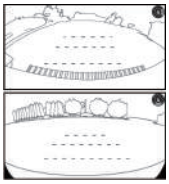


Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image + Image to Rear"

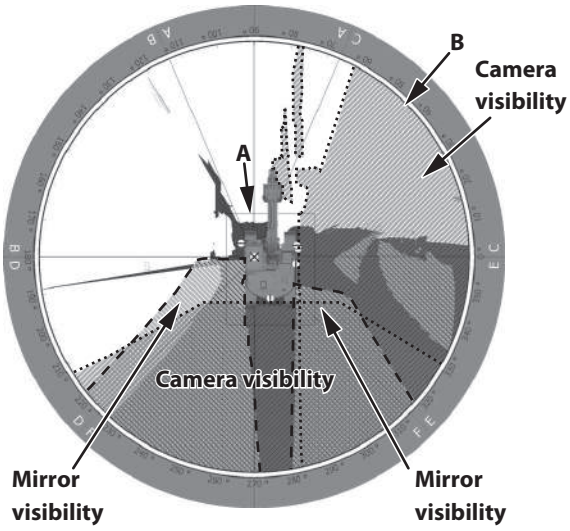
MDA4-VM-011-1 en_GB



Monitor display
Surrounding Image + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear



Monitor display
Image to Right Side + Image to Rear



Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear"
"Image to Right Side + Image to Rear"

MDA4-VM-012-1 en_GB

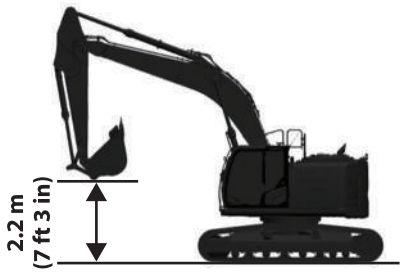
Visibility Map for Machine Model ZX345USLC-7H with Monoblock Boom Personal Hazard

This machine complies with the essential health and safety requirements for visibility set out by Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC. The map shows the residual maskings (blind spots) observed by a seated operator (wearing the recommended seat restraint) in the cab using direct vision and the standard visual aids supplied with the machine. Additionally, operators are encouraged to adjust the mirrors provided to the machine to show the area as shown below.

This map shows an approximation of the residual masking. This can be used as a guide when conducting a site risk assessment, utilized for site management and to consider additional visual aids.

Conditions: Driver's visibility on 1mRB and VTC are evaluated under ISO 5006.

Test Height (on 1m (3 ft 3 in) RB):	1.2 m (3 ft 11 in) to 1.5 m (4 ft 11 in)
(1m (3 ft 3 in) RB to VTC/on VTC):	Ground Level
Operator eye Height::	1.2 m (3 ft 11 in) from the cab floor
Machine Configuration:	Monoblock Boom
Machine Position:	Travel Position (For the detail position, see the image below)
Applicable visual aids:	1. standard mirror (s) 2. standard camera (s)



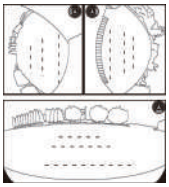
Machine Position Image

MDHE-VM-010-1 ja

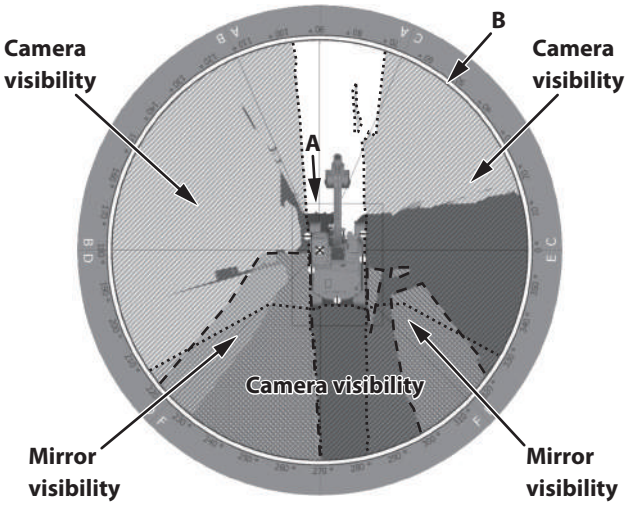
⊗ : Operator's eye point
A : 1 m (3 ft 3 in) Rectangular Boundary (1mRB)
B : 12 m (39 ft 4 in) Visibility Test Circle (VTC)
⊖ : Standard Mirror (s)
⦶ : Standard camera (s)

: Masking area
: Mirror visibility
: Camera visibility

Monitor display
Surrounding Image

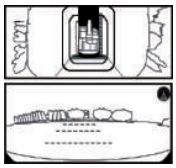


Monitor display
Image to Left Side + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear

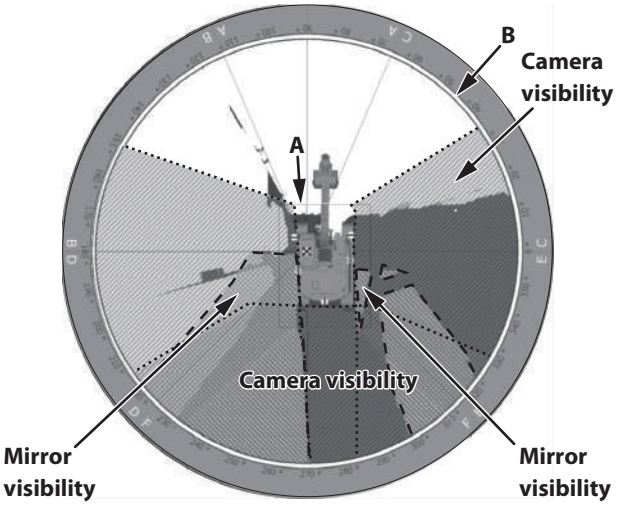


Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image" "Image to Left Side + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear"

MDHE-VM-011-1 en_GB

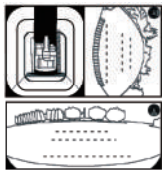


Monitor display
Surrounding Image + Image to Rear

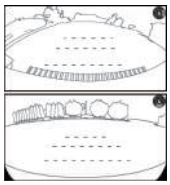


Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image + Image to Rear"

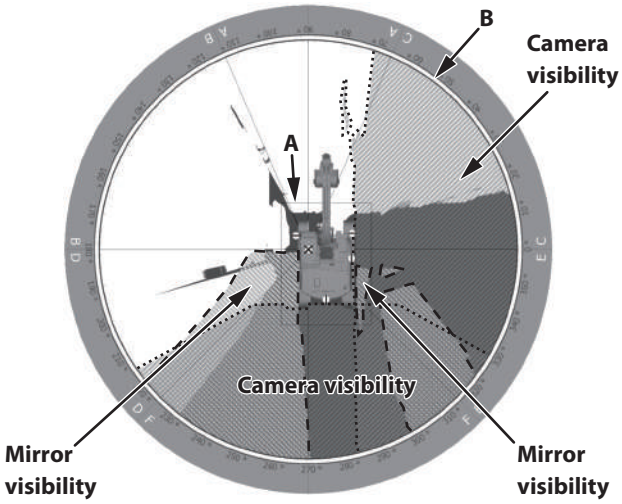
MDHE-VM-014-1 en_GB



Monitor display
Surrounding Image + Image to Right Side
+ Image to Rear



Monitor display
Image to Right Side + Image to Rear



Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear"
"Image to Right Side + Image to Rear"

MDHE-VM-013-1 en_GB

Aerial Angle (Surround View) Visibility Map for ZX135US-7H

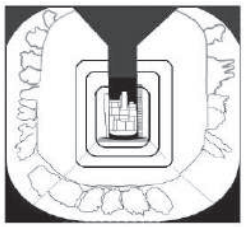
This map shows the area where a person 1.6 m (5 ft 3 in) tall is displayed on the monitor screen in a recognizable size, minimal 7.0 mm (0.3 in) according to ISO 16001. This map can be used as a guide when conducting a site risk assessment.

Note: local circumstances, contrast between colours, light intensity etc. may affect Visibility performance.

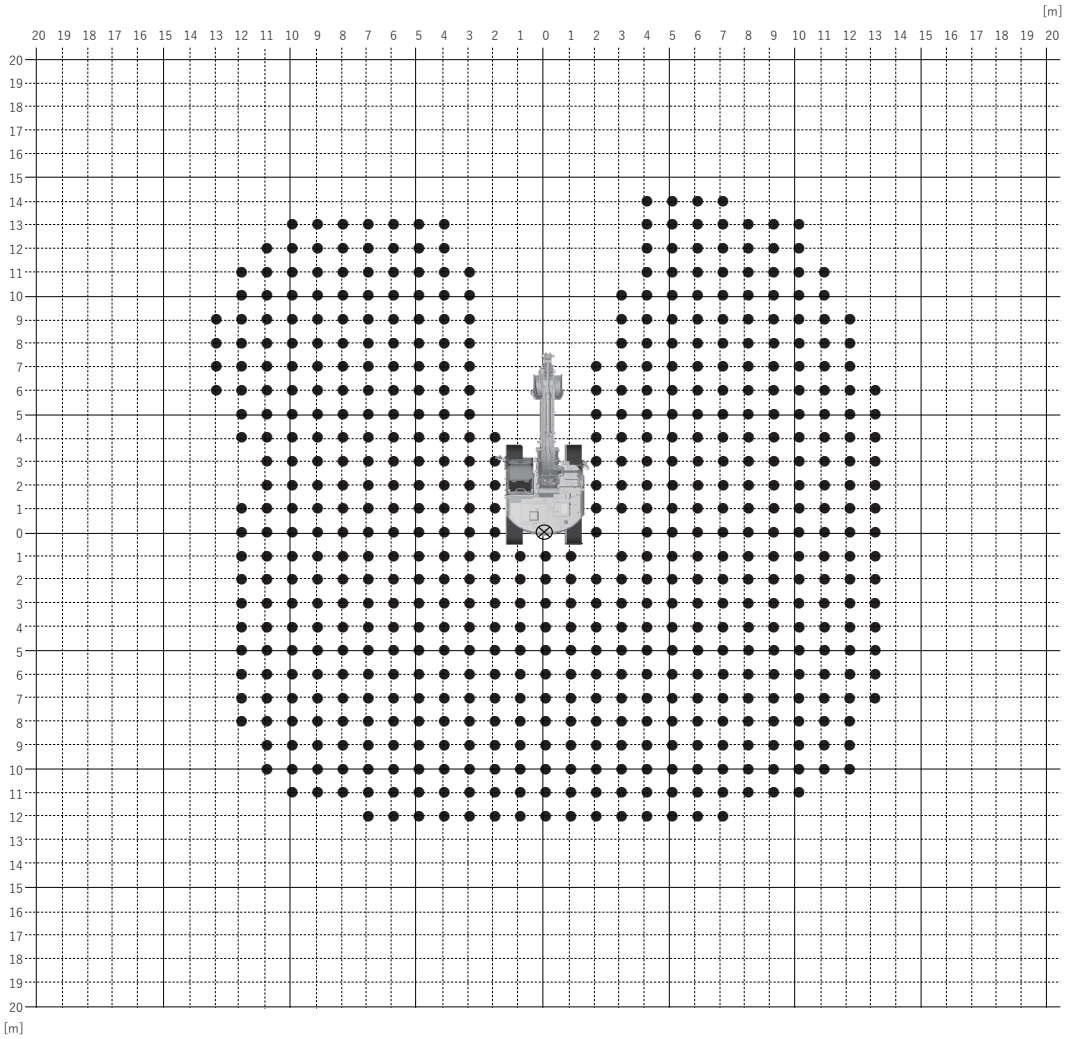
Area where a person is recognizably displayed on the monitor

⊗ : measurement center point

● : location where 1.6 m (5 ft 3 in) person shown as minimal 7 mm (0.3 in) on the monitor

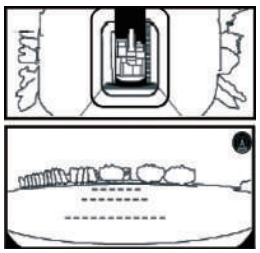


Monitor display

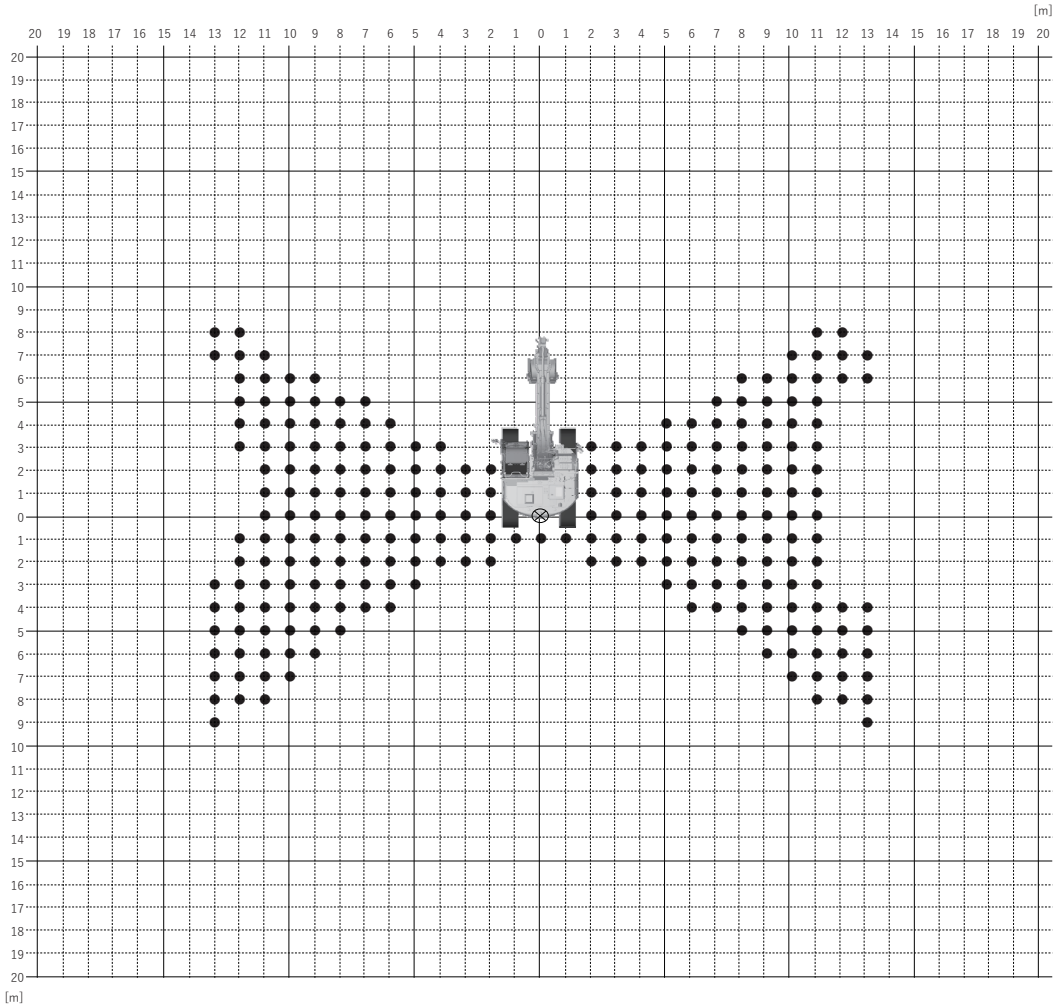


Aerial Angle Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image"

MDHE-VM-001 en_GB

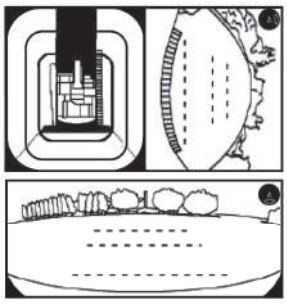


Monitor display

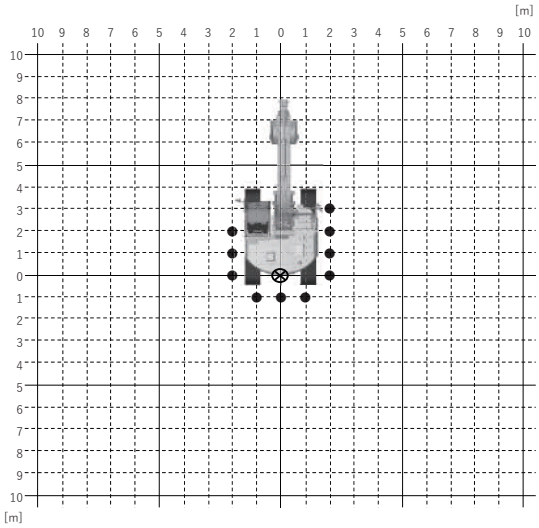


Aerial Angle Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image + Image to Rear"

MDHE-VM-002 en_GB



Monitor display



Aerial Angle Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear"

MDHE-VM-003 en_GB

Aerial Angle (Surround View) Visibility Map for ZX245USLC-7H

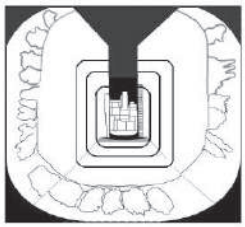
This map shows the area where a person 1.6 m (5 ft 3 in) tall is displayed on the monitor screen in a recognizable size, minimal 7.0 mm (0.3 in) according to ISO 16001. This map can be used as a guide when conducting a site risk assessment.

Note: local circumstances, contrast between colours, light intensity etc. may affect Visibility performance.

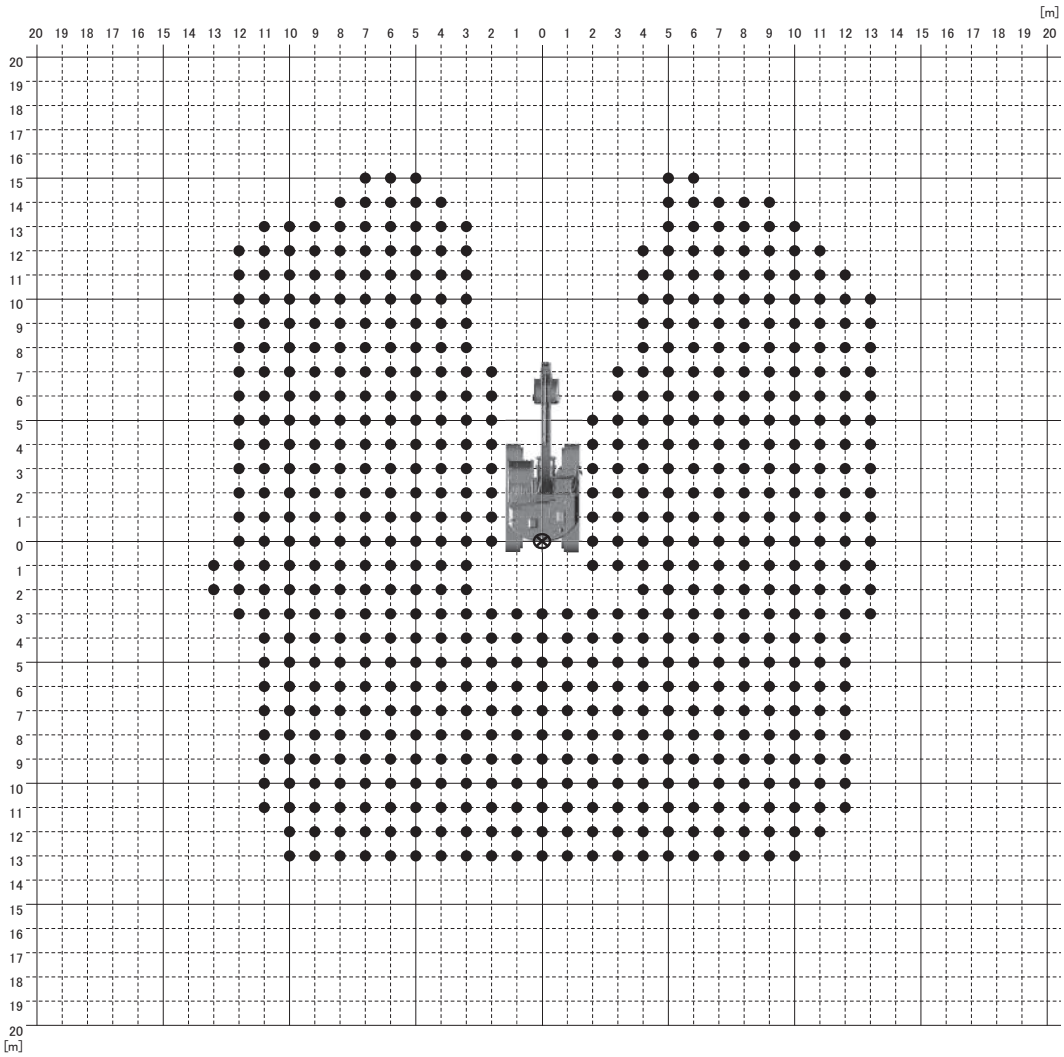
Area where a person is recognizably displayed on the monitor

⊗ : measurement center point

● : location where 1.6 m (5 ft 3 in) person shown as minimal 7 mm (0.3 in) on the monitor

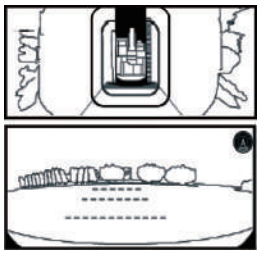


Monitor display

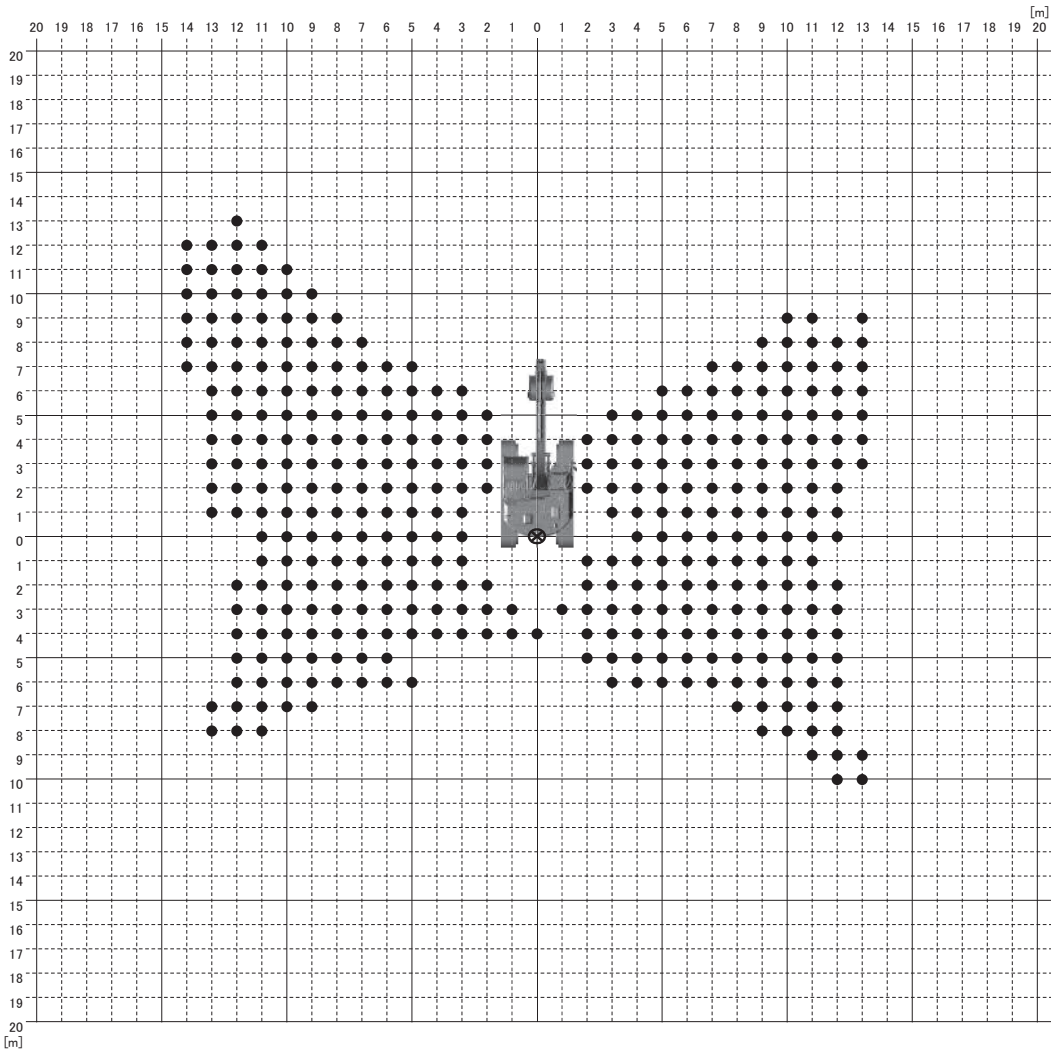


Aerial Angle Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image"

MDA4-VM-028 en_GB

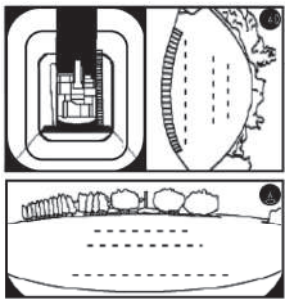


Monitor display

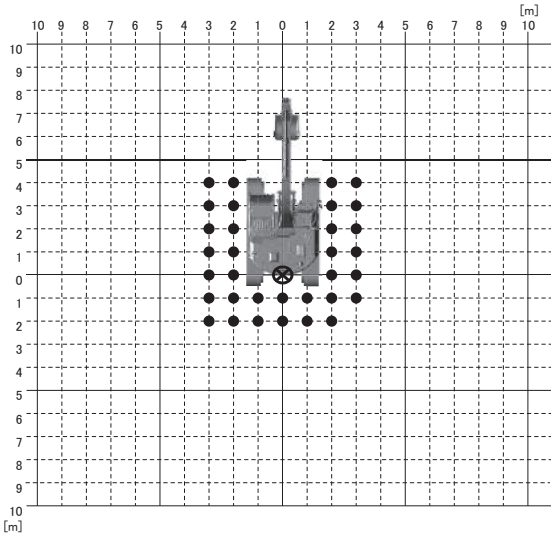


Aerial Angle Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image + Image to Rear"

MDA4-VM-029 en_GB



Monitor display



Aerial Angle Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear"

MDA4-VM-030 en_GB

Aerial Angle (Surround View) Visibility Map for ZX345USLC-7H

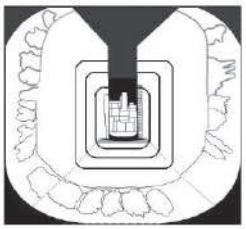
This map shows the area where a person 1.6 m (5 ft 3 in) tall is displayed on the monitor screen in a recognizable size, minimal 7.0 mm (0.3 in) according to ISO 16001. This map can be used as a guide when conducting a site risk assessment.

Note: local circumstances, contrast between colours, light intensity etc. may affect Visibility performance.

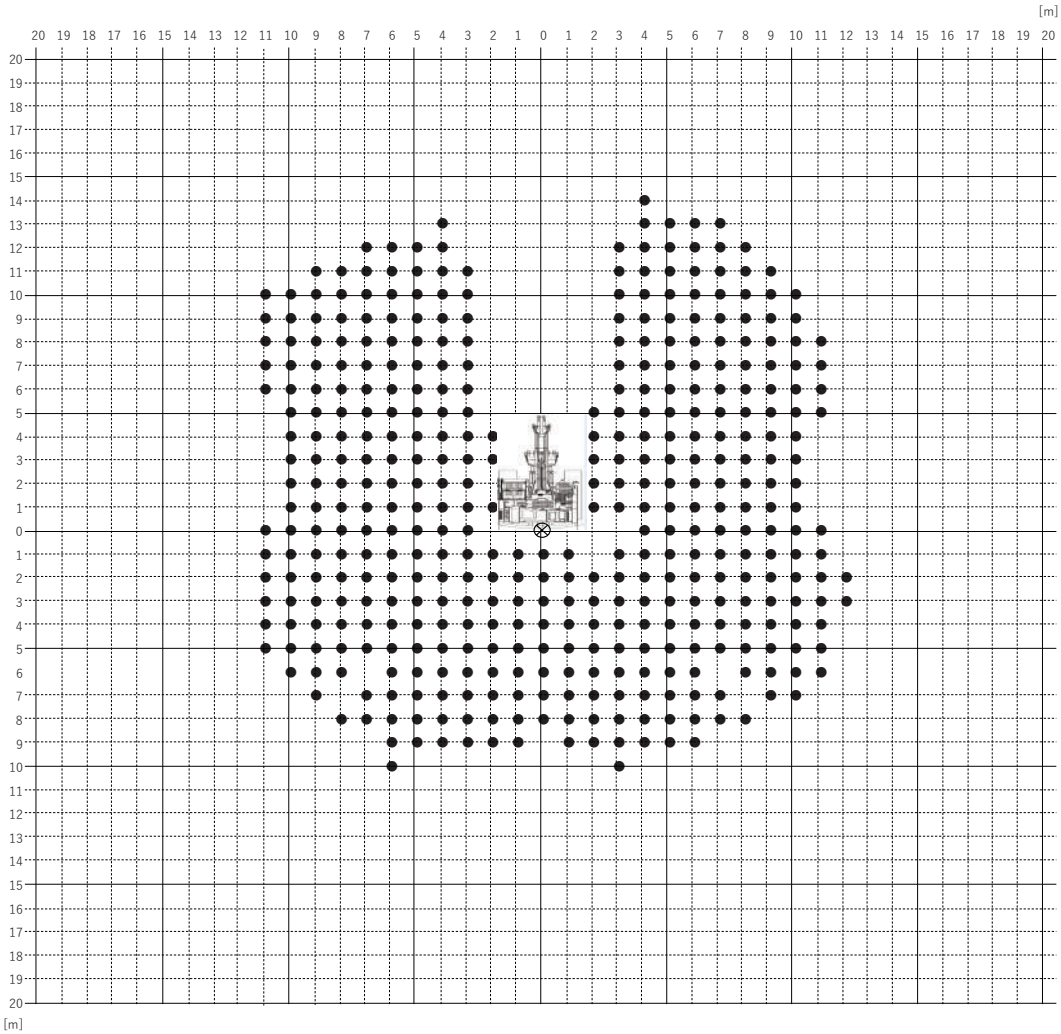
Area where a person is recognizably displayed on the monitor

⊗ : measurement center point

● : location where 1.6 m (5 ft 3 in) person shown as minimal 7 mm (0.3 in) on the monitor

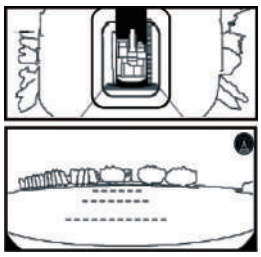


Monitor display

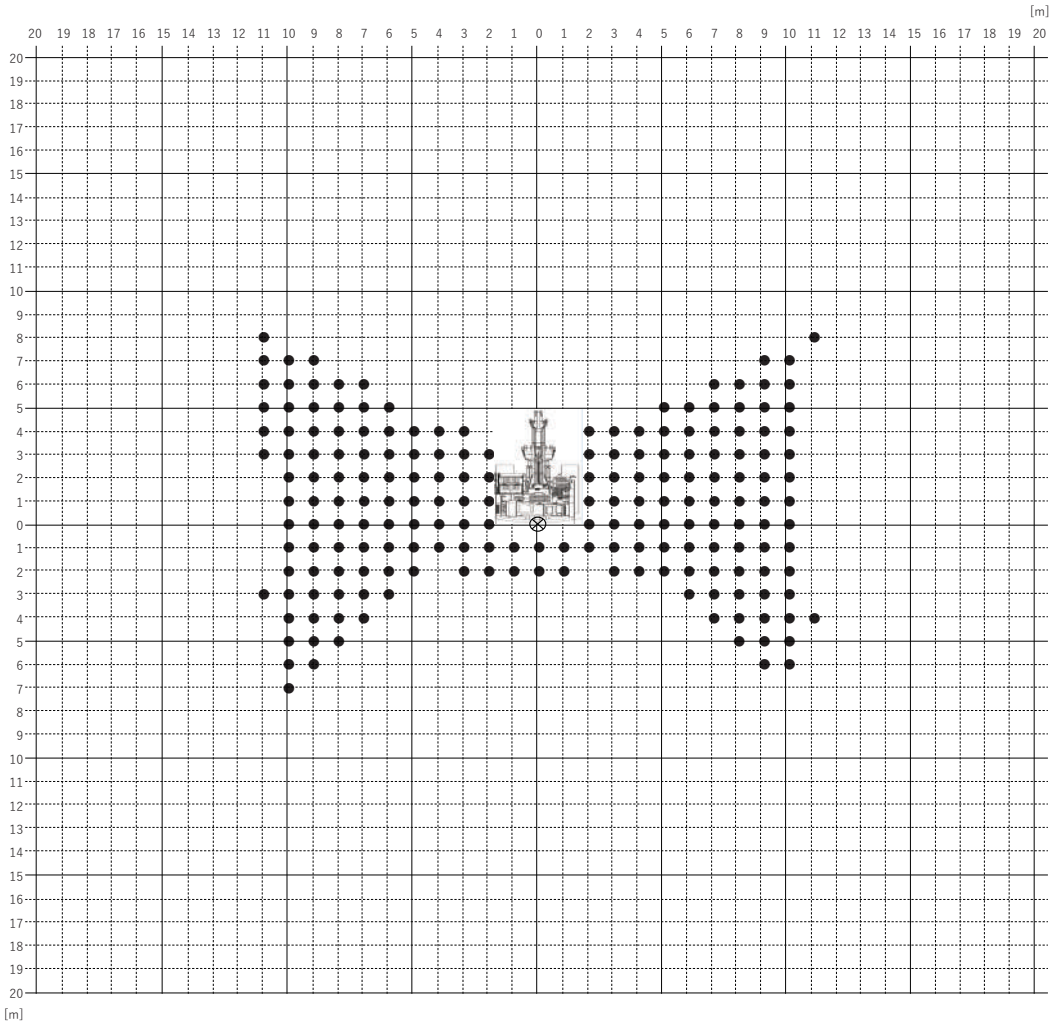


Aerial Angle Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image"

MDHE-VM-004 en_GB

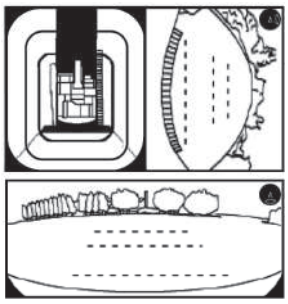


Monitor display

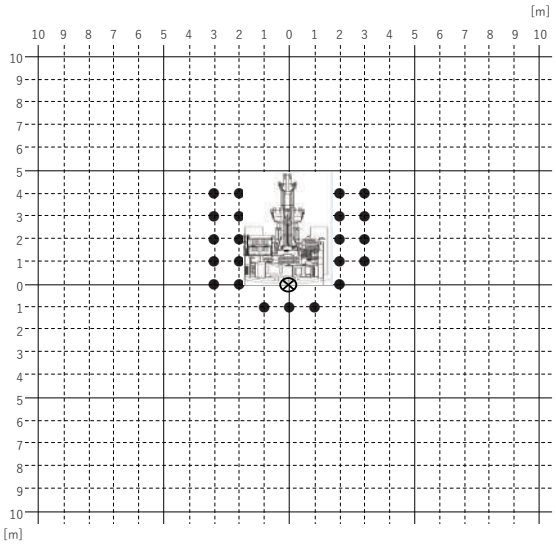


Aerial Angle Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image + Image to Rear"

MDHE-VM-005 en_GB



Monitor display



Aerial Angle Visibility Map
"Surrounding Image + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear"

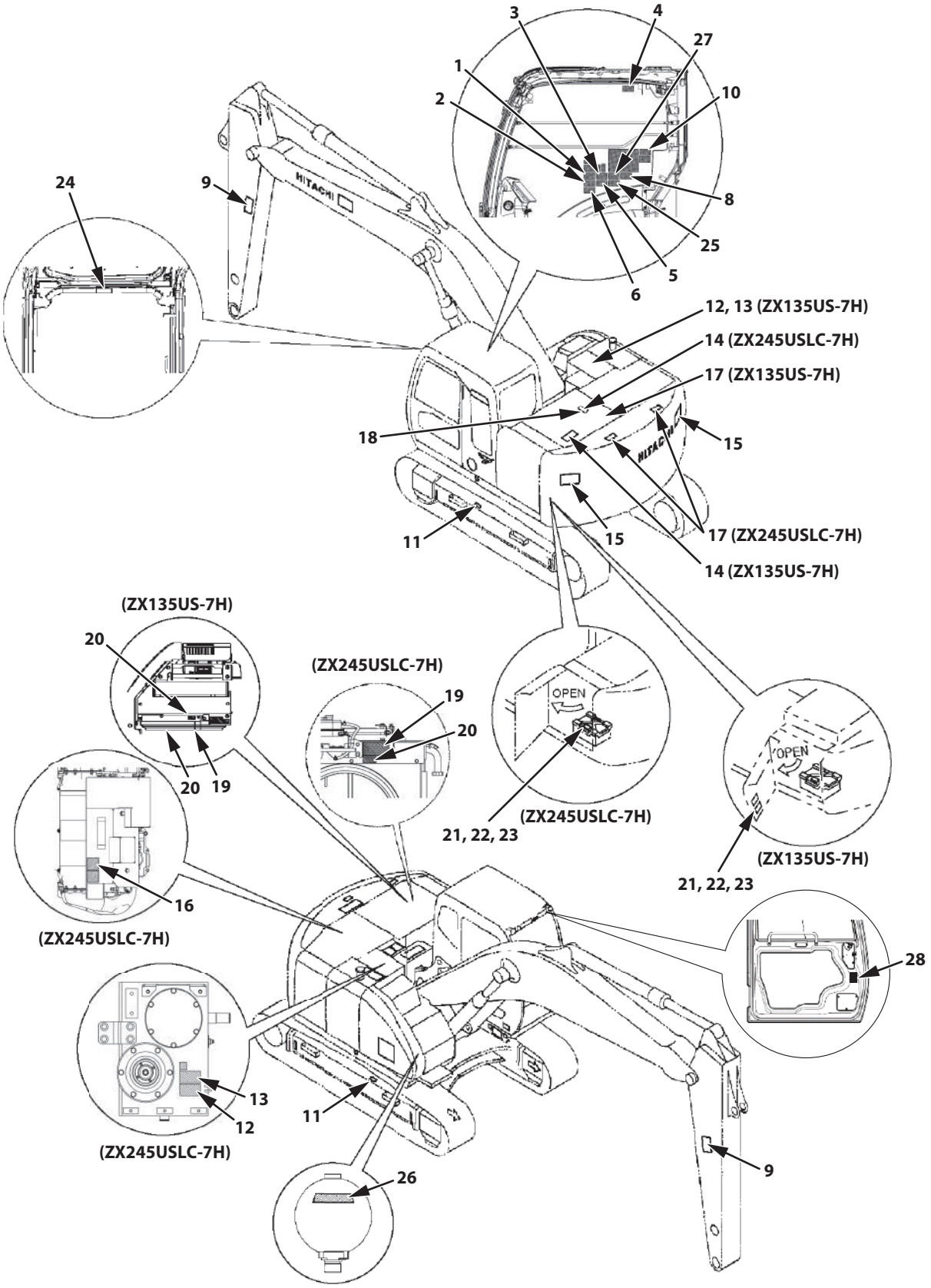
MDHE-VM-006 en_GB

Safety Signs

All safety signs and their locations affixed on the machine are illustrated in this section. Verify the contents described in the safety signs through reading the actual ones affixed on the machine to ensure safe operation.

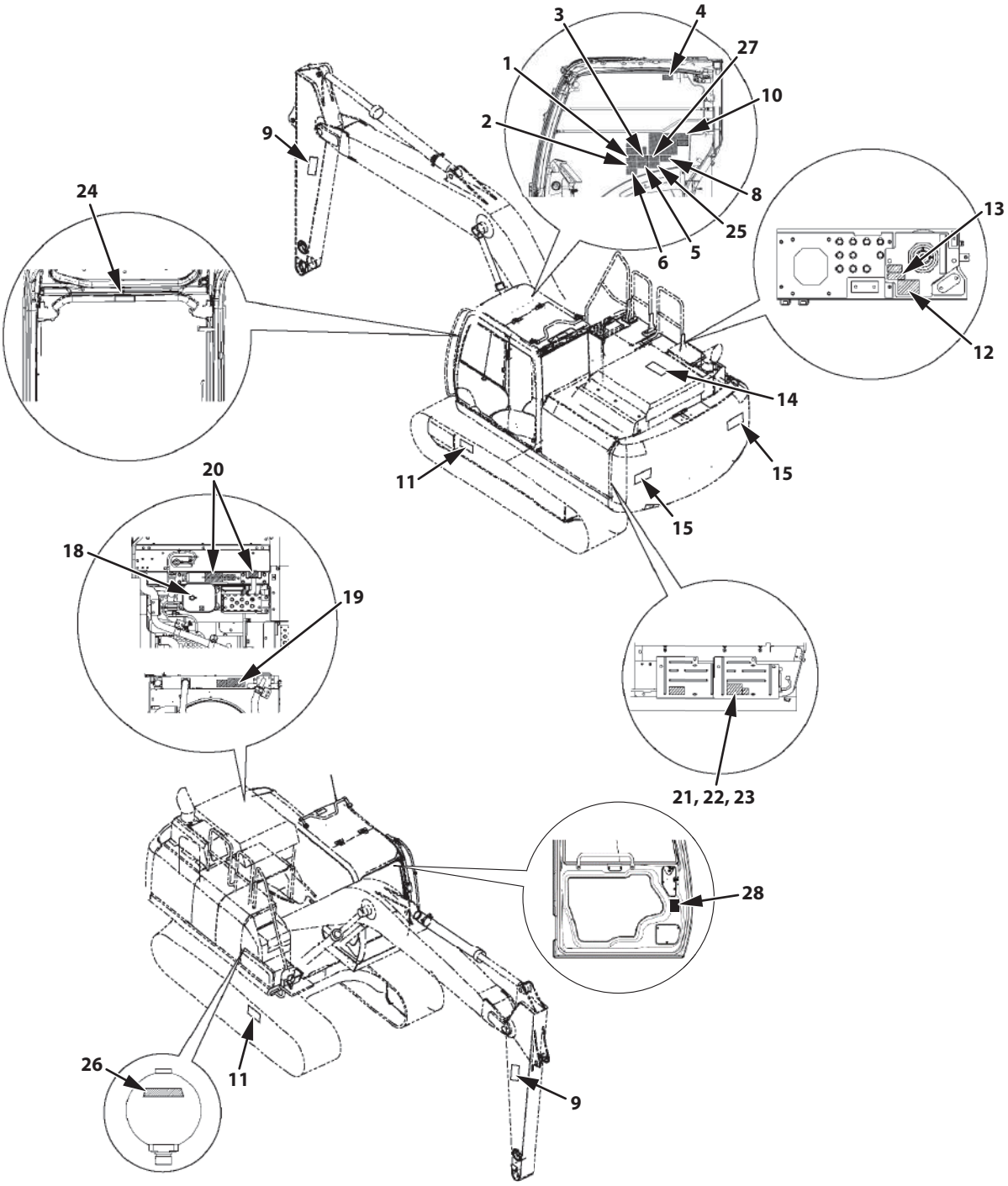
Always keep the safety signs clean. If the safety signs have become damaged or lost, promptly order and affix replacements. When reordering use the part No. indicated under the right corner of each safety sign illustration.

ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H



SS-4423-1 ja

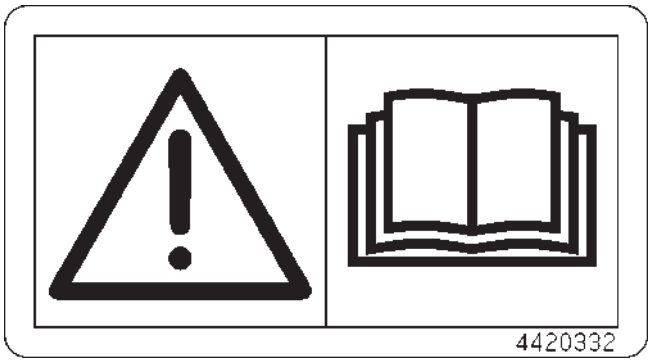
ZX345USLC-7H



SS-4424-1 ja

1.

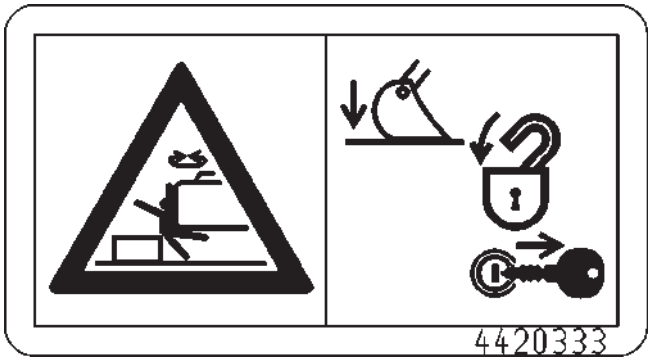
Warning
Always read the user's manual before operating, servicing, disassembling, assembling, or transporting the machine.



SS4420332-2 ja

2.

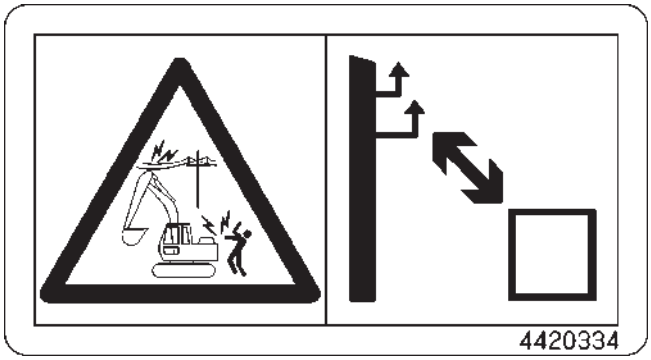
If the machine is parked and moves unexpectedly, serious injury or death due to crushing may result.
Be sure to lower the front attachment to the ground, lock the pilot shut-off lever, and remove the engine key before leaving the machine unattended.



SS4420333-2 ja

3.

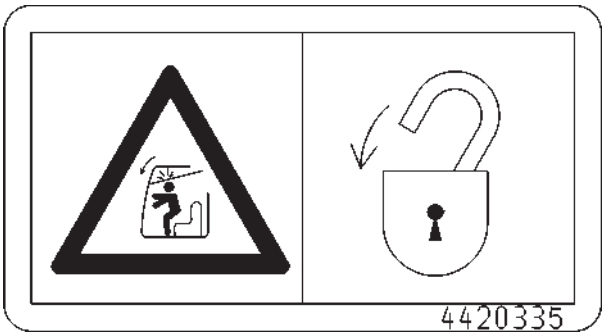
Electrocution is possible if the machine is operated too close to power lines.
Always keep a safe distance from power lines.



SS4420334-2 ja

4.

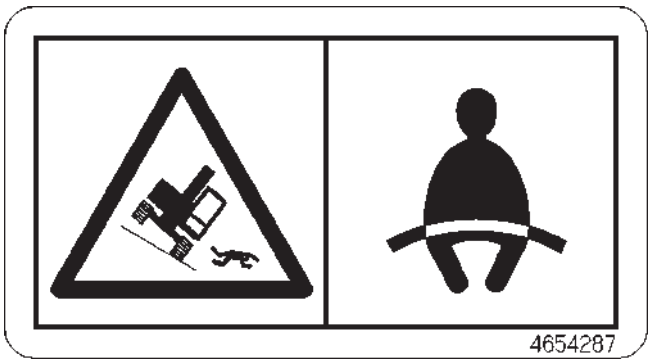
Personal injury may result if the stored front window slips and falls.
Securely lock the window in its stored position.



SS4420335-2 ja

5.

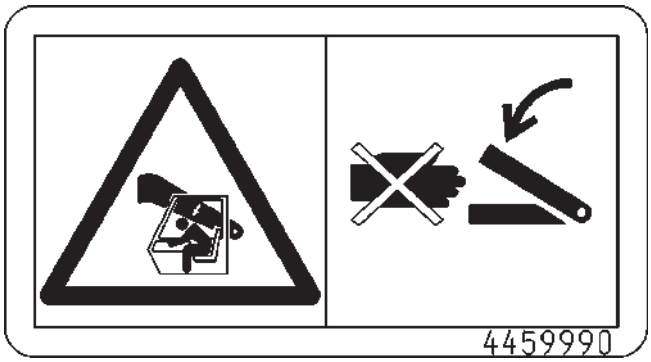
If the machine should overturn, the operator may be bashed inside the cab, and/or thrown from the cab and/or crushed by the overturning machine. Always wear the seat belt while operating the machine.



SS4654287-1 ja

6.

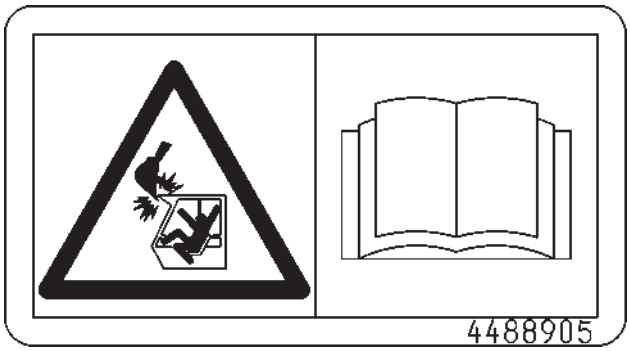
Do not extend your hands or head from the window. Your hands or head may come in contact with the boom.



SS4459990-2 ja

8.

When operating the front attachment, bucket may come in contact with the cab parts. Operate the machine with care not to allow the tip of the bucket to hit the cab while rolling in the front attachment.



SS4488905 ja

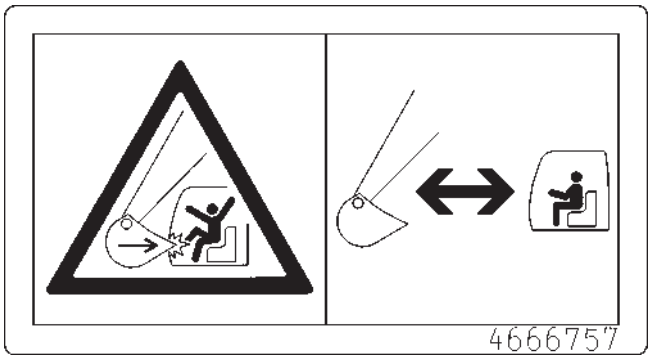
9.

If hit by equipment a serious injury may result.
Stay away from the machine.

SS3089581 ja

10.

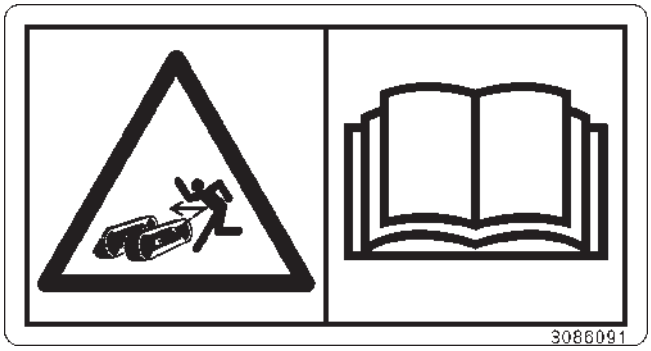
When an attachment (such as breaker, crusher, quick coupler, etc.) whose overall length is longer than a standard bucket is attached, the attachment may interfere with the cab or boom. Be careful not to hit the cab or boom with the tip of the attachment when retracting the arm.



SS4666757-1 ja

11.

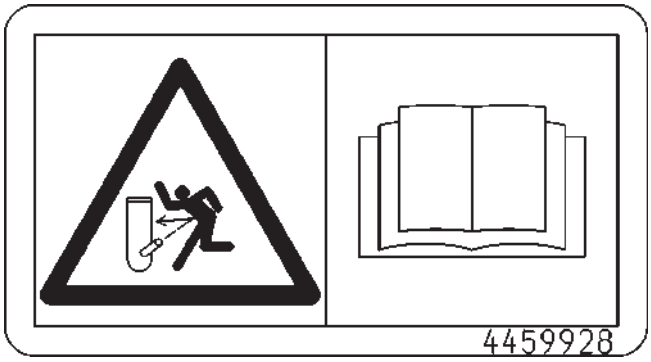
Serious injury may result if a grease plug flies off the track adjuster.
Read the user's manual before loosening the tracks, and adjust them as instructed.



SS3086091-4 ja

12.

Sign indicates a burn hazard from compressed air and spurting hot oil if the oil inlet is uncapped during or right after operation.
Read the manual for safe and proper handling.



SS4459928-1 ja

13.

Sign indicates a burn hazard from spurting hot water or oil if radiator or hydraulic oil tank is uncapped while hot. Allow radiator or hydraulic oil tank to cool before removing cap.

SS4420336-3 ja

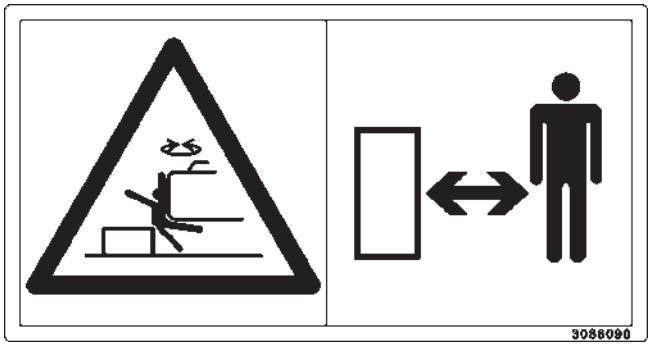
14.

Sign indicates a hazard of falling.
Do not stand on this place.

SS3092126 ja

15.

Anyone within the swing radius may be crushed by the upperstructure when the machine swings.
Keep everyone clear of the swing area.



SS3086090-2 ja

16.

Touching hot parts during use or immediately after stopping presents the hazard of getting burned. Do not touch hot parts.

SSYA00036144-2 ja

17.

There is a risk of falling off.
Stay away from the edges of the machine.

SS3092125-2 ja

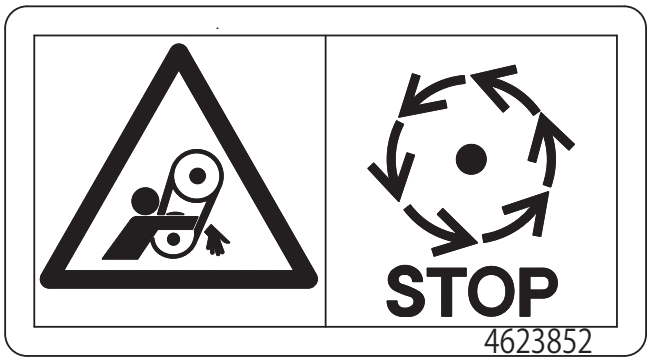
18.

Hot coolant or oil may spout out if a cap is removed while the machine is still hot, possibly causing a burn.
Do not remove caps while the machine is still hot.

SS-4383 ja

19.

Sign indicates the hazard of rotating parts, such as belts, etc. that could cause injury if someone were to be entangled.
Allow to stop completely before inspection and maintenance.



SS4623852 ja

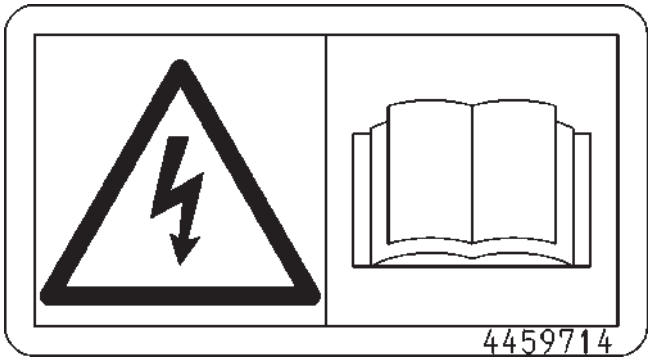
20.

Sign indicates a hazard of rotating parts, Such as fan.
Turn off before inspection and maintenance.

SS4408870-2 ja

21.

Sign indicates an electrical hazard from handling the cable.
Read the manual for safe and proper handling.



SS4459714-1 ja

22.

Sign indicates an explosion hazard.
Keep fire and open flames away from this area.

SS4460067-2 ja

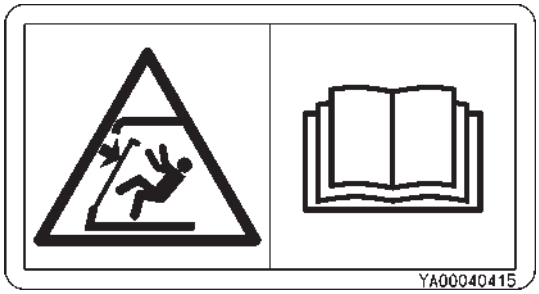
23.

Skin contact with electrolyte will cause burns. Electrolyte splashed into the eyes will cause blindness. Take care not to touch electrolyte.

SS4460056-2 ja

24.

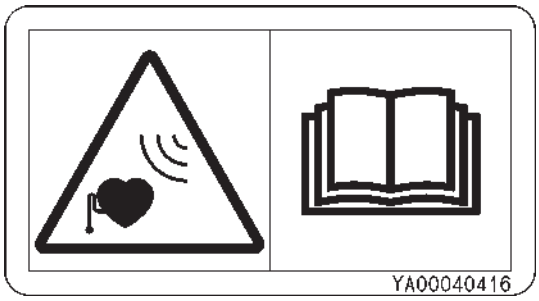
Use the handle only to open or close the front window. Do not use the handle to enter or leave the cab. If the window is not locked, it may move possibly causing you to lose your balance and fall.



SSYA00040415 ja

25.

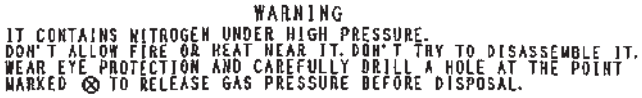
To those persons fixed with any medical device. Including implantable device such as a cardiac pacemaker. Please read the instruction manual carefully and follow the instructions before using this machine.



SSYA00040416 ja

26.

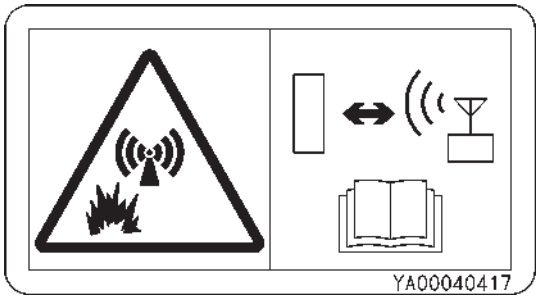
WARNING
IT CONTAINS NITROGEN UNDER HIGH PRESSURE.
DON'T ALLOW FIRE OR HEAT NEAR IT. DON'T TRY TO DISASSEMBLE IT.
WEAR EYE PROTECTION AND CAREFULLY DRILL A HOLE AT THE POINT MARKED × TO RELEASE GAS PRESSURE BEFORE DISPOSAL.



SS-3212 ja

27.

When working at blasting sites, there is a risk of accidental explosion due to the wireless equipment during operation. Always keep the machine a safe distance away from blasting sites and detonators.

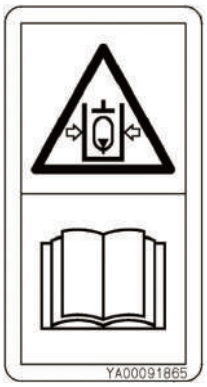


SSYA00040417 ja

28.

This machine is equipped with an accumulator.

Please read the instruction manual carefully and pay attention to handling.

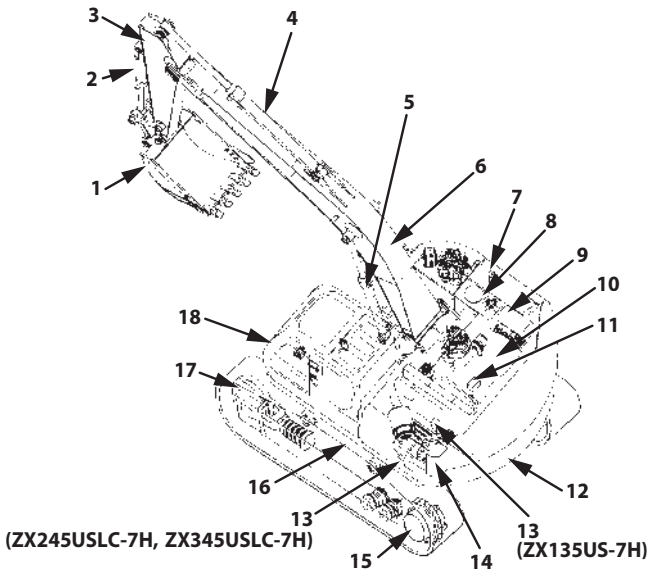


SSYA00091865 ja

MEMO

Name of Components

1- Bucket
2- Bucket Cylinder
3- Arm
4- Arm Cylinder
5- Boom Cylinder
6- Boom
7- Fuel Tank
8- Hydraulic Oil Tank
9- Aftertreatment Device
10- Engine
11- Expansion Tank
12- Counterweight
13- Battery Disconnect Switch
14- DEF Tank
15- Travel Device
16- Track
17- Front Idler
18- Cab



MDAT-01-001-2 ja

NOTE

A typical model is shown at right. Some parts may differ depending on the model of the machine.

Getting ON and OFF the Machine

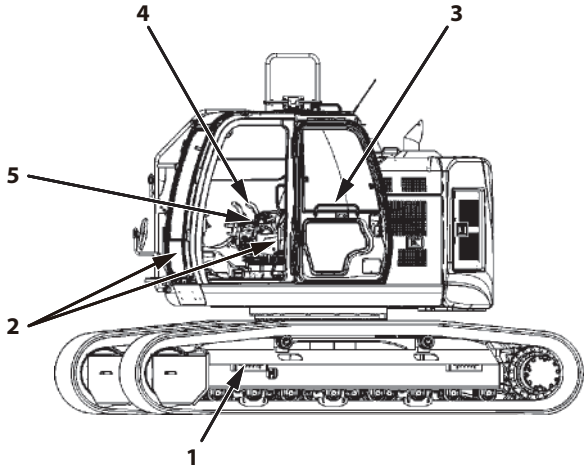
Footholds (1) and handrails (2) are provided around the machine for safe entry and exit to the cab.

They also enable safe inspection and maintenance.

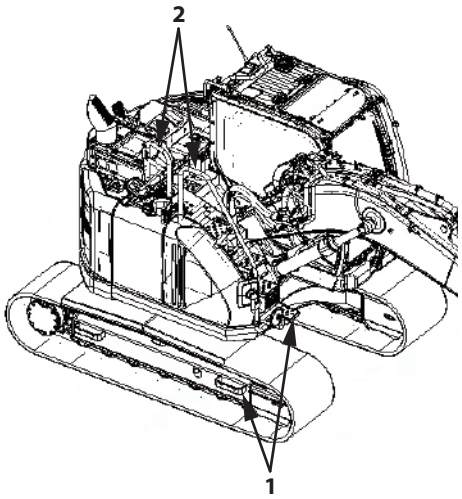
Never jump on or off the machine, as it is very dangerous.

WARNING

- **When lifting the cab/main body or transporting the machine, never attach wire to footholds (1) or handrails (2).**
- **Door handle (3) is not a handrail. Do not use as a handrail when getting on and off the machine.**
- **Do not hold control levers (4) or pilot shut-off lever (5) when getting on and off the machine.**

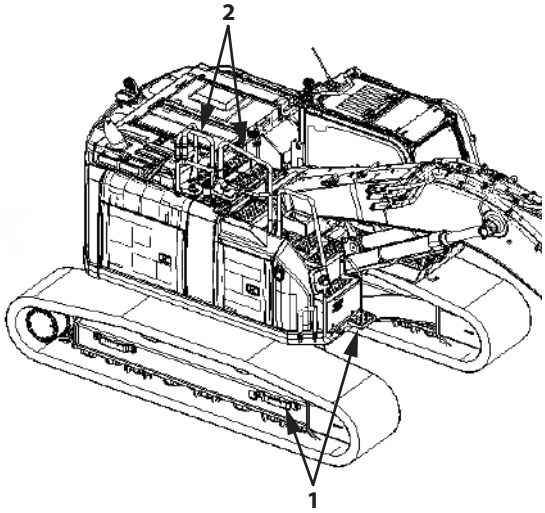


MDA4-01-003-1 ja



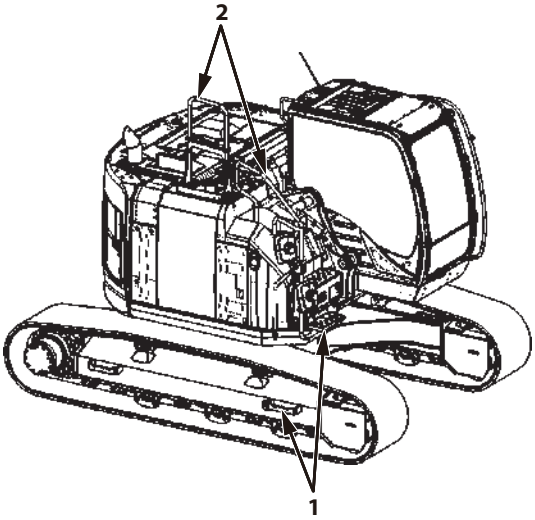
ZX135US-7H

MDHE-01-001-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDHE-01-002-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-004-1 ja

About Aftertreatment Device

The aftertreatment device removes particulate matter (PM) and nitrogen oxide (NOx) from the exhaust gas. Follow the instructions below to prevent the aftertreatment device from being damaged.

WARNING

- **Exhaust gas from the aftertreatment device, muffler, exhaust piping and tail piping becomes hot during and just after engine running and regeneration of the aftertreatment device. Be careful not to touch or get too close to any part of the exhaust system. Doing so may result in a burn.**
- **If flammable materials such as dead leaves or paper scraps are around the aftertreatment device, they may catch fire.**
- **To avoid burns, stop the engine and make sure the engine has sufficiently cooled down before performing maintenance on the machine.**

IMPORTANT

- **Only use fuel that for the machine that complies with JIS K-2204, EN-590 or ASTM D-975 standards. If the fuel described above is not used, exhaust gas that exceeds regulation values may be discharged and serious engine problems may occur.**
- **Refill with DEF that meets Japanese Industrial Standards (JIS) or International Organization for Standardization (ISO). If improper liquid (diesel oil, kerosene or gasoline) is refilled in the DEF tank, fire or system failure may result.**
- **Using non-suitable engine oil may result in malfunction of the aftertreatment device. Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Engine Oil is specially designed and tested to suit with the machine, hense it is highly recommended to use the genuine engine oil. In case the failure of the machine occured or is deemd to have occured by non-suitable engine oil, the failure will not apply to Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.**
- **Do not mix poor quality diesel fuel, drainage agents, fuel additives, gasoline, kerosene, alcohol, or any other type of lubricating oil with specified diesel fuel. Using the wrong fuel may cause fuel filters to perform poorly and can cause problems in the lubricated parts of the injector. It can also affect the engine parts and aftertreatment device, leading to malfunction.**
- **Do not modify the machine without authorization. In particular, never modify air inlet or exhaust parts (air duct, aftertreatment device, exhaust gas control system, including EGR equipment and exhaust piping). Also, never disassemble the aftertreatment device. Avoid shocking the aftertreatment device by striking parts of it with other objects or dropping the device. Failure to do so may affect the exhaust gas purifying equipment, possibly damaging it or lowering its performance.**
- **White smoke may be generated during aftertreatment device regeneration. Do not attempt to perform a manual regeneration in a poorly ventilated area.**
- **Contact Authorized Dealer for inspection, maintenance and repairs of the aftertreatment device.**

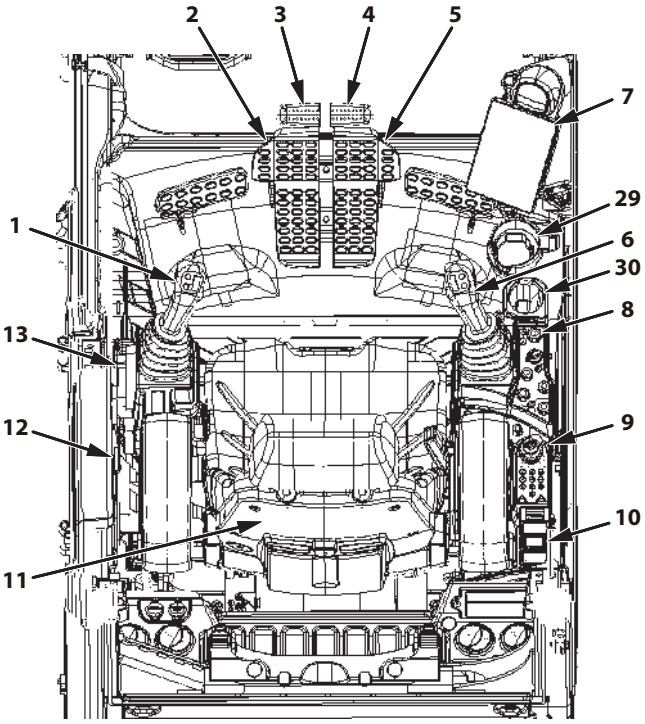
NOTE

- *White smoke and PM (particulate matter) may accumulate inside the aftertreatment device. The aftertreatment device regenerates automatically to remove deposits at regular intervals. This is called auto-regeneration. Autoregeneration may start during operation of the machine; the machine can continue to be used as-is.*
- *Do not stop the engine during regeneration unless absolutely necessary.*
- *The auto-regeneration may be terminated depending on the machine operating condition.*
- *Usually, auto-regeneration starts 30 hours after the previous regeneration (either auto or manual).*
- *If auto regeneration did not complete, and 38 hours have passed since the previous regeneration, an aftertreatment device regeneration request will blink on the monitor. (Refer to the page 1-31) Perform manual regeneration following the specified procedure. (Refer to the page 1-32)*
- *When the machine is operated without performing manual regeneration, the aftertreatment device may be damaged. Immediately move the machine to a safe area and perform manual regeneration.*
- *If approximately 48 hours have passed without regeneration being carried out, the engine trouble alarm will be displayed on the monitor (Refer to the page 1-31). Consult Authorized Dealer.*
- *Both auto and manual regenerations restore aftertreatment device function. It is not a malfunction.*
- *White smoke may be emitted for several minutes after the engine starts, this is not a malfunction.*

Layout of Equipment in Operator's Station (Illustration Contents)(ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H)

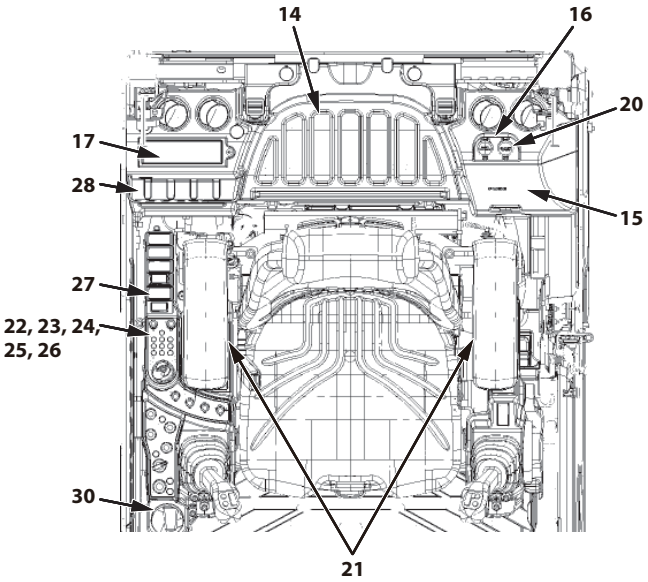
Following are the names and layout of equipment in the cab. For explanations of each piece of equipment, see the page in parentheses ().

1- Left Control Lever (1-134)
2- Left Travel Pedal (4-1)
3- Left Travel Control Lever (4-1)
4- Right Travel Control Lever (4-1)
5- Right Travel Pedal (4-1)
6- Right Control Lever (1-134)
7- Multi-Function Monitor (1-10)
8- Switch Panel (1-123)
9- Key Switch (1-128)
10- Regeneration Switch (1-32)
11- Operator's Seat (1-167)
12- Door Lock Release Lever (1-154)
13- Pilot Shut-Off Lever (1-143)

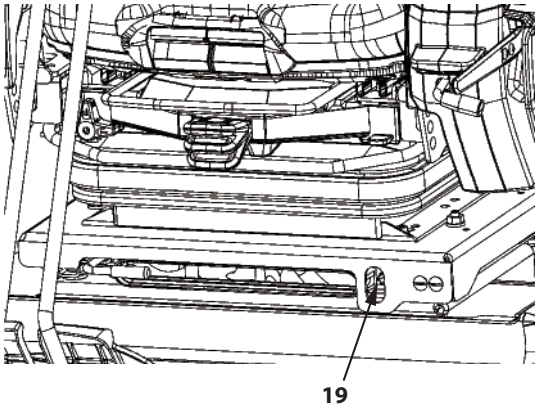


MDA4-01-005-2 ja

14- Tray (1-147)
15- Fuse Box (1-150)
16- 24 V Power Supply (1-140)
17- Glove Compartment
19- Engine Stop Switch (1-146)
20- 12 V Power Supply (1-138)
21- Switch Panel (Optional) (1-129)
Glove Compartment (without Optional Equipment)
22- Aerial Angle Switch (1-171)
23- Overload Alarm Switch (1-132)
24- Seat Heater Switch (1-130)
25- Rear Light (Optional) (1-131)
26- Beacon Light (Optional) (1-131)
27- Electrical Control Main Switch (Optional) (1-133)
28- Magazine Rack (1-147)
29- Drink Holder (Under Monitor) (1-149)
30- Drink Holder (In Front of Switch Box) (1-149)

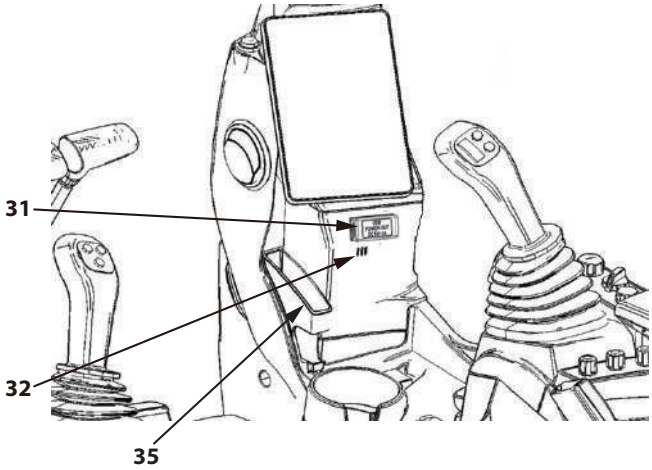


MDA4-01-006-1 ja

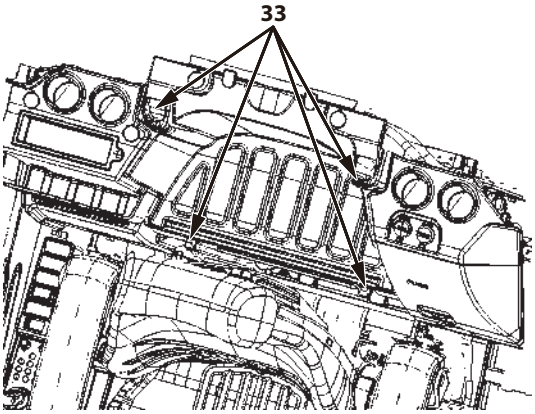


MDFY-01-024-2 ja

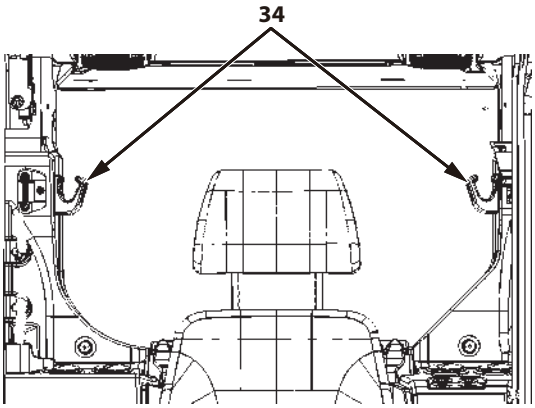
31- USB Power Supply (1-141)
32- Hands-free Mike (1-122)
33- Net Hooks (1-148)
34- Coat Hook
35- Smartphone Holder



MDFY-01-038-1 ja



MDA4-01-007-1 ja

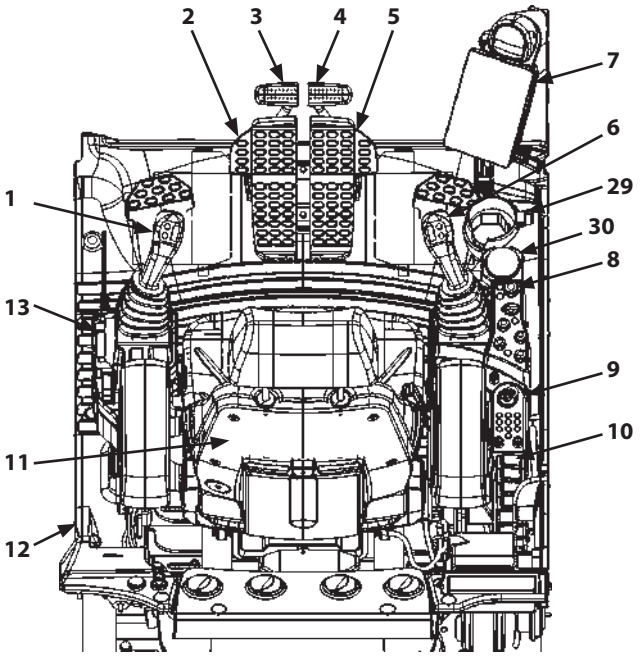


MDA4-01-008-1 ja

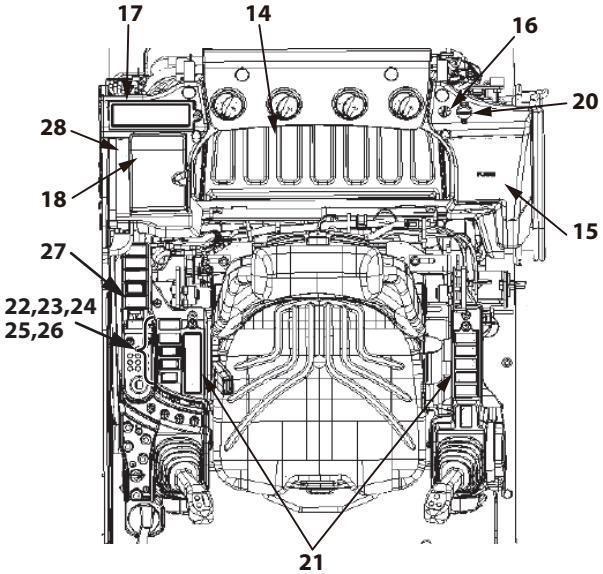
Layout of Equipment in Operator's Station (Illustration Contents)(ZX345USLC-7H)

Following are the names and layout of equipment in the cab. For explanations of each piece of equipment, see the page in parentheses ().

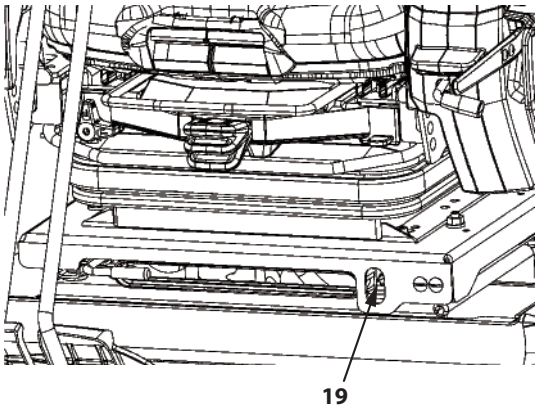
1- Left Control Lever (1-134)
2- Left Travel Pedal (4-1)
3- Left Travel Control Lever (4-1)
4- Right Travel Control Lever (4-1)
5- Right Travel Pedal (4-1)
6- Right Control Lever (1-134)
7- Multi-Function Monitor (1-10)
8- Switch Panel (1-123)
9- Key Switch (1-128)
10- Regeneration Switch (1-32)
11- Operator's Seat (1-167)
12- Door Lock Release Lever (1-154)
13- Pilot Shut-Off Lever (1-143)
14- Tray (1-147)
15- Fuse Box (1-150)
16- 24 V Power Supply (1-140)
17- Glove Compartment
18- Glove Compartment (Hot and Cool Box)
19- Engine Stop Switch (1-146)
20- 12 V Power Supply (1-138)
21- Switch Panel (Optional) (1-129)
Glove Compartment (without Optional Equipment)
22- Aerial Angle Switch (1-171)
23- Not Used
24- Seat Heater Switch (1-130)
25- Rear Light (Optional) (1-131)
26- Beacon Light (Optional) (1-131)
27- Electrical Control Main Switch (Optional) (1-133)
28- Magazine Rack (1-147)
29- Drink Holder (Under Monitor) (1-149)
30- Drink Holder (In Front of Switch Box) (1-149)



MDFY-05-001-2 ja

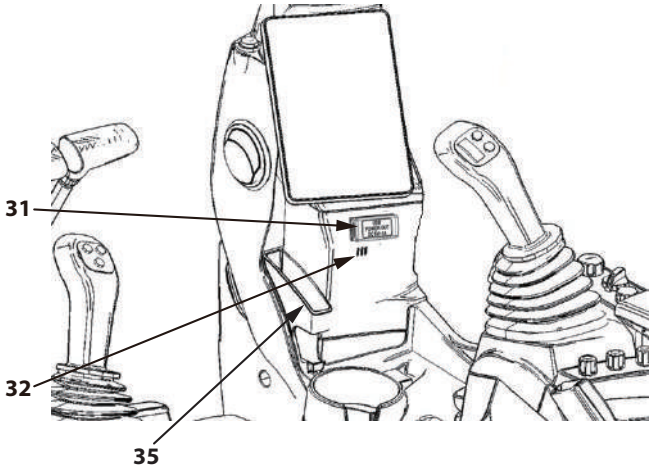


MDFY-01-036-3 ja

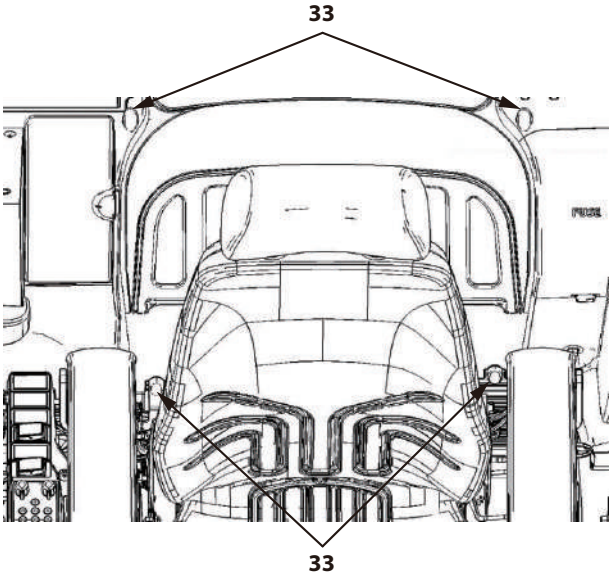


MDFY-01-024-2 ja

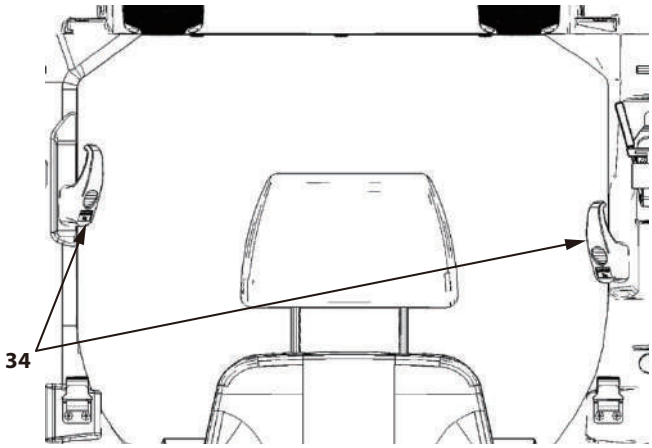
31- USB Power Supply (1-141)
32- Hands-free Mike (1-122)
33- Net Hooks (1-148)
34- Coat Hook
35- Smartphone Holder



MDFY-01-038-1 ja



MDFY-01-039-1 ja



MDFY-01-040-1 ja

Multi Function Monitor

Summary

Functions

The multi-function monitor installed on this machine includes functions such as displays for the various meters, warning indicator display, radio display, air conditioner display, security functions, aerial angle display, attachment mode settings and maintenance management functions.

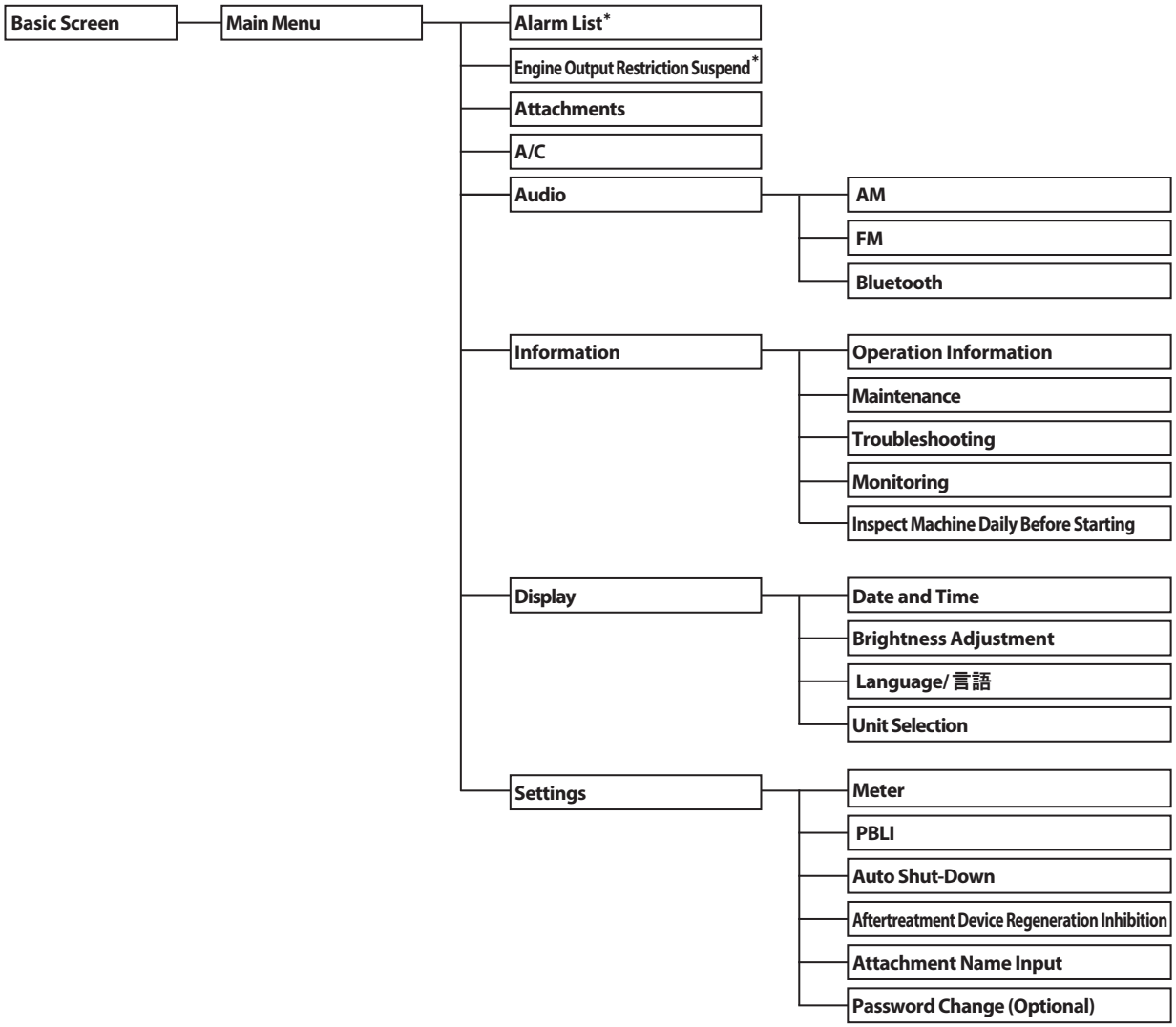
Screen Configuration

The menu consists of the following screens.

There are 8 menus, and a further 18 sub menus.

NOTE

- *The monitor explanations for "Air Conditioner" and "Audio" are provided on other pages together with the explanations of switch operations. Refer to "Auto Air Conditioner (AC) Operation" (1-88), and "Audio Operation" (1-105).*
- *The items marked "*" in the transition diagram below are only displayed if the machine develops a fault.*



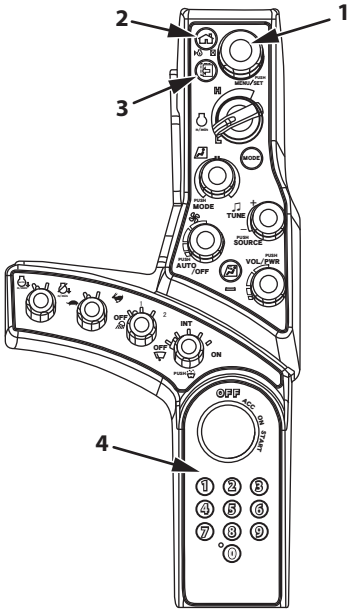
MDHD-00-001 en_GB

Basic Operation of Multi-Function Monitor

Switches for Multi-Function Monitor Operation

Use the switches on the switch panel to perform operations and make settings on the multi-function monitor.
The following describes the layout and function of the various switches.

1. Selector/Set Switch
2. Home Switch
3. Back Switch
4. Numeric Keypad



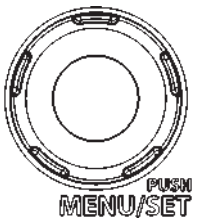
Switch Panel

MDFY-01-002-8 ja

Selector/Set Switch

Rotate and press the selector/set switch to toggle the multi-function monitor and make settings.

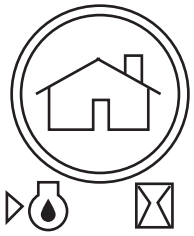
- Press
  Press while on the basic screen to go to menu screens.
  On menu screens, it functions to set selections.
- Rotate
  Moves the cursor.
  The part selected in blue on the monitor is the cursor.



MDFY-01-005 ja

Home Switch (Monitor)

Allows any screen to return to the basic screen.
When the key switch is the ON, long press the home switch to display the engine oil level and coolant level status on the monitor. For further details, refer to "Checks Before Starting the Engine" in Chapter 3 "OPERATING THE ENGINE".
When the key switch is not engaged, long press the home switch to display the fuel gauge and hour meter on the monitor.



MDFY-01-004 ja

Back Switch (Monitor)

Push this switch to return to the previous screen.

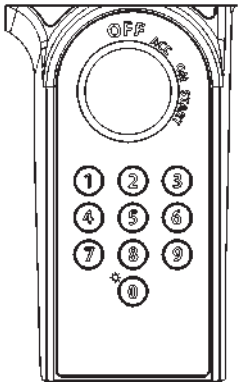
MDFY-01-003 ja

Numeric Keypad

When the work light is turned ON, the monitor changes to night mode screen.
Even if the work light is turned ON, you can activate the daytime screen by pushing "0" on the numeric keypad.

If the security functions (option) are ON, the numeric keypad is used inputting password.
Push the numeric keypad of 1 to 8 while the radio is ON, the radio station will switch to memorized channel of 1 to 8.

When calling handsfree on a cell phone, use buttons “1” and “3” on the numeric keypad to operate the cell phone.



MDFY-01-017 ja

For details about how to call hands free on a cell phone, refer to “Handsfree Calling with Bluetooth®” (1-122).

Displaying the Basic Screen

IMPORTANT

Start the engine after the basic screen is displayed.

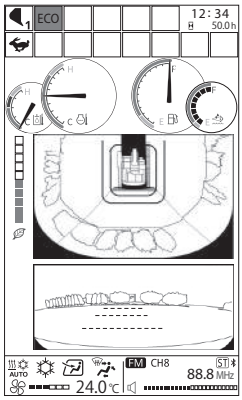
When the key switch is turned to the ACC or ON position, the starting screen displays for about 2 seconds. When the key switch is in the ACC position, only the hour meter, clock and radio are displayed. When the key switch is in the ON position, the basic screen is displayed.

NOTE

If the security functions (optional) are ON, the password input screen will be displayed after the "starting screen". For the instructions, see "Security Functions (Optional)" (1-14) on the following page.

Starting Screen

MDFY-MT-150 ja



Basic Screen

MDFY-MT-100 ja

Security Functions (Optional)

Input Password

IMPORTANT

- **When required to activate the security function, contact Authorized Dealer.**
- **If the password is forgotten, the machine must be modified to recover it. Customers should do this completely by themselves.**

1. Turn the key switch ON. After the starting screen is displayed, the password input screen is displayed.

Starting Screen

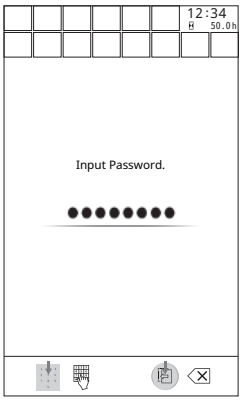
MDFY-MT-150 ja

2. Input a password with the numeric keypad.
3. Enter the set password. After verifying the password, the basic screen is displayed. The engine can be started in this state. If an incorrect password is entered 3 times, the buzzer will sound for 30 seconds. The alarm will continue to sound even if the key switch is turned ON/OFF during this time.

   NOTE

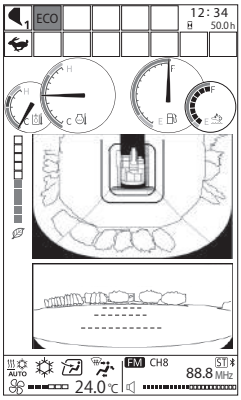
   To re-enter the password, push the back switch to erase the password.

4. After 30 seconds, if the key switch is turned to the ON position, the starting screen displays and the password input screen opens again. The password can be re-entered.
5. If an incorrect password is input again, the buzzer sounds for a further 30 seconds.



Password Input Screen

MDFY-MT-129 en_GB



Basic Screen

MDFY-MT-100 ja

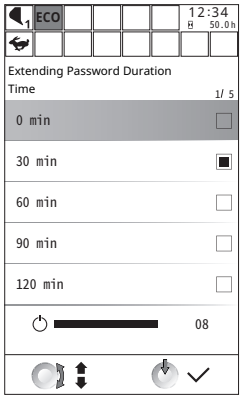
Extending the Password Duration Time

IMPORTANT

This operation only applies to machines that require a password to display the basic screen.

The password duration screen can be used to set a password duration time. Once set, the password does not need to be entered if machine is restarted within the duration time.

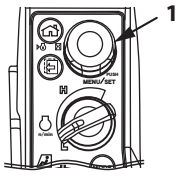
1. When turning the key switch from ON to ACC position, the monitor unit displays the password duration screen for 10 seconds.



Password Duration Screen (Key Switch: OFF)

MDFY-MT-113 en_GB

2. While the password duration screen is still displayed, rotate selector/set switch (1) to highlight the relevant time. Pushing selector/set switch (1) sets the password duration time.



MDFY-01-094-4 ja

Duration time	0 minutes
Duration time	30 minutes
Duration time	60 minutes
Duration time	90 minutes
Duration time	120 minutes

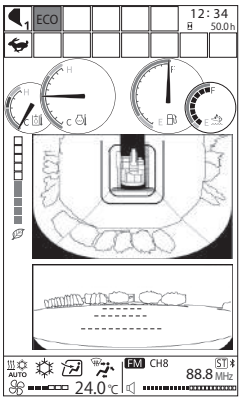
NOTE

If a password duration time is not set, the duration is set to 0.

3. If the key switch is turned to the ON position within the password duration time, the monitor unit displays the basic screen after the starting screen.

Starting Screen

MDFY-MT-150 ja



Basic Screen

MDFY-MT-100 ja

Main Menu Display

To select or finalize a menu, use selector/set switch (1) on the switch panel.
To select a menu item, follow the procedure below.

1. Display the basic screen.

   NOTE

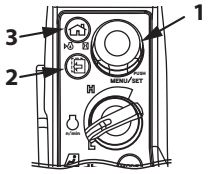
   For how to display the basic screen, refer to "Displaying the Basic Screen" (1-13).

2. With the basic screen displayed, press selector/set switch (1) to display the main menu.

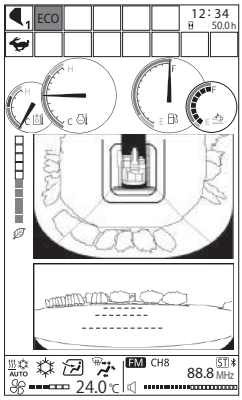
   IMPORTANT

   If a problem has occurred with the machine, the following menu will appear above the menu items.

   - **Alarm List**
   - **Engine Output Restriction Suspend**



MDFY-01-094-9 ja



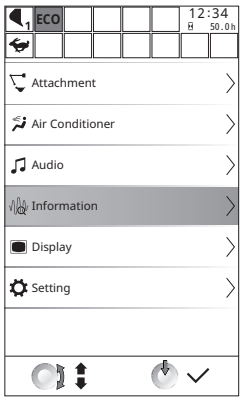
Basic Screen

MDFY-MT-100 ja

3. Rotate selector/set switch (1) to highlight items.
   The selected menu will be highlighted in blue.
   Move the cursor to select a menu.
4. Push selector/set switch (1).
   The screen corresponding to the selected menu will be displayed.

NOTE

- *After menu selection, the monitor will revert to the basic screen after 300 seconds if no operation is performed.*
  In this case, any settings made on the screen will be erased.
- *When using the monitor screen pressing back switch (2) will cause the monitor to revert to the previously displayed screen.*
  Press home switch (3) to return to the basic screen.



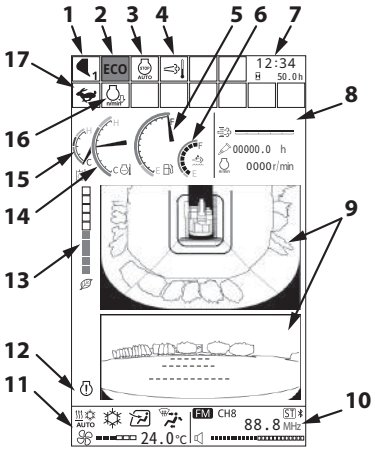
Main Menu Screen

MDFY-MT-029 en_GB

Basic Screen (Illustration Content)

Following is a description of the names and layout of the various meters and icon displayed on the multi-function monitor. For explanations of each meter and icon, see the page in parentheses ().

1- Attachment Indicator (1-19)
2- Power Mode Indicator (1-125)
3- Auto Shut-Down Indicator (1-80)
4- Aftertreatment Device Indicator (1-30)
5- Fuel Gauge (1-20)
6- DEF Gauge (1-21)
7- Hour Meter, Clock (1-20)
8- Sub Meter (1-75)
9- Camera Image (1-171)
10- Audio Display (1-105)
11- Air Conditioner Display (1-88)
12- Alarm Indicator (1-22)
13- Eco Gauge (1-75)
14- Coolant Temperature Gauge (1-21)
15- Hydraulic Oil Temperature Gauge (1-75)
16- Auto-Idle Indicator (1-124)
17- Travel Mode Indicator (1-124)



MDFY-MT-001-1 ja

Attachments Display

The attachments being used are displayed.
The displayed icons change depending on the selected attachment.
The icons available for selection are as follows.
For how to change the attachment mode, refer to “Attachments” (1-37).

Bucket Mode

MDFY-00-042 ja

Thumb

MDFY-00-049 ja

Breaker

MDFY-00-043 ja

Pulverizer

MDFY-00-044 ja

Crushers

MDFY-00-045 ja

Vibrating Hammer

MDFY-00-046 ja

Grapple

MDFY-00-047 ja

Clamshell

MDFY-00-048 ja

Rotary Tilt

MDFY-00-050 ja

Tilt Bucket

MDFY-00-051 ja

Others

MDFY-00-052 ja

Hour Meter (1)

The total accumulated operating hours since the machine started working are displayed in hours (h).

One digit after the decimal point indicates tenths of an hour (6 minutes).

MDFY-01-046-1 ja

Clock (2)

Indicates the current time.

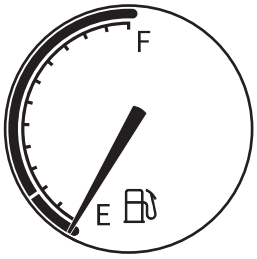
24-h/12-h display can be selected.

(For toggling between display modes, refer to Date and Time)

Fuel Gauge

The remaining fuel amount is indicated by the needle.

Refuel before the needle reaches "E".

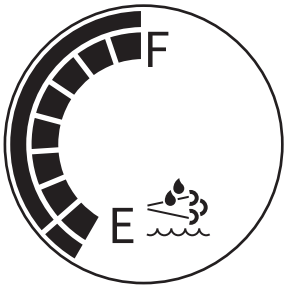


MDFY-01-047 ja

DEF Gauge

The remaining DEF amount is indicated on the segment display.

When the DEF level gets low, the last segment turns yellow. If the segment turns yellow, immediately refill the DEF.



MDFY-01-048 ja

IMPORTANT

Display of the DEF changes depending on the DEF level. If used with a low level of DEF, engine output is gradually reduced. If the gauge turns yellow, immediately refill the DEF.

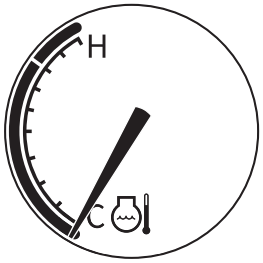
DEF Level Alarm

Screen Display	Display of Segments	Buzzer	Description of Alarms
	The last segment turns yellow.	Once	DEF/AdBlue® level is low. Refill DEF/AdBlue® as soon as possible.
	The last segment turns red.	Intermittent sound	DEF/AdBlue® level is low. The engine output power drops gradually. Refill DEF/AdBlue® as soon as possible.
	All segments turn OFF.	Continuous sound	No DEF/AdBlue®. The engine can start, but the machine can not be operated. The machine can not be operated until refilling DEF/AdBlue®.

Coolant Temperature Gauge

The engine coolant temperature is indicated with a needle.

Normally the needle is around the center of the scale during operation.



MDFY-01-049 ja

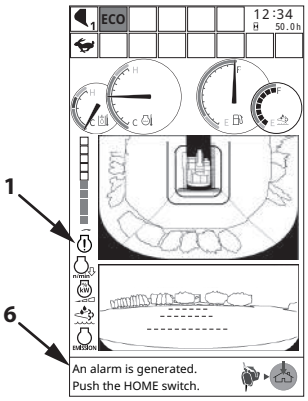
Alarm Display and Description of Alarms

Alarm Occurrence Screen

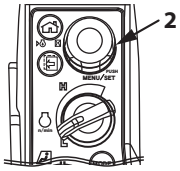
If an abnormality occurs, alarm marks (1) are displayed on the basic screen. Alarm message (6) simultaneously lights up / blinks at the bottom of the monitor screen.

Up to 8 alarm marks (1) can be displayed at any given time.

For further details about an alarm, follow the procedure below.



MDFY-MT-119-1 en_GB

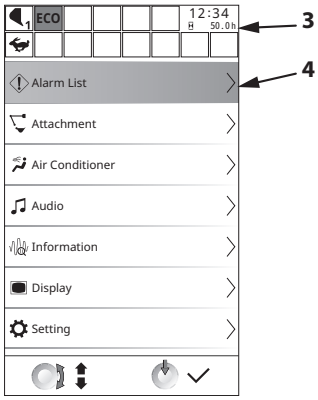


MDFY-01-094-7 ja

1. Push selector/set switch (2) on the basic screen to display main menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to select Alarms List (4), and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   Main menu (3) displays Alarm List (4) only when an alarm occurs.



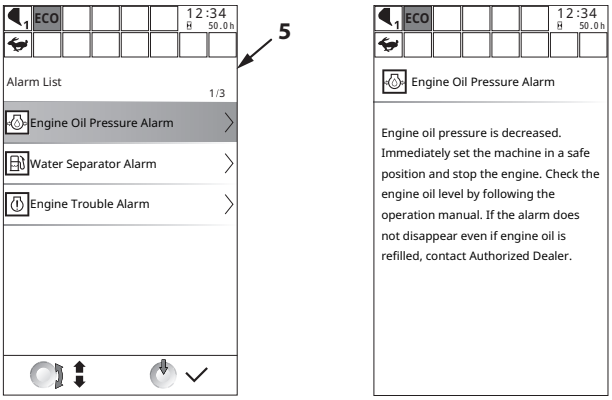
MDFY-MT-037-2 en_GB

3. Push selector/set switch (2) to display Alarms List (5). Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight the desired alarm, and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   Alarm List (5) contains only currently active alarms.

4. Pushing selector/set switch (2) will display detailed information of the selected alarm.



MDFY-MT-148-1 en_GB

Table of Alarm Descriptions

Display	Alarm Name	Description of Alarms
	Warning Alarm	Mechanical system is abnormal. Contact Authorized Dealer.
STOP	Operation Stop Alarm*1	Mechanical system is abnormal. Immediately set the machine in a safe position, stop the engine and contact Authorized Dealer.
	Engine Trouble Alarm*1 (red)	Engine or engine related parts are abnormal. Immediately set the machine in a safe position, stop the engine and contact Authorized Dealer.
	Engine Trouble Alarm(yellow)	Engine or engine related parts are abnormal. Contact Authorized Dealer.
	Overheat Alarm*2	Coolant temperature is abnormally increasing. Stop operation. Run the engine at slow idle speed to lower the coolant temperature. Clean the radiator and front screen by following the operation manual.
	Engine Oil Pressure Alarm*1	Engine oil pressure is decreased. Immediately set the machine in a safe position and stop the engine. Check the engine oil level by following the operation manual. If the alarm does not disappear even if engine oil is refilled, contact Authorized Dealer.
	Air Cleaner Restriction Alarm*1	Air cleaner is clogged. Clean or replace the air cleaner element by following the operation manual.
COOLER	Inter Cooler Performance Decrease Alarm	Inter cooler performance is decreasing. Stop operation. Clean the inter cooler and front screen by following the operation manual. Check abnormality of the intake air piping such as disconnection.
	Exhaust Gas Temperature Alarm	Exhaust temperature is abnormally increasing. Stop operation. Contact Authorized Dealer.
INTAKE	Intake Air Temperature Alarm	Engine intake air temperature is abnormally increasing. Stop operation. Check abnormality of the intake air piping such as disconnection by referring the operation manual.
BOOST	Boost Temperature Alarm	Engine intake air temperature is abnormally increasing. Stop operation. Clean the inter cooler and front screen by following the operation manual. Check abnormality of the intake air piping such as disconnection.
EGR	EGR Gas Temperature Alarm	EGR temperature is abnormally increasing. Contact Authorized Dealer.
n/min	Engine Speed Restriction Status	The engine speed is restricted to protect the engine. During this time, the engine speed can not be changed.

Display	Alarm Name	Description of Alarms
	Engine Oil Level Check (Abnormal)*3	Check engine oil level and refill oil if necessary by following the operation manual.
	Engine Start Disabled (Engine Stop SW)*3	As the engine stop switch is in the “STOP” position, the engine can not be started.
	Engine Start Disabled (Pilot Shut-off Lever etc.)*3	As the pilot shut-off lever is in the “UNLOCK” position, the engine can not be started.
	Coolant Level Check (Abnormal)*3	Check coolant level and add coolant if necessary by following the operation manual.
	Preheating Operation Status*3	The glow plug is in operation.
STOP AUTO	Auto Shut-Down Abnormal Alarm	Auto-idling system is abnormal. Contact Authorized Dealer.
% kW	Engine Output Restriction Alarm	Engine output is limited.
n/min	Engine Output Reduction Alarm	Engine Output And Speed Are Restricted.
ESCAPE	Escape Mode Alarm*3	DEF level is low or engine output restriction is temporarily suspended due to abnormality of the aftertreatment device. Immediately refill DEF or repair the aftertreatment device. If the system is abnormal, contact Authorized Dealer.
	Urea SCR System Abnormal Alarm*1 (red)	Aftertreatment device is broken. Contact Authorized Dealer.
	Aftertreatment Device Abnormal Alarm*1 (red)	Aftertreatment device is abnormal. Immediately set the machine in a safe position, stop the engine and contact Authorized Dealer.
	Aftertreatment Device Abnormal Alarm(yellow)	Aftertreatment device is abnormal. Contact Authorized Dealer.
	EGR Device Failure*1	EGR device is broken. Contact Authorized Dealer.
	Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Request*1	Regeneration of aftertreatment device is required. Set the machine in a safe position. Pull the pilot shut-off lever to the "LOCK" position, run the engine at slow idle speed, and turn the manual regeneration switch to the REGENERATION position. For more information, refer to the operation manual.
	Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibit Alarm	As regeneration is inhibited, can not execute regeneration. Move the machine to a safe place, release the regeneration inhibition. For more information, refer to the operation manual.

Display	Alarm Name	Description of Alarms
	DEF Low Level Alarm*1*3	DEF level is low. Refill DEF by following the operation manual.
	Hydraulic System Abnormal Alarm*1 (red)	Hydraulic system is abnormal. Immediately set the machine in a safe position, stop the engine and contact Authorized Dealer.
	Hydraulic System Abnormal Alarm(yellow)	Hydraulic system is abnormal. Contact Authorized Dealer.
	AFL System Abnormal Alarm*1 (Red) (Optional)	AFL system is abnormal. Immediately set the machine in a safe position, stop the engine and contact Authorized Dealer.
	AFL System Abnormal Alarm(Yellow)(Optional)	AFL system is abnormal. Contact Authorized Dealer.
	Hydraulic Oil Overheat Alarm*1	Hydraulic oil temperature is abnormally increasing. Stop operation. Run the engine at slow idle speed to lower the hydraulic oil temperature. Clean the oil cooler and front screen, and check the hydraulic oil level and piping oil leak by following the operation manual.
	Hydraulic Oil Filter Restriction Alarm	The hydraulic oil filter is clogged. Replace the hydraulic oil filter element by following the operation manual.
	Pilot Shut-off Lever Alarm*1	Pilot shut-off lever system is abnormal. Immediately set the machine in a safe position, stop the engine and contact Authorized Dealer.
	Control Lever Auto-Lock System Failure Alarm(Flashes)	The control lever auto-lock system is abnormal. There is a possibility that control lever auto-lock system will be not normally operated even when the pilot shut-off lever lock is released while the control levers, pedals, or buttons are given to move. Contact Authorized Dealer.
	Control Lever Auto-Lock System Active(Lights Up)	There is a possibility that the pilot shut-off lever lock is released while the control levers, pedals, or buttons are given to move. Put pilot shut-off lever LOCK positon. Make sure all the control levers, pedals, or bittons are in neutral and then put pilot shut-off lever UNLOCK position.
	Alternator Alarm*1	The generated voltage of the alternator is decreasing. Check the belt driving the alternator and adjust it if necessary by following the operation manual. If the alarm does not disappear, contact Authorized Dealer.
	Electrical System Abnormal Alarm*1	Electrical system is abnormal. Immediately set the machine in a safe position, stop the engine and contact Authorized Dealer.
	Water Separator Alarm*1	Water inside the fuel pre-filter exceeds the allowable amount. Drain water by following the operation manual.

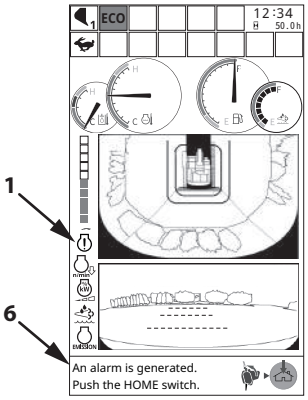
Display	Alarm Name	Description of Alarms
	Fuel Filter Restriction Alarm	Fuel filter is clogged. Replace the fuel filter element by following the operation manual.
	Fuel Temperature Alarm	Fuel temperature is abnormally increasing. Stop operation. Clean the fuel cooler and front screen by following the operation manual.
	Fuel Level Alarm*3	Fuel level is low. Refuel by following the operation manual.
	Camera System Abnormal Alarm*1	Camera system is abnormal. Contact Authorized Dealer.
	Air Conditioner Abnormal Alarm	Air conditioner system is broken. Contact Authorized Dealer.
	System Restart Request*3	Since continuous operation exceeded 23 hours, it is necessary to re-start the system. Stop the engine once, make sure that the monitor display has disappeared, then restart the engine.
	Overload Alarm*1*3 (Except ZX345USLC-7H)	The lifting load is excessive. The machine may rollover. Make sure the safety and lower the front attachment on the ground.
	Seat Belt Unfasten Alarm*1*3	Be sure to fasten the seat belt when operating the machine.

NOTE

*1 *The alarm is displayed and the buzzer sounds.*

*2 *The alarm is displayed and the buzzer sounds. Putting engine speed at slow idle stops the buzzer.*

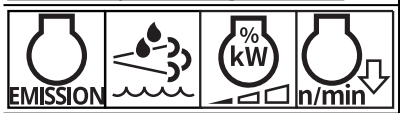
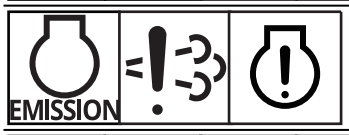
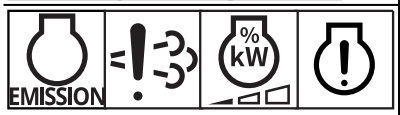
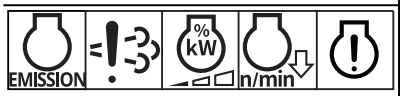
*3 *The alarm message displayed at bottom (6) of the monitor differs for each alarm. For the messages corresponding the various alarms, refer to the table below.*



MDFY-MT-119-1 en_GB

Alarm Name	Message at Bottom of Monitor
Engine Oil Level Check (Abnormal)	Check Engine Oil Level And Add Oil If Required.
Engine Start Disabled (Engine Stop SW)	As the engine stop switch is in the “STOP” position, the engine can not be started.
Engine Start Disabled (Pilot Shut-off Lever etc.)	As the pilot shut-off lever is in the “UNLOCK” position, the engine can not be started.
Coolant Level Check (Abnormal)	Check coolant level and add coolant if necessary.
Preheating Operation Status	The glow plug is in operation.
Escape Mode Alarm	Suspend Has Been Set. XX min
DEF Low Level Alarm	DEF/AdBlue Level Is Low. Refill DEF/AdBlue.
Fuel Level Alarm	Fuel level is low. Refill fuel.
System Restart Request	The system have to be restarted. Push the HOME switch for detailed information.
Overload Alarm	The lifting load is excessive. The machine may rollover.
Seat Belt Unfasten Alarm	Fasten the seat belt.

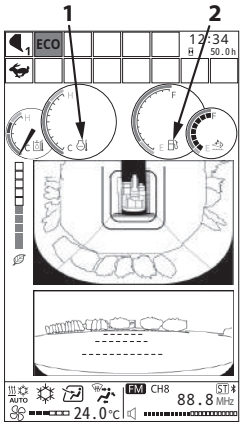
Urea SCR System and EGR Device Alarm List

Display	Alarm Name	Description of Alarms
	DEF Low Level Alarm*1	DEF level is low. Refill DEF.
	DEF Low Level Alarm*1	DEF is low. Refill DEF. Engine output is restricted.
	DEF Low Level Alarm*1	DEF tank is empty. Refill DEF. Engine output and speed are restricted.
	Malfunction of Urea SCR System*1 EGR Device Fault*1	The urea SCR system or EGR device has broken down.
	Malfunction of Urea SCR System*1 EGR Device Fault*1	The urea SCR system or EGR device has broken down. Engine output is restricted.
	Malfunction of Urea SCR System*1 EGR Device Fault*1	The urea SCR system or EGR device has broken down. Engine output and speed are restricted.

*1 Alarm mark is displayed and buzzer sounds simultaneously.

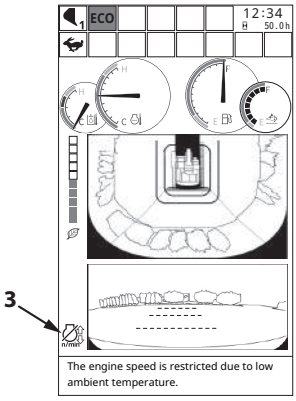
Display of Other Errors

- Fuel Sensor Error Display
  If the fuel sensor is faulty, the color of icon (2) changes from white to red and the needle disappears. If the harness between the temperature sensor and the controller unit is broken, the needle disappears.
- Coolant Temperature Sensor Error Display
  If the coolant temperature sensor is faulty, the color of icon (1) changes from white to red and the needle disappears. If the harness between the temperature sensor and the controller unit is broken, the needle disappears.



MDFY-MT-103-1 ja

- Engine Speed Control Display
  Due to a low coolant temperature, the engine is running in warm-up mode. The engine speed cannot be changed during this time.
  While the engine speed is controlled, mark (3) is displayed on the monitor. When the control completes, mark (3) goes OFF and the engine speed becomes adjustable.

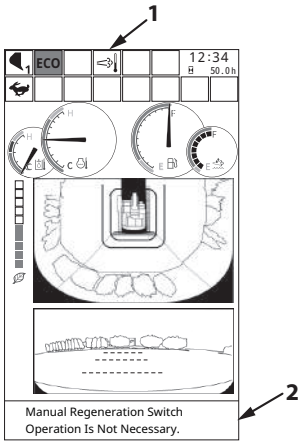


MDFY-MT-131-2 en_GB

Aftertreatment Device

Aftertreatment Device Condition Indicator

Aftertreatment device indicator (1) displays the condition of the aftertreatment device. The section explains the display icon and machine status.



MDFY-MT-142-1 en_GB

This icon indicates that the exhaust temperature is high during the aftertreatment device regeneration. It lights during auto or manual regeneration.

NOTE

- *The auto-regeneration is performed 30 hours after the previous regeneration. Auto-regeneration may start during operation of the machine; you can continue to operate the machine. The engine sound and/or the machine response to the operation of control levers may change when performing the auto-regeneration; this is not a malfunction.*
- *Do not stop the engine during regeneration unless absolutely necessary.*

When the manual regeneration switch is pushed during the auto-regeneration process, the message "Manual Regeneration Switch Operation Is Not Necessary" is displayed in the comment section (2) at the bottom of the monitor.

Depending on the operating conditions of the machine, the regeneration may fail to complete. In this case, an aftertreatment device manual regeneration request will be displayed on monitor. Immediately perform manual regeneration according to the procedure.

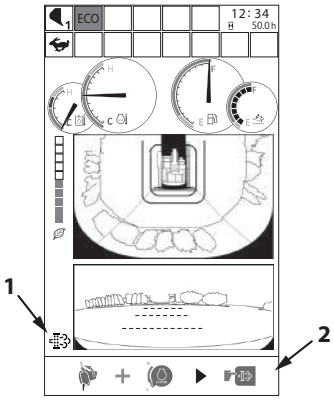
This mark indicates that the aftertreatment device regeneration is inhibited. Regeneration will not be performed when this is displayed.

IMPORTANT

Set aftertreatment device regeneration to the inhibited position while operating the machine in an environment with materials that could be flammable. (Refer to page 1-82)

Aftertreatment Device Manual Regeneration Request

The aftertreatment device must undergo regeneration. Usually, regeneration is performed automatically. However, manual regeneration is necessary under certain conditions. When manual regeneration is required, warning icon (1) and operating guidance (2) are displayed on the monitor.



MDFY-MT-114-1 ja

(Blinking, Yellow)

This mark indicates that aftertreatment device manual regeneration is required. Perform manual regeneration according to the specified procedure.

(Blinking, Yellow)

Indicates that aftertreatment device regeneration is inhibited. This is displayed when the aftertreatment device regeneration inhibition is turned ON and a regeneration request is issued. Move the machine to a safe place and follow the set procedure for releasing the inhibition on regeneration.

IMPORTANT

- **Manual regeneration performed when the aftertreatment device regeneration request is displayed restores aftertreatment device function. This is not a malfunction.**
- **If the machine continues to be operated without performing manual regeneration, despite the aftertreatment device regeneration request being displayed, an engine trouble alarm is displayed. Contact Authorized Dealer.**

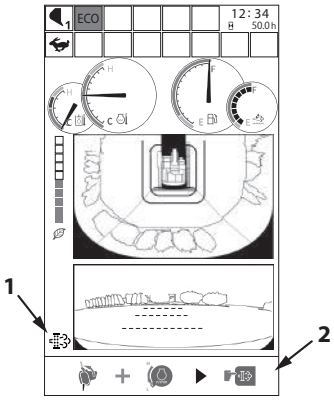
Manual Regeneration Procedure

When manual regeneration is required, warning icon (1) and operating guidance (2) are displayed on the monitor. When they are displayed, it means manual regeneration is required. Before starting manual regeneration, be sure to check the following.

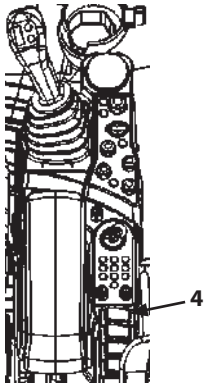
- No one is around the machine
- No flammable materials near the aftertreatment device
- Remaining fuel alarm is not lit
- DEF level alarm is not lit

Step

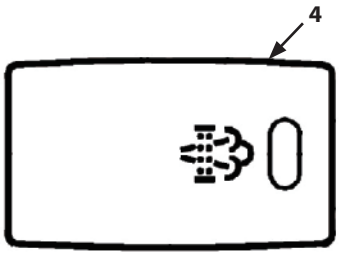
1. Park the machine in a safe place. Lower the front attachment to the ground.
2. Put the pilot shut-off lever in the LOCK position.
3. Set the engine control dial to slow idle.
4. Push aftertreatment device manual regeneration switch (4).



MDFY-MT-114-1 ja

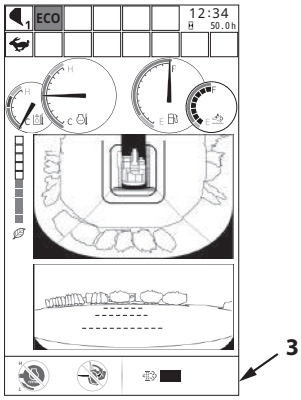


MDFY-01-001-1 ja



MDFY-01-118-1 ja

5. When aftertreatment device manual regeneration switch (4) is pressed, screen (3) illustrated at right is displayed and manual regeneration starts. A bar graph on screen shows the progress of the regeneration process.

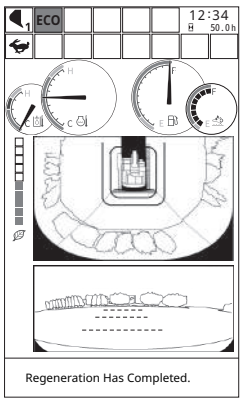


MDFY-MT-115-1 ja

IMPORTANT

Manual regeneration will not start unless the pilot shut-off lever is in the LOCK position and the engine control dial is on slow idle. Furthermore, during manual regeneration, if either the pilot shut-off lever or the engine control dial are touched, regeneration control will fail. If the process is aborted, start over again.

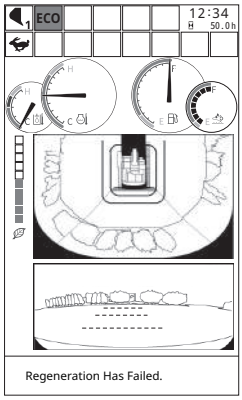
6. When the manual regeneration is complete, the message "Regeneration Has Completed." is displayed. If "Regeneration Has Failed." is displayed, start the manual regeneration process over again. Failure of the regeneration process may happen in conditions other than those mentioned above (such as a malfunction of a sensor that affects regeneration, or at low ambient temperature).



MDFY-MT-116 en_GB

NOTE

- *The engine sound may change and the engine speed may increase when manual regeneration starts, this is not a malfunction.*
- *Regeneration time varies depending on the outside air temperature.*
- *White smoke may come from the tail pipe for a time during the regeneration process, this is not a malfunction.*
- *The time required for manual regeneration is shorter right after operating the machine, and longer when the engine is cold.*
- *Coolant temperature may increase during manual regeneration.*



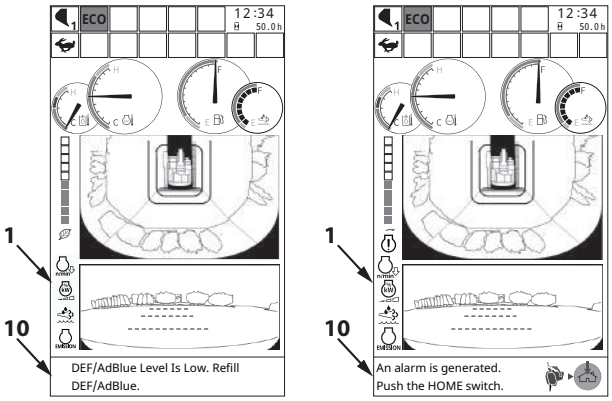
MDFY-MT-117 en_GB

IMPORTANT

- **If regeneration has to be suspended to move the machine, push the manual regeneration switch again. "Regeneration Has Failed" is displayed on the monitor, but the machine can be moved. In such case, manual regeneration should be performed again. Restart manual regeneration as soon as possible.**
- **Depending on the working and environmental conditions, the performance of the catalyst in aftertreatment device may decrease and replacement may become necessary. After warm-up is complete, manual regeneration normally takes around 25 to 40 minutes to complete. If regeneration takes over 60 minutes, contact Authorized Dealer to arrange an inspection.**

Engine Output Restriction Suspend

When DEF is low, a urea SCR system or EGR device malfunction occurs, alarm mark (1) and alarm message (10) are displayed on the basic screen and engine output/ speed are limited.



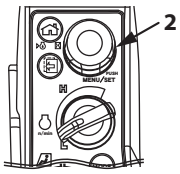
MDFY-MT-143-1 en_GB

IMPORTANT

- **The number of times this function can be used is limited; that limit varies with machine model and conditions. Check the monitor for the number of times when the limit is released.**
- **This procedure is only to temporarily disable the restriction. Refill with DEF or repair the urea SCR system and/or EGR equipment as soon as possible. For repairs, contact Authorized Dealer.**

The engine output restriction function can be temporarily disabled when evacuation is unavoidable during machine operation. Follow the procedure below.

1. Push selector/set switch (2) while on the basic screen to display main menu (3).

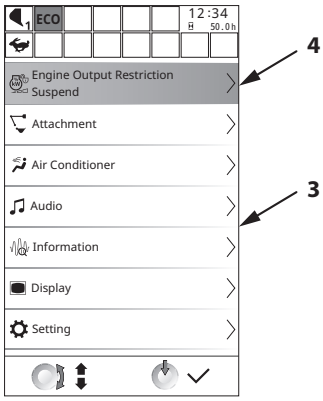


MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Turn selector/set switch (2) to highlight Engine Output Restriction Suspend (4).

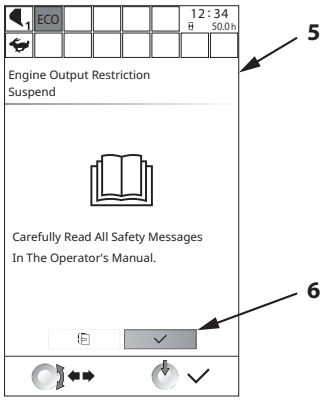
NOTE

Engine Output Restriction Suspend (4) is displayed on Main Menu (3) only when the engine output and speed are restricted.



MDFY-MT-002-1 en_GB

3. Push selector/set switch (2) to display Engine Output Restriction Suspend screen (5).
4. Turn selector/set switch (2) to highlight check mark (6), and push selector/set switch (2) to display Engine Output Restriction Suspend screen (8).

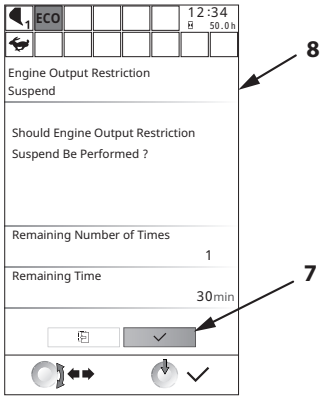


MDFY-MT-003-1 en_GB

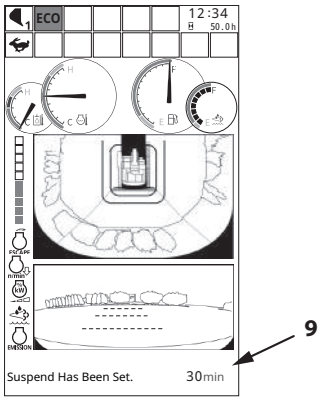
5. Highlight check mark (7) again and press selector/set switch (2). Message (9) is displayed at the bottom of the screen and the engine output restriction is temporarily suspended.

NOTE

- *The temporary release time is a maximum of 30 minutes.*
- *The engine output restriction is enabled after 30 minutes.*



MDFY-MT-004-1 en_GB



MDFY-MT-120-1 en_GB

Attachments

IMPORTANT

Before changing the attachment, stop the machine, lower the bucket or other work equipment, to the ground and set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.

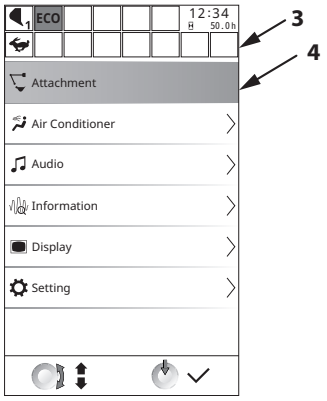
To select an attachment, select Attachments from the main menu to display attachments screen (5).

Attachment Selection

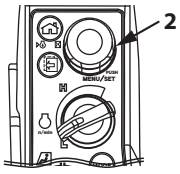
1. From menu screen (3), select “Attachment” (4) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display menu screen (3), refer to “Displaying the Main Menu”(1-17).



MDFY-MT-005-1 en_GB



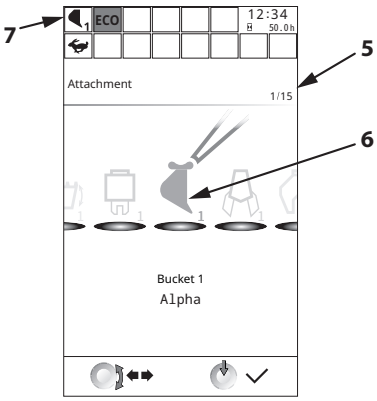
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display Attachment screen (5).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) so that the attachment to be selected appears in the middle of the screen.

   NOTE

   In the illustration on the right, Bucket 1 (6) is highlighted.

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to make the change.



MDFY-MT-043-1 en_GB

   NOTE

   When the attachment pedal is operated while the bucket 1 is selected, Attachment display (7) on the monitor screen will start blinking.
   This icon blinks in the case that the control lever or pedal being operated does not match the selected attachment.

Attachment Adjustment

In attachment adjustment, the following adjustments can be made.

- Pump flow rate for the attachment
- Priority for arm roll-out or arm roll-in during combined operation of attachment and arm roll-in
- Priority for boom raise speed during combined operations involving the boom
- Adjustment of front attachment speed adjustment for heavy loads

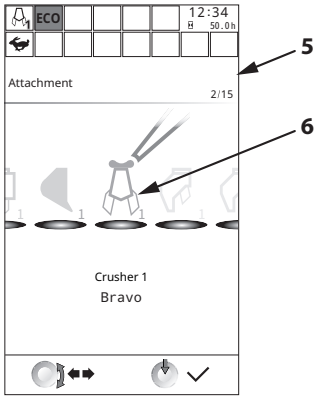
Attachment adjustments can be made when the attachment mode is set to an attachment other than bucket.
Change to the attachment that is to be adjusted.
For details on how to perform the operation, refer to “Attachment Selection” on page (1-37).

Pump Flow Rate Adjustment

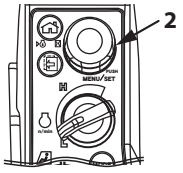
1. From Attachment screen (5), select attachment other than Bucket.

   NOTE

   - *For how to select attachments, refer to “Attachment Selection” (1-37).*
   - *In the illustration to the right, Crusher 1 (6) has been selected.*

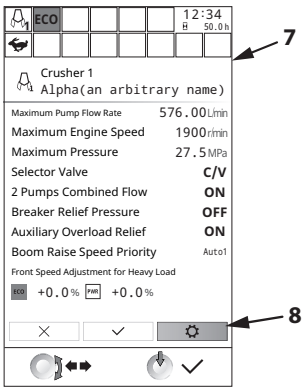


MDFY-MT-044-1 en_GB



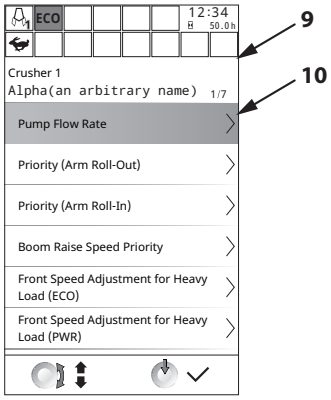
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Make sure that the currently set attachment has been selected, and push selector/set switch (2). Confirmation screen (7) will be displayed.
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight (8).



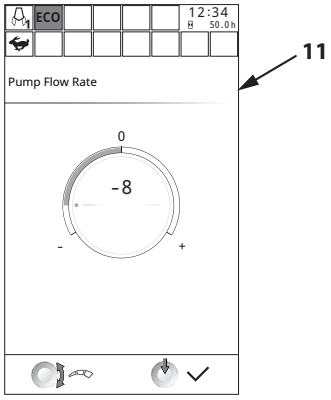
MDFY-MT-045-1 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display setting screen (9).
5. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Pump Flow Rate (10).



MDFY-MT-157-1 en_GB

6. Push selector/set switch (2) to display Pump Flow Rate screen (11).
7. Rotate selector/set switch (2) clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the pump flow rate. As selector/set switch (2) is rotated, the arc-like bar and the value in the middle of screen will change.
8. Push selector/set switch (2) to set the flow rate.



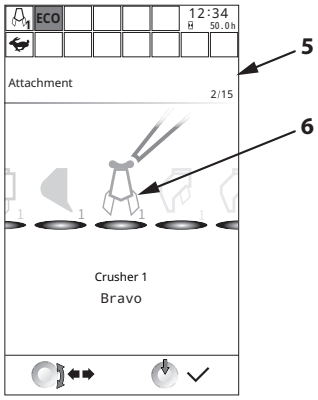
MDFY-MT-165-1 en_GB

Priority (Arm Roll-In) (Except ZX135US-7H)

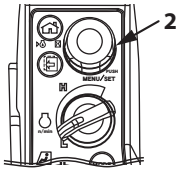
1. From attachment selection screen (5), select an attachment other than Bucket.

   NOTE

   - *For how to select an attachment, refer to "Attachment Selection" (1-37).*
   - *In the illustration at right, Crusher 1 (6) has been selected.*
   - *Effectiveness varies with model, machine specifications and work mode.*

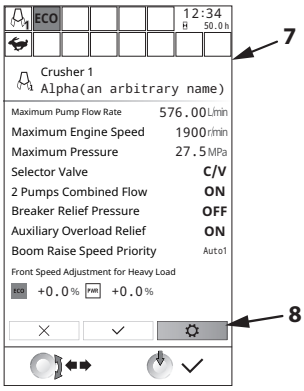


MDFY-MT-044-1 en_GB



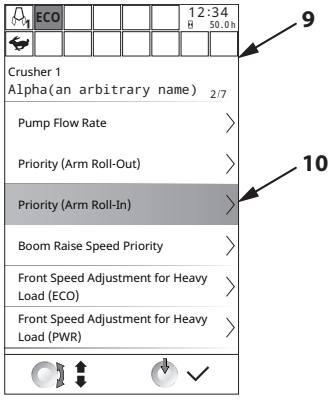
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Make sure that the currently set attachment has been selected, and push selector/set switch (2). Confirmation screen (7) is displayed.
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight ON (8).



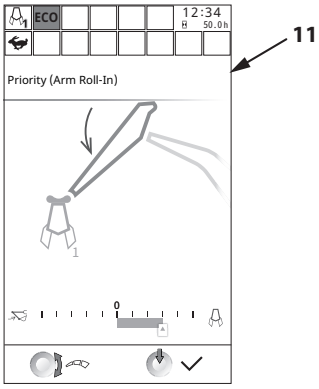
MDFY-MT-045-1 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display setting screen (9).
5. Turn selector/set switch (2) to highlight Priority (Arm Roll-In) (10).



MDFY-MT-158-1 en_GB

6. Push selector/set switch (2) to display adjustment screen (11).
7. Turn selector/set switch (2) to adjust priority.
   On the bar at the bottom of the screen, the left side indicates arm roll-in priority and the right side attachment priority.
   The direction and amount the arrow is moved (orange) determine the priority.



MDFY-MT-049-1 en_GB

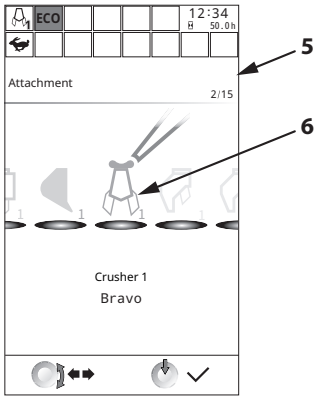
8. Push selector/set switch (2) to make the change.

Priority (Arm Roll-Out)

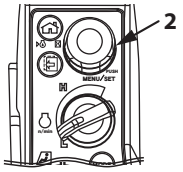
1. From attachment selection screen (5), select an attachment other than Bucket.

   NOTE

   - *For how to select attachments, refer to "Attachment Selection" (1-37).*
   - *In the illustration at right, Crusher 1 (6) has been selected.*
   - *Effectiveness varies with model, machine specifications and work mode.*

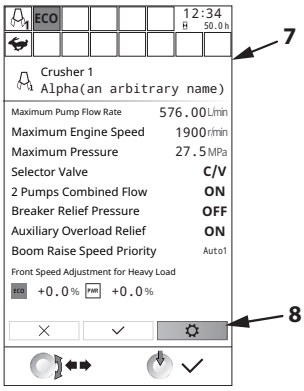


MDFY-MT-044-1 en_GB



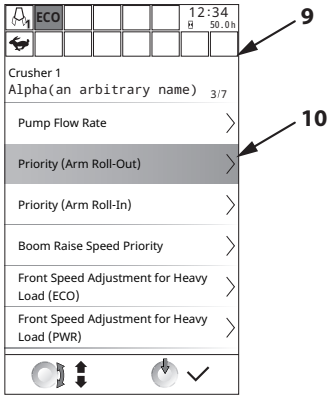
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Make sure that the currently set attachment has been selected, and push selector/set switch (2). Confirmation screen (7) will be displayed.
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight (8).



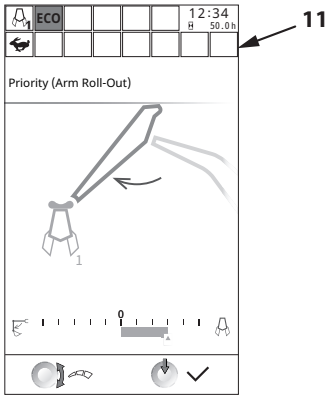
MDFY-MT-045-1 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display setting screen (9).
5. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Priority (Arm Roll-Out) (10).



MDFY-MT-159-1 en_GB

6. Push selector/set switch (2) to display adjustment screen (11).
7. Rotate selector/set switch (2) clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust priority.
   On the bar at the bottom of the screen, the left side indicates arm roll-out priority and the right side attachment priority.
   Priority is adjusted by moving arrow initially positioned at the center bar.The direction and amount the arrow is moved (orange) determine the priority.
8. Push selector/set switch (2) to enable the change.



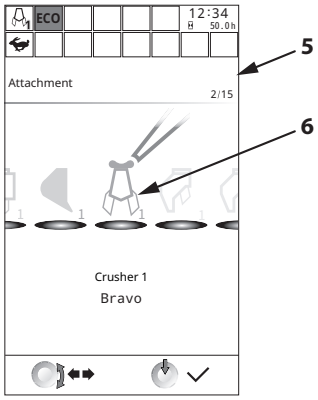
MDFY-MT-051-1 en_GB

Boom Raise Speed Priority (Except ZX135US-7H)

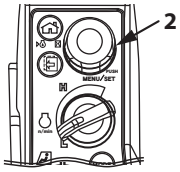
1. From attachment selection screen (5), select an attachment other than Bucket.

   NOTE

   - *For how to select attachments, refer to "Attachment Selection" (1-37).*
   - *In the illustration at right, Crusher 1 (6) has been selected.*

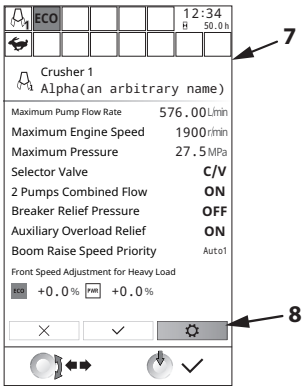


MDFY-MT-044-1 en_GB



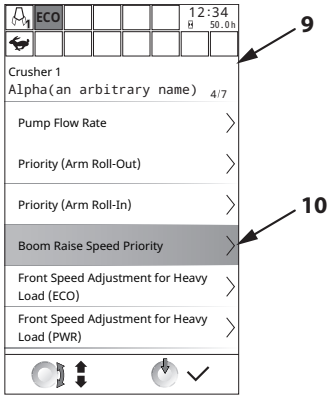
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Make sure that the currently set attachment has been selected, and push selector/set switch (2). Confirmation screen (7) is displayed.
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight ON (8).



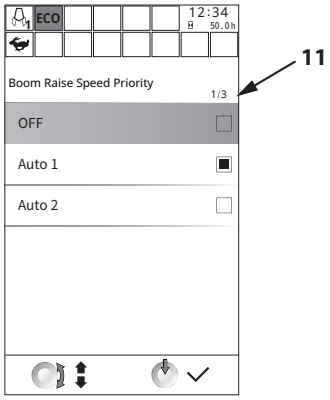
MDFY-MT-045-1 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display setting screen (9).
5. Turn selector/set switch (2) to highlight Boom Raise Speed Priority (10).



MDFY-MT-160-1 en_GB

6. Push selector/set switch (2) to display setting screen (11).
7. Turn selector/set switch (2) to highlight desired mode.
   For mode details, see the section "Attachment Settings" in Chapter 5 "Work Procedures".
8. Push selector/set switch (2) to make the change.
   When the setting is confirmed, a black square appears in the mode checkbox to the right.



MDFY-MT-053-1 en_GB

Front Speed Adjustment for Heavy Load (ECO)(PWR)(H/P)

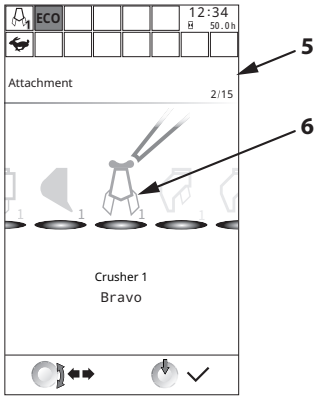
IMPORTANT

The setting procedure for the Front Speed Adjustment for Heavy Load modes (ECO), (PWR) and (H/P) is the same.
In this section, examples of the front attachment speed adjustment for high load (ECO) screens are shown.

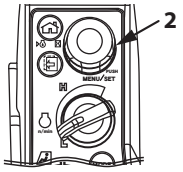
1. From attachment selection screen (5), select an attachment other than Bucket.

   NOTE

   - For how to select an attachment, refer to “Attachment Selection” (1-37).
   - In the illustration at right, Crusher 1 (6) has been selected.

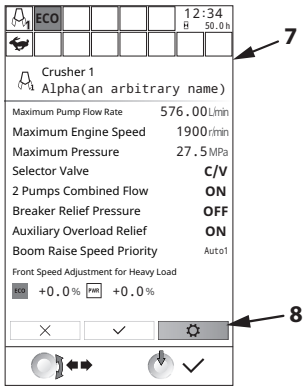


MDFY-MT-044-1 en_GB



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Make sure that the currently set attachment has been selected, and press selector/set switch (2). Confirmation screen (7) is displayed.
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight ON (8).

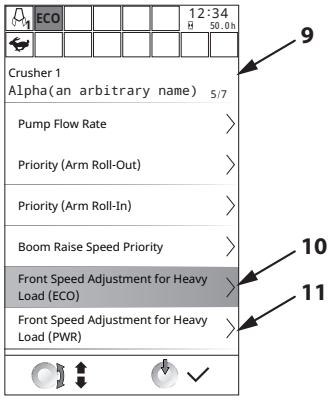


MDFY-MT-045-1 en_GB

4. Press selector/set switch (2) to display setting screen (9).
5. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Front Attachment Speed Adjustment for High Load (ECO) (10).

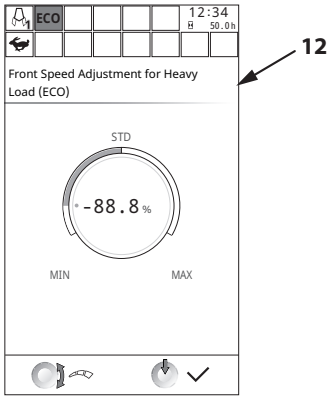
   ## IMPORTANT

   When making a front speed adjustment for a heavy load in PWR or H/P mode, select Front Speed Adjustment for Heavy Load (PWR) (11) or (H/P).



MDFY-MT-161-1 en_GB

6. Press selector/set switch (2) to display setting screen (12).
7. Turn selector/set switch (2) to adjust front attachment speed for high load.
   As selector/set switch (2) is rotated, the arc-like bar and the value in the middle change.
   [- side]
   The pump absorption torque at high loads is reduced.
   The pump discharge flow rate is reduced, reducing the speed of the front attachment.
   [+ side]
   Increases the pump absorption torque for high load.
   Increase the discharge flow rate of the pump to adjust to a fast front attachment speed.
8. Press selector/set switch (2) to make the change.



MDFY-MT-055-1 en_GB

Information

The information screen includes the following items.

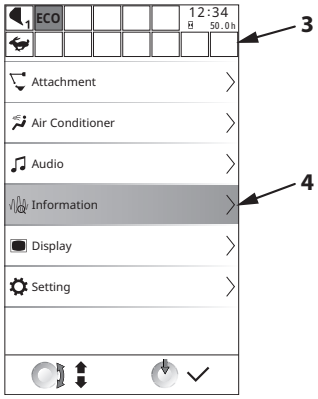
- Operation Information
- Maintenance
- Troubleshooting
- Monitoring
- Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting

Procedure for Displaying Information Screen

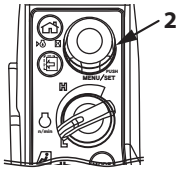
1. From menu screen (3), highlight “Information” (4) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display menu screen (3), refer to “Operating the Main Menu” (1-17).

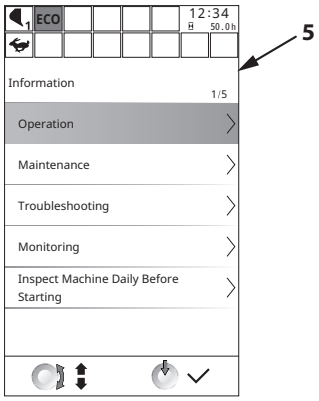


MDFY-MT-029-1 en_GB



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display Information screen (5).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight the item you wish to set.
4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display the corresponding screen.



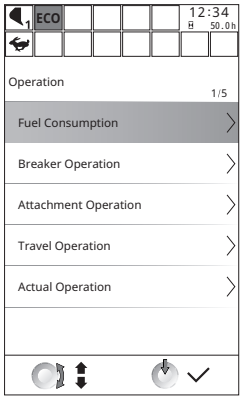
MDFY-MT-030-1 en_GB

Operation Information

In the operation Information, information about the following items can be confirmed.

IMPORTANT

Total fuel consumption and the fuel consumption rate depend on the operating environment and the operation method of the machine.
The values shown on the screen are for reference only.
Differences may arise between the actual fuel consumption and the fuel consumption displayed on the multi-function monitor.



MDFY-MT-031 en_GB

- Fuel Consumption
  Displays machine operation hours, fuel consumption, and average fuel consumption rate since last reset.
- Breaker Operation
  Displays breaker operation hours, machine operation hours, and operation ratio since last reset.
- Attachment Operation
  Displays attachment operation hours since last reset.
- Travel Operation
  Displays travel operation hours since last reset.
- Actual Operation
  Displays total hours of operation (front attachment, travel) since last reset.

NOTE

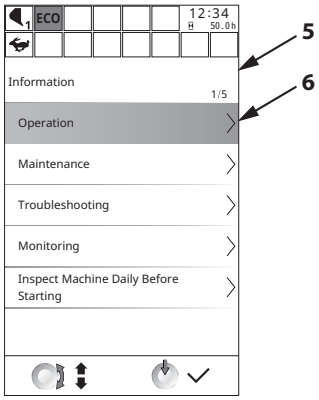
The reset operations for these pieces of informations are performed the from the corresponding information display screens.
Please confirm the display screens for each each of the above.

Fuel Consumption

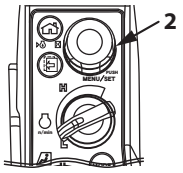
1. From Information screen (5), highlight “Operation” (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display information screen (5), refer to “Information” (1-48).

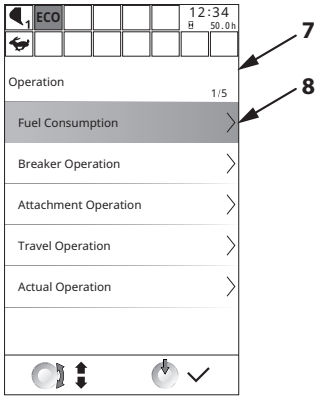


MDFY-MT-030-2 en_GB



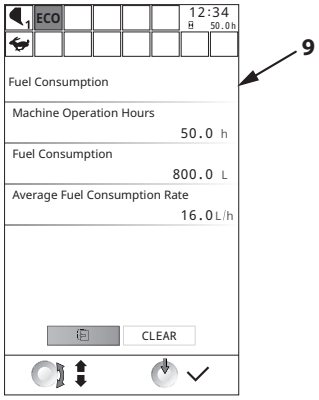
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display “Operation” screen (7).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight “Fuel Consumption” (8).



MDFY-MT-031-1 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display “Fuel Consumption” screen (9).
   Confirm the display information.
5. To reset the display information, rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight “CLEAR”.
   Then push selector/set switch (2) to reset.



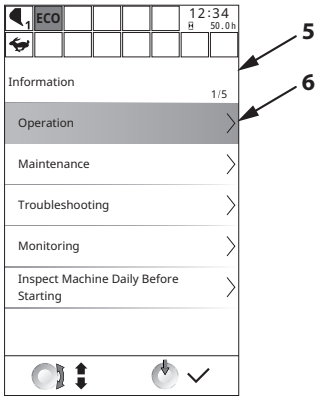
MDFY-MT-032-1 en_GB

Breaker Operation

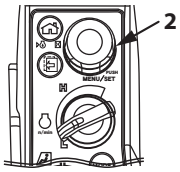
1. From Information screen (5), highlight "Operation" (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display information screen (5), refer to "Information" (1-48).

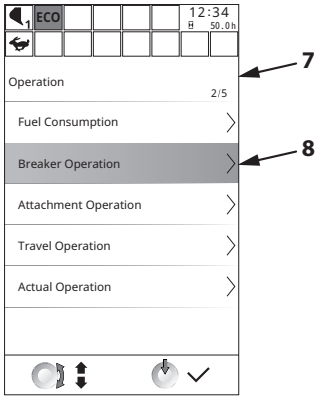


MDFY-MT-030-2 en_GB



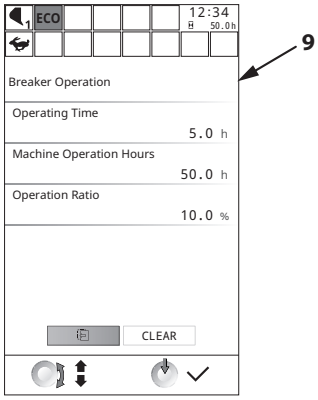
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display "Operation" screen (7).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Breaker Operation (8).



MDFY-MT-070-1 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display "Breaker Operation" screen (9).
   Confirm the display information.
5. To reset the display information, rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight "CLEAR".
   Then push selector/set switch (2) to reset.



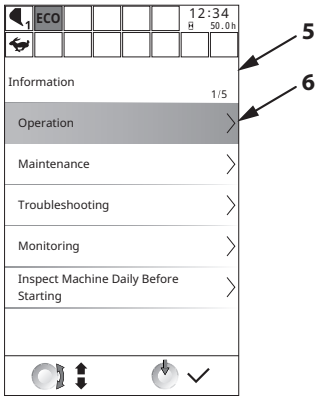
MDFY-MT-033-1 en_GB

Attachment Operation

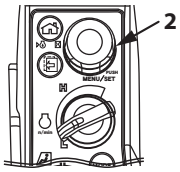
1. From Information screen (5), highlight “Operation” (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display information screen (5), refer to “Information”(1-48).

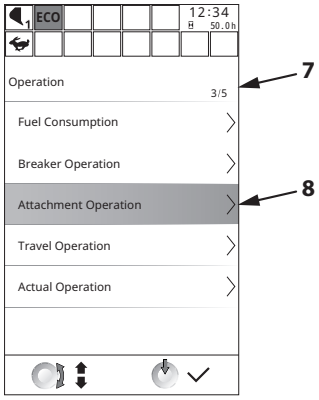


MDFY-MT-030-2 en_GB



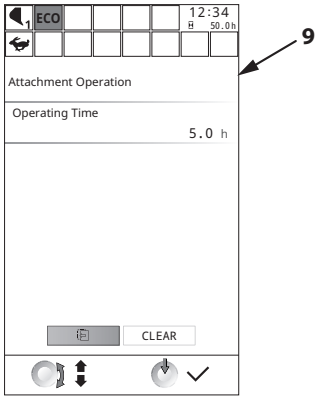
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display “Operation” screen (7).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight “Attachment Operation” (8).



MDFY-MT-071-1 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display “Attachment Operation” screen (9).
   Confirm the display information.
5. To reset the display information, rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight “CLEAR”.
   Then push selector/set switch (2) to reset.



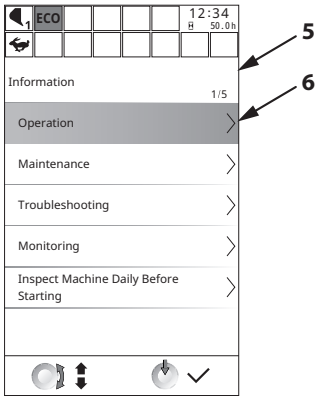
MDFY-MT-034-1 en_GB

Travel Operation

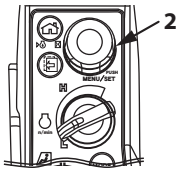
1. From Information screen (5), highlight “Operation” (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display information screen (5), refer to “Information” (1-48).

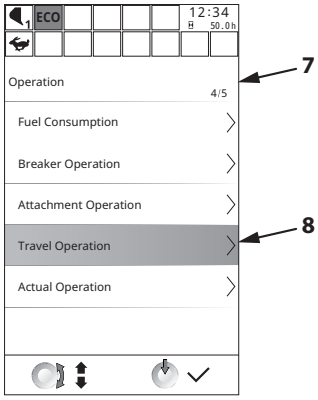


MDFY-MT-030-2 en_GB



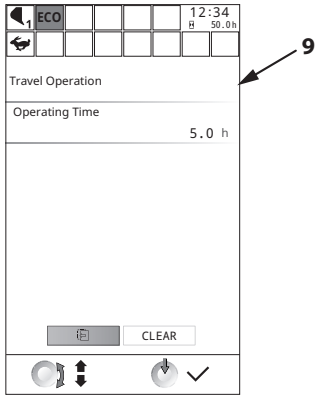
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display “Operation” screen (7).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight “Travel Operation” (8).



MDFY-MT-072-1 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display “Travel Operation” screen (9).
   Confirm the display information.
5. To reset the display information, rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight “CLEAR”.
   Then push selector/set switch (2) to reset.



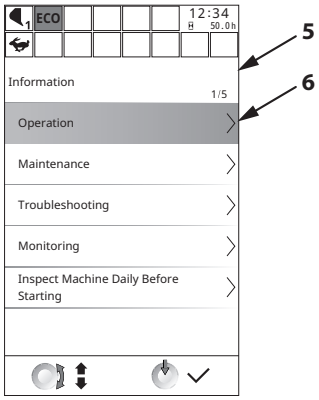
MDFY-MT-035-1 en_GB

Actual Operation

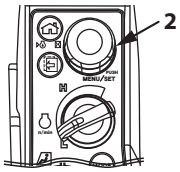
1. From Information screen (5), highlight “Operation” (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display information screen (5), refer to “Information” (1-48).

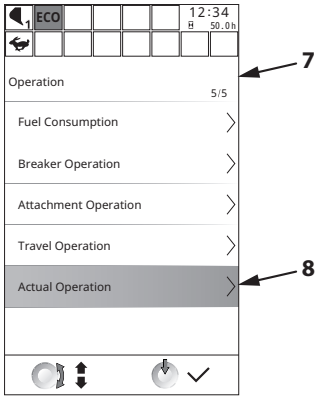


MDFY-MT-030-2 en_GB



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display “Operation” screen (7).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight “Actual Operation” (8).

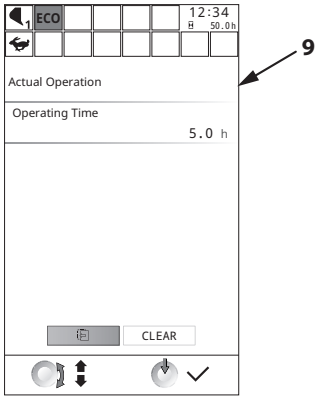


MDFY-MT-073-1 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display “Actual Operation” screen (9).
   Confirm the display information.
5. To reset the display information, rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight “CLEAR”.
   Then push selector/set switch (2) to reset.

   NOTE

   The actual operating time includes travel operation hours as well as all other operations.



MDFY-MT-036-1 en_GB

Maintenance

The maintenance screen includes maintenance notification, remaining time until next maintenance, and maintenance interval settings.
The maintenance items that can be set are as follows.

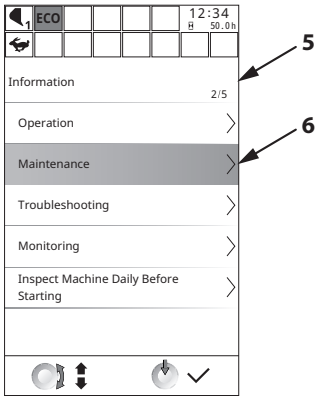
- Engine Oil
- Engine Oil Filter
- Hydraulic Oil
- Hydraulic Oil Pilot Filter
- Hydraulic Oil Full-Flow Filter
- Pump Transmission Oil (Except ZX135US-7H)
- Travel Device Oil
- Swing Device Oil
- Swing Bearing Grease
- Air Cleaner Element
- Fuel Filter
- Air Conditioner Filter
- Muffler Filter
- DEF Supply Module Main Filter
- DEF Tank Water Supply Inlet Filter
- Oil Separator Element (ZX135US-7H only)
- Timing Belt
- User Setting 1
- User Setting 2

Maintenance Notice

1. From information screen (5), highlight "Maintenance" (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

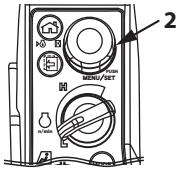
   NOTE

   For how to display information screen (5), refer to "Information" (1-48).

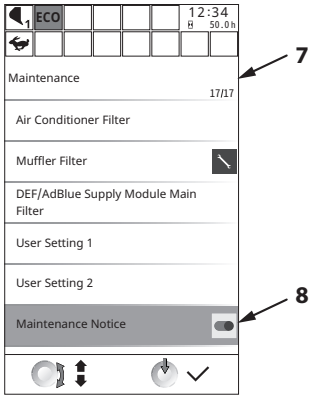


MDFY-MT-038-1 en_GB

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display "Maintenance" screen (7).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight "Maintenance Notice" (8).
4. Push selector/set switch (2) to turn the notice function ON. It is turned OFF by pushing it again.
   [ON]
   When the replacement interval is reached, an infomation message is displayed on the screen.
   [OFF]
   No notification message is displayed.



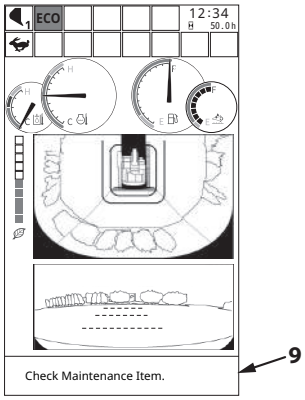
MDFY-01-094-7 ja



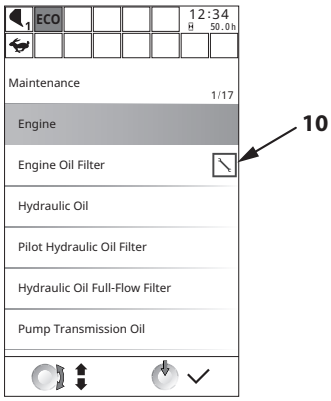
MDFY-MT-141-1 en_GB

NOTE

Once the set interval for an item is reached, message (9) is displayed for 10 seconds when the key is switched ON. Push the back switch to delete the notification. When checking the maintenance items from the menu, items where the set time has been reached are marked with a wrench (10).



MDFY-MT-123-2 en_GB



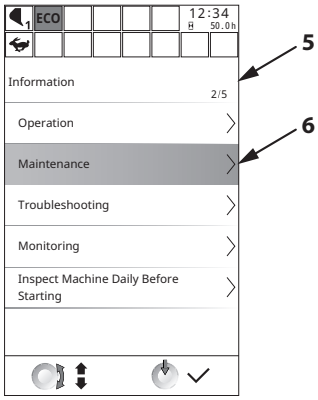
MDFY-MT-039-1 en_GB

Remaining Time and Maintenance Interval

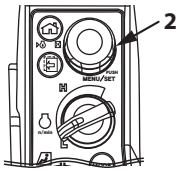
1. From information screen (5), highlight Maintenance (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display information screen (5), refer to "Information" (1-48).

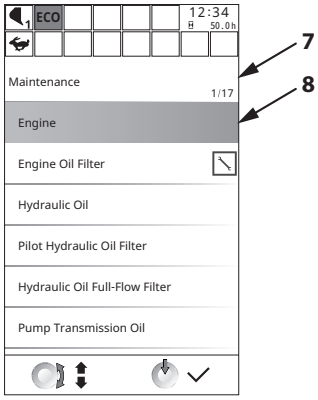


MDFY-MT-038-1 en_GB



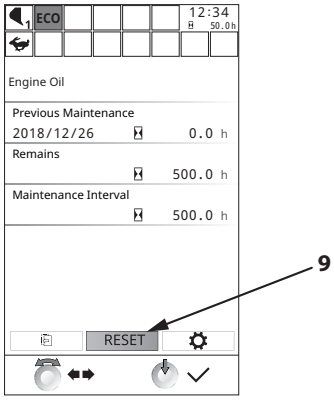
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display Maintenance (list) screen (7).
3. Turn selector/set switch (2) to highlight an item to be checked (8).
   (In this example, Engine Oil is selected.)



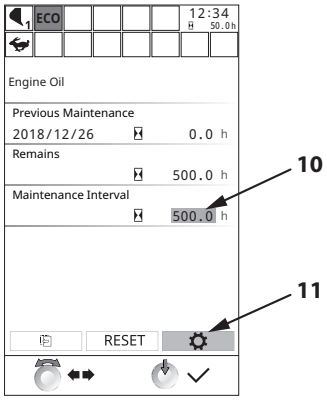
MDFY-MT-039-2 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display the time remaining for the selected maintenance item.
5. To reset the display information, turn selector/set switch (2) to highlight RESET(9).
   Then push selector/set switch (2) to reset.
   The value of the remaining time is reset to the maintenance interval, and the previous maintenance date is updated to the current date.



MDFY-MT-040-1 en_GB

6. To change the maintenance interval, turn selector/set switch (2) to highlight (11) with the cursor, and push selector/set switch (2).
   The background color of maintenance interval (10) changes, then turn selector/set switch (2) to adjust the time, and then push selector/set switch (2) to enable the change.



MDFY-MT-085-1 en_GB

Troubleshooting

This screen displays the fault code recorded in the controller connected to CAN (Controller Area Network).

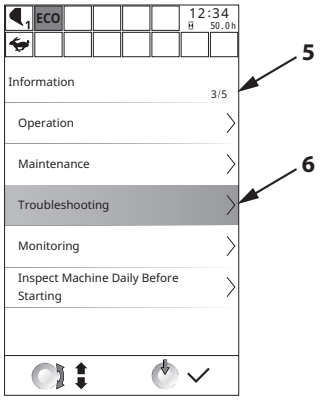
IMPORTANT

If a fault code is displayed, contact Authorized Dealer as soon as possible.

1. From information screen (5), highlight Troubleshooting (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display information screen (5), refer to "Information" (1-48).

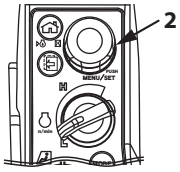


MDFY-MT-124-1 en_GB

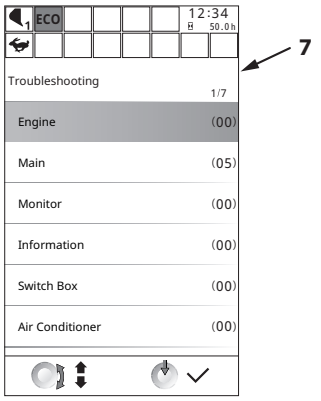
2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display troubleshooting screen (7).
3. The currently generated fault codes are displayed to the right of each item. Turn selector/set switch (2) to highlight the item for which the fault code is displayed.
4. Turn selector/set switch (2) to display the currently generated fault code(s) (8).

   NOTE

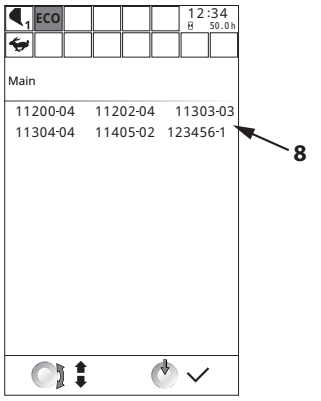
   A maximum of 30 fault codes can be displayed.



MDFY-01-094-7 ja



MDFY-MT-162-1 en_GB



MDFY-MT-126-1 en_GB

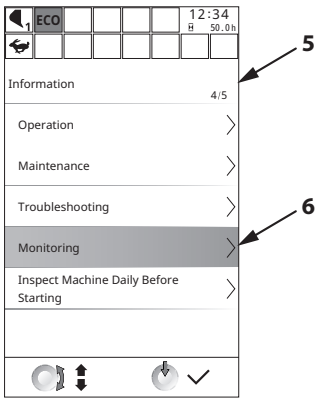
Monitoring

The current communication status (reception level) can be checked.

1. From Information screen (5), highlight “Monitoring” (6) and press selector/set switch (2).

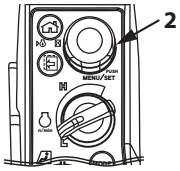
   NOTE

   For how to display information screen (5), refer to “Information” (1-48).

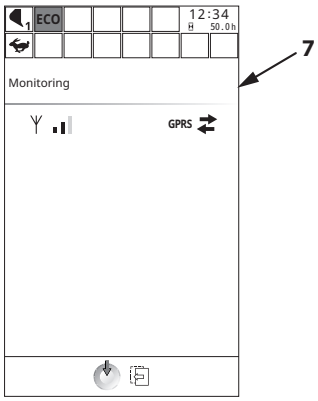


MDFY-MT-041-1 en_GB

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display “Monitoring” screen (7).
   The strength of the reception is indicated by an icon.



MDFY-01-094-7 ja



MDFY-MT-042-1 en_GB

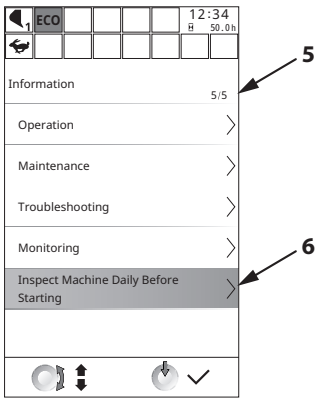
Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting

Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting displays items to be inspected every day before starting work.

1. From Information screen (5), highlight "Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting" (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

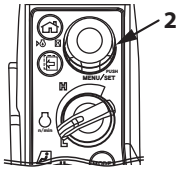
   NOTE

   For how to display information screen (5), refer to "Information" (1-48).

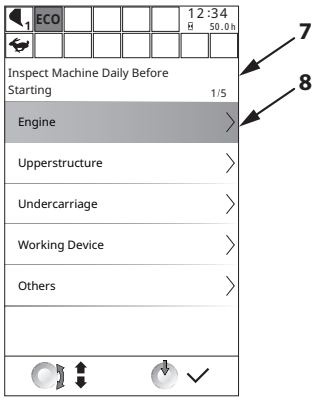


MDFY-MT-127-1 en_GB

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display "Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting" screen (7). The items (8) of each part of the machine which should be check before starting work are displayed.
   The displayed inspection items are intended to assist the inspection before starting and are not exhaustive.
   For details refer to the "Maintenance Guide" in chapter 7, Inspection and Maintenance.



MDFY-01-094-7 ja



MDFY-MT-128-1 en_GB

Display

On the display screen, the following settings can be changed.

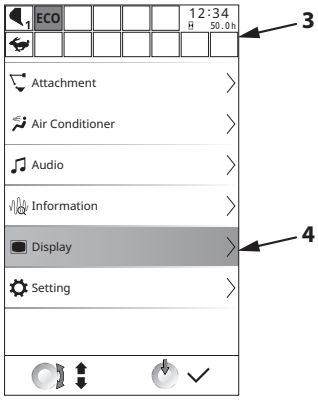
- Date and Time
- Brightness Adjustment
- Language
- Unit Selection

Procedure for Displaying the Display Screen

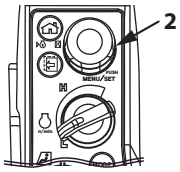
1. From menu screen (3), highlight Display (4) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display menu screen (3), refer to "Operating the Main Menu" (1-17)

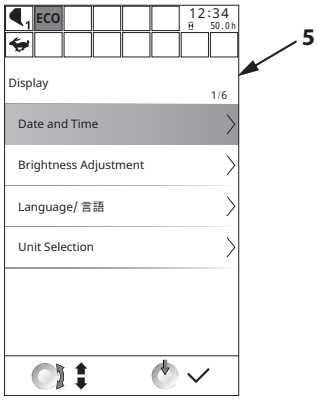


MDFY-MT-069-1 en_GB



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to open "Display" screen (5).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight the item you wish to set.
4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display the corresponding screen.



MDFY-MT-017-1 en_GB

Date and Time

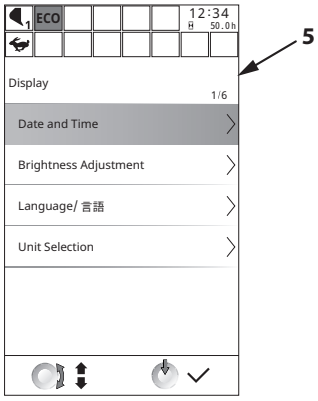
Time, date and display mode can be set on this screen. Year-month-day format and 24h/12h display mode can be selected in the display setting.

Time Adjustment Procedure

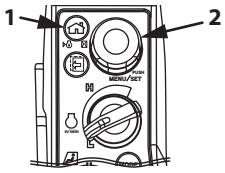
1. From display screen (5), highlight “Date and Time” and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to go to display screen (5), refer to “Display” (1-63).

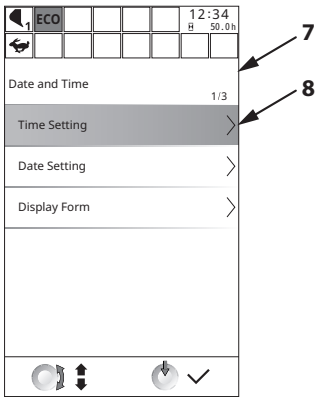


MDFY-MT-017-1 en_GB



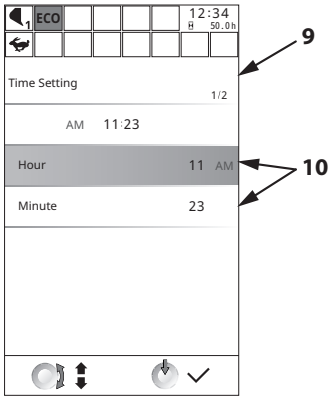
MDFY-01-094-12 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display “Date and Time” screen (7).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Time Setting (8).



MDFY-MT-018-1 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display "Time Setting" screen (9).
5. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight “Hour” or “Minute” (10) and push selector/set switch (2).
6. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to adjust the clock values. Rotate clockwise to adjust the value upwards, and counterclockwise to decrease.
7. Once the values are correct, push selector/set switch (2) to end the setting procedure.
8. After completing the settings, push home switch (1) to return to the basic screen.



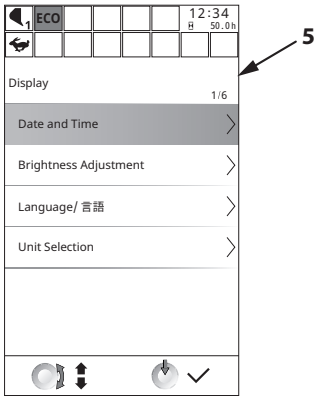
MDFY-MT-163-1 en_GB

Date Setting Procedure

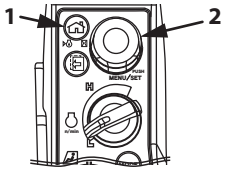
1. From display screen (5), highlight "Date and Time" and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to go to display screen (5), refer to "Display" (1-63).

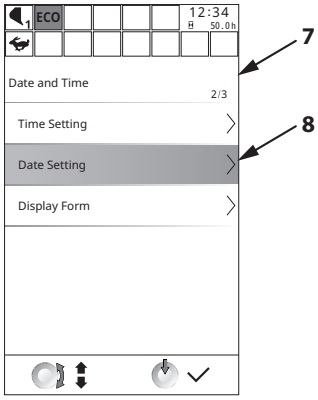


MDFY-MT-017-1 en_GB



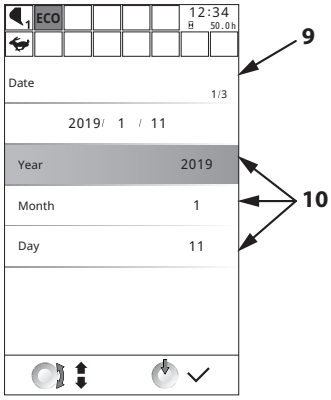
MDFY-01-094-12 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display "Date and Time" screen (7).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight "Date Setting" (8).



MDFY-MT-020-1 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display "Date" screen (9).
5. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight "Year", "Month" or "Day" (10) and push selector/set switch (2).
6. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to adjust the date. Rotate clockwise to adjust the value upwards, and counterclockwise to decrease.
7. Push selector/set switch (2) to end the date setting procedure.
8. After completing the settings, push home switch (1) to return to the basic screen.



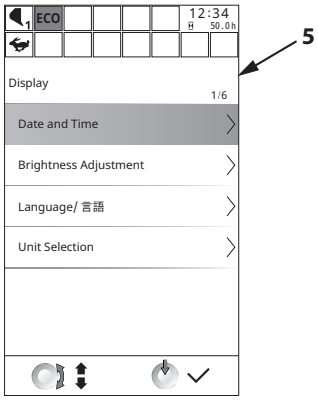
MDFY-MT-021-1 en_GB

Procedure for Setting Display Mode

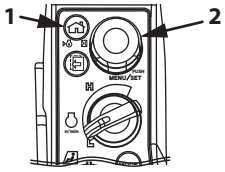
1. From display screen (5), highlight "Date and Time" and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to go to display screen (5), refer to "Display" (1-63).

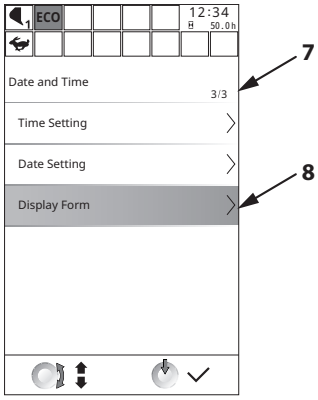


MDFY-MT-017-1 en_GB



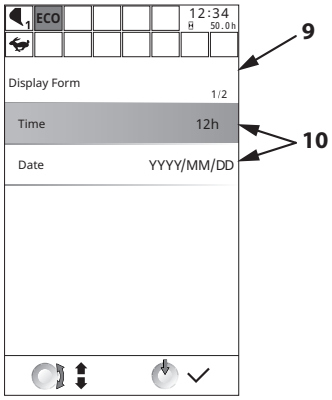
MDFY-01-094-12 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display "Date and Time" screen (7).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight "Display Form" (8).



MDFY-MT-022-1 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display "Display Form" screen (9).
5. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight “Time” or “Date” (10) and push selector/set switch (2).
6. Select Display Mode.
   [Time]
   Each push of selector/set switch (2) changes the time format as follows: 12h > 24h > 12h.
   [Date]
   Each push of selector/set switch (2) change the date format as follows: YYYY/MM/DD > MM/DD/YYYY > DD/MM/YYYY > YYYY/MM/DD.
7. After completing the settings, push home switch (1) to return to the basic screen.



MDFY-MT-023-1 en_GB

MDAA-01-230 en_GB

MDAA-01-231 en_GB

MDAA-01-232 en_GB

MDAA-01-233 en_GB

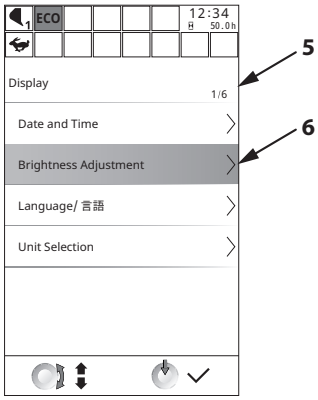
MDAA-01-234 en_GB

Brightness Adjustment Procedure

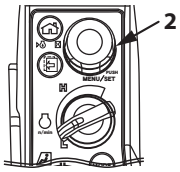
1. From display screen (5), highlight "Brightness Adjustment" (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to go to display screen (5), refer to "Display" (1-63).

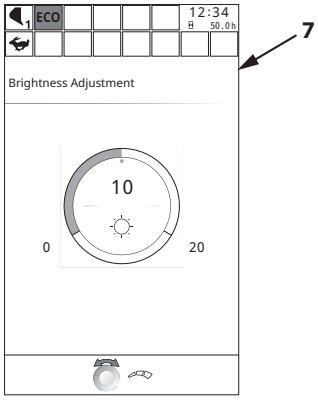


MDFY-MT-024-1 en_GB

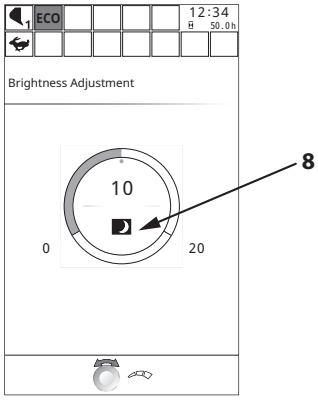


MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display "Brightness Adjustment" screen (7).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) clockwise to make the screen brighter, counterclockwise to make the screen darker.
4. Once the desired brightness is achieved, push selector/set switch (2) to finalize.



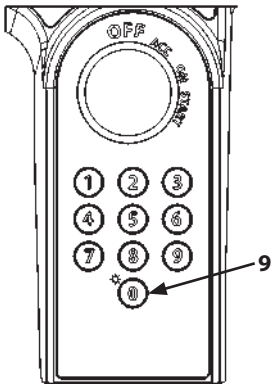
MDFY-MT-025-1 en_GB



MDFY-MT-026-1 en_GB

NOTE

- *When the work light is turned ON, the monitor screen changes to night mode and mark (8) is displayed. Brightness can be adjusted for day mode and night mode respectively.*
- *When the work light is turned ON during daytime, you can still activate the daytime screen by pushing "0" (9) on the numeric keypad.*



Numeric Keypad

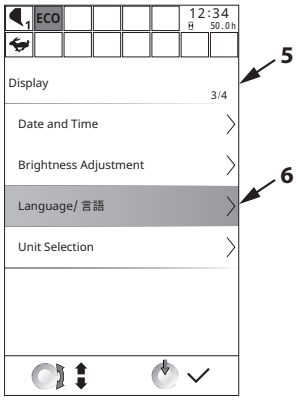
MDFY-01-017-1 ja

Language Setting Procedure

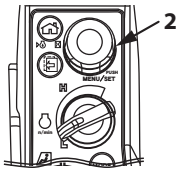
1. From display screen (5), highlight “Language/言語” (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to go to display screen (5), refer to “Display” (1-63).



MDFY-MT-082-1 en_GB



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display “Language/言語” screen (7).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight the desired language. Push selector/set switch (2) to make the change.
   When the setting is confirmed, a black square appears in the checkbox.
   To display in the set language, a monitor system restart is required. Turn the key switch to the OFF position and then turn it to the ON position again.

MDFY-MT-027-1 en_GB

Display Language List

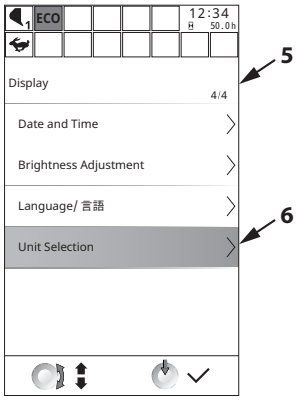
Language	Screen Display	Language	Screen Display
English	English	Vietnamese	Tiếng Việt
Japanese	日本語	Burmese	မြန်မာ
Chinese (Traditional)	繁體中文	Arabic	اللغة العربية
Spanish	Español	Persian	زبان فارسی
Italian	Italiano	Turkish	Türkçe
French	Français	Danish	Dansk
German	Deutsch	Estonian	Eesti
Dutch	Nederlands	Polish	Polski
Russian	Русский	Icelandic	Íslenska
Portuguese	Português	Croatian	Hrvatski
Chinese (Simplified)	简体中文	Slovenian	Slovenščina
Finnish	Suomi	Romanian	limba română
Greek	Ελληνικά	Bulgarian	Български език
Swedish	Svenska	Lithuanian	Lietuvių kalba
Norwegian	Norsk	Czech	Čeština
Slovakian	Slovenčina	Hungarian	Magyar
Serbian	Srpski	Hebrew	עברית
Latvian	Latviešu		

Unit Setting Procedure

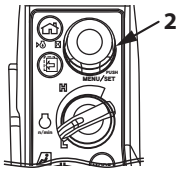
1. From display screen (5), highlight "Unit Selection" (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to go to display screen (5), refer to "Display" (1-63).

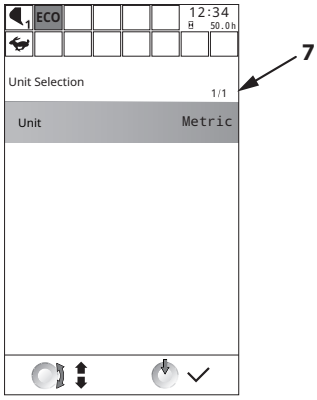


MDFY-MT-083-1 en_GB



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display unit selection screen (7).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight "Unit". Push selector/set switch (2) to set the unit (Metric or US system).



MDFY-MT-028-1 en_GB

Settings

On the setting screen, settings can be changed for the following items.

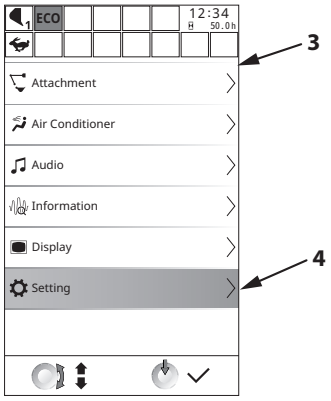
- Meter
- PBLI
- Auto Shut-Down
- Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibit
- Attachment Name Input
- Password Change (Optional)

How to Display the Setting Screen

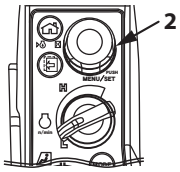
1. From menu screen (3), select "Setting" (4) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display menu screen (3), refer to "Displaying the Main Menu" (1-17).

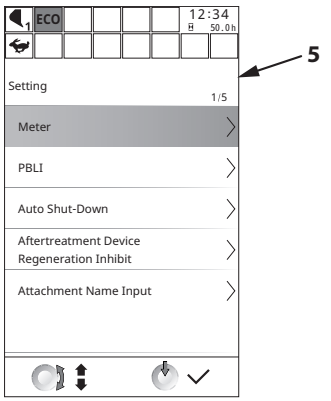


MDFY-MT-009-1 en_GB



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display Setting screen (5).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight the item you wish to set.
4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display the corresponding screen.



MDFY-MT-010-1 en_GB

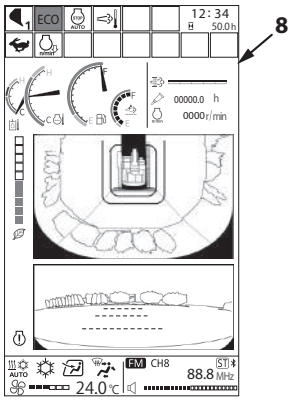
Meter

From the meter setting screen, settings for “Sub Meter”, “ECO Gauge” and “Hydraulic Oil Temperature” can be made. In addition, under Sub Meter, 6 different sub meters are available for selection.

Sub Meter Selection

Select sub meters to add to the display in sub meter display area (8).

- Average Fuel Consumption Rate
- Breaker Hour Meter
- Actual Engine Speed
- Outside Temperature Gauge
- Particulate Matter Accumulation
- Voltmeter



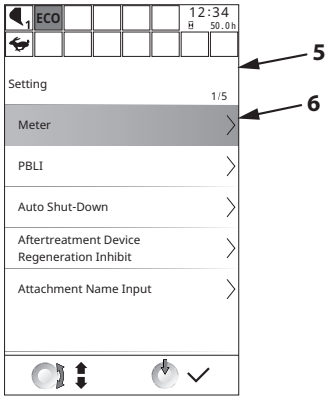
MDFY-MT-001-2 ja

Sub Meter Selection Procedure

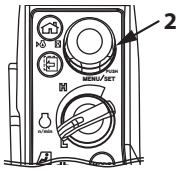
1. From settings screen (5), select Meter (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display settings screen (5), refer to Settings (1-74).

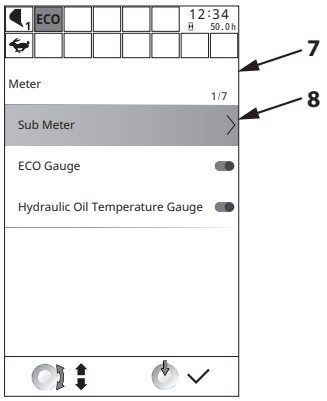


MDFY-MT-010-2 en_GB



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Sub Menu (8).

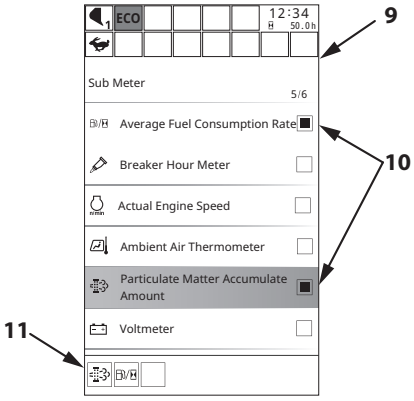


MDFY-MT-011-1 en_GB

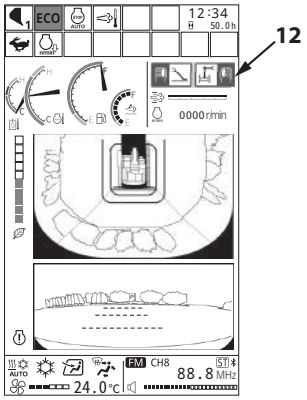
3. Push selector/set switch (2) to display sub meter selection screen (9).
4. Turn selector/set switch (2) to highlight the desired meter option.
5. Push selector/set switch (2) to make the change. When the setting is confirmed, a black square appears in checkbox (10) to the right.
   Pushing selector/set switch (2) again cancels the selection.

NOTE

- *Up to 3 sub meters can be selected at a time. The icons of the selected sub meters are displayed in the area marked (11).*
- *If the machine is equipped with the AUX function levers, sub meter (12), which displays the registered functions of the attachment switches on the AUX function levers, appears at the top of the sub meter display area. There are 2 other sub meters that can be displayed.*
  To change functions assigned to the attachment switch of the AUX function lever, contact Authorized Dealer.



MDFY-MT-012-1 en_GB

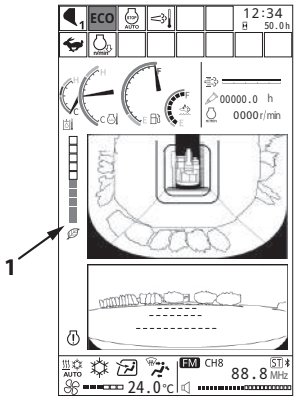


MDFY-MT-156-1 ja

Eco Gauge

Meter area (1) displays the environmental impact of the way the machine is being driven.

The higher the gauge reading, the ower the environmental impact.



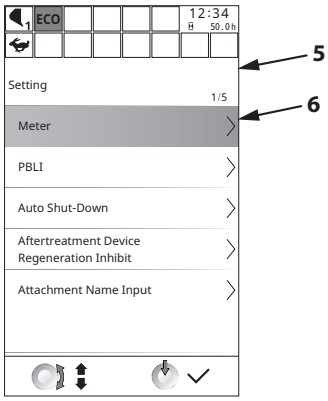
MDFY-MT-001-3 ja

Eco Gauge Display Procedure

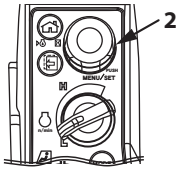
1. From Setting screen (5), select Meter (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display setting screen (5), refer to "Setting" (1-74).

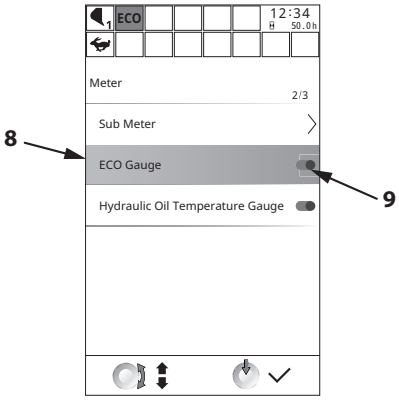


MDFY-MT-010-2 en_GB



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

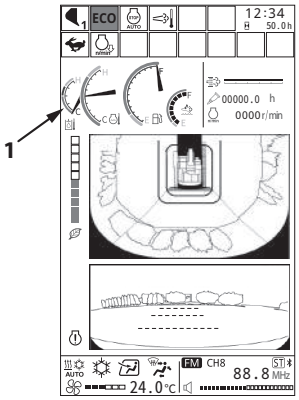
2. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Eco Gauge (8).
3. Push selector/set switch (2) to toggle switch icon (9).
   When switch icon (9) is toggled to the right, the gauge is turned ON and the background turns green.
   When toggled to the left, the switch is turned OFF and the background turns white.



MDFY-MT-063-1 en_GB

Hydraulic Oil Temperature

Meter area (1) displays the hydraulic oil temperature gauge.



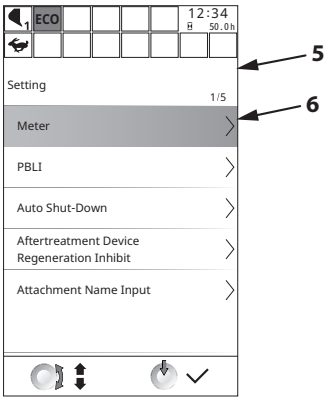
MDFY-MT-001-4 ja

Procedure for Displaying the Hydraulic Oil Temperature Gauge

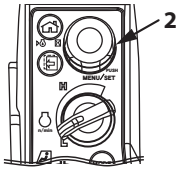
1. From Setting screen (5), select Meter (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display settings screen (5), refer to "Setting" (1-74).

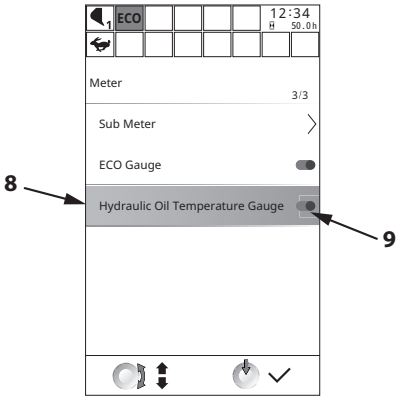


MDFY-MT-010-2 en_GB



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Hydraulic Oil Temperature Gauge (8).
3. Push selector/set switch (2) to toggle switch icon (9).
   When switch icon (9) is toggled to the right, the gauge is turned ON and the background turns green.
   When toggled to the left, the switch is turned OFF and the background turns white.



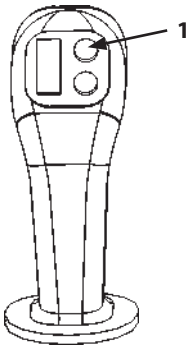
MDFY-MT-064-1 en_GB

PBLI (Push Button Low Idle)

The function of button (1) on the right control lever can be changed.

The following 4 variations of the function are available.

- Low Idle & Mute Radio
  Sets engine to set to slow idle speed and mutes the audio system.
- Low Idle Only
  Sets engine to slow idle speed.
- Mute Radio Only
  Mutes the audio system.
- OFF
  No function.



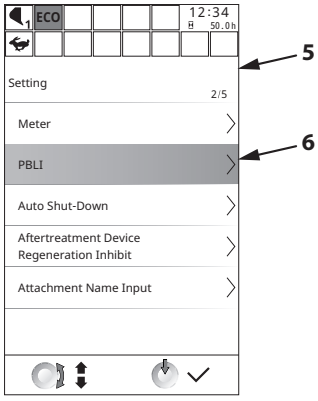
MCGB-01-030-2 ja

PBLI Selection Procedure

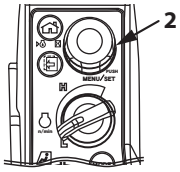
1. From setting screen (5), highlight PBLI (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display setting screen (5), refer to "Setting" (1-74).

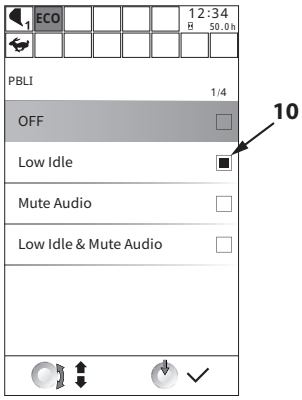


MDFY-MT-065-1 en_GB



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight the desired function (turns blue).
3. Push selector/set switch (2) to enable the change. When the setting is confirmed, a black square appears in checkbox (10) to the right. Pushing selector/set switch (2) again will cancel the selection.

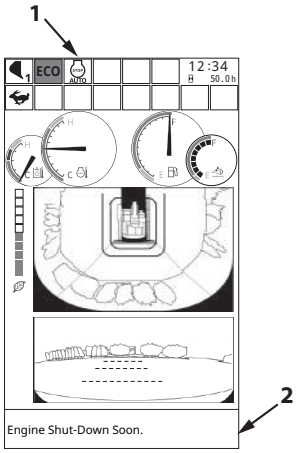


MDFY-MT-121-1 en_GB

Auto Shut-Down

WARNING

This function automatically stops the engine. Pay extra attention to the work being performed and working environment when using this function.



MDFY-MT-134-1 en_GB

The auto shut-down function can be set in this screen. Set the auto shut-down time and turn the function ON. Once the pilot shut-off lever is in LOCK position, the engine will automatically stop when the set time elapses. 30 seconds before the "Engine Shut-Down Soon.", display (2) shows a message indicating that the engine will stop and the indicator (1) starts flashing. The buzzer also sounds. The buzzer sounds once at 30 seconds before, and then continuously from 15 seconds before the engine stops. The engine speed drops to idle, and then stops after 15 seconds. If the pilot shut-off lever is in UNLOCK position before the engine stops, auto shut-down is disabled and the engine will not stop.

IMPORTANT

When the engine has been stopped by the auto shut-down function, to restart the engine, turn the key switch to ACC or OFF once, then turn it to START. When leaving the machine for a long period of time, turn the key switch OFF after auto shut-down. Do not simply leave the machine after auto shut-down. Doing so may result in the batteries discharging.

Toggling Auto Shut-Down ON/OFF and Changing the Setting Time

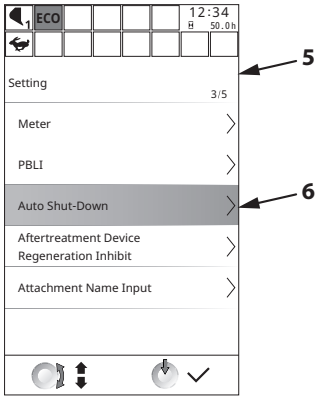
NOTE

The setting time can only be changed when the auto shut-down function is OFF. First change the setting time.

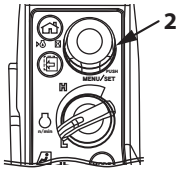
1. From setting screen (5), select Auto Shut-Down (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display settings screen (5), refer to "Settings" (1-74).

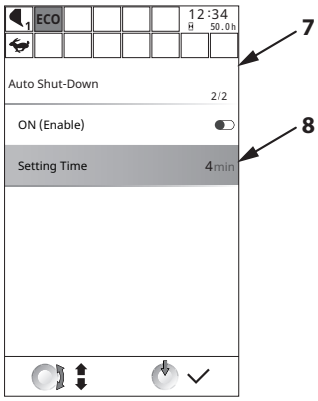


MDFY-MT-066-1 en_GB



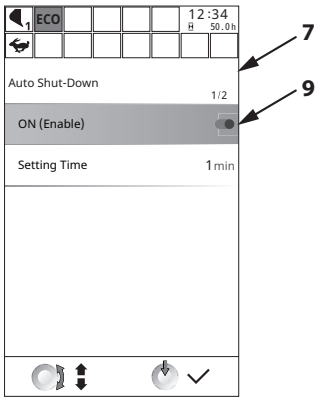
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. On pushing selector/set switch (2), "Auto Shut-Down" screen (7) will be displayed.
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Setting Time (8) and push selector/set switch (2).
   As selector/set switch (2) is rotated the Setting Time will change. Set it to the desired time.
4. Push selector/set switch (2) to confirm the change.



MDFY-MT-016-1 en_GB

5. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight ON (Enable).
6. Push selector/set switch (2) to toggle switch icon (9).
   When switch icon (9) is toggled to the right, the gauge is turned ON and the background turns green.
   When toggled to the left, the switch is turned OFF and the background turns white.



MDFY-MT-015-1 en_GB

Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibit

IMPORTANT

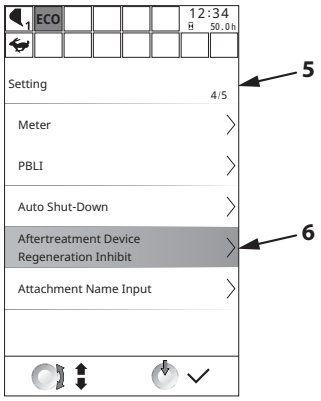
The aftertreatment device regeneration can be inhibited from this screen to prevent auto regeneration while operating the machine in a dusty area or indoors.

Setting Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibition

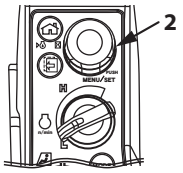
1. From settings screen (5), select Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibit (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display settings screen (5), refer to Settings (1-74).

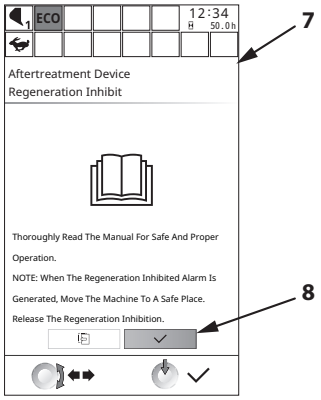


MDFY-MT-067-1 en_GB



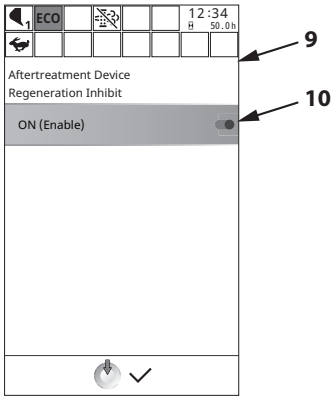
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display aftertreatment device regeneration inhibited screen (7).
3. Check the message displayed on the monitor. After confirming, turn selector/set switch (2) to move the cursor over checkmark (8).



MDFY-MT-013-1 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display aftertreatment device regeneration inhibited screen (9).
5. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight ON (enable) (10).
6. Push selector/set switch (2) to toggle switch icon (10).
   When switch icon (10) is toggled to the right, the gauge is turned ON and the background turns green.
   When toggled to the left, the switch is turned OFF and the background turns white.

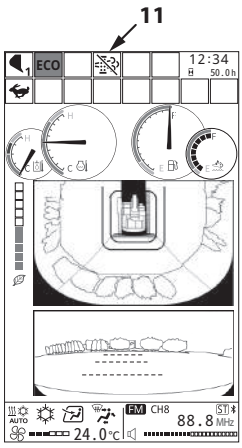


MDFY-MT-014-1 en_GB

7. When ON is selected, regeneration inhibited icon (11) is displayed on the monitor.

IMPORTANT

When the aftertreatment device regeneration request is displayed, move the machine to a safe place and follow the set procedure for releasing the inhibition on regeneration. Failure to do so may damage the aftertreatment device. For regeneration, refer to Aftertreatment Device (1-32,5-12).



MDFY-MT-152-1 ja

Attachment Name Input

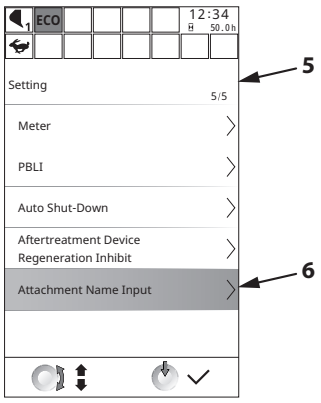
The attachment name displayed on the monitor can be changed.

Procedure for Entering a Name

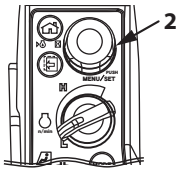
1. From setting screen (5), select Attachment Name Input (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display settings screen (5), refer to "Settings" (1-74).

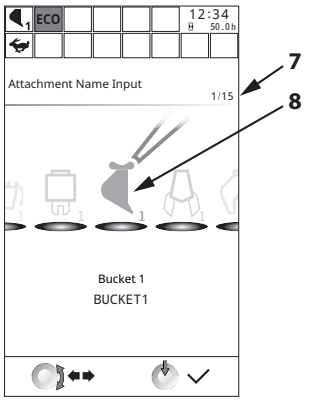


MDFY-MT-068-1 en_GB



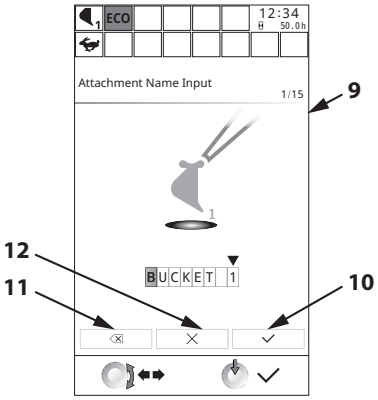
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display Attachment Name Input screen (7).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight attachment (8) which is to undergo the change in name.



MDFY-MT-074-1 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to Attachment Name Input screen (9).
5. Spaces for 8 characters will appear. Starting with the leftmost character, enter text one character at a time.
   To input text, push selector/set switch (2) and rotate left and right to enter.
6. On completion, rotate selector/set switch (2) to move the cursor over checkmark icon (10).
7. Push selector/set switch (2) to finalize the name change.



MDFY-MT-075-1 en_GB

NOTE

To delete the last entered character, rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight (11), and then push selector/set switch (2).
To delete all entered characters, highlight (12) with the cursor and push selector/set switch (2).

Password Change (Optional)

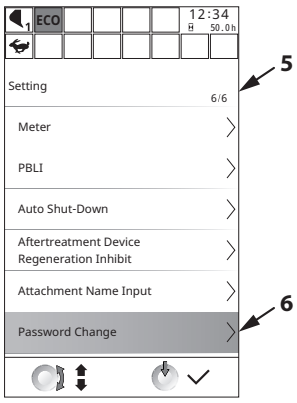
When the password security function is enabled, the password can be changed.

Procedure for Changing

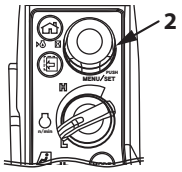
1. From setting screen (5), select Password Change (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display setting screen (5), refer to "Setting" (1-74).

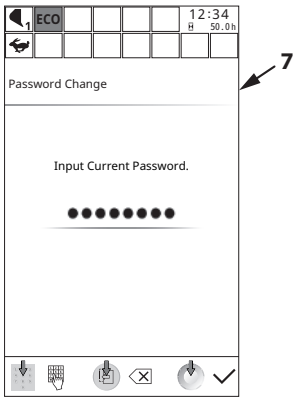


MDFY-MT-081-1 en_GB

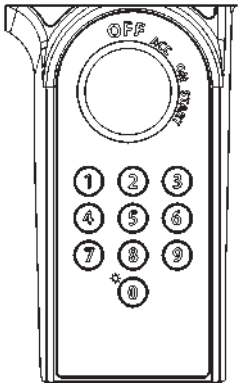


MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display Password Change screen (7).
3. Following the instructions on the monitor, enter the current password.
   Use the numeric keypad to enter.



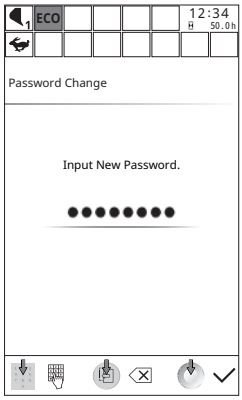
MDFY-MT-076-1 en_GB



Numeric Keypad

MDFY-01-017 ja

4. Following the instructions on the monitor, enter the new password.
   The password must 3 to 8 digits long.
   After entering, push selector/set switch (2).

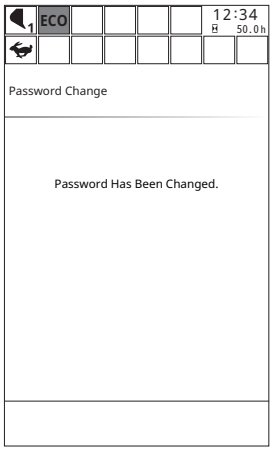


MDFY-MT-077 en_GB

5. Following the instructions on the monitor, enter the new password again.
   After entering, push selector/set switch (2).

MDFY-MT-078 en_GB

6. The monitor should now display a message saying "Password Has Been Changed.". This indicates that the password has been changed successfully.

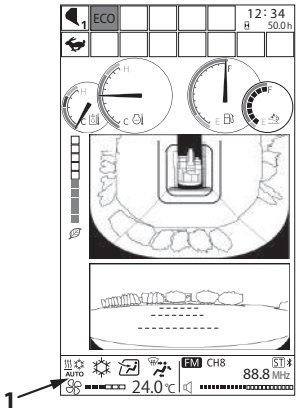


MDFY-MT-079 en_GB

Auto Air Conditioner

Summary

The features of the automatic air conditioner in the machine are as follows. Be sure to fully read and understand it before use.
The operation/settings status of the air conditioner is displayed at the bottom (1) of the monitor.
The various air conditioner settings can be made using dedicated switches (2), (3) and (4), or via the monitor.
For how to perform these operations, please see the following pages.

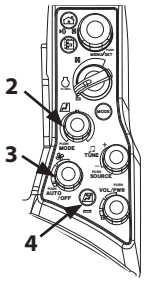


MDFY-MT-100-11 ja

IMPORTANT

If mark (5) is displayed on air conditioner display (1), there is a problem in communication between the air conditioner and the monitor. Consult Authorized Dealer.

MDFY-01-096-1 ja



MDFY-01-027-15 ja

Features

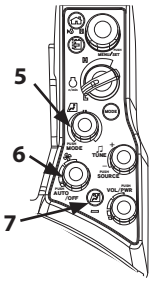
- Full auto control
  The vent temperature, vent flow rate, intakes, and vents are automatically controlled to maintain the temperature set for inside the cab using the temperature control switch, irrespective of fluctuations in outside air temperature, sunlight, etc.
  It may change to cool head/warm feet (bi-level) mode in some conditions, such as set temperature, inside/outside temperature, amount of sun, etc.
- Max. Cooling and Heating
  Maximum cooling or heating can be selected by setting the temperature setting display to 18 °C (64 °F) or 32 °C (90 °F) using the temperature control switch.
- Heater Start-Operation Control System
  In winter or in cold weather, when starting the engine, the engine coolant is cool and air temperature inside the cab is low. Until the coolant is warmed, when the front foot vent and/or foot vent is selected, the air flow level is fixed to the minimum setting and cool air is restricted from entering the cab.

Name of Components

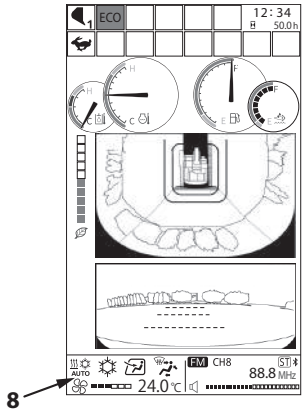
1- Front Vents
2- Foot Vents
3- Defroster Vent
4- Rear Vent
5- Temperature Control Switch/Mode Switch
6- AUTO/OFF Switch/Fan Switch
7- Circulating/Fresh Air Damper Switch
8- Air Conditioner Display (Monitor)

NOTE

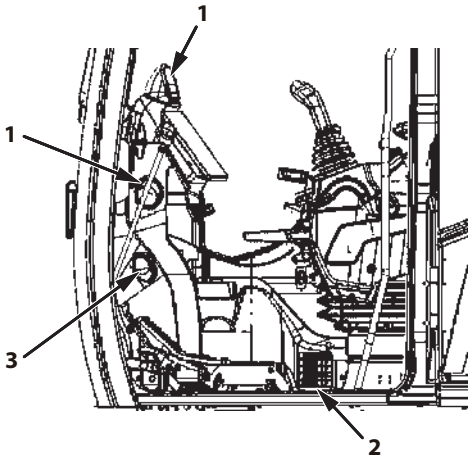
Air flow direction can be adjusted by moving the louvers on all air vents except for foot vent (2). Window fogging can be suppressed by facing vents to the side and rear windows. The louvers of front (1), defroster (3) and rear (4) vents can be opened/closed manually as well.



MDFY-01-027-8 ja

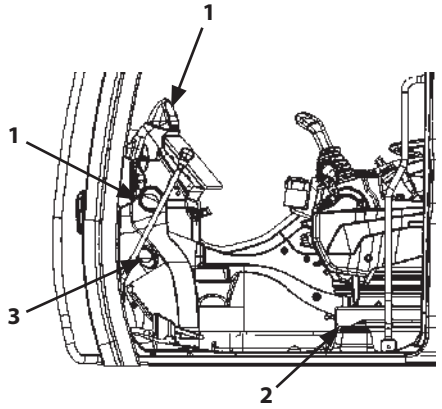


MDFY-MT-100-12 ja



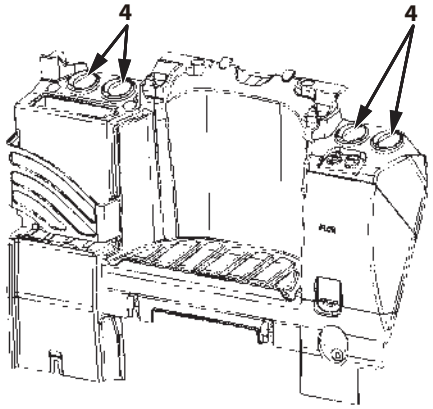
ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-009-1 ja



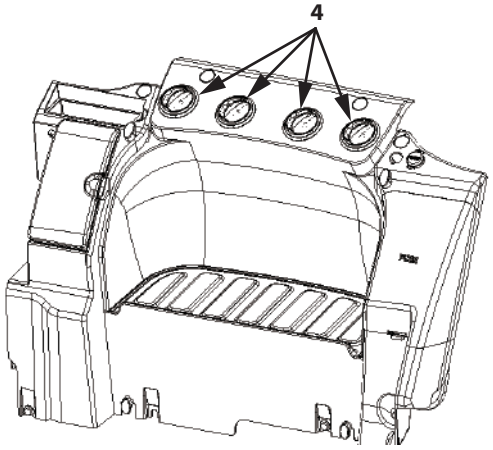
ZX345USLC-7H

MDFY-01-022-2 ja



ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

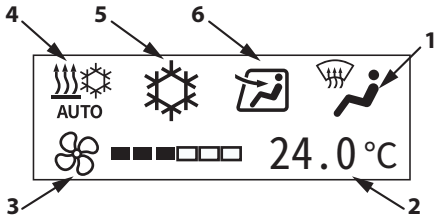
MDA4-01-010-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDFY-01-114-3 ja

Air Conditioner Display (Monitor)



MDFY-01-097-1 ja

1- Vent Display
2- Temperature Display
3- Fan Level Display
4- AUTO Display
5- Air Conditioner Compressor ON/OFF Display
6- Circulating/Fresh Air Display

- Vent Display
  The vents can be changed by toggling between modes.

Front Air Vents
(Including defroster vent)

Front, rear and defroster vents
(Including defroster vent)

Front, rear, foot and defroster vents
(Including defroster vent)

Foot Vent

- Temperature Display
  Displays set temperature.
- Fan Level
  Can be adjusted to one of 6 levels. The fan level is indicated by the segment display.
- AUTO Display
  When full auto air conditioning (temperature, fan level, air direction) is selected, “AUTO” is displayed.
- Air Conditioner Compressor ON/OFF Display
  When this icon is lit, the air conditioner compress is ON.
- Circulating/Fresh Air Display
  Indicates whether fresh air is being drawn into the cab.

Air is being circulated within the cab.

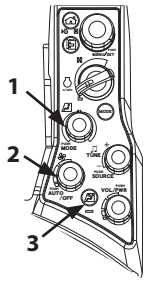
Air from outside is being drawn in.

Air Conditioner Operation (When Operating with Switches)

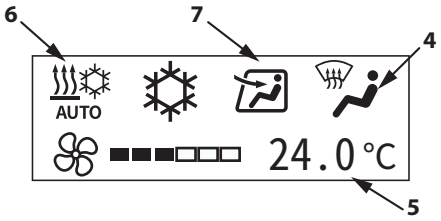
The air conditioner is operated using switches (1), (2) and (3) on the switch panel.
The following explains the operation of these switches.

IMPORTANT

The air conditioner compressor ON/OFF function is available only via the monitor.
For guidance on this operation, refer to "Turning the Air Conditioner Compressor ON/OFF" (1-101).



MDFY-01-027-16 ja



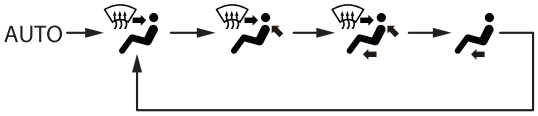
MDFY-01-097-2 ja

Mode Switch

Pushing selector/set switch (1) cycles the setting through 4 vent arrangements.
As the mode is toggled, vent indicator (4) on the monitor changes accordingly.

NOTE

Pressing switch (2) while "AUTO" is selected will cancel "AUTO".



MDFY-01-104-1 ja

Temperature Control Switch

Rotate switch (1) to change temperature display (5).
Rotate clockwise to increase the temperature, and counterclockwise to decrease it.
The temperature can be set from 18.0 to 32 °C (64 to 90 °F). It can be set in 0.5 °C (0.9 °F) increments.
Use this to set the desired temperature.

AUTO/OFF Switch

While the air conditioner is OFF, pushing switch (2) switches the unit to AUTO mode and causes icon (6) to light up on the monitor display.
Pushing switch (2) while the icon is lit will stop operation of the fan and air conditioner.

Fan Switch

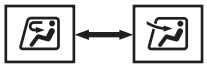
Rotating switch (2) toggles the fan.
Rotate clockwise to increase the air flow and counterclockwise to reduce it.

NOTE

When AUTO is selected, operating the fan switch toggles the manual mode.

Circulating/Fresh Air Control Switch

1. When the lower indicator of switch (3) is lit up in green, the mode is circulating air mode. When off, the mode is fresh air mode.
   Pushing the switch toggles between these modes. As the mode is toggled, icon (7) on the monitor changes accordingly.



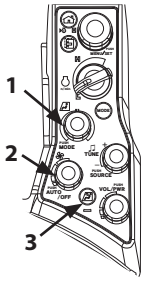
MDFY-01-105 ja

Air Conditioner Operation (When Operating with Monitor)

The operation of the air conditioner is normally controlled using switches (1), (2) and (3), but similar operations can be performed from the multi-function monitor.
The following describes how to operate the air conditioner from the multi-function monitor.

IMPORTANT

The air conditioner compressor ON/OFF function is available only via the monitor.
For how to operate, refer to “Turning the Air Conditioner Compressor ON/OFF” (1-101).



MDFY-01-027-16 ja

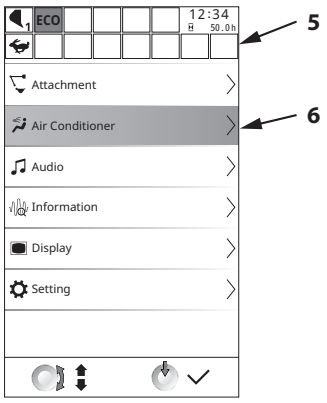
Air Conditioner ON/OFF

This setting toggles the entire air conditioner ON/OFF.

1. From menu screen (5), select "Air Conditioner" and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display menu screen (5), refer to "Main Menu Display" (1-17).

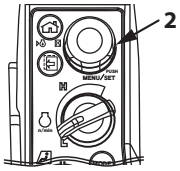


MDFY-MT-006-1 en_GB

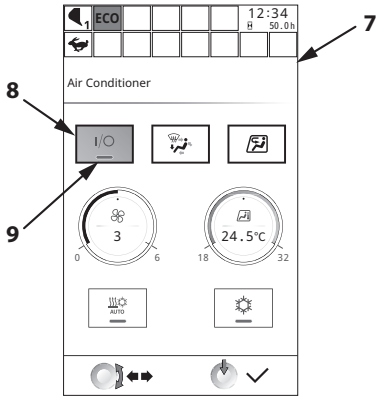
2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display Air Conditioner screen (7).
3. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight the ON/OFF button (8).
4. Push selector/set switch (2) to toggle between air conditioner ON/OFF.

   NOTE

   In the ON state, (9) at the bottom part of the ON/OFF button will light up green.



MDFY-01-094-7 ja



MDFY-MT-007-1 en_GB

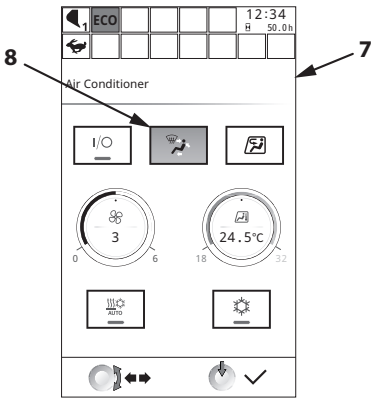
Selecting the Air Vents

This setting is for selecting the air conditioner vents.

1. From air conditioner screen (7), highlight air vent selection (8) and push selector/set switch (2).

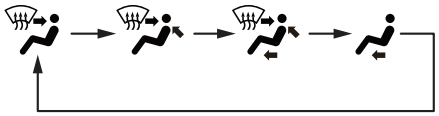
   NOTE

   For how to display Air Conditioner screen (7), refer to "Air Conditioner Operation (Monitor)" (1-94).

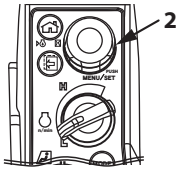


MDFY-MT-057-1 en_GB

2. Pushing selector/set switch (2) cycles the setting through 4 vent arrangements.
   Icon (8) changes accordingly.



MDF3-01-052 ja



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

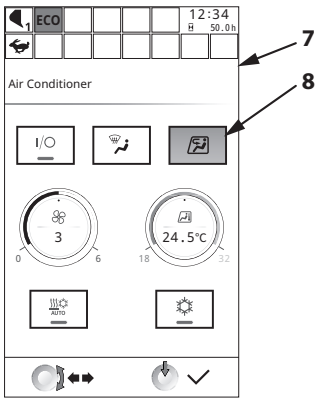
Circulation Air Mode

This setting is for switching the air intake.

1. From Air Conditioner screen (7), highlight circulation air mode (8) and push selector/set switch (2).

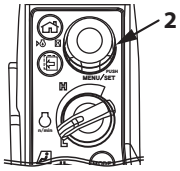
   NOTE

   For how to display Air Conditioner screen (7), refer to "Air Conditioner Operation (Monitor)"(1-94)



MDFY-MT-058-1 en_GB

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to toggle between inside air and outside air.
   Icon (8) changes accordingly.



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

Air is being circulated within the cab.

Outside air is being taken in.

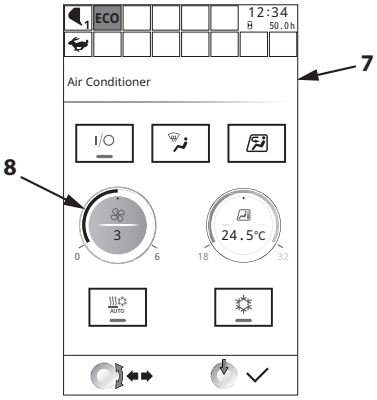
Fan Level

This setting is for changing the fan level.

1. From Air Conditioner screen (7), select fan level (8) and push selector/set switch (2).

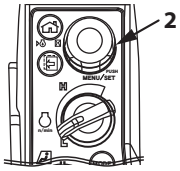
   NOTE

   For how to display air conditioner screen (7), refer to "Air Conditioner Operation (Monitor)" (1-94).



MDFY-MT-059-1 en_GB

2. Rotate selector/set switch (2) clockwise or counterclockwise to select the fan level.
   As selector/set switch (2) is rotated, the arc-like bar and value in the middle will change.
   The fan level can be set to any of 6 levels.
   Push selector/set switch (2) to enable the change.



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

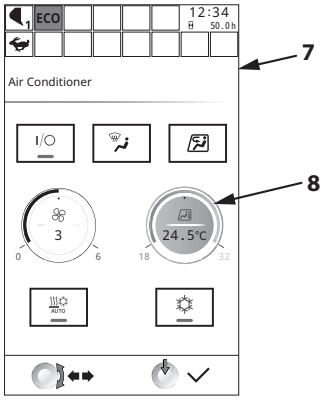
Temperature Control

This setting is for setting the air conditioning temperature.

1. From Air Conditioner screen (7), select temperature setting (8) and push selector/set switch (2).

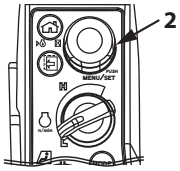
   NOTE

   For how to display Air Conditioner screen (7), refer to "Air Conditioner Operation (Monitor)" (1-94).



MDFY-MT-060-1 en_GB

2. Turn selector/set switch (2) to highlight a temperature.
   As selector/set switch (2) is rotated, the arc-like bar and the value in the middle change.
   The temperature can be set from 18.0 to 32 °C (64 to 90 °F). It can be set in 0.5 °C (0.9 °F) increments.
   Push selector/set switch (2) to make the change.



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

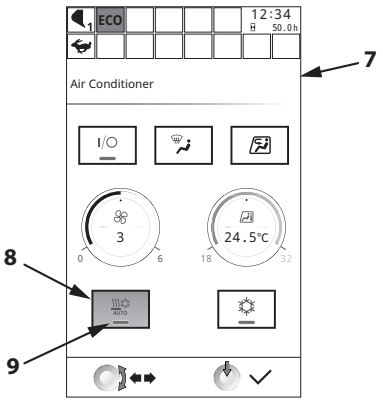
AUTO Settings

This is for toggling AUTO ON/OFF.

1. From Air Conditioner screen (7), highlight AUTO switch (8) and push selector/set switch (2).

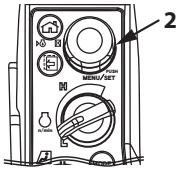
   NOTE

   For how to display Air Conditioner screen (7), refer to "Air Conditioner Operation (Monitor)"(1-94).



MDFY-MT-061-1 en_GB

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to toggle AUTO ON/OFF.



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

   NOTE

   - *In the ON state, the bottom (9) of the ON/OFF button will light up green.*
   - *It may change to cool head/warm feet (bi-level) mode in some conditions, such as set temperature, inside/outside temperature, amount of sun, etc.*
   - *Max. Cooling and Heating*
     Maximum cooling or heating can be selected by setting the temperature setting display to 18 °C (64 °F) or 32 °C (90 °F) with or on the temperature control switch.

Air Conditioner Compressor ON/OFF Switch

This is for toggling the air conditioner compressor ON/OFF.

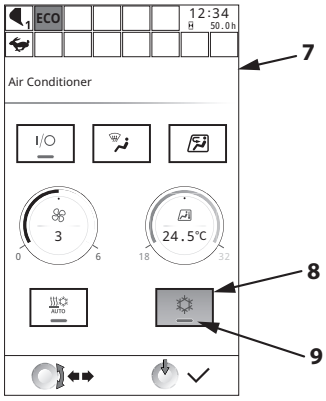
IMPORTANT

This setting cannot be made using the physical switch panel.

1. From air conditioner screen (7), highlight air conditioner compressor ON/OFF switch (8), and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display Air Conditioner screen (7), refer to "Air Conditioner Operation (Monitor)" (1-94).

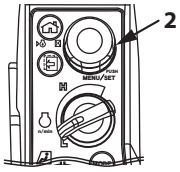


MDFY-MT-062-1 en_GB

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to toggle air conditioner compressor ON/OFF.

   NOTE

   In the ON state, (9) at the bottom part of the ON/OFF button will light up green.



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

Tips for Optimal Air Conditioner Usage

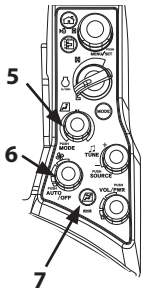
For Rapid Cooling

When the operator’s station is exposed to the hot sun in the summer, the temperature inside may exceed 80°C (176°F).

In this case, ventilate air in the operator's station first by opening the windows for rapid cooling.

After starting the engine, push AUTO/OFF switch (6). Set the temperature to 18.0 on the monitor with temperature control switch (5). Set to the air circulating mode with circulating/fresh air damper switch (7).

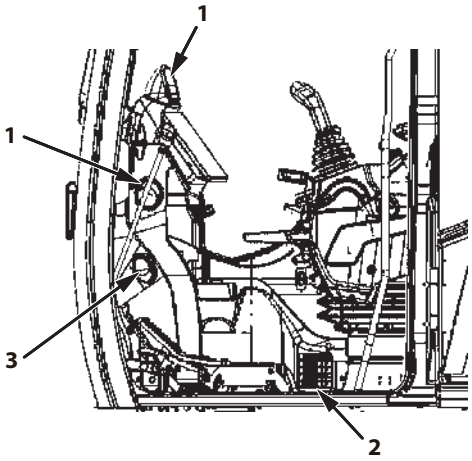
Close the windows when the cab cools down to the outside air temperature.



MDFY-01-027-17 ja

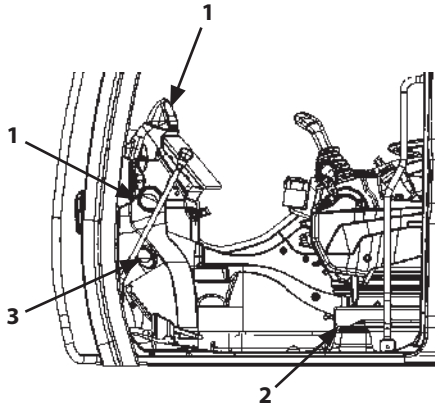
Defogging the Windows

When the insides of the windows fog up due to high humidity inside the operator's station, such when it rains, operate the air conditioner to clear the windows. The direction of the louvers on front and rear vents (1) and (4) and on defroster vent (3) can be adjusted by hand. Use the louvers to adjust the direction of the air flow and eliminate the fog.
Note that the outside of the windows may also fog up when humidity outside the cab is high and the air conditioner is run excessively. If this happens, turn off the air conditioner to adjust the temperature in the operator's station.



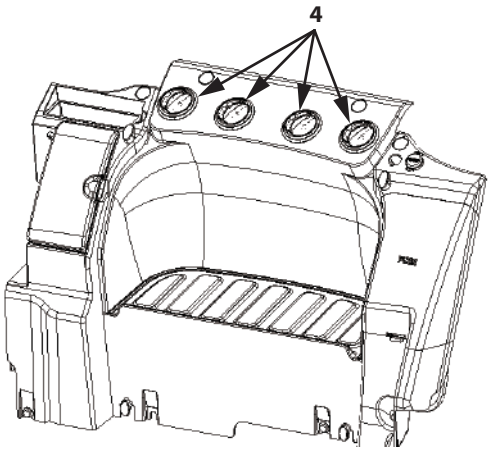
ZX135US-7H、ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-009-1 ja



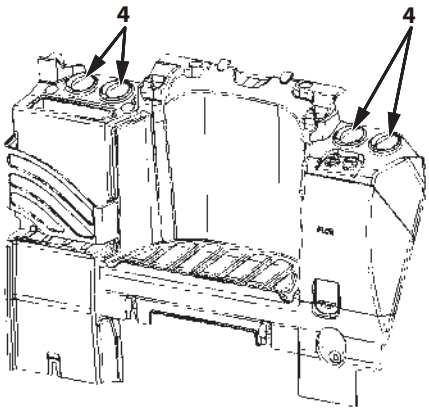
ZX345USLC-7H

MDFY-01-022-2 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDFY-01-114-3 ja



ZX135US-7H、ZX245USLC-7H

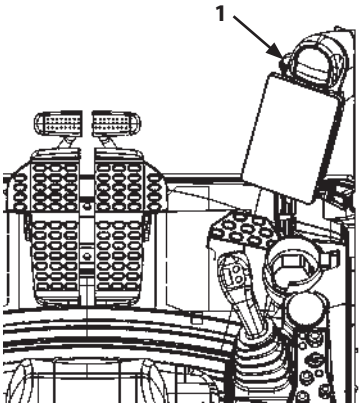
MDA4-01-010-1 ja

Off-Season Air Conditioner Maintenance

To protect each part of the compressor from a lack of lubricant, operate the air conditioner at least once a month for several minutes with the engine running at a slow speed during the off-season.

IMPORTANT

- **Do not increase the engine speed suddenly. This may damage the compressor.**
- **Refer to the item "Cleaning and Replacing Air Conditioner and Heater Internal/External Filters" in Chapter 7, Maintenance Section, for maintenance of filters.**
- **Keep auto air conditioner sensor (1) clean for effective air conditioner performance. Avoid placing any obstructions around the sensor.**



MDFY-01-028-1 ja

Audio Operation

CAUTION

Listening to the audio system is distracting. Refrain from listening to the radio in the cab while operating the machine; use only during breaks.

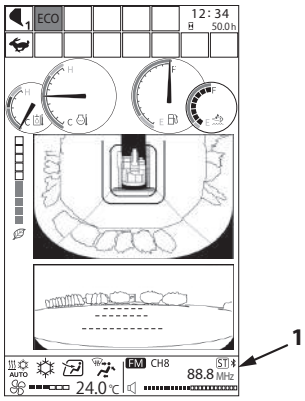
Summary

The features of the audio controller in the machine are as follows. Be sure to fully read and understand it before use.
The audio operation/setting status is displayed at the bottom (1) of the monitor.
Audio settings and operations can be performed using the dedicated switches (2) and (3) or via the monitor.
For how to perform these operations, please see the following pages.

IMPORTANT

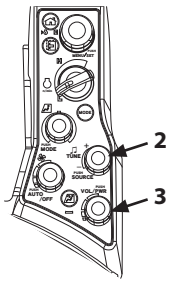
If mark (4) is displayed on the audio screen, there is problem with the communication between the audio system and the monitor.
Contact Authorized Dealer.

MDFY-01-109-1 ja



Basic Screen

MDFY-MT-100-13 ja



MDFY-01-027-6 ja

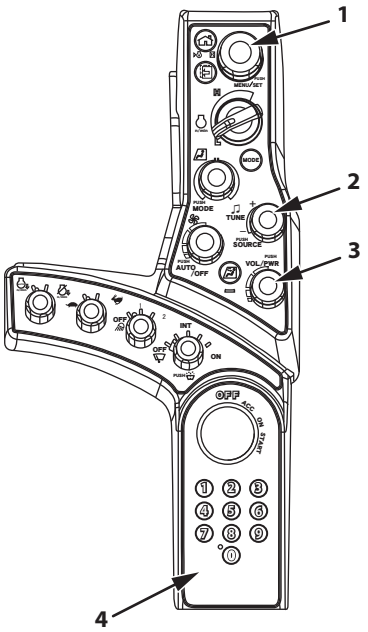
Features

- Multiple Input Sources
  The audio system in the machine can handle the following input sources.
  AM radio
  FM radio
  External inputs via Bluetooth®
- Channel Search and Preset Memory
  Radio channels can be automatically or manually tuned and presets can be stored.
  Tuned channels can be stored in advance using the numeric keypad, and the user can switch between the stored channels using the numeric keypad alone.
- Sound Quality Control
  Quality can be adjusted (to low or high). Adjust to the desired tone.
- Handsfree Calling with a Cell Phone
  Connect your cell Phone using Bluetooth® connection to enable handsfree calling.

Name of Components and Control Guide (Switches)

For general control of the audio system, use the switches on the switch panel.

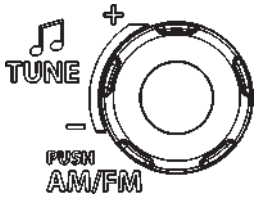
1- Selector/Set Switch
2- Audio Source Selector/Tuning Selector Knob
3- Power Switch/Volume Control Knob
4- Numeric Keypad



MDFY-01-002-7 ja

Switch Operation Guide

- Change Source Switch/Tuning Knob
  Each push of switch (2) cycles the audio source setting from AM > FM > Bluetooth® and back to AM.
- Change Source Switch/Tuning Knob
  To highlight AM or FM, push switch (2) to toggle between them.

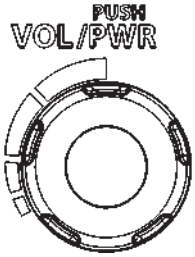


MDFY-01-008 ja

NOTE

Rotate clockwise for higher frequencies, counterclockwise for lower.

- Power Switch/Volume Control Knob
  Push power switch/volume control knob (3) to switch the audio system “ON” and “OFF”.
- Power Switch/Volume Control Knob
  Rotate power switch/volume control knob (3) clockwise to increase the volume, or counterclockwise to lower it.
- Numeric Keypad
  Push No. 1 to 8 on the numeric keypad to change between stored channels.



MDFY-01-009 ja

Numeric Keypad Allocation (Switches)

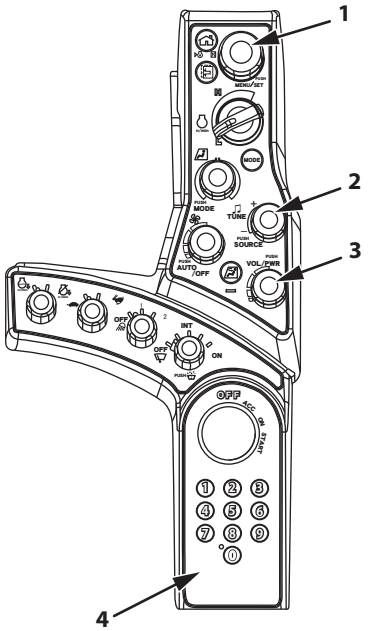
Analog and digital radio stations can be allocated to keys of numeric keypad (4).
Allocations is performed using keys 1 to 8 on the numeric keypad.
The following describes the procedure for allocating frequencies selected using source selector switch/ tuning knob (2).

1. Operate the source selector switch/tuning knob (2) to display the frequency you wish to allocate.

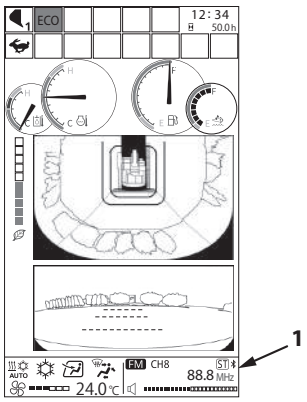
   NOTE

   - *For how to operate source selector switch/ tuning knob (2), refer to "Switch Operation Guide" (1-106).*
   - *Check that the desired frequency appears in audio display section (1).*

2. Long press the desired key (among keys 1 to 8) on the numeric keypad (4) for this frequency.



MDFY-01-002-7 ja



Basic Screen

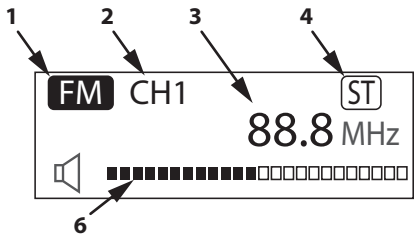
MDFY-MT-100-13 ja

Monitor Display

The monitor display for audio changes depending on the source selected.

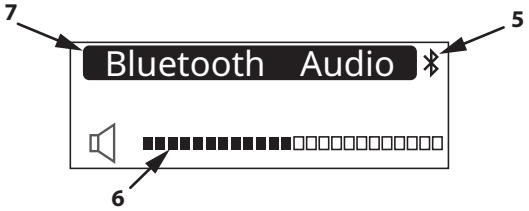
Display Items

1- AM/FM Display
2- Channel Display
3- Reception Frequency Display
4- Stereo Display
5- Bluetooth® Icon
6- Volume
7- Bluetooth® Display



When AM/FM radio is selected

MDFY-01-106-1 ja



When Bluetooth® is selected

MDFY-01-108-2 ja

Explanation of Displayed Items

- AM/FM Display
  Displays input source currently being received.
- Channel Display
  Display channel to which the received radio signal is allocated.
- Stereo Display
  Indicates if the received broadcast is in stereo.
- Reception Frequency Display
  Indicates the frequency of the received radio signal.
- Bluetooth® Icon
  Indicates if there is an active Bluetooth®connection with an external device.
- Volume
  Indicates volume on a bar.
  The further the bar extends to the left, the higher the volume.
- Bluetooth® Display
  Displayed when Bluetooth®has been selected.

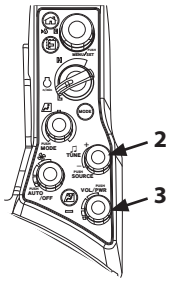
Operating the Audio System from the Multi-Monitor

Normal control of the audio system is performed using knobs (2) and (3). Similar operations are also possible from the multi-monitor. The multi-monitor can be used where necessary.

- Source Selection
- Tuning (to stations)
- Volume Control

As well the above-mentioned functions, there are some functions which can only be set from the multi-monitor. These are listed below.

- Autoseek Function (automatic tuning)
- TONE Control
- AUTO PRESET
- Bluetooth® Connection



MDFY-01-027-6 ja

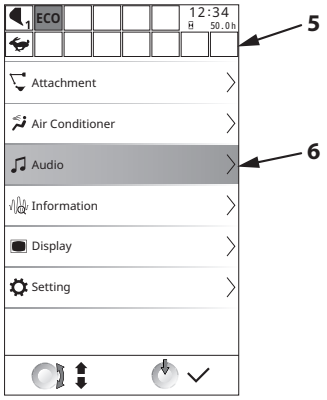
Source Selection and Audio Screen Display

From the monitor, various operations are performed from the screen for the selected audio source.
To display the various audio screens, follow the procedure below.

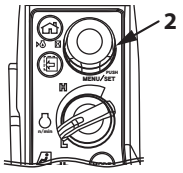
1. From menu screen (5), highlight Audio (6) and push selector/set switch (2).

   NOTE

   For how to display menu screen (5), refer to "Operating the Main Menu" (1-17).



MDFY-MT-008-1 en_GB



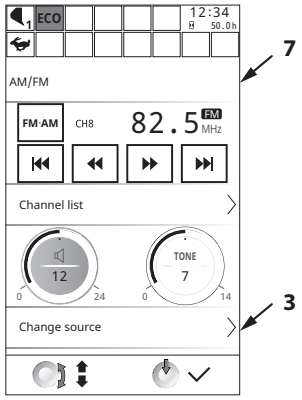
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Push selector/set switch (2) to display audio screen (7) for the currently selected source.
   The illustration at right shows the audio screen for AM/FM radio.

   NOTE

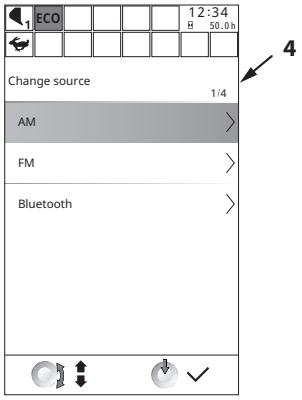
   The audio screen is the same for AM and FM radio.

3. To display another audio screen, turn selector/set switch (2) to highlight Change Source (3).



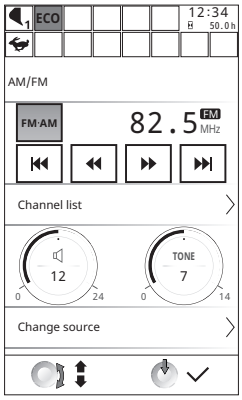
MDFY-MT-086-1 en_GB

4. Push selector/set switch (2) to display change audio screen (4).
   Highlight the desired audio source and push selector/set switch (2).



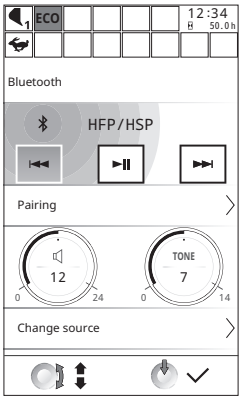
MDF3-MT-012-1 en_GB

The source-specific audio screens are as follows.



MDFY-MT-088 en_GB

AM/FM screen



MDFY-MT-109 en_GB

Bluetooth® screen

Volume Control

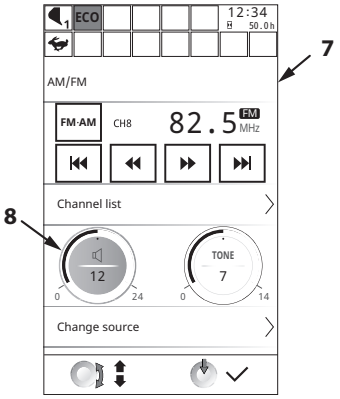
Volume is adjusted in the same way for all sources.
Here, the adjustment will be described taking the AM/FM audio screen as an example.

1. Display audio screen (7) for the source in question.

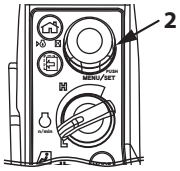
   NOTE

   For how to display audio screen (7) for the various sources, refer to "Source Selection and Audio Screen Display" (1-111).

2. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight volume setting (8).
3. Push selector/set switch (2).
4. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to adjust the volume. As selector/set switch (2) is rotated, the arc-like bar and value in the middle will change.
5. Push selector/set switch (2) to finalize the volume.



MDFY-MT-086-2 en_GB



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

Tone Control

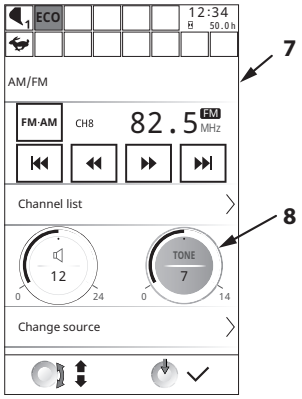
TONE is adjusted in the same way for all sources.
Here, the adjustment will be described taking the AM/FM audio screen as an example.

1. Display audio screen (7) for the source in question.

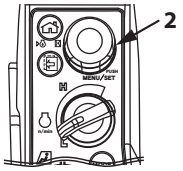
   NOTE

   For how to display audio screen (7) for the various sources, refer to "Source Selection and Audio Screen Display" (1-111).

2. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight TONE (8).
3. Push selector/set switch (2).
4. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to adjust the TONE.
   As selector/set switch (2) is rotated, the arc-like bar and value in the middle will change.
   Rotate selector/set switch (2) clockwise to boost treble, counterclockwise to boost bass.
5. Push selector/set switch (2) to finalize the TONE.



MDFY-MT-087-1 en_GB



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

AM/FM Switching

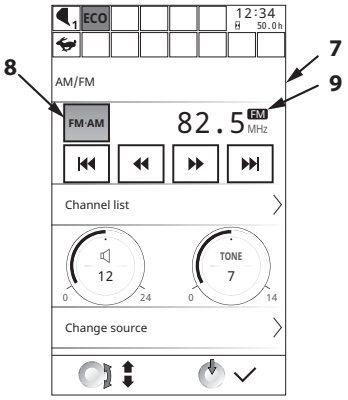
It is normally possible to switch between AM and FM by selecting the source.
The following explains a convenient one-touch function for switching between AM and FM.

1. Display AM/FM audio screen (7).

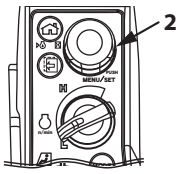
   NOTE

   For how to display audio screen (7) for the various sources, refer to "Source Selection and Audio Screen Display" (1-111).

2. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight AM/FM switch (8).
3. Each push of selector/set switch (2) will switch between AM and FM.
   Icon (9) will also switch between AM and FM.



MDFY-MT-088-1 en_GB



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

Tuning (AM/FM)

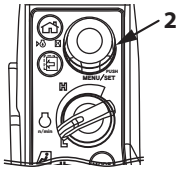
Tuning can be performed automatically or manually. Here, tuning will be described taking the AM/FM audio screen as an example.

1. Display AM/FM audio screen (7).

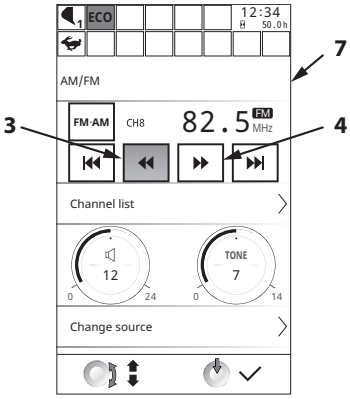
   NOTE

   For how to display AM/FM audio screen (7), refer to "Source Selection and Audio ScreenDisplay" (1-111).

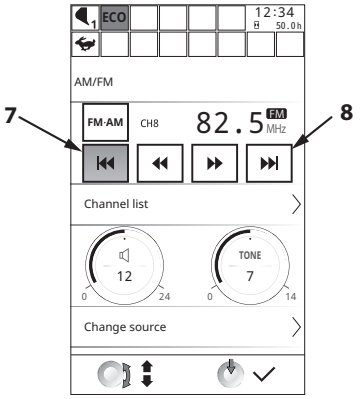
2. Manual Tuning Procedure
   a. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight seek (3) or seek (4).
   b. Each push of selector/set switch (2) the frequency that is received and displayed will change. Keep pushing until the desired frequency is reached.
3. Automatic Search Function
   a. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight seek (7) or seek (8).
   b. Push selector/set switch (2) to automatically find a frequency with a strong signal.



MDFY-01-094-7 ja



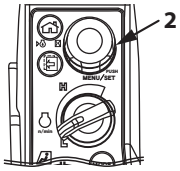
MDFY-MT-089-1 en_GB



MDFY-MT-090-1 en_GB

Auto-Presetting Stations (AM/FM)

When using the AM/FM radio, it is possible to search for and store currently available radio stations.



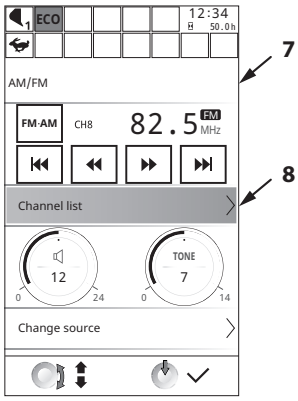
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

1. Display AM/FM audio screen (7).

   NOTE

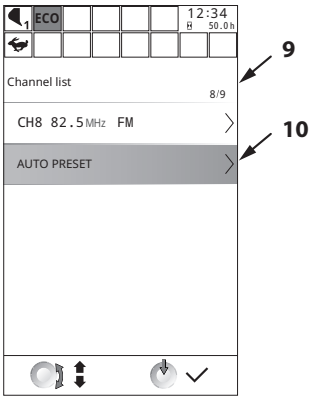
   For how to display AM/FM audio screen (7), refer to "Source Selection and Audio Screen Display" (1-111).

2. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Channel List (8).



MDFY-MT-091-2 en_GB

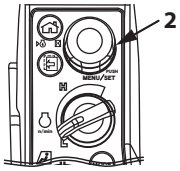
3. Push selector/set switch (2) to display channel list screen (9).
4. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight AUTO PRESET (10).
5. Push selector/set switch (2) to start AUTO PRESET process.
   AUTO PRESET scans reception frequency, and allocates the stations with the strongest signals to CH1 to CH8. AM stations will be preset on CH1 to CH4 and FM stations on CH5 to CH8.
   During the scan, other operations on the audio system will be disabled.



MDFY-MT-092-1 en_GB

Selecting Stations from Channel List (AM/FM)

This describes how to select stations from a preset stations.



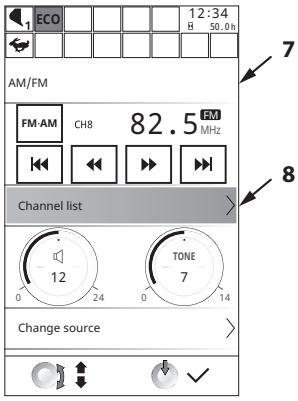
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

1. Display AM/FM audio screen (7).

   NOTE

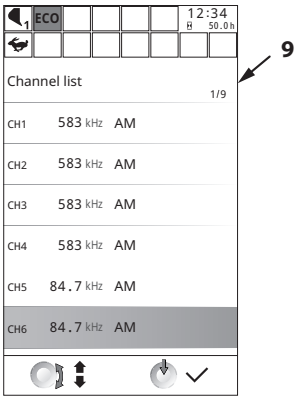
   For how to display AM/FM audio screen (7), refer to "Source Selection and Audio Screen Display" (1-111).

2. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Channel List (8).



MDFY-MT-091-2 en_GB

3. Push selector/set switch (2) to display channel list screen (9).
   Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight the channel you wish to listen to.
4. Push selector/set switch (2) to finalize the channel.



MDFY-MT-167-2 en_GB

Allocation to Numeric Keypad (Monitor)

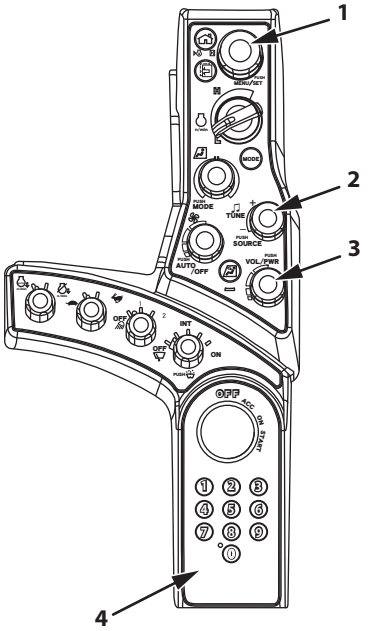
Analog and digital radio stations can be allocated to keys of numeric keypad (4).
Allocations is performed using keys 1 to 8 on the numeric keypad.
Here, the procedure for allocating stations to the keys when turning from the monitor will be explained.

1. Display AM/FM audio screen (7).

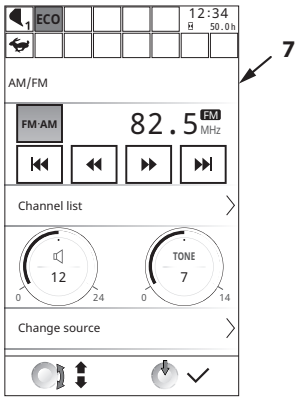
   NOTE

   For how to display AM/FM audio screen (7), refer to "Change Source and Audio Screen Display" (1-111).

2. Tune to a frequency you wish to allocate.
3. Long-press one of the keys (1 to 8) on the numeric keypad.



MDFY-01-002-7 ja



MDFY-MT-088-2 en_GB

Bluetooth® Connection

Connect Bluetooth® compatible external devices (portable music players etc.) to the machine's audio system and listen to music. Also, connect your cell phone to the audio system with Bluetooth® for handsfree calling. The following describes the monitor operations required on the machine for Bluetooth® connections (pairing).

NOTE

- *Preparation of the external device (cell phone, portable music player, etc.) is not covered here. For how to set up your external device, please refer to the operating instructions for the device.*
- *The machine audio system supports Bluetooth® Ver. 3.0.*
- *Some specific functions may be unavailable or may not work as expected in some operating environments, when connected to some external devices or some hardware/software.*

Bluetooth®Pairing with Bluetooth® Device

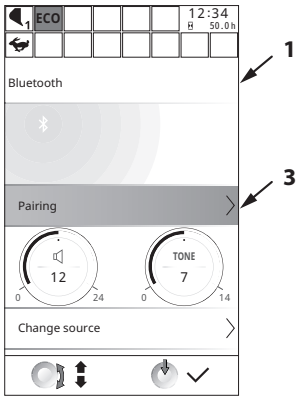
To connect over Bluetooth®, it is first necessary to register (pair with) the device in question.

1. Switch the audio source and display Bluetooth® screen (1).

   NOTE

   For how to display Bluetooth® screen (1), refer to "Source Selection and Audio Screen Display" (1-111).

2. From Bluetooth® screen (1), rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Pairing (3).

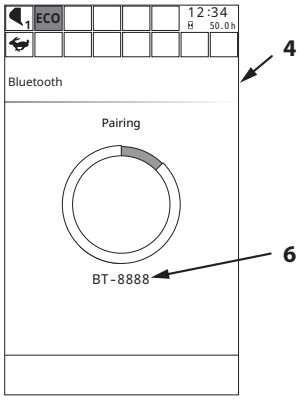


MDFY-MT-098-1 en_GB

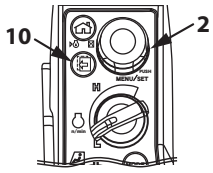
3. Push selector/set switch (2) to go to pairing screen (4) and search for devices in the surrounding area which can be paired.
   When the system finds an available device, its serial number appears in central area (6).

   NOTE

   If canceling the pairing partway through, press back switch (10).



MDFY-MT-099-1 en_GB

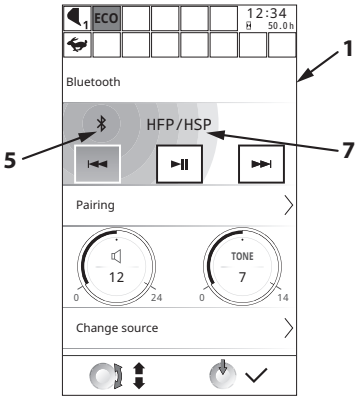


MDFY-01-094-6 ja

4. Once pairing is complete, Bluetooth® audio screen (1) is displayed, and icon (5) indicating that a connection has been made will appear.
   The profile is displayed at (7) on the Bluetooth® audio screen.

NOTE

To change the Bluetooth® device, repeat the pairing procedure with the new device.



MDFY-MT-109-1 en_GB

Choosing Tracks with Bluetooth®

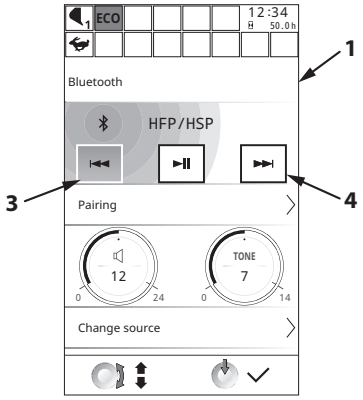
Control (skip forwards or backwards between tracks) the music you are listening to over the Bluetooth® connection.

1. Display Bluetooth® audio screen (1).

   NOTE

   For how to display Bluetooth® audio screen (1), refer to "Source Selection and Audio Screen Display" (1-111).

2. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to select skip forwards (4) or skip backwards (3). Push selector/set switch (2).



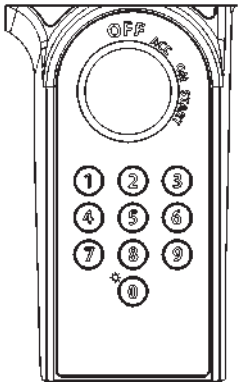
MDFY-MT-109-2 en_GB

Handsfree Calling with Bluetooth®

On receiving a call on a Bluetooth® paired cell phone, the operator can talk without touching the cell phone. When an incoming call is received on the cell phone, the incoming status is displayed on the monitor. The operator then able to perform the phone operations of “Accept”, “Decline” and “End Call” through operations on the numeric keypad.

CAUTION

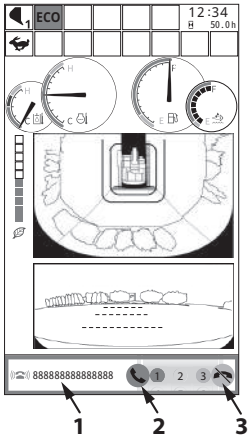
Do not talk on a mobile phone while driving the machine.



MDFY-01-017 ja

When an incoming call is received on the cell phone, the Incoming Call Screen is displayed.
The content of the screen and available operations are listed below.

1. Incoming telephone number
   This displays the telephone number of the incoming call.
2. Incoming icon
   Press 1 on the numeric keypad to talk.
3. Decline call icon
   Press 3 on the numeric keypad to decline the incoming call.

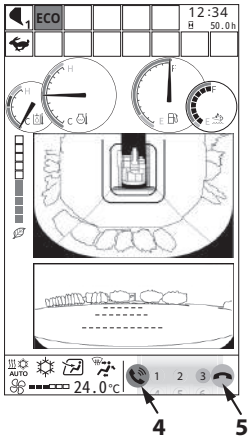


Incoming Call Screen

MDFY-MT-154-1 ja

During a call, the screen will change to the In-Call Screen.
The content of the screen and available operations are listed below.

4. In-call icon
   Shows connection to telephone network and status of the connection during the call.
5. End call icon.
   Cuts off the call.



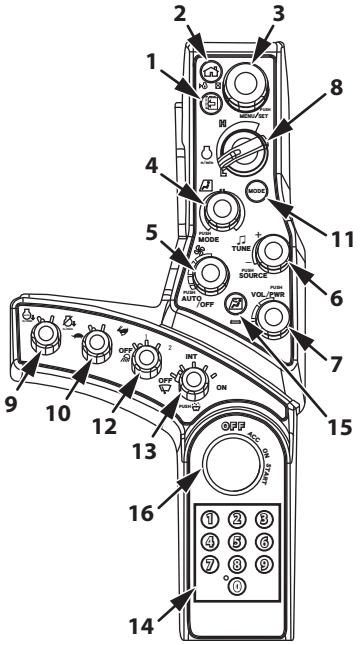
In-Call Screen

MDFY-MT-155-1 ja

Switch Panel (Content of Illustration)

The following describes the names and layout of the switches provided on the switch panel. For explanations of the specific components, refer to the page shown in ().

1- Back Switch (1-12)
2- Home Switch (1-12)
3- Selector/set Switch (1-12)
4- Temperature Control Switch/Mode Switch (1-92)
5- AUTO/OFF Switch/Fan Switch (1-92)
6- Change Source Switch/Tuning Switch (1-106)
7- Power Switch/Volume Control Switch(1-106)
8- Engine Control Dial (1-124)
9- Auto-Idle Switch (1-124)
10- Travel Mode Switch (1-124)
11- Power Mode Switch (1-125)
12- Work Light Switch (1-125)
13- Wiper/Washer Switch (1-126)
14- Numeric Keypad (1-14)
15- Fresh/Re-circulated Air Damper Switch (1-93)
16- Key Switch (1-128)



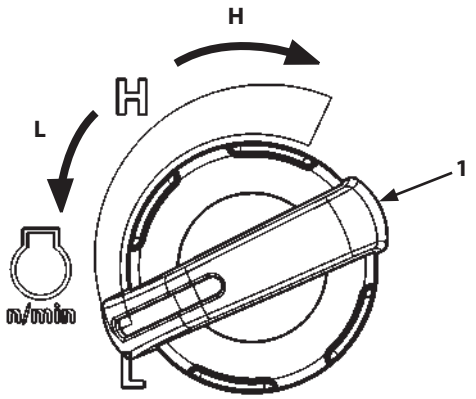
Switch Panel

MDFY-01-002-9 ja

Engine Control Dial

Use engine control dial (1) to adjust the engine speed.

H : Fast Idle
L : Slow Idle



MDFY-01-010-1 ja

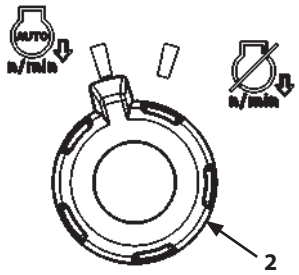
Auto-Idle Switch

Auto-idle switch (2) sets the engine speed control mode to either Auto-Idle ON or OFF.

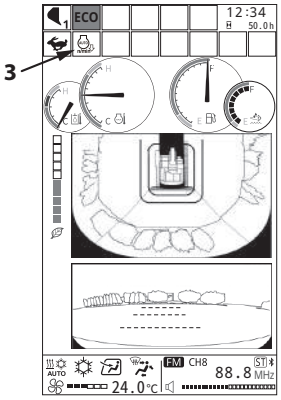
- Auto-Idle
  Auto-Idle switch (2) counterclockwise to the ON position. Approximately 4 seconds after the control lever is put in neutral, the engine speed decreases to the auto-idle speed.
  This function reduces fuel consumption.
  When the auto-idle mode is selected, auto-idle indicator (3) on the monitor panel lights.

NOTE

- *Auto-idle control may not work until the end of the warm-up.*
- *The auto-idle control function does not operate when the aftertreatment device is regenerating.*



MDFY-01-011-1 ja



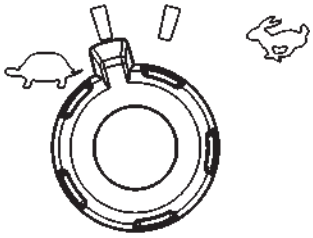
MDFY-MT-133-2 ja

Travel Mode Switch

The travel modes FAST and SLOW are selected by turning the travel mode switch.

:Fast

:Slow



MDFY-01-012 ja

Power Mode Switch

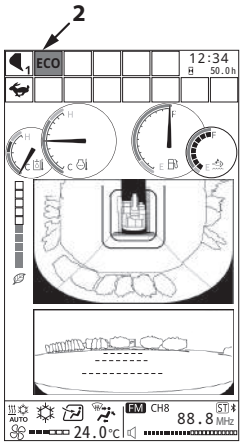
Three engine speed modes, ECO, PWR or H/P can be selected by operating the power mode switch.

- ECO (Economy) Mode
  Operate the machine in this mode when performing normal work.
  ECO is displayed on Power Mode Display (2).
- PWR (Power) Mode
  Use when extra horsepower is needed.
  PWR is displayed on Power Mode Display (2).
- H/P (High Power) Mode
  Select this mode when you wish to perform heavier work than in the PWR mode.
  It utilizes the maximum horsepower of the machine, but at the cost of fuel consumption. H/P is displayed on Power Mode Display (2).

NOTE

"ECO Mode" is set automatically when starting the engine. Set "PWR Mode" whenever necessary.

MDFY-01-013 ja



MDFY-MT-100-7 ja

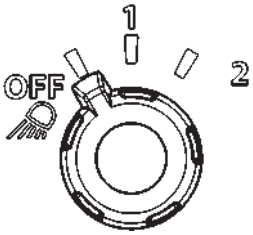
Work Light Switch

The work light switch has the following positions.

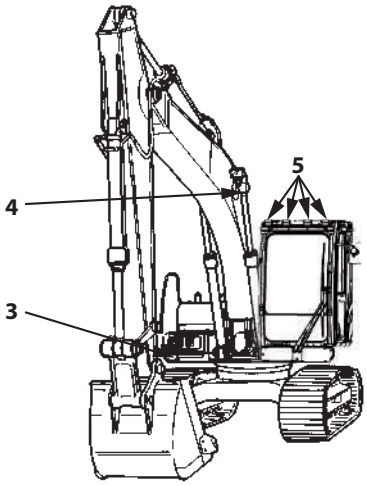
Position 1	:	Turns ON work light (3) on the right side of the machine.
Position 2	:	Turns on work light (4) mounted on the boom and work light (3) on the right side of the machine. At the same time, the monitor changes to nighttime mode. In the case that work light (5) is mounted on the cab, cab-mounted work light (5) turns ON.
OFF position	:	Work lights (3), (4) and (5) turn off.

NOTE

When the key switch is turned OFF while the work light switch is in position 1, work light (3) stays ON for 30 seconds.
When the key switch is turned OFF while the work light switch is in position 2, work lights (3), (4) and (5) stay ON for 30 seconds.



MDFY-01-014 ja



MDFY-01-037-1 ja

Wiper/Washer Switch

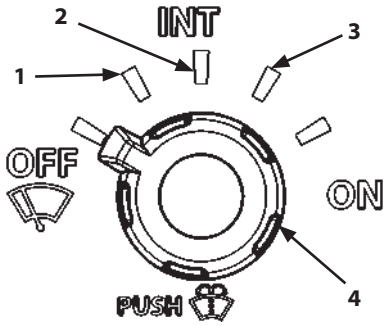
Wiper/washer switch (4) operates wiper (5) and the window washer.

- Wiper
  Turn wiper/washer switch (4) to the desired position to operate wiper (5).

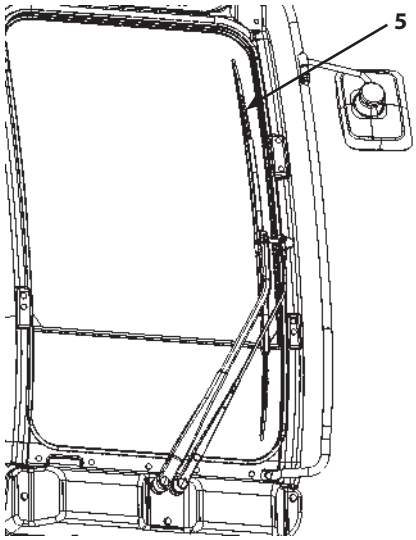
OFF	Wiper (5) stops and automatically returns to its at rest position.
INT Position	Wiper (5) operates intermittently. The INT mode has three positions as shown below.
[INT(1):]	Wiper (5) operates at a 8-second interval.
[INT(2):]	Wiper (5) operates at a 6-second interval.
[INT(3):]	Wiper (5) operates at a 3-second interval.
ON	Wiper (5) operates continuously.

NOTE

When the front window (upper) is opened, wiper (5) will not operate. If the front window is opened while operating the wiper, the wiper stops.
Also, if the upper front window is not securely closed, the wiper will not operate. Securely close the upper front window before using the wiper.

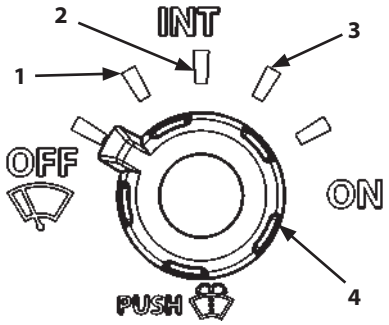


MDFY-01-015-1 ja



MDFY-01-016-1 ja

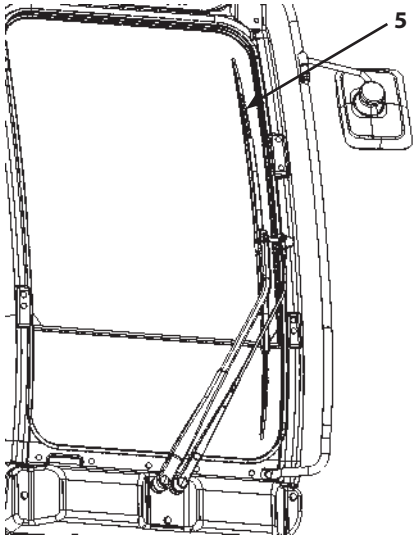
- Washer
  As long as wiper/washer switch (4) is pressed, it squirts washer fluid onto the window. When the wiper/washer switch is pressed for more than 2 seconds, wiper (5) operates continuously. When the wiper/washer switch (4) is released, the wiper automatically returns to its rest position. When the wiper is in an INT mode and the wiper/washer switch (4) is pressed, the wiper operates continuously.



MDFY-01-015-1 ja

NOTE

The wiper motor protection control stops wiper operation, to prevent it from becoming stuck when operated for a long period of time under high load. If the wiper stops, do not change the arm position; wait several minutes until the wiper starts operating again.



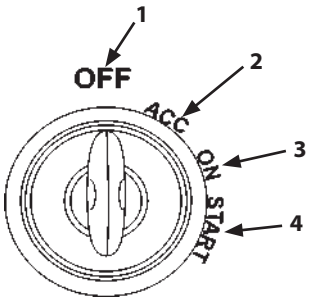
MDFY-01-016-1 ja

IMPORTANT

- **If wiper (5) has frozen and fails to move, do not press and hold down switch (4). Doing so may damage the wiper or exhaust the battery.**
- **If wiper (5) has frozen and is stuck to the front window glass, throw some lukewarm water over the wiper, or operate the air conditioner in defroster mode. Attempting to force the wiper to operate without warming the front window glass may damage the wiper.**
- **If working in snow or cold conditions, do not use the window washer until the front window glass has warmed up. If the washer is used under such conditions, the washer fluid may freeze and adversely affect visibility.**

Key Switch

1- OFF (Engine Off)
2- ACC (Horn, Radio etc.)
3- ON (Engine ON)
4- START (Engine Start)

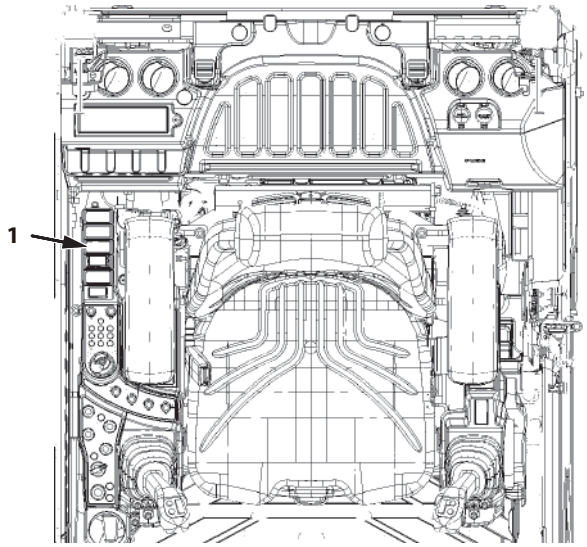


MDCD-01-030-1 ja

Switch Panels (for Options)

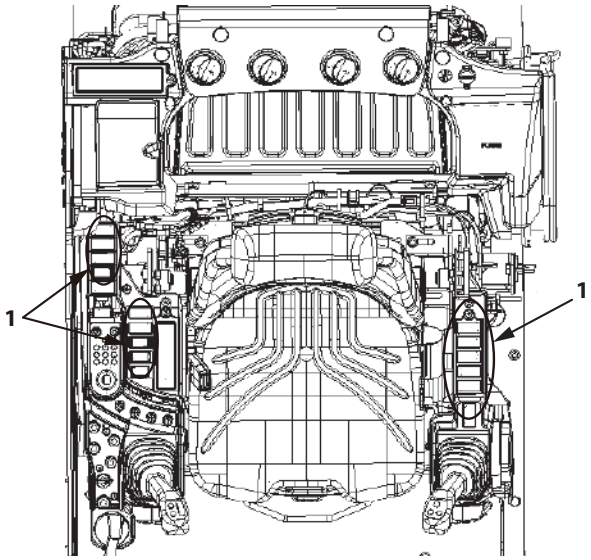
Where optional switches are mounted (1) varies with the kind of optional equipment. Before using the switches, confirm which types of optional devices the machine is equipped with. Raise the armrest when operating the optional switch. All available optional devices are shown below.

- Seat Heater Switch
- Rear Light Switch
- Surround Lighting Switch
- Beacon Light Switch
- Travel Alarm Deactivation Switch
- Overload Alarm Switch (Except ZX345USLC-7H)
- Quick Coupler Switch
- Electrical Control Main Switch



ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-006-2 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDFY-01-036-2 ja

Seat Heater Switch

When seat heater switch (1) is turned ON, the seat and/or backrest are heated to warm them up.
When the temperature of the seat and/or backrest reaches its specified temperature, heating turns off automatically.

M1U1-01-011-3 ja

WARNING

- **Use with seat wet or something poked into seat could cause electrical shock.**
  - **Be careful when handling water or drinking water.**
  - **Do not use if clothes are extremely wet.**
  - **Do not poke the seat with a sharp object or put anything heavy with protruding parts on it.**

CAUTION

- **Certain people as noted below, could be at risk of a low temperature burn, so should be careful during use.**
  - **People with delicate skin**
  - **People suffering from fatigue**
  - **People under excessive drinking or medication that could cause sleepiness (sleeping pills, cold medicines, etc.)**
- **Continuous use could cause low temperature burn to people.**
- **Use with blanket or cushion which may retain heat could cause abnormal heating of the seat.**

IMPORTANT

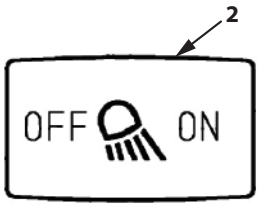
- **To prevent damage, do not poke the seat with sharp objects or put anything heavy with protruding parts on the seat.**
- **If a liquid like water or a drink is spilled on the seat, wipe off with a soft cloth and make sure the seat is dry before using again.**
- **If the seat is abnormally hot, stop use and contact Authorized Dealer.**

NOTE

The point where heated varies with the type of seat.

Rear Light Switch (Optional)

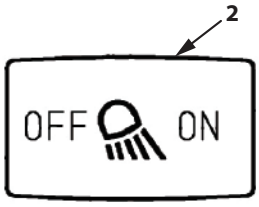
When rear light switch (2) is turned ON, the rear light at the rear of the cab roof comes ON.
If the machine is equipped with both perimeter lights and rear light, the perimeter lights will also turn on.



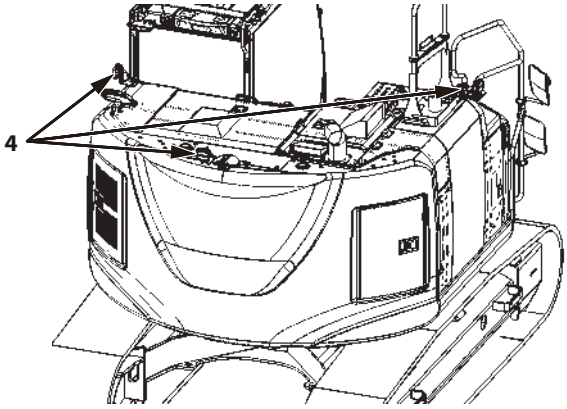
MDFY-01-085-1 ja

Perimeter Lights Switch (Option)

Pressing perimeter lights switch (2) to the ON side turns on the lights (4) on the left, right and rear of the machine.
If the machine is equipped with both perimeter lights and rear lights, the rear light will also turn on.



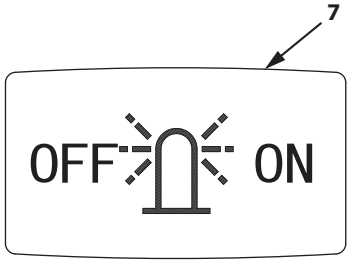
MDFY-01-085-1 ja



MDA4-01-011-1 ja

Rotating Lamp Switch (Optional)

When rotating lamp switch (7) is turned ON, the rotating lamp provided at the rear on the cab roof comes ON.

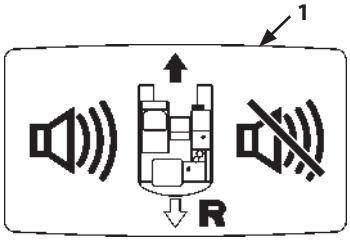


M1U1-01-012-1 ja

Travel Alarm Deactivation Switch

The travel alarm buzzer sounds during travel operation.

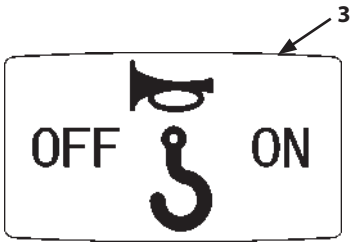
Pressing the side of travel alarm deactivation switch (1), deactivates the travel alarm.



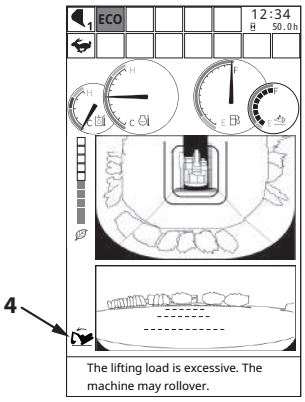
M1U1-01-035-1 ja

Overload Alarm Switch (Optional)(ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H)

During lifting load work with overload alarm switch (3) ON, if overloading is detected, the buzzer sounds and overload alarm indicator (4) on the multi-monitor comes ON. Turn overload alarm switch (3) OFF to deactivate the overload alarm system function.



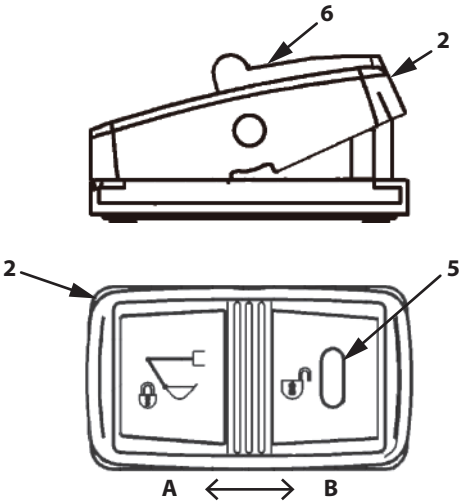
MDEQ-01-054-2 ja



MDFY-MT-151-1 en_GB

Quick Coupler Switch

Quick coupler switch (2) is used when attach/detaching an attachment that uses a quick coupler.
To attach an attachment to the quick coupler, press quick coupler switch (2) to the LOCK side (A).
To detach an attachment mounted to the quick coupler, while pressing interlock (6) of quick coupler switch (2), press it to the UNLOCK side (B). As long as it is pressed to the UNLOCK side (B), the buzzer sounds and warning lamp (5) of quick coupler switch (2) lights. The attachment can be attach/detached while the buzzer is sounding.



MDFY-13-034-2 ja

A: LOCK
B: UNLOCK

Electrical Control Main Switch

This is a switch for enabling and disabling the attachment switches (7), (8) mounted on the control lever.

CAUTION

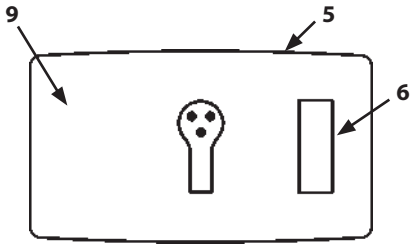
When there is no need to use the electrical control (attachment switches), turn them OFF to avoid operating it accidentally.

IMPORTANT

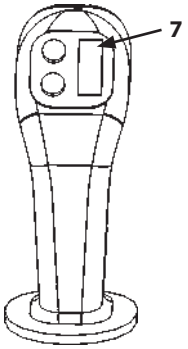
The attachment switches (7), (8) are operable only when indicator (6) of electrical control main switch (5) is lit.

How to Use Screens

Turning electrical control main switch (5) ON (indicator (6) side) will cause indicator (6) to light up.
When indicator (6) is lit, the attachment function is enabled and the attachment switches (7), (8) can be used.
To disable this function, set electrical control main switch (5) to the "OFF" side (9). The indicator (6) goes off, and the attachment switches (7), (8) are disabled.

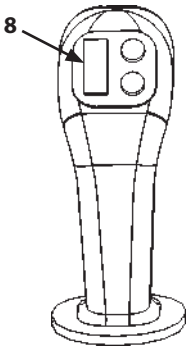


MDAA-01-311-5 ja



Left Control Lever

MCGB-01-029-2 ja



Right Control Lever

MCGB-01-030-3 ja

Control Lever

AUX Function Lever 1

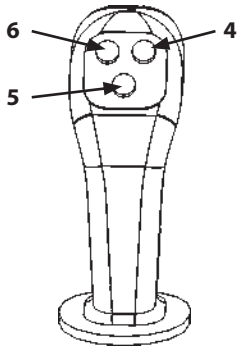
1. PBLI (Push Button Low Idle)
2. Power Boost
3. Attachment Switch (Main Operation)
4. Auxiliary
5. Horn
6. Quick Wiper
7. Auxiliary

NOTE

- *Switch (1) can be configured to function as a button for toggling PBLI (Push Button Low Idle) by making settings on the monitor. For details on PBLI, refer to "PBLI" (1-79).*
- *To enable the attachment switch, the electrical control main switch must be turned ON. For details on the "Electrical Control Main Switch", refer to (1-133).*

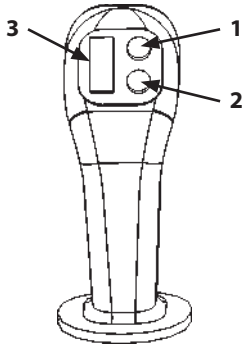
CAUTION

- **This switch is used to operate attachments for this machine. Hitachi Construction Machinery does not bear responsibility for any human injury, malfunction and/or physical loss or damage incurred by unauthorized application or use of unauthorized attachments, optional parts or modified switches, which will void Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.**
- **Before using this switch, thoroughly read the operation manual of the corresponding attachment and check the operation of each function in a safe area.**
- **Before operating an attachment with this switch, confirm the requirements for safe and proper mounting and operation of the attachment with its manufacturer's distributor and observe them.**



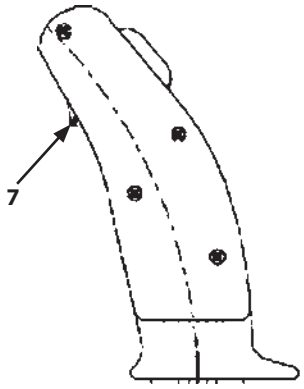
Left Control Lever

MDAA-01-337-1 ja



Right Control Lever

MCGB-01-030-1 ja



Right Control Lever

MDFY-01-021-1 ja

AUX Function Lever 2 (Optional)(Except ZX345USLC-7H)

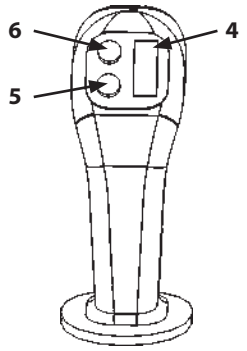
1. PBLI (Push Button Low Idle)
2. Power Digging
3. Attachment Switch (Main Operation)
4. Attachment Switch (Assist Operation)
5. Horn
6. Quick Wiper
7. Auxiliary

NOTE

- *Switch (1) can be configured to function as a button for toggling PBLI (Push Button Slow Idle) by making settings on the monitor. For details on PBLI, refer to "PBLI" (1-79).*
- *To enable the attachment switch, the electrical control main switch must be turned ON. For details, see "Electrical Control Main Switch" (1-133).*

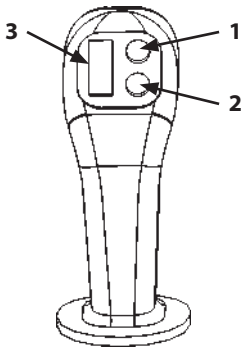
CAUTION

- **These switches are provided for operating attachments of this machine. Hitachi Construction Machinery does not bear responsibility for any human injury, malfunction and/or physical loss or damage incurred by unauthorized application or use of unauthorized attachments, optional parts or modified switches.**
- **Before using this switch, thoroughly read the operation manual of the corresponding attachment and check the operation of each function in a safe area.**
- **Before operating an attachment with this switch, confirm the requirements for safe and proper mounting and operation of the attachment with its manufacturer's distributor and observe them.**



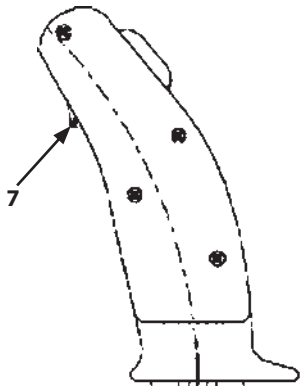
Left Control Lever

MCGB-01-029-1 ja



Right Control Lever

MCGB-01-030-1 ja

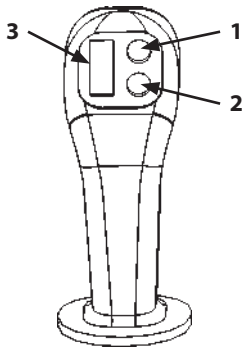


Right Control Lever

MDFY-01-021-1 ja

Power Boost Switch

Power boost switch (2) is provided on the top of the right control lever.
While pressing power boost switch (2), the maximum digging power is boosted within approximately 8 seconds to increase work capacity.

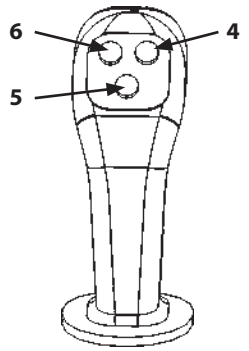


Right Control Lever

MCGB-01-030-1 ja

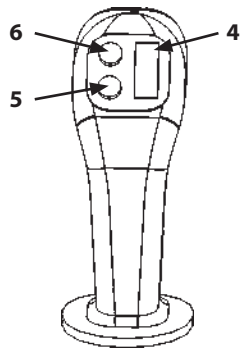
Horn Switch

Horn switch (5) is provided on the top of the left control lever.
The horn sounds continuously as long as switch (5) is pressed.



Left Control Lever (Standard)

MDAA-01-337-1 ja

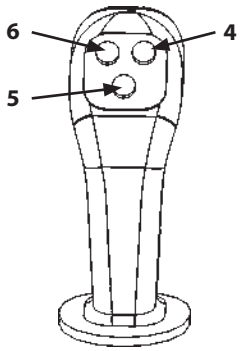


Left Control Lever (Option)

MCGB-01-029-1 ja

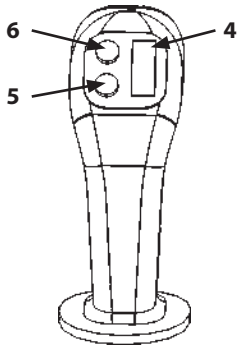
Quick Wiper

Each push of quick wiper switch (6) will operate the wiper.
Use this function when you wish to operate the wiper briefly.



Left Control Lever (Standard)

MDAA-01-337-1 ja



Left Control Lever (Optional)

MCGB-01-029-1 ja

Facilities in Operator's Station

12/24V Power Socket

12 V Power Supply Socket

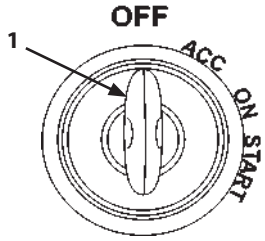
CAUTION

Do not power anything other than a genuine Hitachi Construction Machinery electrical device from the power supply socket.

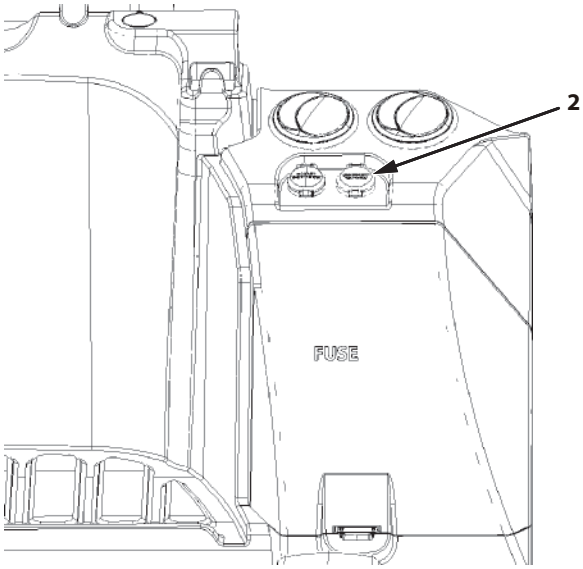
IMPORTANT

- **Power supply socket (2) is for 12V DC only and can be used with accessories having a power rating up to 120 W. Failing to observe these restrictions on voltage and power may damage the battery and accessory.**
- **Do not use power for long periods with the engine stopped. Doing so may discharge the batteries.**

1. Insert key (1) into the key switch and turn it to the ON position.
2. Open the socket cap and plug the accessory into socket (2).
3. After use, fit the cap securely to close the socket.

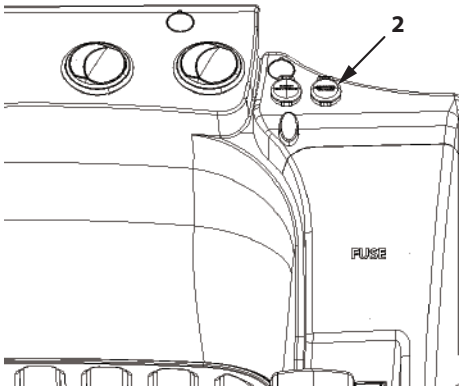


MDCD-01-030-2 ja



ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-012-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDFY-01-076-2 ja

24 V Power Supply Socket

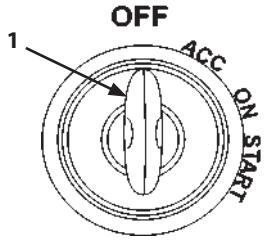
CAUTION

Do not power anything other than a genuine Hitachi Construction Machinery electrical device from the power supply socket.

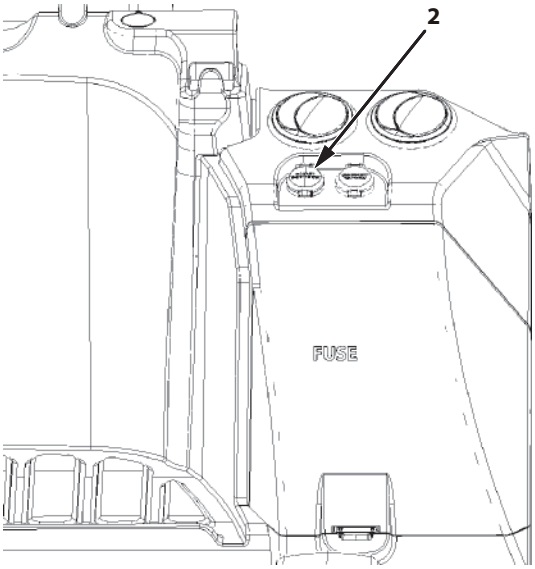
IMPORTANT

- **Power supply socket (2) is for 24V DC only and can be used with accessories having a power rating up to 120 W. Failing to observe these restrictions on voltage and power may damage the battery and accessory.**
- **Do not use power for long periods with the engine stopped. Doing so may discharge the batteries.**

1. Insert key (1) into the key switch and turn it to the ON position.
2. Open the socket cap and plug the accessory into socket (2).
3. After use, fit the cap securely to close the socket.

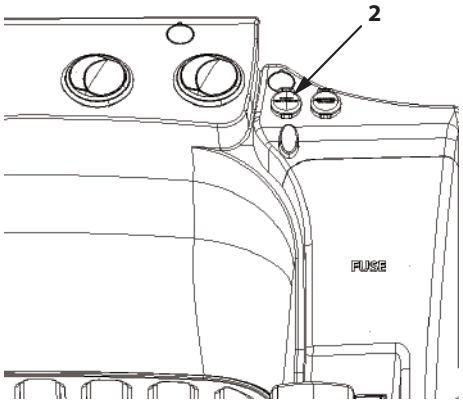


MDCD-01-030-2 ja



ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-012-2 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

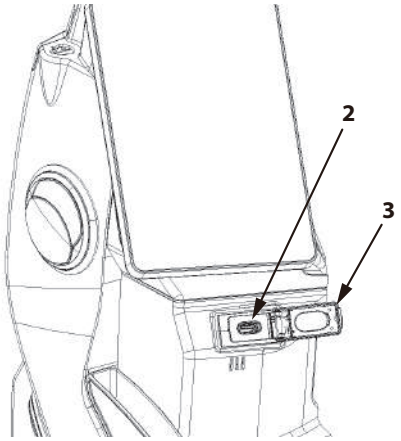
MDFY-01-076-1 ja

USB Power Supply

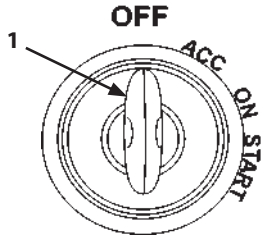
Use the USB power supply for operating or charging compatible mobile or electronic devices.

IMPORTANT

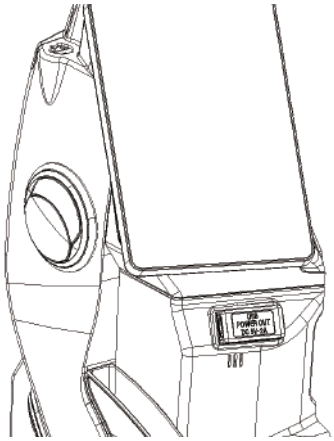
The USB power supply of the machine can be used at up to DC 5V.
Its maximum rated capacity is 5 V/2 A.
Connecting a device that exceeds the rated capacity activates the protection function, so the device may fail to operate or charge.
USB devices with A-type terminals may be used.
A device with incompatible terminals will not operate or charge, and may cause damage.
It works only as a power supply and cannot be used for data transfer or communications.
A special cable may be required to connect to some devices. In such cases, use the required cable.
Do not use for a long time with the engine off.
Doing so may discharge the batteries.
Remove the device promptly after recharging is complete.
As it is not waterproof, do not get any liquids, such as water on it.
Take all due care as warranty repairs do not cover damage to connected devices or corruption or loss of data.
Do not connect a broken device. Smoke and/or fire may result.
Never insert metal or any foreign object into the USB terminals. Electrical shock and/or damage will result.
Be careful when a cable is connected. Tripping over it may result in injury and/or damage to the device.



MDFY-01-110-1 ja



MDCD-01-030-2 ja


MDFY-01-111 ja

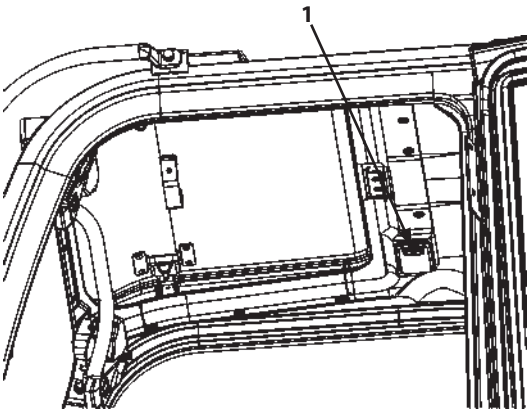
How to Use

1. Remove cap (3) from USB power supply (2).
2. Plug in the USB connector of the device you wish to connect.
3. Turn key switch (1) to the ON position. Use the USB power supply in this state.
4. After use, remove the USB connector of the connecting device and cover the USB power supply (2) using cap (3).

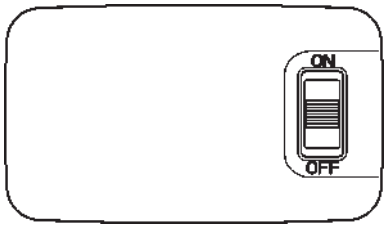
Room Light Switch

Push switch (1) on the room light to turn the room light ON.

ON position	:	The room light comes and stays ON. (The light does not turn ON while the key OFF.)
OFF position	:	The room light goes OFF.
Neutral	:	The room light turns ON as the cab door is opened. The room light automatically goes off after 30 seconds. It also turns OFF automatically when the engine starts. (The room light turns ON while the key switch is OFF.)



MDAA-01-305-1 ja



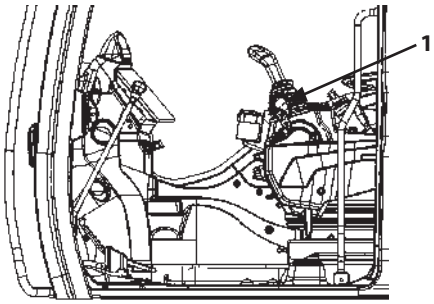
MDAA-01-318 ja

Pilot Shut-off Lever

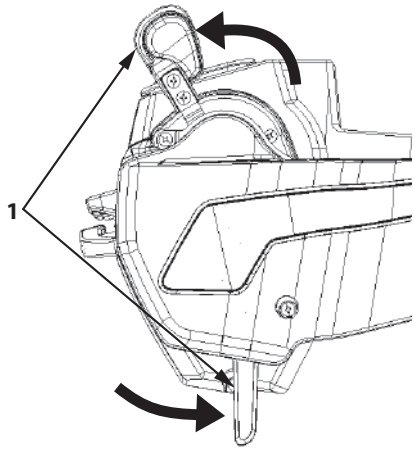
Pilot shut-off lever (1) functions to prevent the machine from being mistakenly operated when the operator accidentally touches the control lever or pedals when getting on or off the machine.

WARNING

- **To lock it, put pilot shut-off lever (1) securely in the LOCK position. If in an intermediate position, it is not locked, which is dangerous.**
- **When leaving the operator's station, always stop the engine. Then, put pilot shut-off lever (1) in the LOCK position.**
- **Always put it in the LOCK position at the end of work and for transport.**
- **Make sure it is in the LOCK position before starting the engine. The engine cannot start in any position other than LOCK.**
- **If the pilot shut-off lever develops a problem, have it repaired as soon as possible. For repairs, contact Authorized Dealer.**

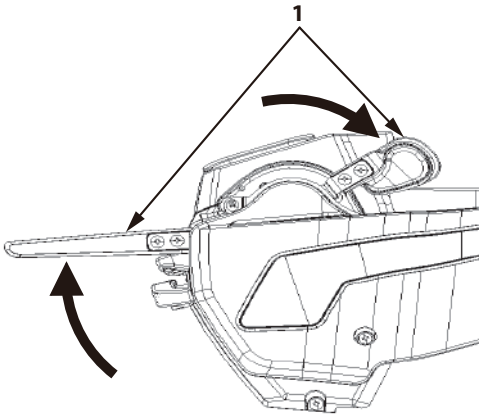


MDFY-01-022-1 ja



LOCK Position

MDFY-01-088-1 ja



UNLOCK Position

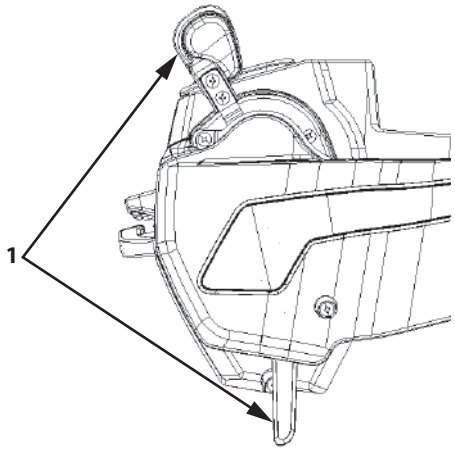
MDFY-01-113-1 ja

Control Lever Auto-Lock

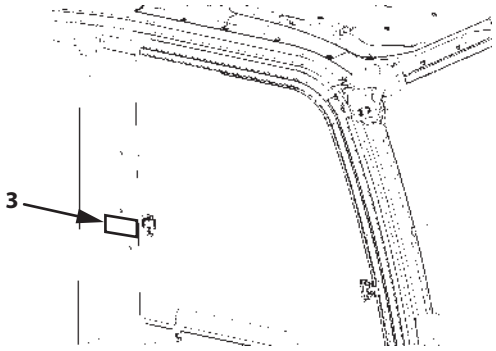
This function keeps the machine from operating to prevent it from moving due to an unintended operator action, i.e. accidentally unlocking the pilot shut-off lever (1) while the control lever is engaged because the operator accidentally snagged it with a piece of clothing.

IMPORTANT

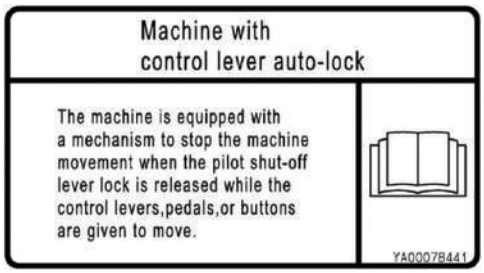
The name plate (3) is mounted inside the operator's station on machines equipped with the control lever auto-lock.



MDFY-01-088-2 ja



MDFY-01-184-1 ja



Nameplate (3)

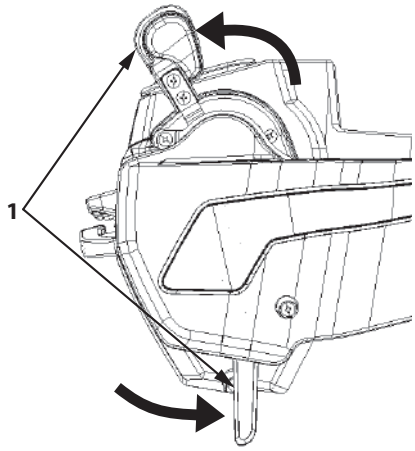
MDFY-01-185 en_GB

WARNING

- **The control lever auto-lock function helps to inhibit unintentional operation of the machine by the operator. By no means will the function stop the machine in every situation.**
- **When moving the machine, make sure all the control levers are in neutral before unlocking the pilot shut-off lever (1).**

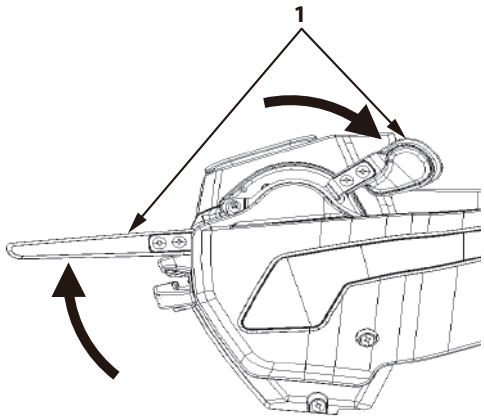
When this function is activated, the front attachment, swing, travel and attachment operations are automatically locked, the icon (2), in the figure, lights on the monitor and a buzzer sounds.

Once this function is activated, the machine cannot be moved even if the control lever is operated with the pilot shut-off lever (1) still in the "UNLOCK Position".
To resume operating the machine, return the pilot shut-off lever (1) to the "LOCK Position", make sure that the control lever is in neutral and then put the pilot shut-off lever in the "UNLOCK Position".



LOCK position

MDFY-01-088-1 ja

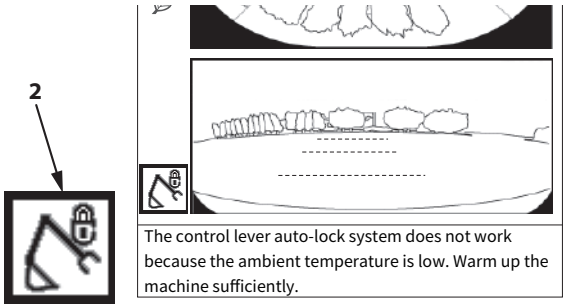


UNLOCK Position

MDFY-01-113-1 ja

WARNING

- **The control lever auto-lock function does not guarantee a full stop of the machine. When performing travel and attachment operations, in some circumstances, the machine may move a certain amount before stopping after the function is activated.**
- **When performing travel and attachment operations, the time it takes to stop the machine depends on the hydraulic oil temperature. The colder the hydraulic oil, the longer it takes to stop, so warm up the machine fully when it is cold.**
- **This function does not operate below a certain temperature when the hydraulic oil is cold. Icon (2) flashes on the monitor in conditions under which this function will not operate.**
- **When a travel pilot hose or an attachment pilot hose is disconnected, this function may not operate properly as system response deteriorates due to the effect of the air. After connecting the hose, warm the machine fully and bleed air from the pilot circuit. For information on the air bleeding procedure, refer to "Bleeding Air from the Hydraulic System".**



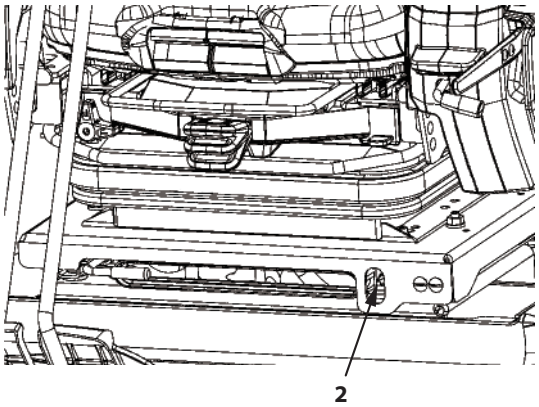
Warning Icon

MDF3-01-051-1 en_GB

Engine Stop Switch

If the engine does not stop even though the key switch is turned OFF, due to failure of the machine, move switch (2) located at the front-left side of the seat stand downward to stop the engine.

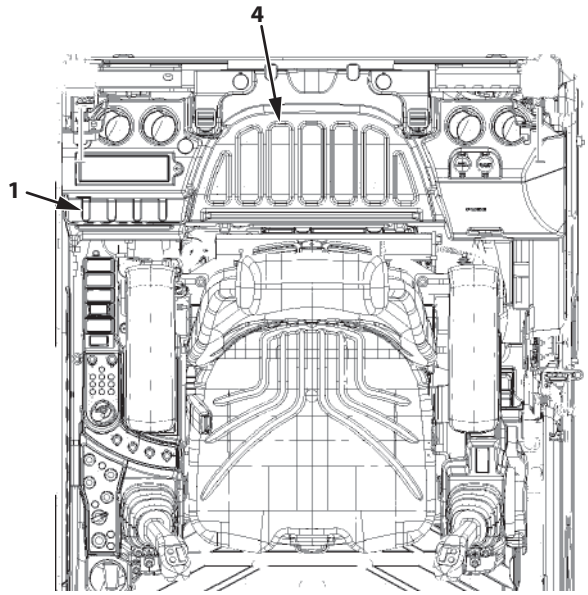
After operating switch (2), return it to the up position.



MDFY-01-024-1 ja

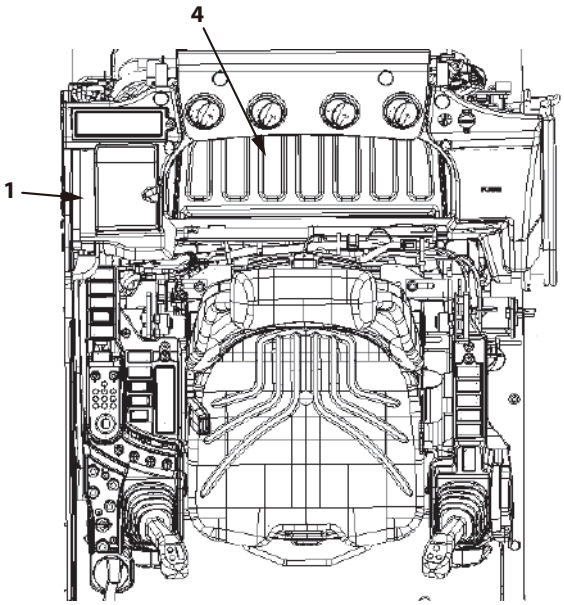
Magazine Rack

Magazine rack (1) can hold documents of up to A4 size, such as the Operator's Manual in portrait orientation. For documents larger than A4, use tray (4).



ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-006-3 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

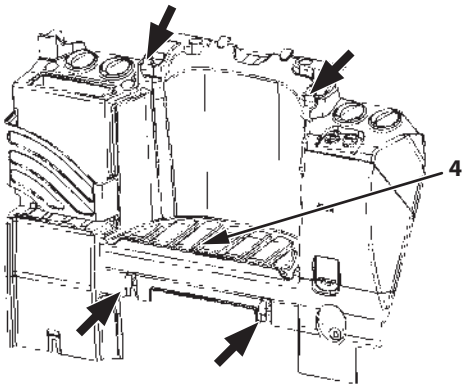
MDFY-01-036-5 ja

Net Hooks

This is a hook on which to hang a net for preventing items placed on tray (4) from flying off due to vibration or impacts while working.

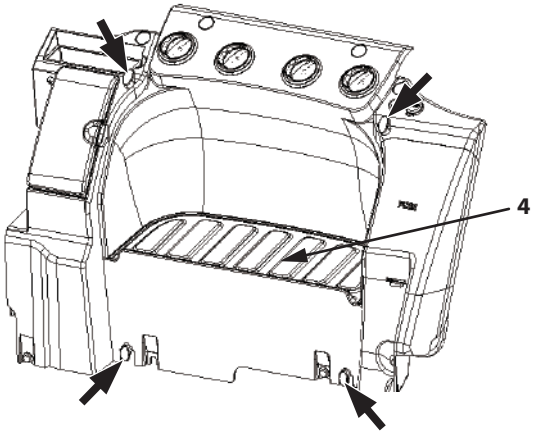
NOTE

This machine is not supplied with a net.
Please prepare and use a net suitable for the size of your baggage.



ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-010-6 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDFY-01-114-4 ja

Drink Holders

Two drink holders (1), (2) are provided in the cab. The holders can be used in different ways to suit the size of drink, ease of use, etc.

CAUTION

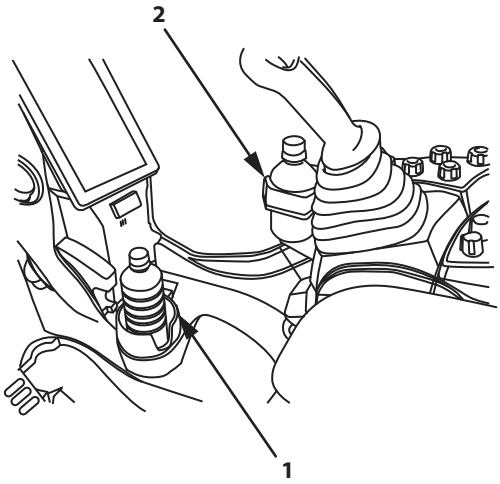
- **If a large container is put into drink holder (2), it may interfere with operations of the front attachment control levers.**
  When using a large container, use holder (1), put it in magazine rack (3) in the rear of the operator's station, glove compartment (5) or use tray (4).
- **When using the drink holders, make sure that the drink container is stable and secure.**
  If the container is not fully inserted, it may slide out of the holder, spilling the drink and interfering with driving of the machine.
  When conducting work that involves large amounts of vibration, take care to ensure that the drink container does jump out of its holder.

IMPORTANT

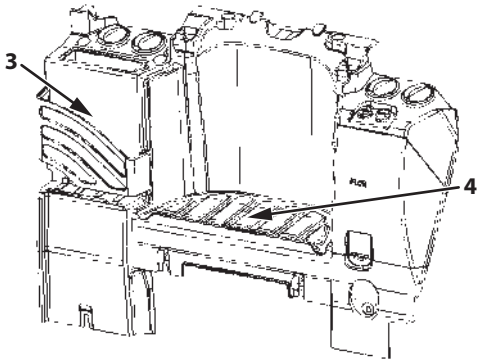
While working, always keep the cap on your drink in the holder. If a drink spills on the electronic equipment, it may cause a fault.

NOTE

Drink holder (1) can be removed for cleaning.
For how, refer to Cleaning the Drink Holder in Inspections and Maintenance.

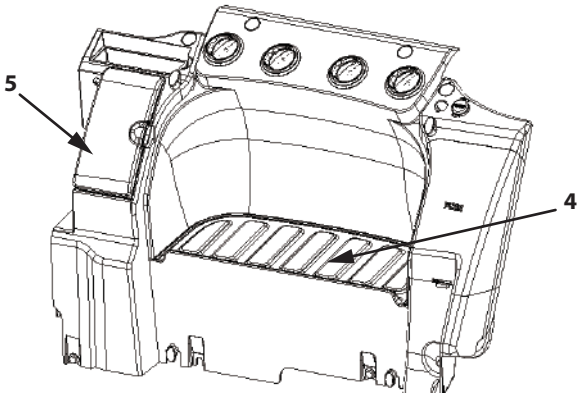


MDFY-01-116-1 ja



ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-010-3 ja

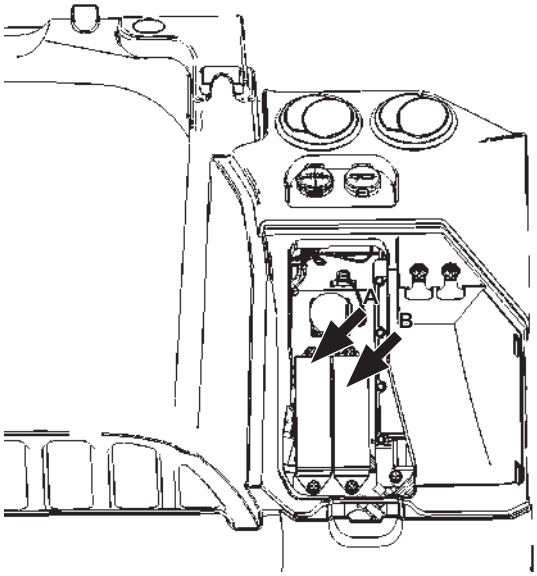


ZX345USLC-7H

MDFY-01-114-5 ja

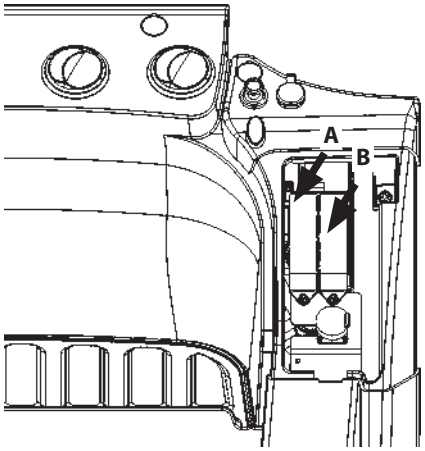
Fuse Box

The fuse boxes (2 boxes) are located to the left rear of the operator's seat.
The box on the left when facing the boxes is fuse box (A).
The one on the right is fuse box (B).



ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-013-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDFY-01-025-1 ja

Fuse box (A)

10- CONTROLLER
5 A

9- BACKUP
10 A

8- ECU-IG
30 A

7- START
5 A

6- OPT.2 (ALT)
20 A

5- OPT.1 (ALT)
5 A

4- SOLENOID
20 A

3- HEATER
20 A

2- WIPER
15 A

1- LAMP
20 A

20- OPT.3 (BATT)
5 A

19- HORN
10 A

18- IDLE STOP
5 A

17- POWER ON
5 A

16- GLOW RELAY
5 A

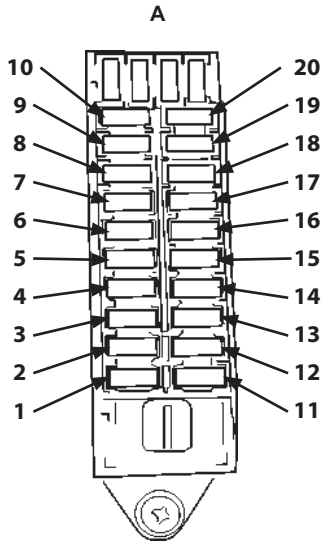
15- AUX
10 A

14- MONITOR
5 A

13- RADIO
5 A

12- LIGHTER/SOCKET (24 V)
5 A

11- FUEL PUMP
5 A

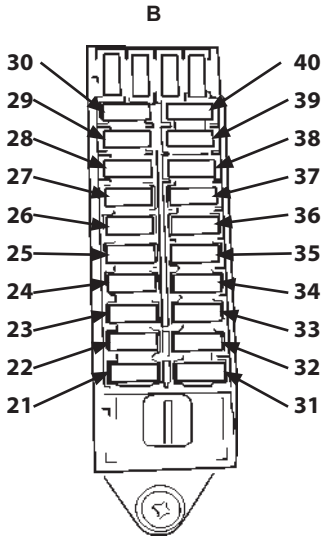


M1GR-01-003-1 ja

Fuse box (B)

30- -
29- EL POWER
10 A
28- MG POWER
10 A
27- SOCKET(12 V)
10 A
26- AERIAL_C/U(12 V)
10 A
25- PI SHUT-OFF
5 A
24- SENSOR UNIT
10 A
23- 12 V_UNIT
20 A
22- CAB LAMP REAR
10 A
21- SEAT HEATER
10 A

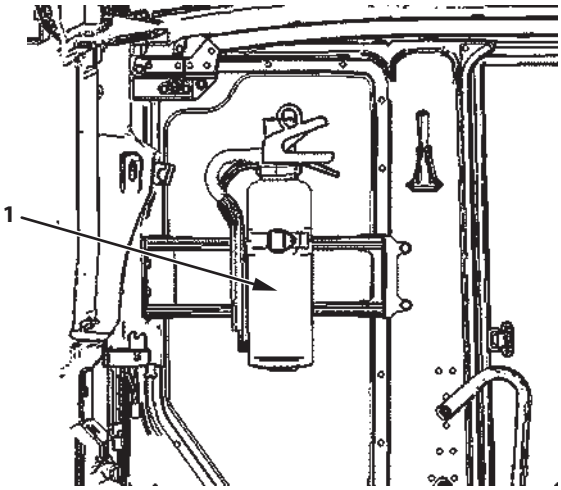
40- -
39- USB(12 V)
5 A
38- AUX 3
10 A
37- AUX 2
10 A
36- DISCONNECT BACK-UP
5 A
35- UREA HEAT
20 A
34- DCU
20 A
33- WARNING LAMP
10 A
32- SEAT COMPR
10 A
31- QUICK COUPLER
5 A



M1GR-01-003-2 ja

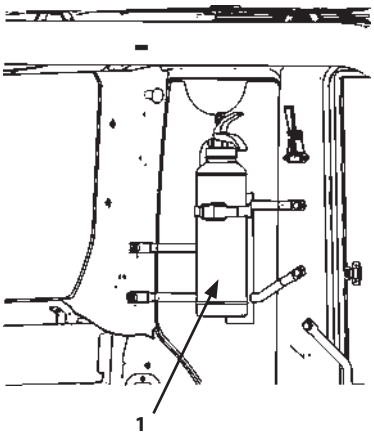
Installing a Fire Extinguisher (Optional)

A fire extinguisher (1) can be installed in the left rear corner of the cab. Contact Authorized Dealer to install one.



ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-014-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDAA-01-319-2 ja

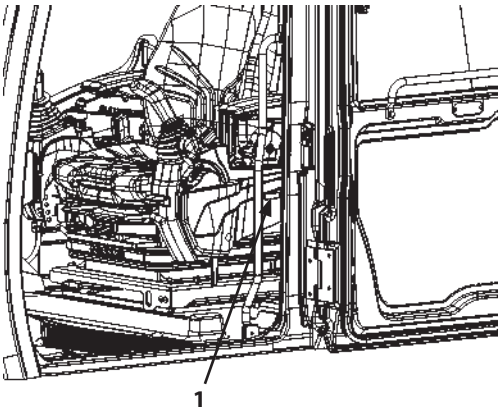
Handling the Cab Door and Window

Door Lock Release Lever

CAUTION

- **Open the cab door all the way until it securely locks in the latch on the side of the cab.**
- **Do not unlock the cab door when the machine is parked on a slope or while the wind is strong. The door may close suddenly.**
- **When opening or closing the cab door, take extra care not to catch fingers between the base machine and the cab door. The cab door may close accidentally, possibly resulting in personal injury.**

To release the door, flip up the armrest first and push down the lever (1) from the inside of handrail.

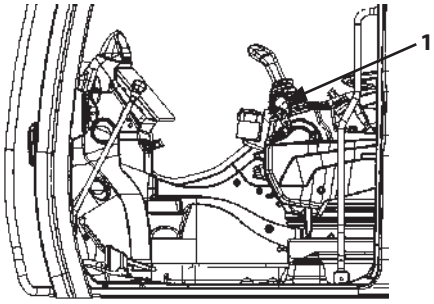


MDFY-01-029-1 ja

Opening/Closing and Removing Cab Inside Window

WARNING

- **Before opening, closing or removing the upper front cab window, overhead window, cab door window or lower front window, be sure to lower the front attachment to the ground and put pilot shut-off lever (1) in the LOCK position. Failure to do so may allow the machine to move unexpectedly if a control lever or pedal is mistakenly touched with a part of the body, possibly resulting in personal injury or death.**
- **Park the machine on a level surface and stop the engine before opening and closing the upper front window.**



MDFY-01-022-1 ja

- **When opening the upper front window, hold the window with your hands and hold it until the upper front window is locked.**
- **When closing the upper front window, it may accidentally fall under its own weight. Hold the upper front window with both hands until it is completely closed. The window stops once before closing completely. Do not operate the machine when the window is in this position. The upper front window is not locked in this position, so there is a possibility that the window may drop suddenly.**

Opening and Closing Upper Front Window

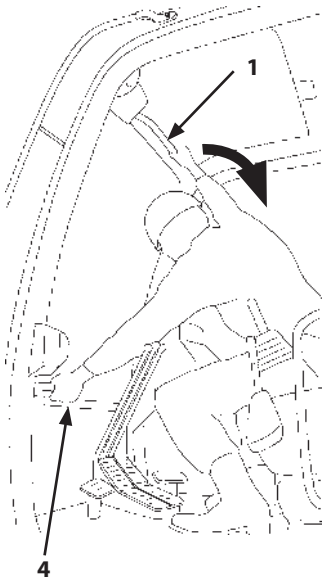
CAUTION

- **Close the upper front window slowly so you do not catch your fingers.**
- **Always secure lock pin (2) in the lock position after the upper front window is opened.**

1. Press lock release lever (1) at the upper center to release the upper front window lock.
2. As shown in the illustration on the right, hold lock release lever (1) and lower handle (4) on the upper front window, and pull the upper front window up and back until auto locks (3) at both sides of the upper front window securely engage with the strikers on the ceiling.
3. After confirming that the window has engaged securely with auto locks (3), slide lock pin (2) into the left bracket boss hole to lock the window in position.

   NOTE

   When the upper front window is opened, the wiper and washer are inoperable.

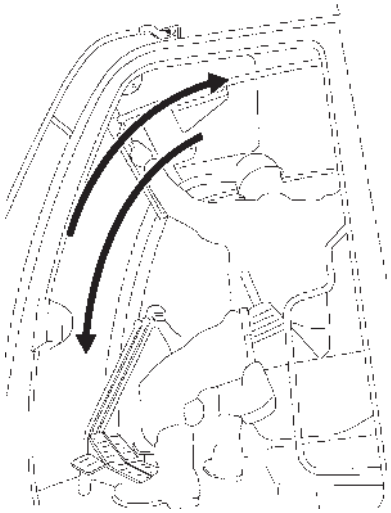


MDAA-01-358-2 ja

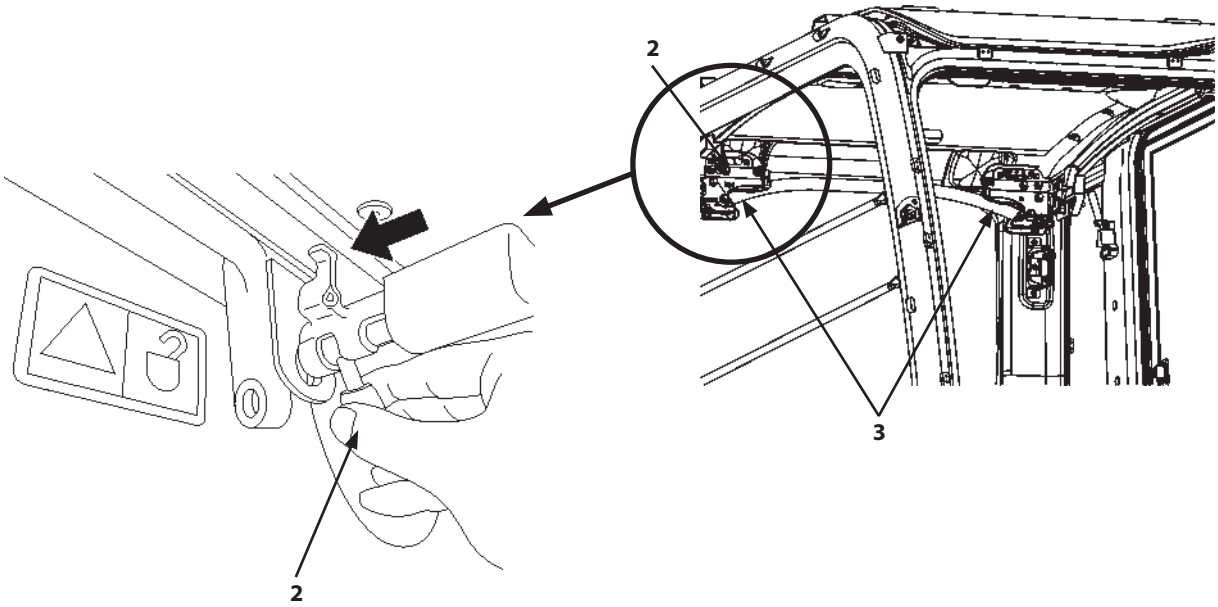
4. To close the upper front window, as shown in the illustration on the right, hold upper lock release lever (1) and lower handle (4) of the upper front window in same way as for opening. Then perform steps 1, 2 and 3 of the procedure in reverse order. The window stops before it completely closes, so close the front window by pushing lock release lever (1) upward.
   Push lock release lever (1) downward to release auto lock (3).

   NOTE

   The wiper and washer will not operate unless the upper front window is securely closed.



MDAA-01-359-1 ja



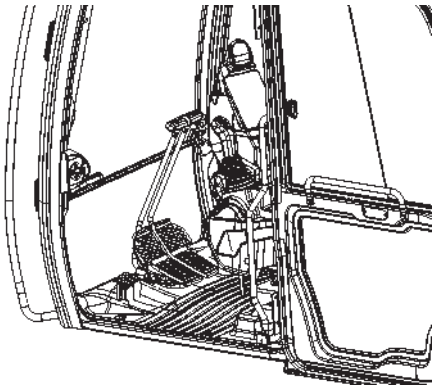
MDAA-01-306-1 ja

Removing and Storing Lower Front Window

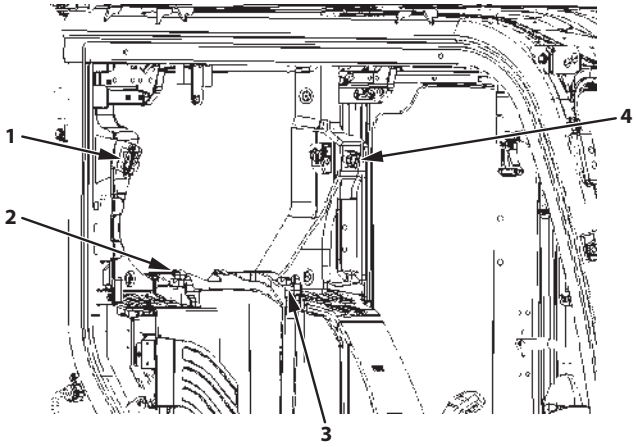
CAUTION

Take care not to get fingers caught when handling the lower front window.

1. Open the upper front window beforehand when removing the lower front window.
2. Lift up the lower front window to remove it.
3. Store the removed windowpane in the storage location to the rear. After inserting the windowpane into rubber clips (2 and 3), slide it sideways securely into rubber clip (4). Push fastener (1) to lock.

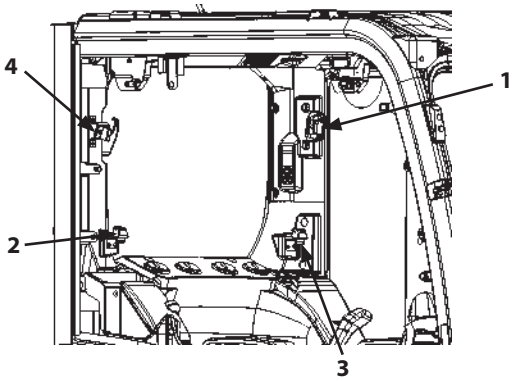


MDFY-01-030 ja



ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-015-1 ja

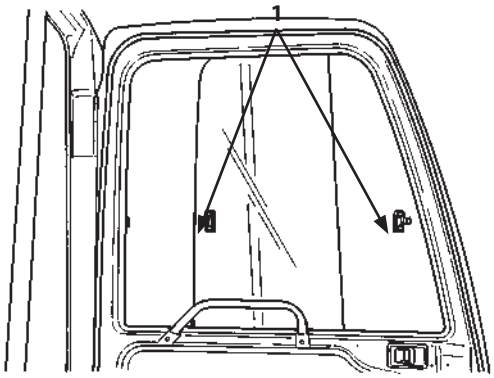


ZX345USLC-7H

MDFY-01-031-1 ja

Opening Side Window

Hold handle (1) and slide windowpane to open the side window.

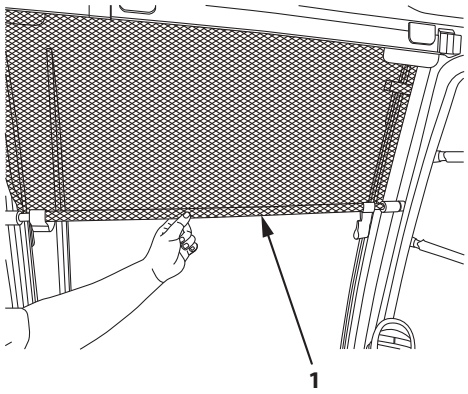


Side Window

MDC1-01-547-1 ja

Opening and Closing the Roll Screen (for Front and Right Windows) (Optional)

To provide shade and ensure good visibility for the operator, roll screens are fitted.
Roll screens are a fitted to the front window and window on the right side to provide shade.



MDFY-01-074-1 ja

WARNING

- **Ensure the pilot shut-off lever is in the LOCK position when operating the roll screen. The machine may unexpectedly move if the work lever or pedal are mistakenly touched.**
- **Set the bottom of the roll screen bar (1) to an appropriate position that does not impede vision.**

WARNING

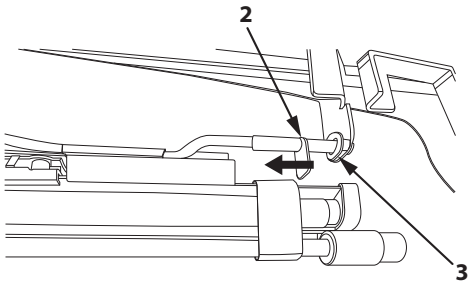
Do not hold onto the roll screen for support when getting onto/off of the cab or standing up from the seat. Doing so may damage the screen and/or result in injury.

IMPORTANT

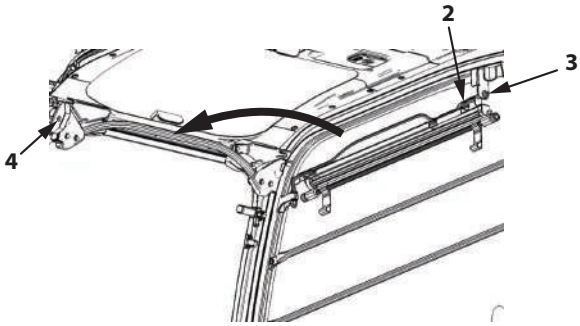
- **Hold the center of bar (1) when using the screen. If the center is not held, the screen may snag on surrounding parts or belongings and cause injury.**
- **Do not pull strongly on the screen as this may damage or break it.**
- **When opening or closing the front window, store the roll screen on the right window side.**

How to Use on the Front Window

1. When the roll screen is secure on the right window side, use the procedure below to move it over the front window.
   Secure by sliding lock pin (2) to the left to remove it from receiving part (3), rotating it to the front window side and inserting lock pin (2) into receiving part (4).
   Ensure lock pin (2) is securely inserted into receiving part (4).

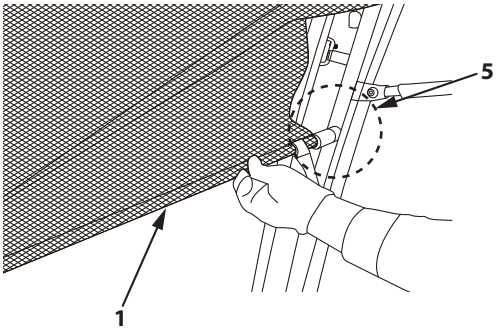


MDFY-01-072-2 ja

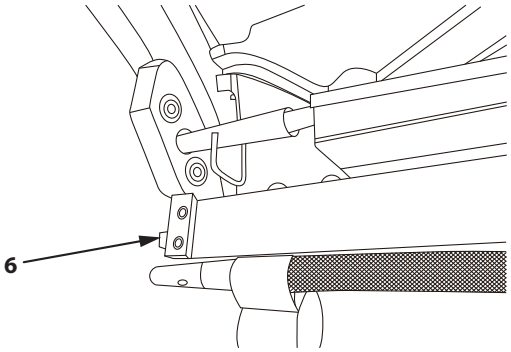


MDFY-01-066-1 ja

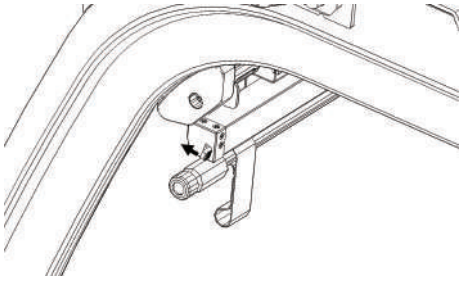
2. Pull the screen down, tilt bar (1) and fit the end into rail (5).
3. While holding the center of bar (1), press switch (6) and wind up the screen to adjust screen pull-out. The left-right position of the screen can be adjusted by sliding case (7) until it hits stopper (8).



MDFY-01-067-1 ja

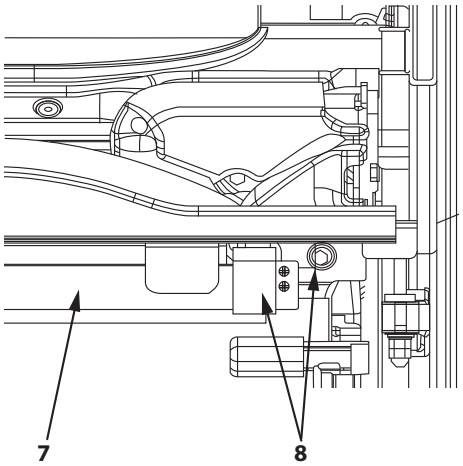


MDFY-01-068-1 ja



Direction of operation for switch (6)

MDFY-01-120 ja

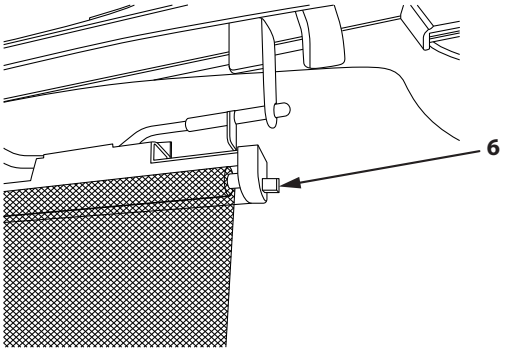


MDFY-01-069-1 ja

How to Store on Right Window Side

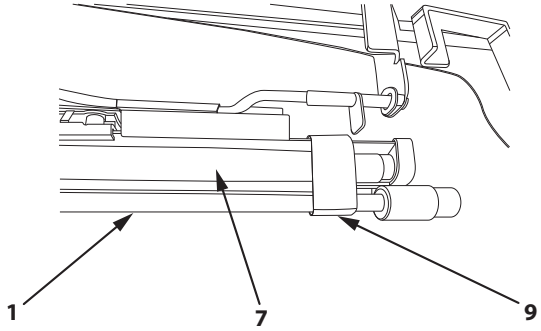
When opening or closing the front window, store on the right window side.

1. Perform the reverse of the procedure described in "How to Use on the Front Window" and move to the right side.
2. While holding the center of bar (1), press switch (6) and fully wind up the screen.



MDFY-01-070-1 ja

3. Attach screen fasteners (9) to secure bar (1) to case (7).

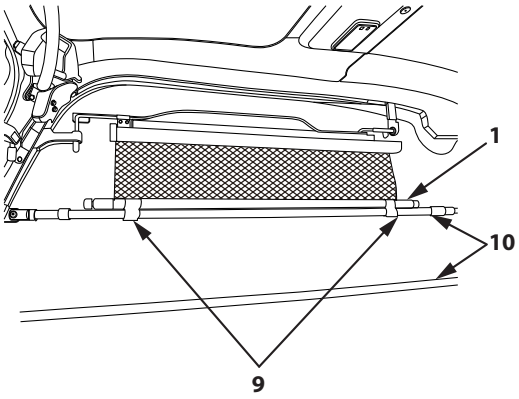


MDFY-01-072-1 ja

How to Use on Right Window Side

The screen can be installed on the right window side as protection from the sun.
However, if other items are fitted to pipe (10), use on the right side may not be possible.

1. Secure bar (1) by pulling the screen down and attaching screen fastener (9) to pipe (10).
   If screen fastener (9) is worn, it may not be able to secure the screen. Screen fastener (9) can be easily replaced, and should be replaced if it wears out.



MDFY-01-073-1 ja

How to clean the screen

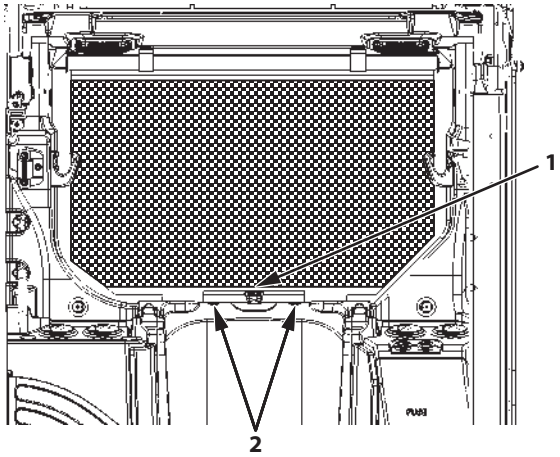
When cleaning the screen, do not use detergents or other cleaning fluids. Use a towel that has been moistened with water and gently wrung and wipe the dirt off gently while supporting the screen with a hand.

NOTE

If detergent is used or water is applied directly, it may cause the screen condition to deteriorate or wrinkle.

Opening and Closing the Roll Screen (for Rear Window) (Option)

To provide shade while allowing for maximum visibility, roll screens are fitted.



MDA4-01-016-1 ja

WARNING

- **Put pilot shut-off lever in the LOCK position prior to using the roll screen.**
  The machine may unexpectedly move if the work lever or pedal are mistakenly touched.
- **Set the bottom of the roll screen (bar(1)) to an appropriate position that does not impede vision.**

IMPORTANT

- **Since the screen is normally rolled up, it will automatically roll up when bar (1) is released.**
  Hold the center of the bar (1) when using the screen. If the center is not held, the screen may snag on surrounding parts or belongings and cause injury.
- **Do not pull strongly on the screen as this may damage or break it.**

The screen can used to block light from the rear window, by pulling bar (1) out and hooking it on the underside of hook (2).
If not properly hooked in place, it may come off. To avoid this, ensure it is secure.

Cleaning the Screen

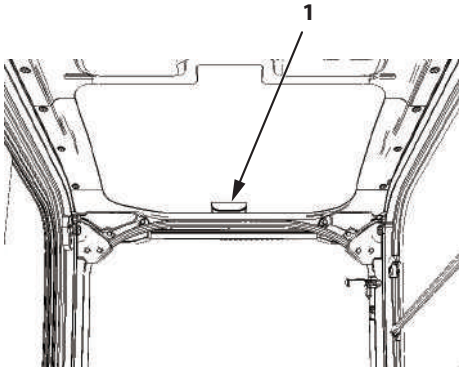
When cleaning the screen, do not use detergents or other cleaning fluids. Use a towel that has been moistened with water and gently wrung and wipe the dirt off gently while supporting the screen with a hand.

NOTE

If detergent is used or water is applied directly, it may cause the screen wrinkle or deteriorate.

Open and Closing the Ceiling Sunshade

The ceiling sunshade is opened and closed by gripping handle (1) and sliding the sunshade.



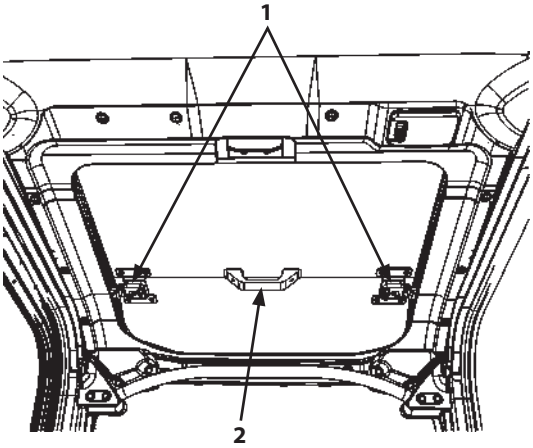
MDFY-01-042-1 ja

Opening and Closing the Overhead Window (Clear Hatch)

Move locks (1) toward center of the window. Hold handle (2) and lift the window until it rises upright. With the window positioned upright, it will be secured in position by dampers (3).

To close, hold handle (2) and pull the window down until a "click" sound is heard from left and right locks (1).

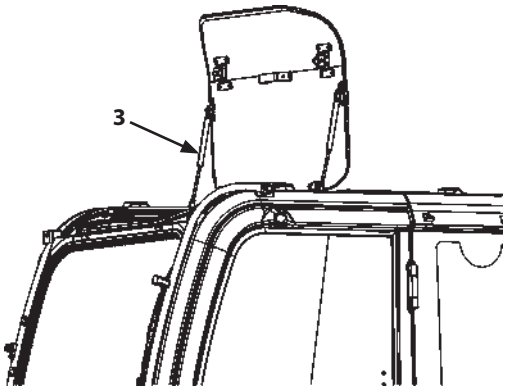
Note that the overhead window can be used as an emergency exit.



MDAA-01-302-1 ja

IMPORTANT

- **Replace the clear hatch with a new one every 5 years even if undamaged. Replace in less than 5 years if there is any visible damage or it receives a major impact.**
- **When cleaning the clear hatch, use a neutral detergent.**
  If an acidic or alkaline detergent is used, the clear hatch may become discolored or crack.
- **Keep organic solvent away from the clear hatch. Failure to do so may cause the clear hatch to become discolored or crack.**



MDAA-01-303-1 ja

Opening and Closing the OPG Front Guard (Optional)

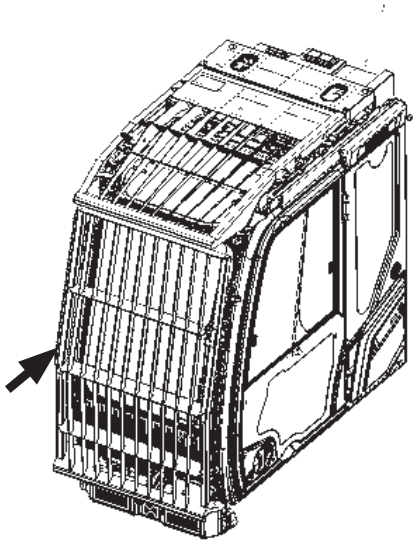
WARNING

- **Do not release lever (1) when the machine is on a slope. The guard may suddenly open.**
- **To open and close the OPG front guard, hold (A). If holding other parts, there is a risk of your hand becoming caught.**
- **When opening or closing the front guard, use a stepladder etc. and make sure footing is secure.**

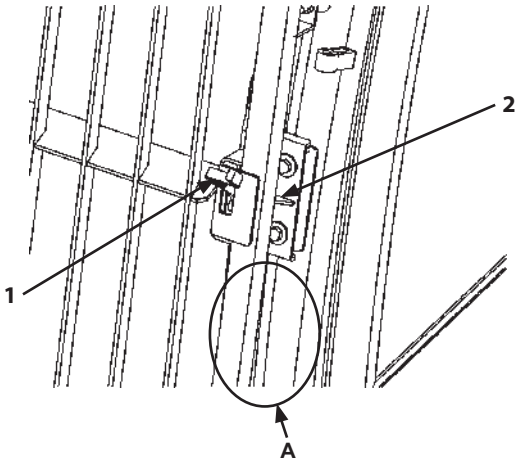
IMPORTANT

Do not operate the front attachment while the OPG front guard is open.
The front attachment may interfere with the OPG front guard, possibly resulting in damage.

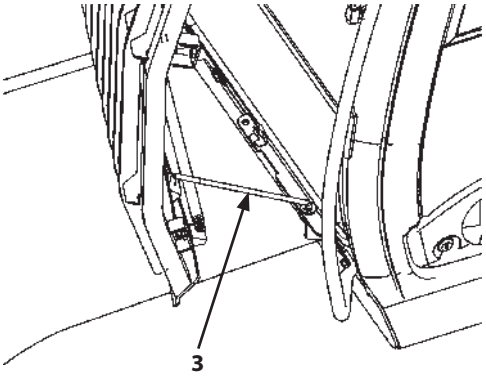
When releasing the lock, pull lever (1) down.
When the OPG front guard is slightly open, lock lever (3) securely on the cab side.
When the OPG is fully open, lock lever (4) securely on the guard side.
When closing the OPG front guard, hold (A) and close the front guard until the locking mechanism is properly engaged with catch (2).



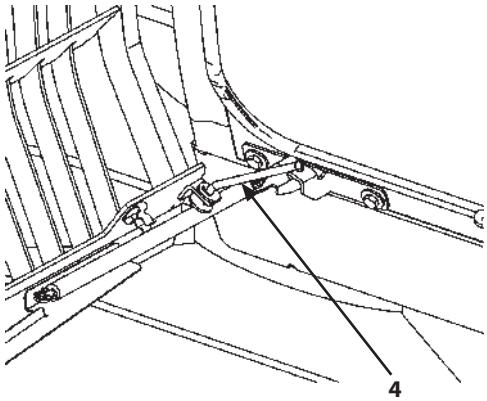
MDFY-01-043-1 ja



MDC1-07-089-2 ja



MDC1-07-090-1 ja



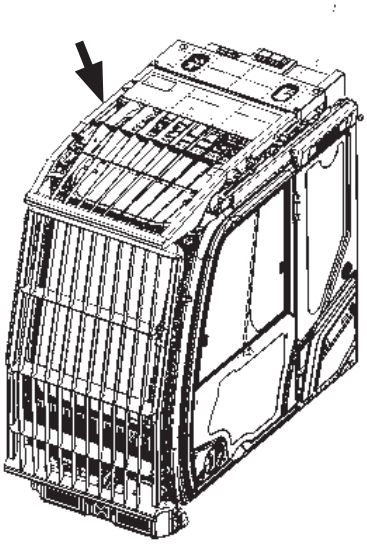
MDC1-07-091-1 ja

Opening and Closing the OPG Head Guard (Optional)

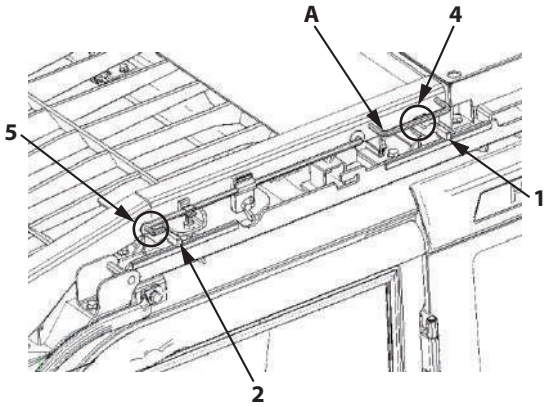
WARNING

- **Do not release lever (1) or (2) when the machine is on a slope. The guard may suddenly open.**
- **To open and close the OPG front guard, hold (A). If holding other parts, there is a risk of your hand becoming caught.**
- **When opening or closing the head guard, use a stepladder etc. and make sure your footing is secure.**
- **When levers (1) and (2) are raised, the locking mechanism is not engaged with catches (4) and (5), so the guard must be closed again.**

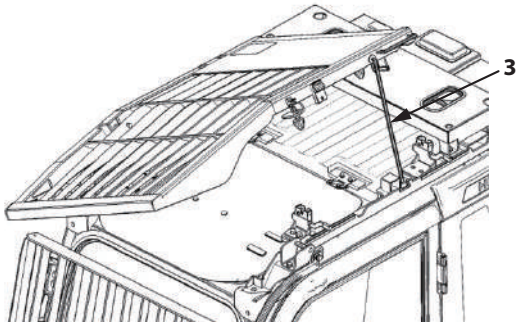
To unlock it, push levers (1) and (2) upwards.
When the OPG front guard is open, ensure pilot shut-off lever (3) is locked securely on the cab side.
When closing the OPG front guard, hold (A) and close the front guard until the locking mechanism is properly engaged with catches (4) and (5).



MDFY-01-043-2 ja



MDFY-01-044-1 ja



MDFY-01-045-1 ja

Adjusting Operator's Seat and Console

Adjusting Console Height

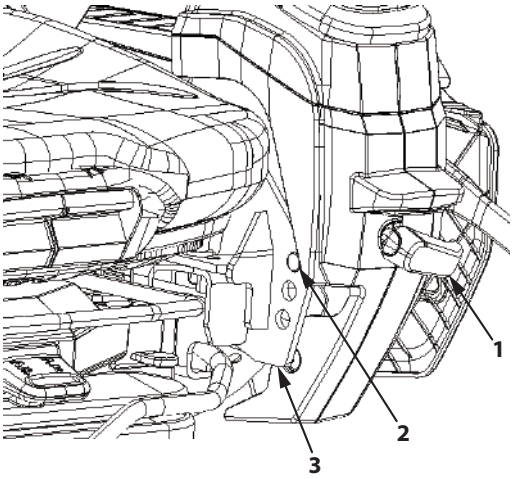
The console height should be adjusted to suit the body of the operator and the work condition. The console and control levers can be adjusted to 3 different heights.

Height Adjustment Procedure

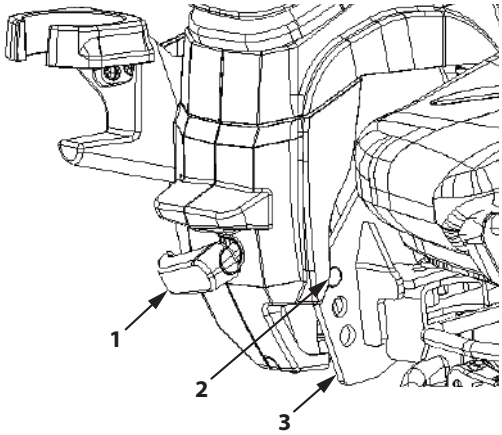
1. Lower the bucket to the ground. Stop the engine.
2. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
3. Move levers (1) on the left and right of the console upwards, remove lock pins (2) from lock bracket (3) and adjust the position of the console.
4. After adjusting the console, make sure lock pins are in lock brackets (3).

IMPORTANT

If lever (1) becomes difficult to move, apply grease to lock pin (2). If this does not improve the situation, contact Authorized Dealer.



MDFY-01-033-1 ja



MDFY-01-034-1 ja

Adjusting the Operator's Seat (Air Suspension Type)

WARNING

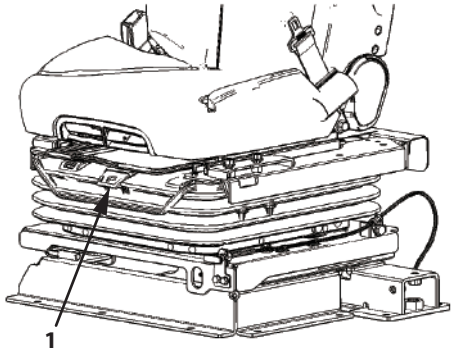
Before adjusting the seat, be sure to lower the front attachment to the ground and put the pilot shut-off lever in the LOCK position. Failure to do so may allow the machine to move unexpectedly if a control lever or pedal is accidentally touched, resulting in personal injury or death.

Seat Height and Seat Cushion Angle Adjustment

IMPORTANT

The seat is an air suspension type of seat. Air pressure is supplied by the compressor, so start the engine.

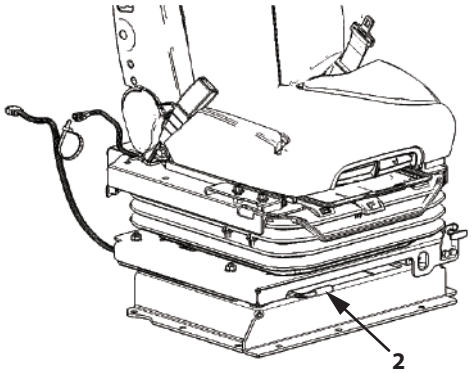
Pull lever (1) to introduce air and raise the seat. Press it down to release air and lower the seat.



MDF3-01-021-1 ja

Console and Seat Fore-Aft Adjustment

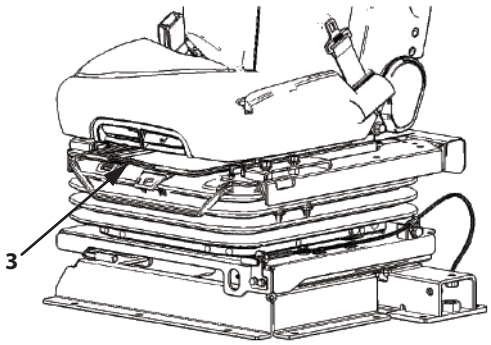
Operate console and seat slide lever (2). The adjustment has 8 increments with an interval of 20 mm (0.8 in) (total range of 140 mm (5.5 in)).



MDF3-01-018-1 ja

Seat Only Fore-Aft Adjustment

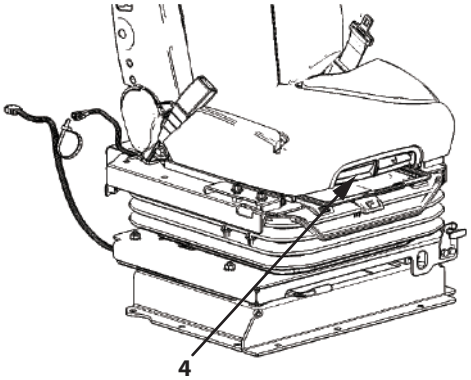
Operate seat slide lever (3) to adjust the seat to the desired distance from the travel pedals and levers. The adjustment has 21 increments with an interval of 10 mm (0.4 in) (total range of 200 mm (7.9 in)).



MDF3-01-021-2 ja

Fore-Aft Adjustment of Seat Surface

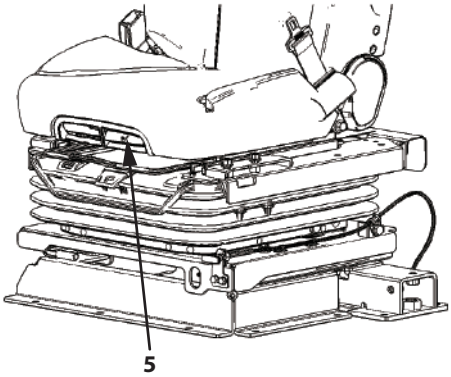
Lift lever (4) to adjust the seat. The adjustment has 5 increments with an interval of 15 mm (0.6 in) (total range of 60 mm (2.4 in)).



MDF3-01-018-2 ja

Angle Adjustment of Seat Surface

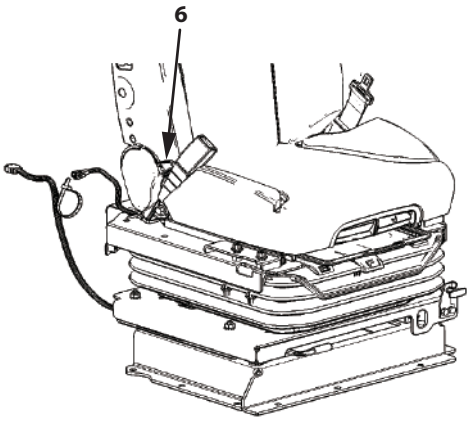
Lift lever (5) to operate. The height of the seat edge can be set to one of 3 levels.



MDF3-01-021-3 ja

Backrest Adjustment

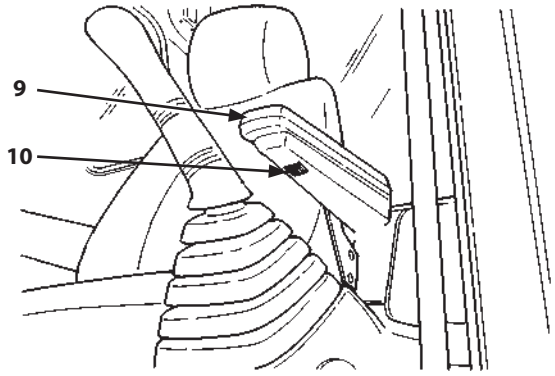
Pull backrest lever (6) and adjust the fore/aft tilt of the backrest. With the backrest in the desired position, release lever (6).



MDF3-01-018-3 ja

Armrest Adjustment

Armrest (9) can be lifted so it pivots upright to 90 °. Pull armrest upright to facilitate getting on and off the machine. The angle of armrest (9) can be adjusted to the desired position by turning adjusting dial (10) on the bottom of armrest (9).

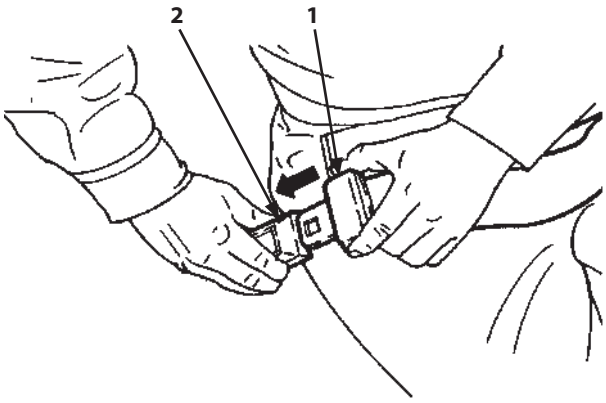


M1G6-01-017-3 ja

Seat Belt

WARNING

- **Be sure to use seat belt (1) when operating the machine.**
- **Before operating the machine, always check the condition of seat belt (1) and its mounting hardware. If any damage and/or wear are found, replace the part concerned.**
- **Replace seat belt (1) every 3 years, regardless of appearance.**

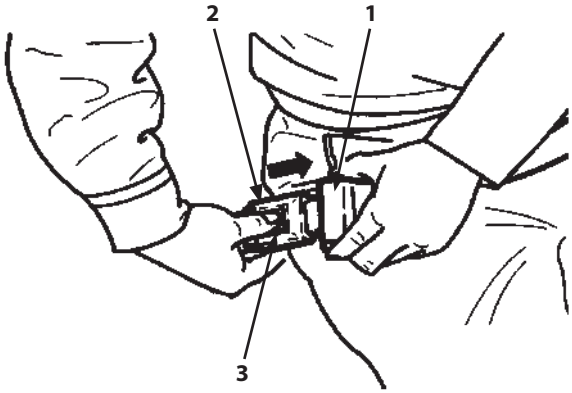


M1U1-01-031-1 ja

Using the Seat Belt

1. Confirm that seat belt (1) is not twisted. Securely insert the end of seat belt into buckle (2). Lightly pull on the belt (1) to confirm that the buckle latches securely.
2. Push button (3) on buckle (2) to unfasten seat belt (1).

Replace seat belt (1) if it is damaged or worn, or if the machine is involved in an accident which puts severe stress on the seatbelt.



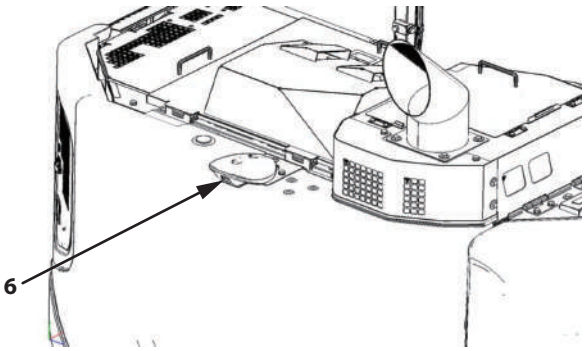
M1U1-01-032-1 ja

Aerial Angle

This function is for displaying a single, composite image on main monitor (2). It is made up of images from the cameras on the right (4), left (5) and rear (6) of the machine. This helps the operator check for obstacles around the machine. Pressing screen changeover switch (3) allows the camera image to be displayed as-is.

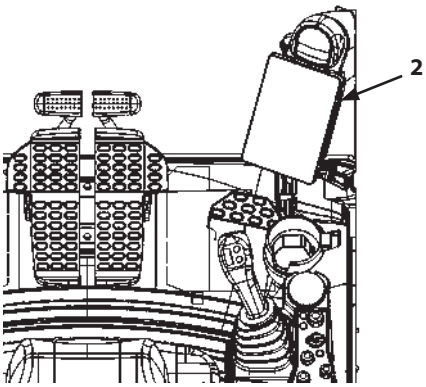
WARNING

- **The images are displayed solely for the purpose of helping the operator check around the vehicle. People and objects displayed on the monitor may appear differently from their actual positions or distances. Also note that some areas cannot be depicted by the cameras, such as near and under the machine. Before moving the machine, always check the area around the machine thoroughly.**
- **Check the visibility of the monitor image before operating the machine. If visibility is poor, the field of vision cannot be ensured, which may result in serious bodily injury or property damage.**
- **The installation positions of cameras are adjusted to produce a good composite image. Do not make any alterations, such as changing the position of right (4), left (5) or rear (6) cameras.**
- **If the image is not clear, clean the lenses of the camera(s) and/or the monitor to make it clearer. Always ensure good footing when cleaning the cameras.**

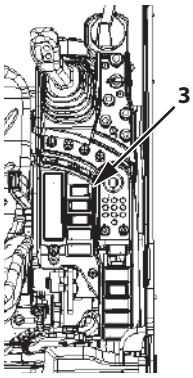


ZX135US-7H

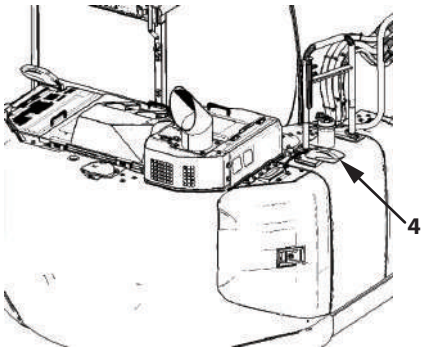
MDHE-01-004-1 ja



MDFY-01-028-2 ja

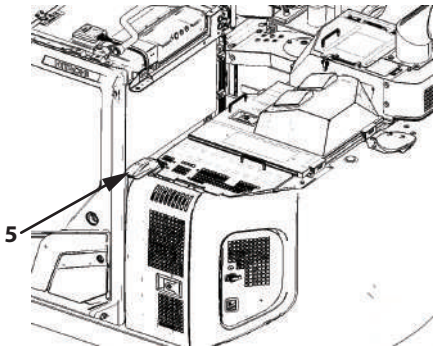


MDFY-01-117-1 ja



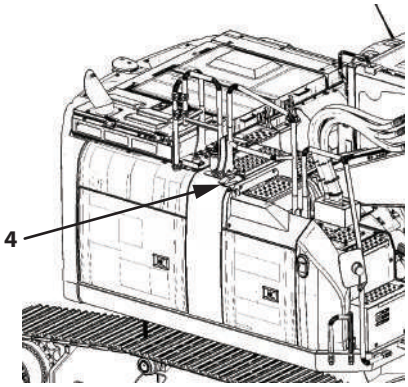
ZX135US-7H

MDHE-01-010-1 ja



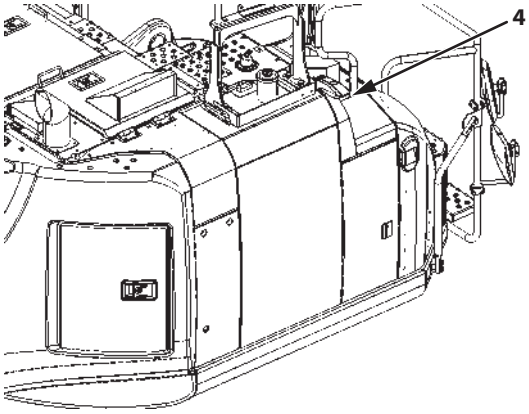
ZX135US-7H

MDHE-01-003-1 ja



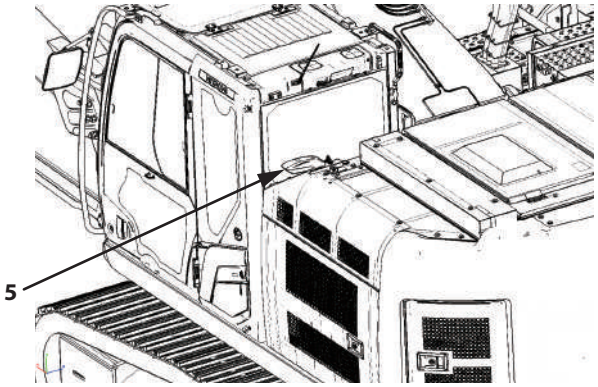
ZX345USLC-7H

MDHE-01-011-1 ja



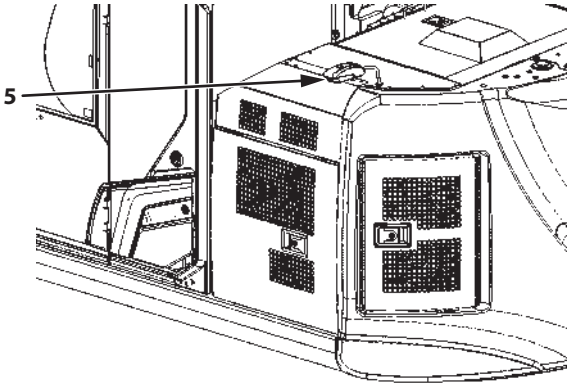
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-020-1 ja



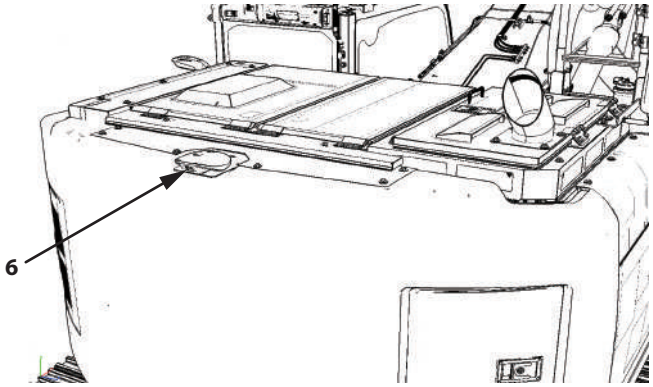
ZX345USLC-7H

MDHE-01-005-1 ja



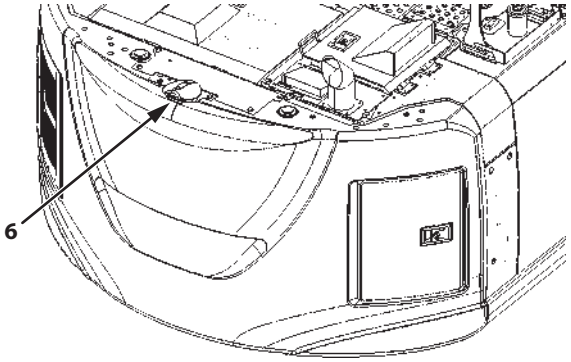
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-021-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDHE-01-006-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

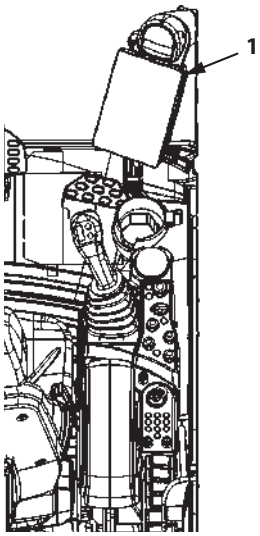
MDA4-01-022-1 ja

NOTE

The surface of the multi-function monitor (1) and camera lenses are made of plastic. When cleaning them, use a clean, water-dampened cloth and wipe lightly. Never use an organic solvent.

IMPORTANT

- **If there are any problems with the image on multi-function monitor (1), contact Authorized Dealer.**
- **It may be necessary to reconfigure the cameras if any work is done that affects camera installation positioning (such as removing/reinstalling camera brackets, counterweights, or replacing a camera). Make sure camera images are displayed correctly via the inspection methods described in "Checking Aerial Angle Camera Images" in Chapter 7 "Inspection and Maintenance". If any camera images are not displayed correctly, contact Authorized Dealer.**



MDFY-01-058-2 ja

Switching the Monitor Display

Push screen selector switch (1) to switch between screens.

- Display Screen
  Pressing the right side of the switch steps through the screens in the following order: 1→2→3→4→5→1.
  Pressing the left side of the switch steps through screens in the following order: 1→5→4→3→2→1.

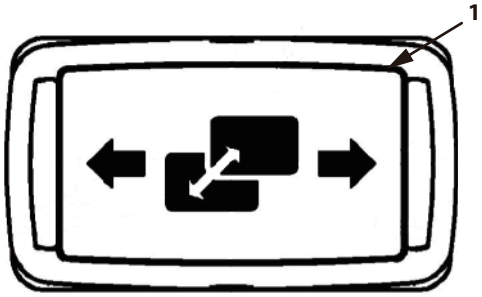
1- Surrounding Image

2- Surrounding Image + Image to Rear

3- Surrounding Image + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear

4- Image to Left Side + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear

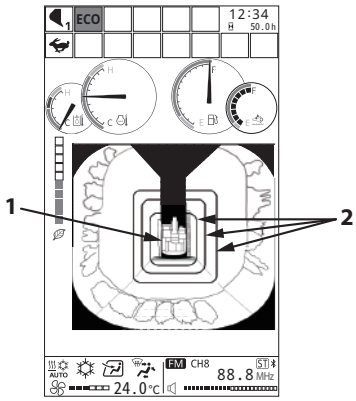
5- Image to Right Side + Image to Rear



MDFY-01-112-1 ja

Screen Description

Surrounding Image



MDFY-MT-139-1 ja

The surrounding image is displayed full-screen.
It is a composite of the images from the right, left and rear cameras.
Image processing is used to compress the images, so a wide area around the machine can be viewed, including areas that are in blind spots with a normal rearview mirror.

Objects on the right and left sides of the machine are combined from the 2 camera images, which may result in objects overlapping or parts of objects missing.

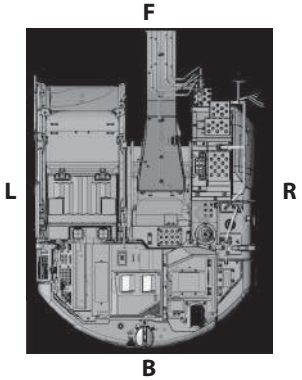
The square image in the center of the image (vehicle icon (1)) indicates the machine itself.
Guide line (2) shows the distances away from the machine. The guide lines indicate positions 1 m (3 ft 3 in), 3 m (9 ft 10 in) and 5 m (16 ft 1 in) from the machine. They are used to pinpoint distances to obstacles.

CAUTION

- **The image around the machine is compressed using image processing to allow a wide view at a glance, but care must be used as the sense of distance and how things appear are different from a normal, uncompressed image.**
- **As the image around the machine is processed and combined from multiple camera images, it may appear different from when looked at with the naked eye and areas may not appear contiguous, objects may appear to be collapsing or not appear in the image at all.**
- **A clear image may not be shown if the area around the machine is too bright or too dark.**
- **Guide lines are based on the ground being flat. The distances of guide lines are not accurate on sloping or rough terrain.**

Machine Icon

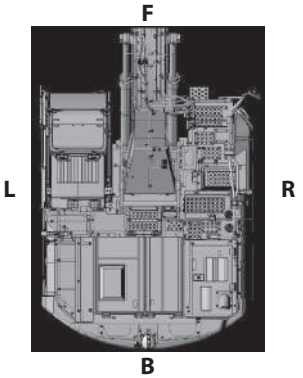
The machine icon is an overhead image of the machine in an icon form.
Displaying the machine icon on the monitor allows the viewer to visualize the orientation and cab position of the machine.



Machine Icon ZX135US-7H

MDHE-01-007-1 ja

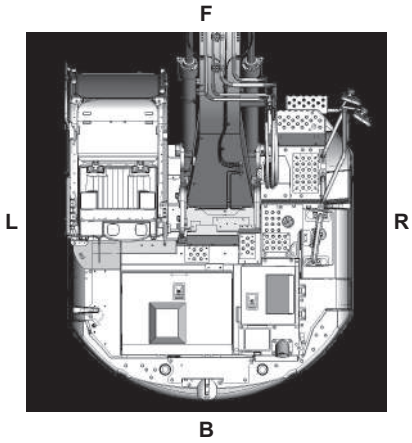
F: Front B: Rear
L: Left side R: Right side



Machine Icon ZX345USLC-7H

MDHE-01-008-1 ja

F: Front B: Rear
L: Left side R: Right side



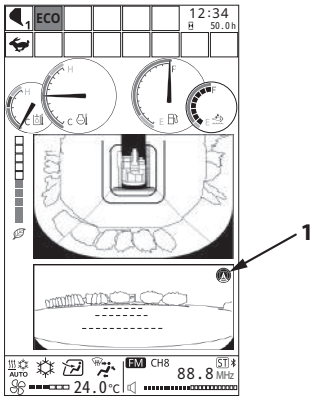
Machine Icon ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-024-1 ja

F: Front B: Rear
L: Left side R: Right side

Surrounding Image + Image to Rear

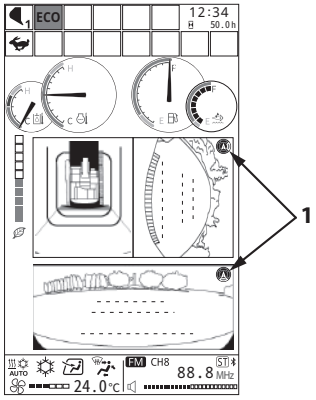
The surrounding image and image from the rear-facing camera are displayed. Camera direction guide icons (1) indicate which camera the displayed image is from.



MDFY-MT-145-1 ja

Surrounding Image + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear

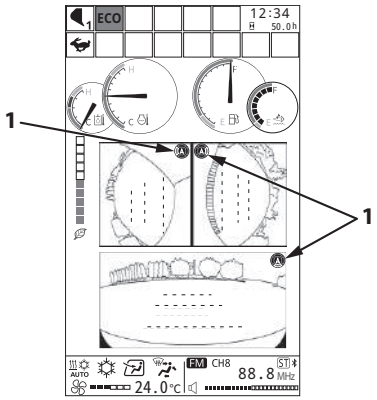
The surrounding image, and images from the right side and rear cameras are displayed. Camera direction guide icons (1) indicate which camera the displayed image is from.



MDFY-MT-140-1 ja

Image to Left Side + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear

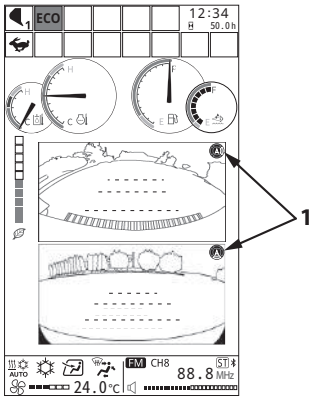
Images from the left side, right side and rear cameras are displayed. Camera direction guide icons (1) indicate which camera the displayed image is from.



MDFY-MT-138-1 ja

Image to Right Side + Image to Rear

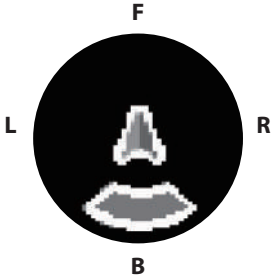
The images from the right side and rear cameras are displayed. Camera direction guide icons (1) indicate which camera the displayed image is from.



MDFY-MT-137-1 ja

Camera Direction Guide Icons

Camera direction guide icons indicate which camera the displayed image is from.
The arrow in the center of the icon indicates the front of the machine and which image(s) are displayed around the icon indicate which camera the image is from. As illustrated at right, the image from the rear-view camera is displayed on the monitor.

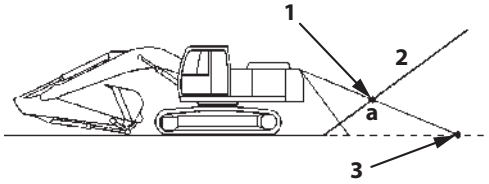


MDFY-01-063-1 ja

F: Front B: Rear
L: Left R: Right

Discrepancies between Image and Actual Road Surface

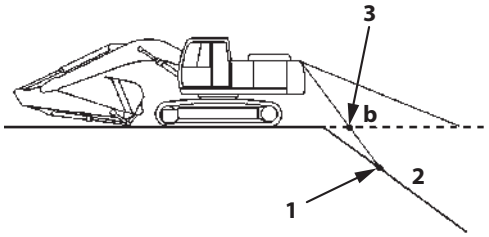
1. **Image of upslope or working face**
   This indicates how the camera looks when shooting uphill. Because point (a) on the upslope is stretched on the monitor screen on an extended line of the plane, the distance from the machine icon is depicted as further than it actually is.



MDFY-01-064-1 ja

1: Position of actual point a 2: Slope
3: Position of a point a on screen

2. **Image of downslope or drop**
   This indicates how the camera looks when shooting downhill. Because point (b) on the downslope is shortened on the monitor screen on an extended line of the plane, the distance from the machine icon is depicted as closer than it actually is.



MDFY-01-065-1 ja

1: Position of actual point b 2: Slope
3: Position of point b on screen

Installation and Adjustment of Mirrors

WARNING

- **Check the field of vision in the mirrors using the visibility map, and adjust the mirrors accordingly. Adjust the mirrors with the machine positioned as shown.**
- **Improper adjustment of the mirrors results in poor visibility, which may cause a serious injury or death.**
- **Check the field of vision in the mirrors every day before work.**
- **If a mirror is dirty, clean it.**
- **Ensure appropriate footing when adjusting or cleaning mirrors.**

Illustration of machine
(mono block boom)

MDC1-VM-001 ja

IMPORTANT

- **The image displayed on the rear view camera monitor is meant only as an aid. When operating the machine, pay thorough attention to the surrounding situation.**
- **If a modification is made that may restrict the operator's visibility, recheck the operator's visual field.**

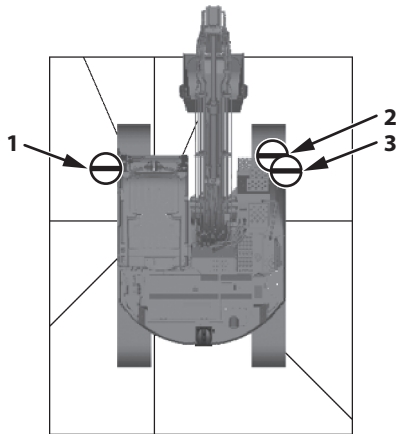
Mirror Installation Locations (ZX135US-7H)

The installation locations of mirrors (1, 2, 3) on the machine are shown in the illustration on the right. When mounting mirrors, adjust the installation locations of each mirror according to the instructions below to ensure safety.

1 - Operator's station mirror

2 - Upper handrail mirror

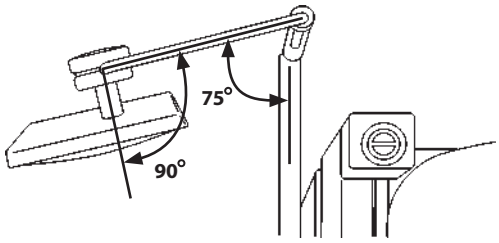
3 - Lower handrail mirror



MDA4-01-026-1 ja

- Operator's station mirror (1)

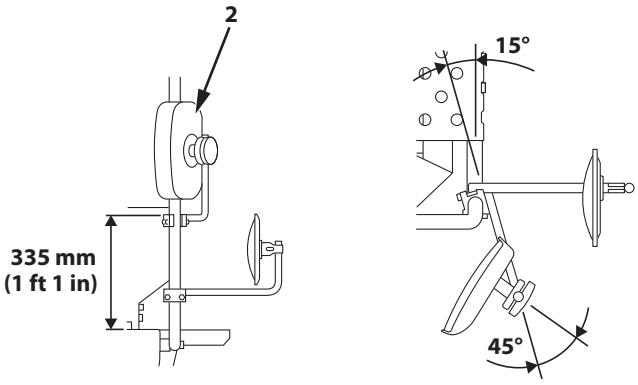
Adjust the mirror so it is in the specified position.



MDFY-01-082-1 ja

- Upper handrail mirror (2)

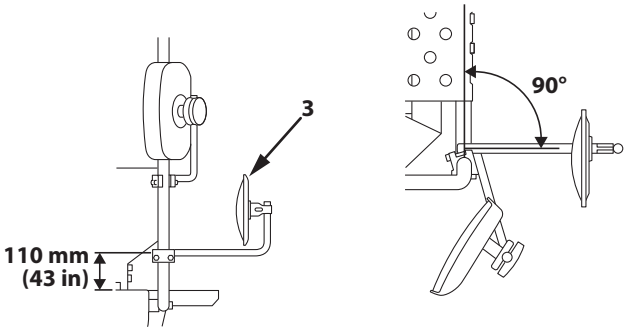
Adjust the mirror so it shows the side of the machine as shown in the diagram on the right. Adjust the mirror so that at least a 1 m (3 ft 3 in) area from the right side of the machine is visible.



MDAT-01-250-2 ja

- Lower handrail mirror (3)

Adjust the mirror so it shows the side of the machine as shown in the diagram on the right. Adjust the mirror so that at least a 1 m (3 ft 3 in) area from the right side of the machine is visible.



MDAT-01-263-2 ja

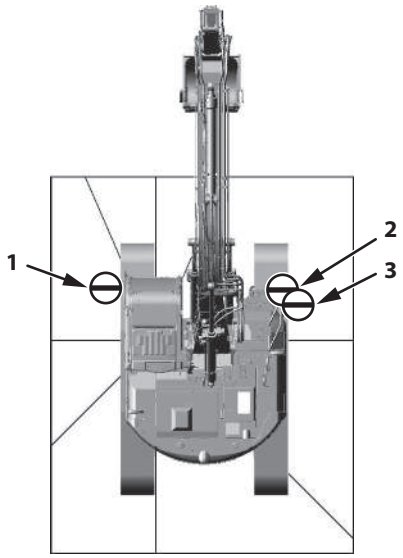
Mirror Installation Locations (ZX245USLC-7H)

The installation locations of mirrors (1, 2, 3) on the machine are shown in the illustration on the right. When mounting mirrors, adjust the installation locations of each mirror according to the instructions below to ensure safety.

1 - Operator's station mirror

2 - Lower handrail mirror

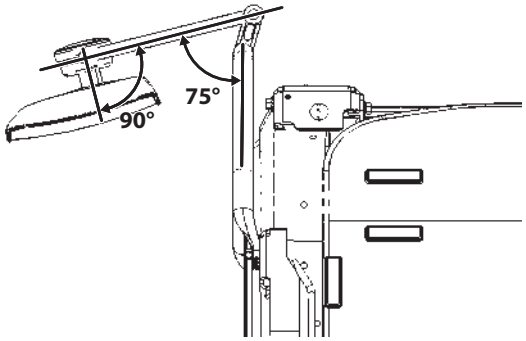
3 - Upper handrail mirror



MDA4-01-027-1 ja

- Operator's station mirror (1)

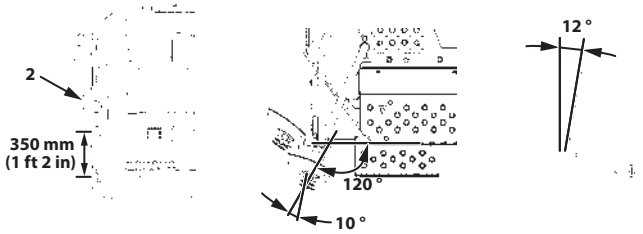
Adjust the mirror so it is in the specified position.



MDA4-01-028-1 ja

- Lower handrail mirror (2)

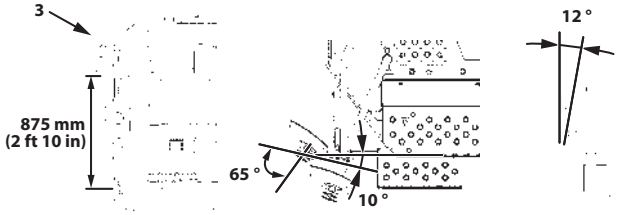
Adjust the mirror so it shows the side of the machine as shown in the diagram on the right. Adjust the mirror so that at least a 1 m (3 ft 3 in) area from the right side of the machine is visible.



MDA4-01-029-2 ja

- Upper handrail mirror (3)

Adjust the mirror so it shows the side of the machine as shown in the diagram on the right. Adjust the mirror so that at least a 1 m (3 ft 3 in) area from the right side of the machine is visible.



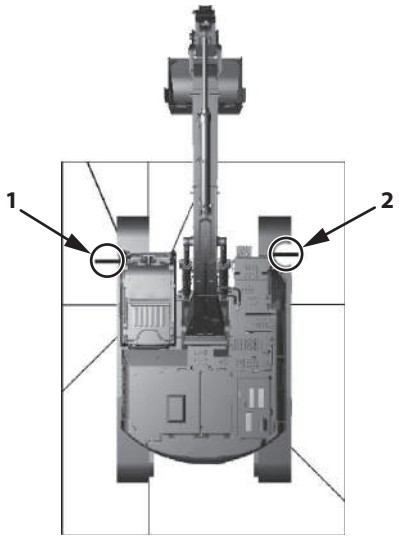
MDA4-01-030-2 ja

Mirror Installation Locations (ZX345USLC-7H)

The installation locations of mirrors (1, 2) on the machine are shown in the illustration on the right.
When mounting mirrors, adjust the installation locations of each mirror according to the instructions below to ensure safety.

1 - Operator's station mirror

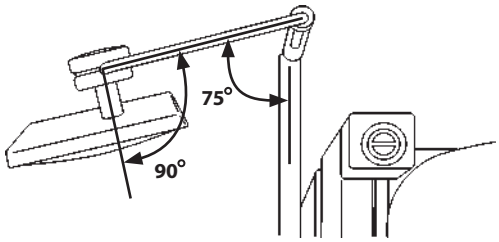
2 - Mirror on handrail for mounting machine



MDHE-01-009-1 ja

- Operator's station mirror (1)

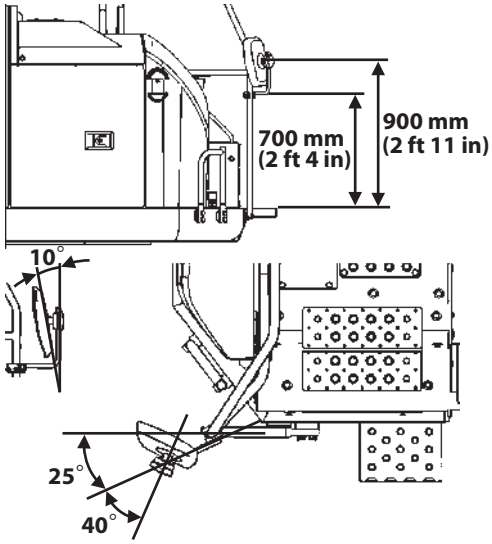
Adjust the mirror so it is in the specified position.



MDFY-01-082-1 ja

- Mirror on handrail for mounting machine (2)

Adjust the mirror so it shows the side of the machine as shown in the diagram on the right. Adjust the mirror so that at least a 1 m (3 ft 3 in) area from the right side of the machine is visible.



MDAT-01-272-1 ja

Emergency Exit

Escape from the cab in an emergency as follows:

CAUTION

The danger of falling off the machine is always present when escaping from the cab in an emergency, and may result in serious personal injury. Escape from the cab as safely as possible, depending on the position of the machine and the situation outside.

1. Open the cab door. Escape through the door.
2. If the cab door is difficult to open or use, open the upper front window. Escape through the window.

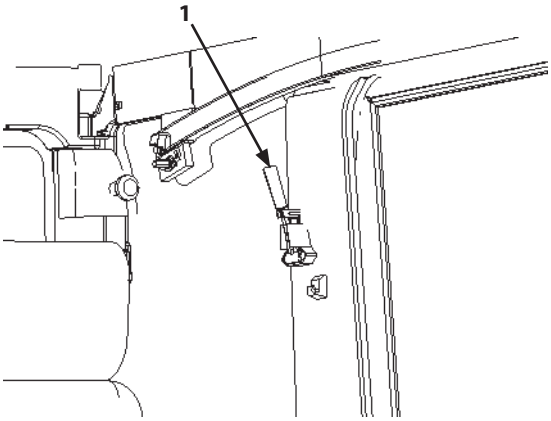
NOTE

Emergency exit decals (2) are affixed to the front and rear windows. See the section "Opening and Removing Windows in the Cab" (1-155) for how to open the front window.

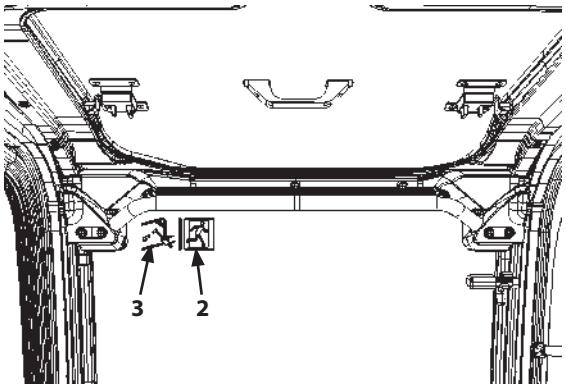
CAUTION

If decal (3) is affixed to the front windowpane, it can be broken. However if decal (3) is not affixed to the front windowpane, the glass cannot be broken with emergency evacuation hammer (1). Take care not to be injured by pieces of broken glass.

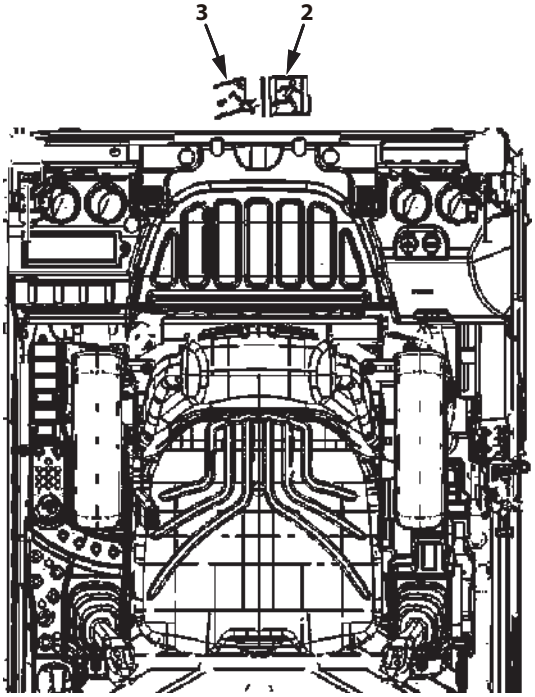
3. If the front window is difficult to open, check if decal (3) is affixed to the front windowpane.
   If decal (3) is affixed to the front windowpane, break the front windowpane using emergency evacuation hammer (1) mounted on the left side of the cab. Escape through the broken windowpane.
4. If decal (3) is not affixed to the front windowpane, or if it is not possible to escape through the front window, break the rear windowpane using emergency evacuation hammer (1). Escape through the broken windowpane.
5. If neither front or rear windows are available for emergency exit, open the overhead window to escape from the cab.



MDAA-01-321-1 ja

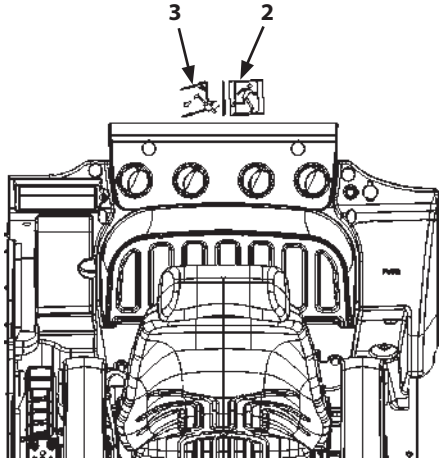


M1U4-01-012-1 ja



ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-031-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDFY-01-032-1 ja

Battery Disconnect Switch

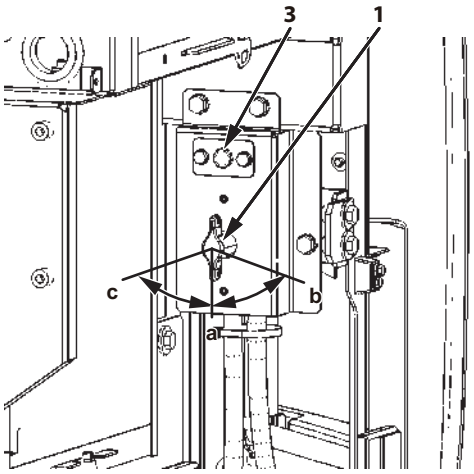
IMPORTANT

- **Do not turn battery disconnect switch (1) OFF while the engine is running or the key switch is in any position other than OFF. Damage to the electrical system may result.**
- **Do not turn the battery disconnect switch (1) OFF after stopping the engine until light (3) goes out. Damage to the electrical system may result.**

The battery disconnect switch (1) differs from the engine start key switch. When battery disconnect switch (1) is turned OFF, the electrical system is cut off, so no electric current flows in the entire circuit.

When turning the battery disconnect switch OFF, turn the key switch to the OFF position. Let the engine stop and light (3) go out. (Estimated time: about 5 minutes) If battery disconnect switch (1) is turned OFF after the engine stops but before light (3) goes out, a malfunction of the electrical system may occur.

Battery disconnect switch (1) toggles the connection between the battery and electrical system as follows, based on the position of the lever.



MDA4-03-002-4 ja

a: ON position

b: OFF position (with communication terminal power supply ON)

c: OFF position

Battery disconnect switch (1) should only be used for the following purposes. It is switched by its lever position.

c: If used when in OFF position

- Before maintaining or servicing the electrical system
- Before replacing battery
- Before storing the machine for a long time, to prevent battery discharge
- Before welding

b: If used when in OFF position (with communication terminal power supply ON)

- When cutting off battery power for reasons other than as described under “c: Use of OFF position”.

NOTE

When battery disconnect switch (1) is turned to “c: OFF position”, the electrical system between the battery and the machine is completely cut off.
As a result, it is not possible to acquire operating data from the machine.

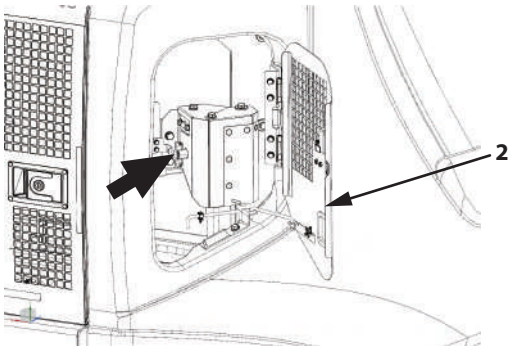
If the battery disconnect switch is set to “b: OFF position (with communication terminal power supply ON)”, power for the machine controller is secured from the battery for up to 72 hours after the disconnection of the battery power supply.
As a result, it remains possible to acquire operating data from the machine up to 72 hours after the disconnection of the battery power supply.
Note also that in the case of “b: OFF position (with communication terminal power supply ON)”, power from the battery is still being consumed. Thus, if the machine is to be left unused for an extended period, the “c: OFF position” setting is recommended.

Switch Operation

1. Open cover (2).
   When lever (1) is in the vertical (a) position, the disconnect switch is ON. When lever (1) is in the vertical (a) position, lever (1) can not be removed.
2. When lever (1) is turned to positions (b) and (c), the disconnect switch turns OFF. Lever (1) can be removed from the disconnect switch when it is in the OFF position.

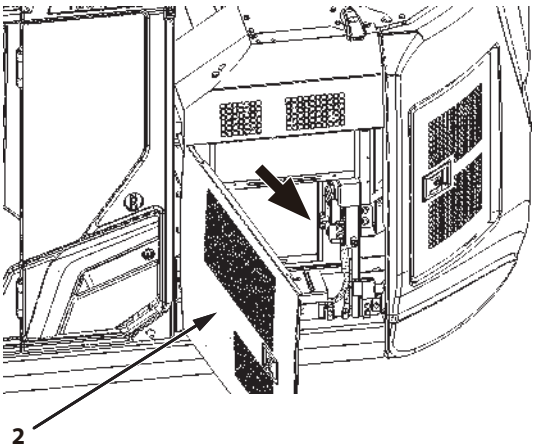
IMPORTANT

Do not turn the battery disconnect switch OFF when light (3) of the battery disconnect switch is lit. Doing so may cause damage to the machine and/or system malfunction.



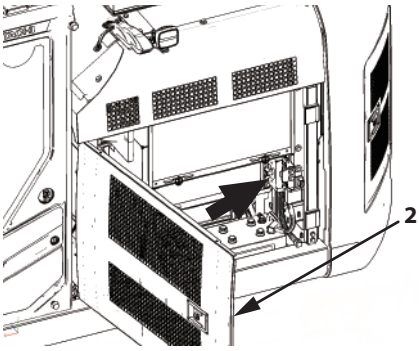
ZX135US-7H

MDHE-01-012-1 ja



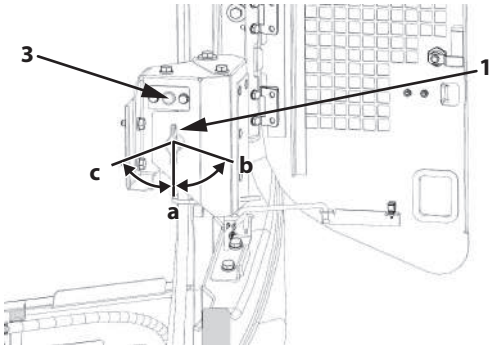
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-034-1 ja



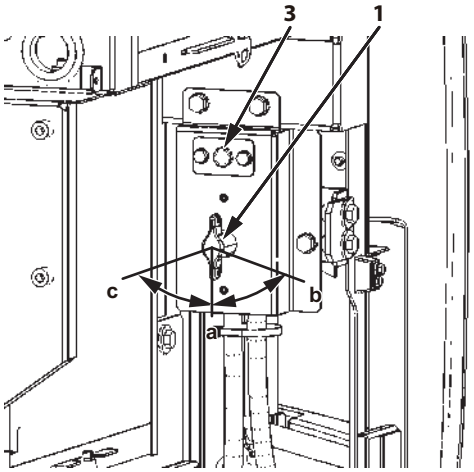
ZX345USLC-7H

MDHE-01-014-1 ja



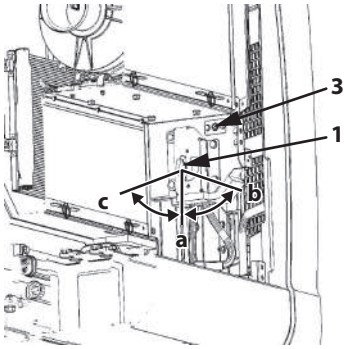
ZX135US-7H

MDHE-01-013-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-03-002-4 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDHE-01-015-1 ja

a: ON position

b: OFF position (with communication terminal power supply ON)

c: OFF position

BREAK-IN

Observe Engine Operation Closely

IMPORTANT

Use extra caution during the first 50 hours of operation, until you become thoroughly familiar with the sound and feel of your new machine.

1. Only operate the machine in economy (ECO) mode and limit engine horsepower to around 80 % of its full load.
2. Avoid excess engine idling.
3. Check indicator lights and gauges frequently during operation.

Every 8 Hours or Daily

1. Perform 8-hour or daily service.
2. Watch for fluid leaks.
3. Lubricate working tool pivots every 8 hours for the first 50 hours, and every 8 hours when working in mud and water.

After the First 50 Hours

1. Perform 50-hour service.
2. Check accessible hardware torque. (See Hardware Torque Specifications in Maintenance chapter.)

After the First 100 Hours

Perform 50-hour and 100-hour service.

Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting

Before starting the engine, perform Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting.

Engine

- Levels and dirtiness of engine oil and coolant*1
- Ease of starting, exhaust gas color, and noise
- Oil and water leakage, damage to hoses and pipes*1
- Clogging and damage to radiator, oil cooler, intercooler and fuel cooler*1
- Cleaning around the aftertreatment device*1
- Loose and/or missing mounting bolts and nuts*1

Upperstructure

- Level, leaks and contamination of fuel tank*1
- DEF level, leaks and contamination in DEF tank*1
- Hydraulic oil level, contamination of hydraulic oil, leaks from hydraulic oil tank*1
- Movement, play and operating force of all control levers
- Operation of all hydraulic components, oil leaks and damage to pipes and hoses*1
- Deformity, breakage, and abnormal noise at each part
- Loose and/or missing mounting bolts and nuts*1
- Washer liquid*1
- DEF leakage from DEF hoses
- Dirt around the aftertreatment device
- The handrail must be set up. (It must not be folded)(ZX245USLC-7H only)*1

Undercarriage

- Sag, wear and damage to tracks*1
- Oil leaks and wear on upper/lower rollers and front idlers
- Oil leaks from travel devices
- Loose and/or missing mounting bolts and nuts*1

Working Device

- Check cylinders, pipe lines and hoses for oil leaks and damage*1
- Wear and damage to the bucket
- Missing, loose and/or worn bucket tip
- Lubrication condition around front attachment*1
- Damage to pin anti-extraction pins, stoppers, rings and bolts
- Loose and/or missing mounting bolts and nuts*1

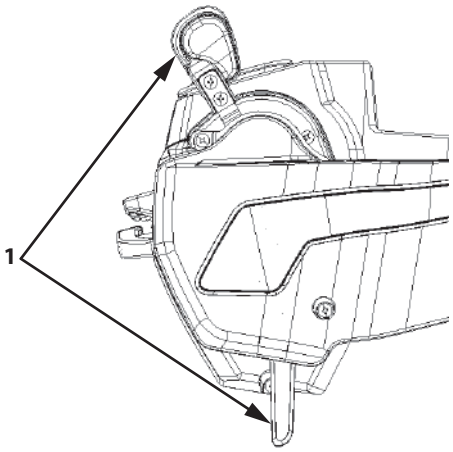
Others

- Operating condition of instruments, switches, lights and warning alarm*1
- Function of parking brake
- Deformity and/or damage to the head guard
- Abnormal outside appearance of machine
- Wear and damage of the seat belt*1
- Aerial angle camera images
- Mirror adjustment

*1 Marked items: Refer to “Inspection and Maintenance” for detailed information.

Before Starting the Engine

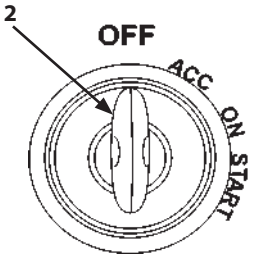
1. Confirm that the battery disconnect switch is on the ON position.
2. Confirm that pilot shut-off lever (1) is in the LOCK position.
3. Confirm that all control levers are placed in neutral.



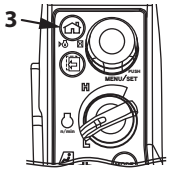
LOCK position

MDFY-01-088-2 ja

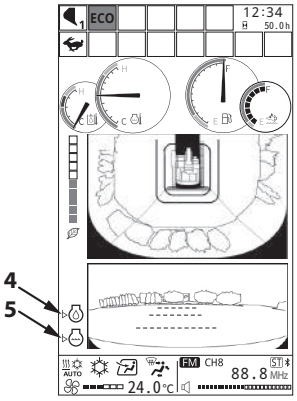
4. Insert key (2) into the key switch and turn it to the ON position. Press and hold switch (3) with the engine stopped.
   If engine oil level normal (4) (green) and coolant level normal (5) (green) are displayed, the engine status is normal.



MDCD-01-030-3 ja



MDFY-01-094-8 ja



MDFY-MT-130-3 ja

IMPORTANT

Visually check them yourself as required. Do not start the engine during the check.

5. Be sure to remain seated with your back against the backrest and adjust the the seat so that all the control pedals and levers can be moved to any position without discomfort. Then put on the seatbelt.

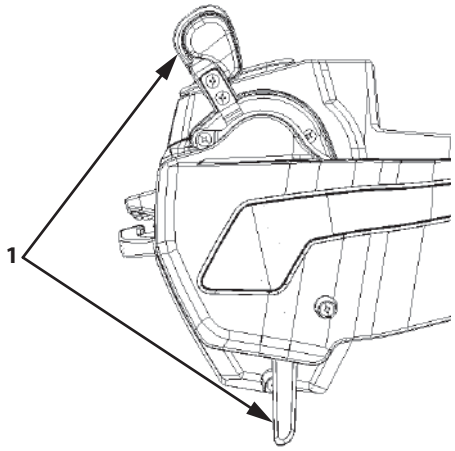
   NOTE

   When the surface of the monitor becomes dusty, lightly wipe the surface with a wet cloth. Never use an organic solvent.

Starting the Engine

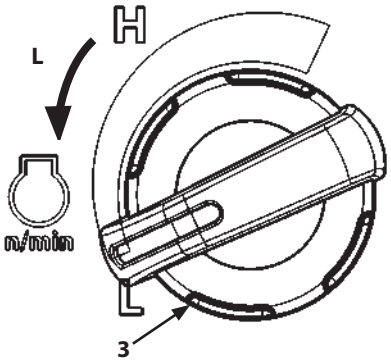
Starting the Engine at Ordinary Temperature

1. Confirm that pilot shut-off lever (1) is in the LOCK position.
2. Turn engine control dial (3) to the slow idle position.
3. Sound the horn to alert bystanders.



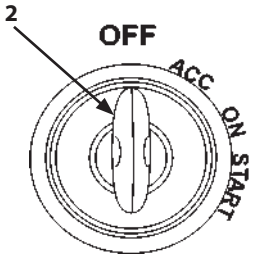
LOCK Position

MDFY-01-088-2 ja



MDFY-01-010-2 ja

4. Insert key (2) in the key switch. Turn it to ON position.



MDCD-01-030-3 ja

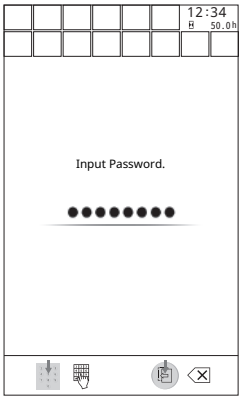
5. When the Password Input screen is displayed on the monitor, input the password. If the security function is not working, this display will not appear.

   IMPORTANT

   When required to activate the security function, contact Authorized Dealer.

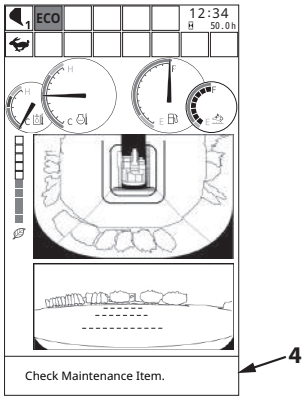
NOTE

When the key is turned ON, the notification on right screen (4) for the maintenance item whose maintenance interval has expired displays for 10 seconds.



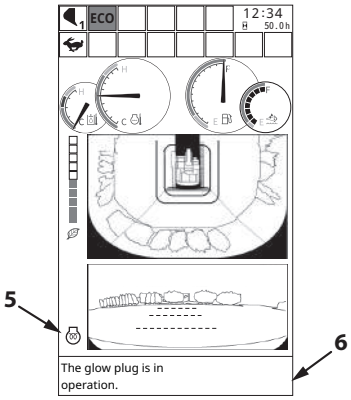
Password Input Screen

MDFY-MT-129 en_GB



MDFY-MT-123-1 en_GB

6. The basic screen appears on the monitor. At this point, check that glow signal (5) is OFF and that message (6) is not displayed in the footer.

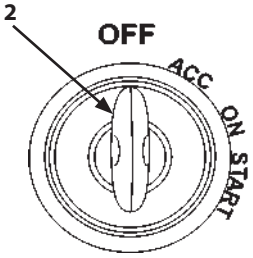


MDFY-MT-132-1 en_GB

7. Turn key (2) to the START position to crank the starter. The engine will start.

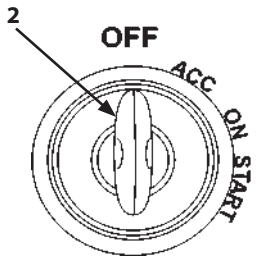
   IMPORTANT

   Do not continuously crank the starter for more than 10 seconds. If the engine fails to start, return the key switch to the OFF position. Wait for at least 30 seconds, then try again. Not following the above procedure may lead to starter malfunction or battery discharge.



MDCD-01-030-3 ja

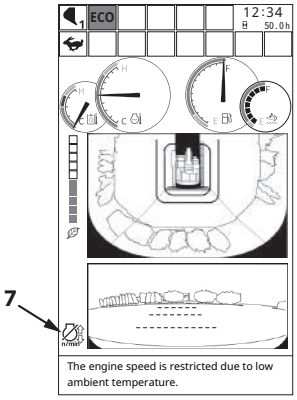
8. Release key (2) right after the engine starts. Key (2) automatically returns to the ON position.



MDCD-01-030-3 ja

NOTE

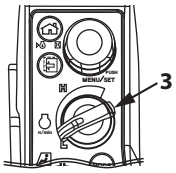
- *Immediately after engine startup, engine speed is controlled. The engine speed is held at slow idle speed when engine speed control indicator (7) is lit. The hold time is longer when the coolant temperature or hydraulic oil temperature is low. Even if engine control dial (3) is not in the slow idle position at startup, the engine is held to a low speed.*
- *The warm-up system automatically operates after maintaining speed, and the engine speed will temporarily increase even if engine control dial (3) is set in the slow idle position.*



MDFY-MT-131-1 en_GB

CAUTION

Do not attempt to operate the machine when engine speed control indicator (7) is lit. The engine speed may change after the slow idle period and operation speed of the work device may fluctuate suddenly, which may cause a serious accident.



MDFY-01-094-2 ja

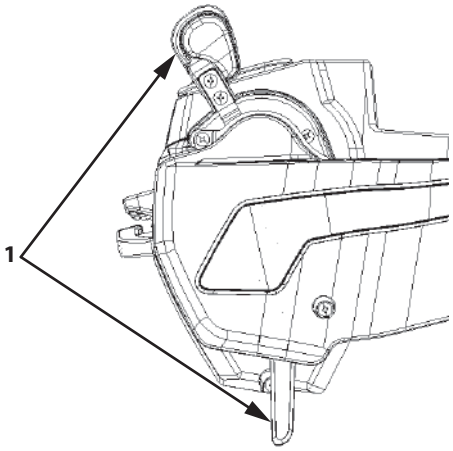
NOTE

White smoke may come from the exhaust pipe for several minutes after the engine starts, this is not a malfunction.

Starting in Cold Weather

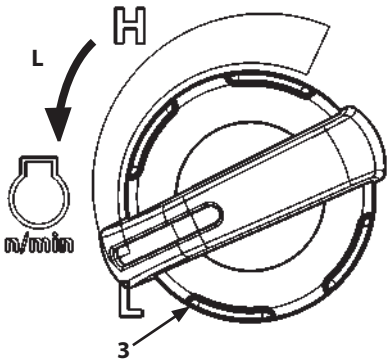
Preheating

1. Confirm that pilot shut-off lever (1) is in the LOCK position.
2. Turn engine control dial (3) to the slow idle position.
3. Sound the horn to alert bystanders.



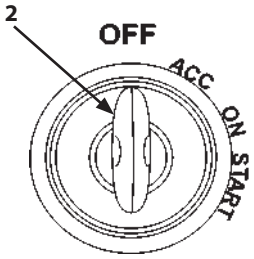
LOCK Position

MDFY-01-088-2 ja



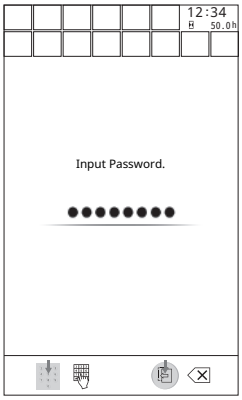
MDFY-01-010-2 ja

4. Insert key (2) in the key switch. Turn it to ON position.



MDCD-01-030-3 ja

5. When the Password Input screen is displayed on the monitor, input the password. If the security function is not working, this display will not appear.



Password Input Screen

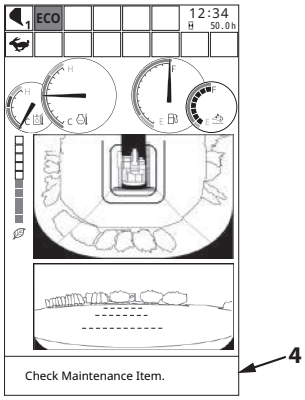
MDFY-MT-129 en_GB

NOTE

When the key is turned ON, the notification on right screen (4) for the maintenance item whose maintenance interval has expired displays for 10 seconds.

IMPORTANT

When required to activate the security function, contact Authorized Dealer.

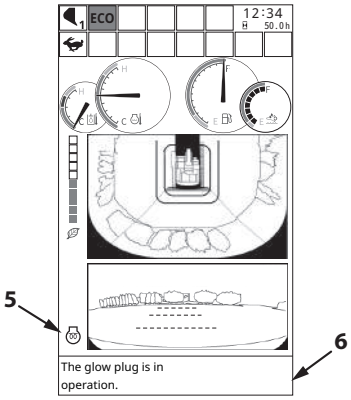


MDFY-MT-123-1 en_GB

6. The Basic Screen will be displayed on the monitor. The machine will automatically check if preheating is required or not. When preheating is required, preheat indicator (5) is lit automatically, and message (6) is displayed in the footer.

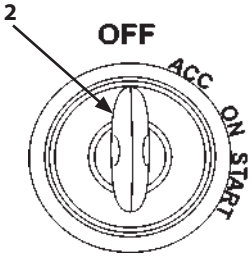
NOTE

If, preheat indicator (5) does not come ON, preheating is not required. Follow the "Starting the Engine in Ordinary Temperature" section.



MDFY-MT-132-1 en_GB

7. As soon as glow signal (5) goes OFF, turn key (2) to the START position to crank the starter.



MDCD-01-030-3 ja

IMPORTANT

Never operate the starter for more than 10 seconds at a time. If the engine fails to start, return the key switch to the OFF position. Wait for at least 30 seconds, then try again. Failure to do so may cause damage to the starter and/or discharge the batteries.

8. Release key switch (2) right after the engine starts. Key switch (2) will automatically return to ON position.

NOTE

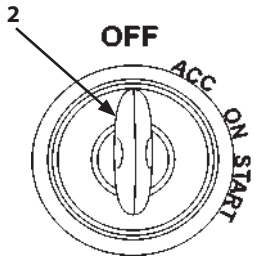
- *The engine speed will be kept to slow idle speed just after the engine starts. When engine speed control indicator (7) is displayed, slow idle speed will be maintained. When the coolant temperature or hydraulic oil temperature is low, the time will be longer. The engine speed will be kept to slow idle speed even if engine control dial (3) is not set in the slow idle position.*
- *The warm-up system automatically operates after maintaining speed, and the engine speed will temporarily increase even if engine control dial (3) is set in the slow idle position.*

CAUTION

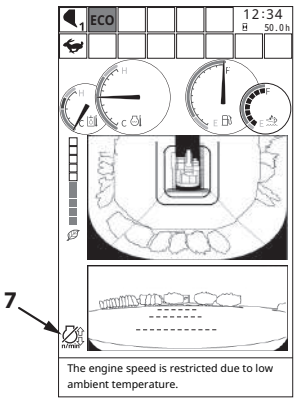
Do not attempt to operate the machine when engine speed control indicator (7) is lit. The engine speed may change after the slow idle period and operation speed of the work device may increase suddenly, which may cause a serious accident.

NOTE

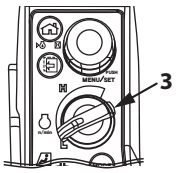
White smoke may come from the exhaust pipe for several minutes after the engine starts, this is not a malfunction.



MDCD-01-030-3 ja



MDFY-MT-131-1 en_GB



MDFY-01-094-2 ja

Check Instruments After Starting

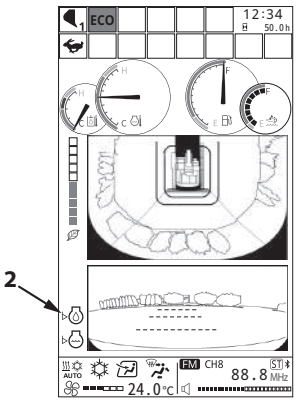
Checking Instruments Through Monitor Functions

After starting the engine, check the following on the monitor.

Check that engine oil pressure indicator (2) is OFF and the alarm buzzer does not sound.
If engine oil pressure indicator (2) stays ON and the buzzer sounds, immediately stop the engine. Inspect the engine oil pressure system and the oil level.

IMPORTANT

If any abnormality is found on the monitor unit, immediately stop the engine. Inspect the cause of the problem.



MDFY-MT-130-4 ja

Check Engine Noise and Exhaust Gas Color

Check that the engine noise and exhaust gas color are normal.

NOTE

- *Check the exhaust gas color as follows. (After warm-up operation, run the engine under no load.)*

  Clear : Normal (Perfect combustion)
  Black : Abnormal (Imperfect combustion, abnormal aftertreatment device, abnormal fuel system)
  White : Abnormal (Oil is leaking into the combustion chamber, abnormal aftertreatment device, abnormal fuel system)

- *White smoke may be emitted for several minutes after the engine starts, this is not a malfunction.*

Using the Booster Battery

WARNING

- **An explosive gas is produced while batteries are in use or being charged. Keep open flames and sparks away from the battery area. Do not continue to use or charge the battery when electrolyte level is lower than specified. Explosion of the battery may result.**
- **Park the machine and the machine providing the jump on a dry or concrete surface, not on steel plates. If machines are parked on steel plates, it may cause sparking unexpectedly.**
- **Never connect a positive terminal to a negative terminal. Doing so may cause a short.**

SA-032 ja

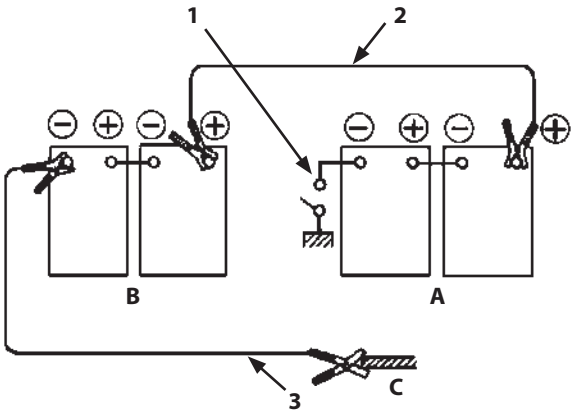
IMPORTANT

The machine electrical system is a 24 volt negative (-) ground. Only jump from a machine with a 24 volt system that has enough extra capacity.

When the machine's batteries are dead, start the engine by connecting booster cables to the batteries of the jumping vehicle as shown below.

Connecting Booster Cables

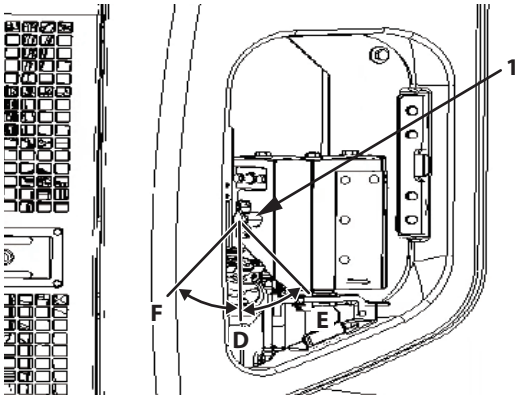
1. Stop the engine of the machine providing the jump.
2. Turn battery disconnect switch (1) to the OFF (F) position.
3. Connect one end of booster cable (2) (red) to the positive (+) terminal of one of the machine's batteries (A), and the other end to the positive (+) terminal of the battery (B) providing the jump.
4. Turn battery disconnect switch (1) to the ON (D) position.
5. Connect one end of booster cable (3) (black) to the negative (-) terminal (B) of a battery providing the jump, and then ground to the upper structure frame (C) of the machine to be started with the other end. As sparks may fly when the last connection is made, connect the cable as far away from batteries as possible.
6. After securely connecting the booster cables, start the engine of the machine providing the jump.
7. Start the engine of the machine with the dead batteries.
8. After the engine starts, disconnect booster cables (3) and (2), following the “Disconnecting Booster Cables” procedure in the next section.



Connecting Booster Cables

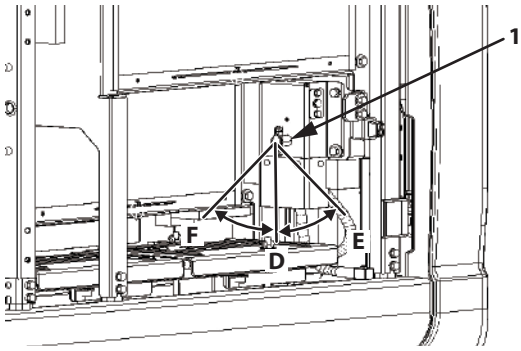
MDC1-03-001-3 ja

A Batteries Being Jumped
B Batteries Providing Jump
C Machine’s Frame



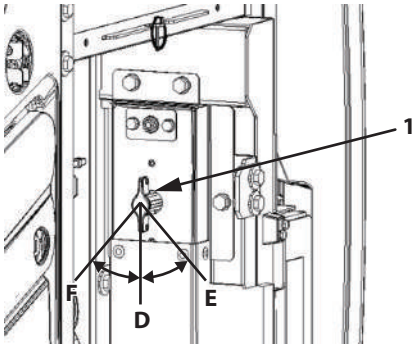
ZX135US-7H
Battery Disconnect Switch

MDHE-03-001-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H
Battery Disconnect Switch

MDHE-03-002-1 ja



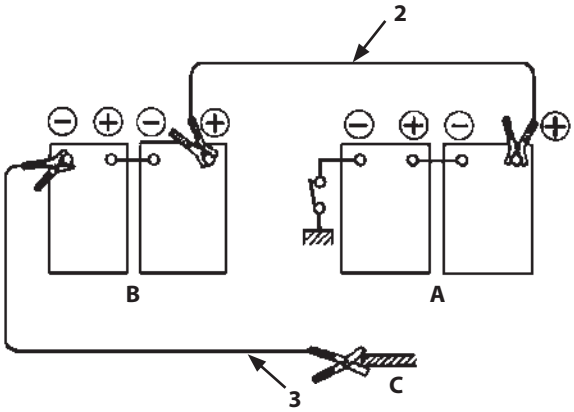
ZX245USLC-7H
Battery Disconnect Switch

MDA4-01-060-2 ja

D ON position
E OFF position (with communication terminal power supply ON)
F OFF position

Disconnecting the Jumper Cables

1. Disconnect black negative (-) cable (3) from the machine frame (C) first.
2. Disconnect the other end of black negative (-) cable (3) from the battery of the machine (B) providing the jump.
3. Disconnect red positive (+) cable (2) from the positive terminal of the machine (B) providing the jump.
4. Disconnect red positive (+) cable (2) from the positive terminal of the machine's battery(A).



Disconnecting the Jumper Cables

MDC1-03-001-4 ja

A	Batteries Being Jumped	C	Machine's Frame
B	Batteries Providing Jump		

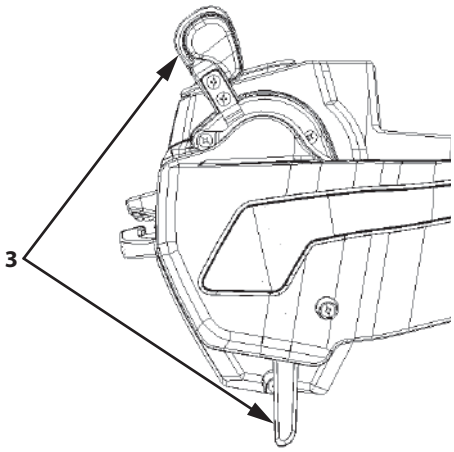
Stopping the Engine

Engine Stop Procedure

1. Lower the bucket and the blade (Except ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H) to the ground before stopping the engine, except in special circumstances.

SA-2590 ja

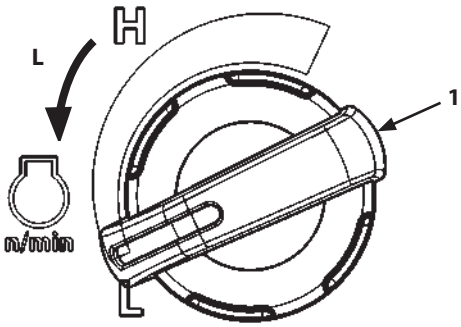
2. Pull pilot shut-off lever (3) to the LOCK position.



LOCK Position

MDFY-01-088-3 ja

3. Turn engine control dial (1) to the slow idle position and run the engine for 5 minutes to cool the engine.

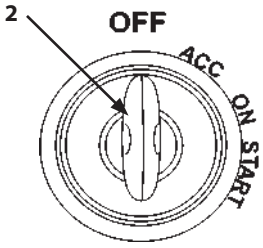


MDFY-01-010-3 ja

IMPORTANT

If an engine equipped with a turbocharger is stopped without first performing the cool down operation, the lubricant on the turbocharger bearing surfaces may dry out due to the intense heat inside the turbocharger, possibly causing damage to the turbocharger.
Do not idle for excessively long periods. Observe local and federal engine idling regulations.

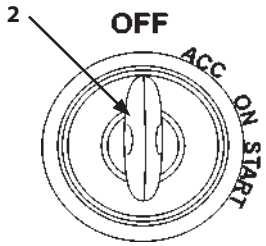
4. Turn key (2) to the OFF position to stop the engine.



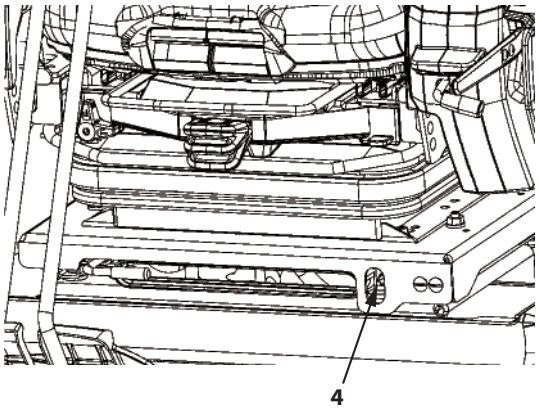
MDC1-01-502-1 ja

If the engine fails to stop, even with the key in OFF (Emergency Stop):

If the engine does not stop even if key (2) is turned OFF, due to a fault with the machine, press engine emergency stop switch (4) downward. The engine will stop. Return engine stop switch (4) to its original position (upward).



MDC1-01-502-1 ja



MDFY-01-024-3 ja

CAUTION

Do not use engine stop switch (4) unless absolutely necessary. Alternatively, if the engine stops due to machine failure, do not start the machine until it has been repaired.

IMPORTANT

Do not turn the battery disconnect switch OFF when the lamp is lit. Doing so may cause damage to the machine and/or system malfunction.

Engine Auto-Stop at Extremely Low Temperatures

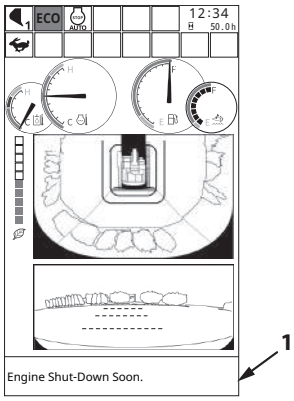
WARNING

This function stops the engine automatically. Take extra care about what work is being performed and the work environment when using this function.

IMPORTANT

If the machine is left without being operated in an environment where temperatures reach -20 °C (-4 °F) or lower for a long period of time, exhaust gas particles may accumulate in the aftertreatment device, and this may result in damage to the device.

In an environment where temperatures reach -20 °C (-4 °F) or lower, the engine will automatically stop 60 minutes after the pilot shut-off lever is set to the LOCK position. Message (1) "Engine Shut-Down Soon." is displayed on the monitor 30 seconds before the engine stops and the indicator flashes. The buzzer sounds once at 30 seconds before, and then continuously from 15 seconds before the engine stops. The engine speed drops to idle, and then stops after 15 seconds. The buzzer also sounds. If the pilot shut-off lever is set to the UNLOCK position before the engine stops, it is unlocked and the engine does not stop.



MDFY-MT-134-3 en_GB

IMPORTANT

If the engine does stop, turn the key switch to ACC or OFF once and then turn it to START to restart the engine. If absent from the operator's station for a long period and the engine stops automatically, turn OFF the key switch. Leaving the engine to stop automatically may cause the battery to drain.

NOTE

The engine may stop automatically under certain conditions, regardless of whether the auto shut-down function is ON or OFF.

Travel Levers and Pedals

Travel Operation

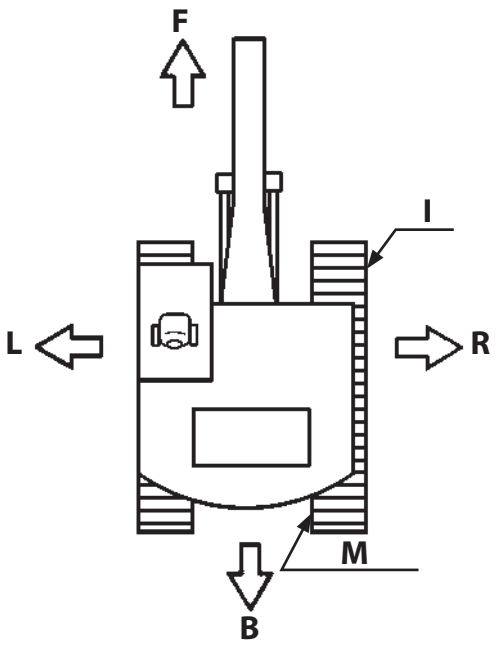
Control of the machine during travel is provided by using levers and pedals.

WARNING

If travel motor (M) is located at the front of the machine, the machine will move in the reverse direction to that shown on the operation instruction decal. Normal travel operation is when travel motor (M) is at the rear, and the front idler (I) is at the front of the machine.

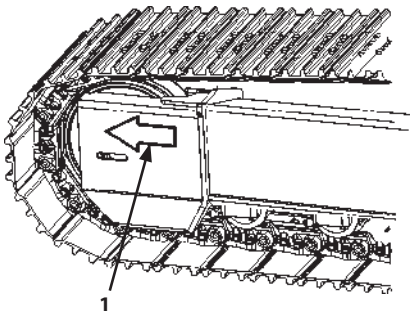
NOTE

- *An arrow mark (1) is affixed on the inside surface of the side frame to indicate the front of the machine.*
- *A travel control lever damper is provided on this machine to ensure smooth travel operation. Therefore, the travel control lever or pedal may become heavier in extreme cold ((-20 °C (-4 °F) or less). This is caused by an increase in oil viscosity, not a malfunction.*



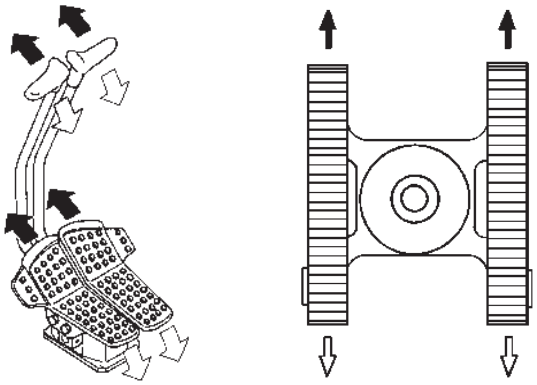
M104-01-038-3 ja

I	Front Idler	B	Rear
M	Travel Motor	R	Right
F	Front	L	Left



M178-03-001-2 ja

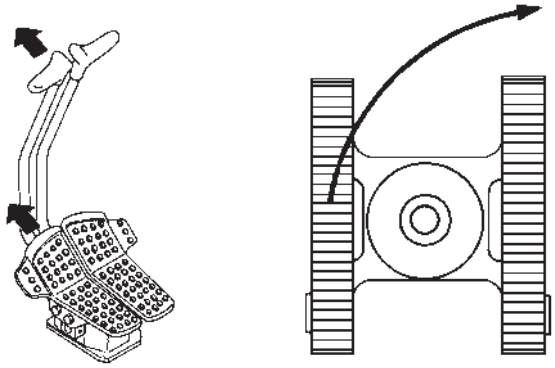
- Forward/Reverse Travel
  Push both left and right travel control levers (or both pedals) forward to travel the machine forward. Pull down the two travel control levers (or pedals) rearward to drive the machine in reverse. Travel speed can be controlled by how much the travel control levers and pedals are operated.
- Ascend/Descending Slopes
  Never attempt to ascend or descend slopes steeper than 35 degrees (70 %).
  Operate the travel control levers (or pedals) slowly when descending a slope. When the travel control levers are placed in the neutral position, the brakes are automatically applied and the machine stops.



Forward/Reverse Travel

M104-04-003 ja

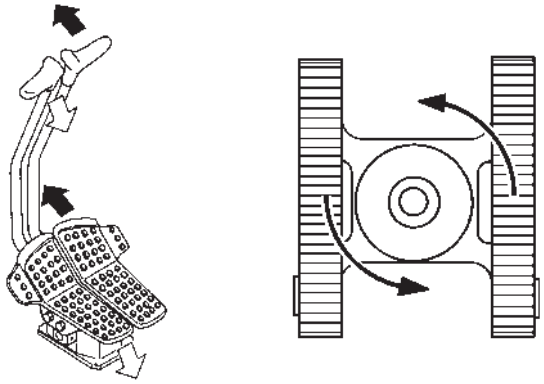
- Pivot Turn
  The machine direction is changed by driving one of two crawlers with either left or right travel control levers (or pedals).



Pivot Turn

M104-04-005 ja

- Spin Turn
  The machine direction is changed by driving the two crawlers in opposite directions at the same time by operating one travel control lever (or pedal) forward and the other lever (or pedal) in reverse.



Spin Turn

M104-04-007 ja

Travel Mode Switch

WARNING

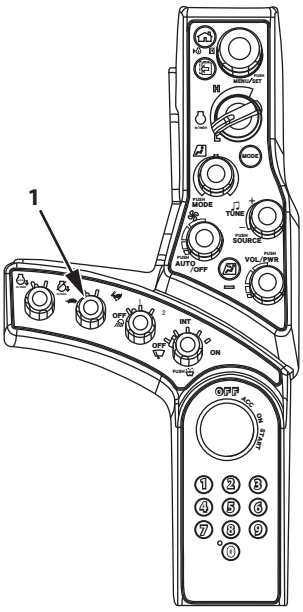
Do not change travel mode switch (1) while traveling. In particular, switching to fast mode while descending a slope is very dangerous. Always stop the machine before changing travel mode switch (1).

Turn travel mode switch (1) on the switch panel to the desired position to switch the travel mode (Fast/Slow).

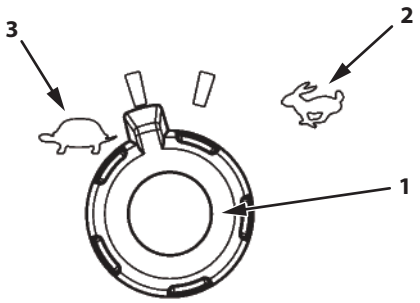
- To go faster: Turn travel mode switch (1) to (2).
- To go slower: Turn travel mode switch (1) to (3).

2- (Fast)

3- (Slow)



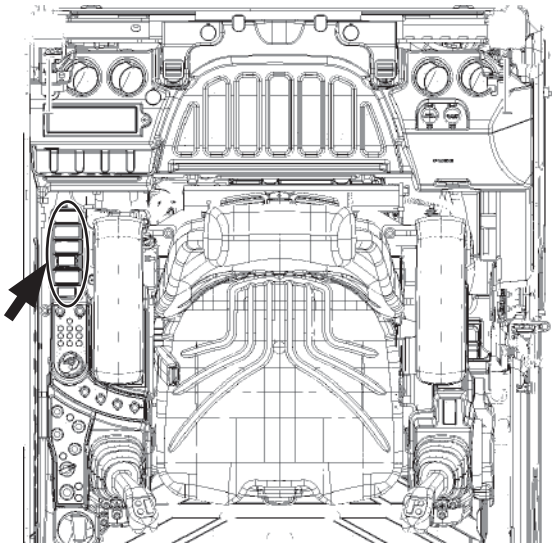
MDFY-01-002-3 ja



MDFY-01-012-1 ja

Travel Alarm

During travel operation, the travel alarm sounds to warn people near the machine that the machine is traveling.

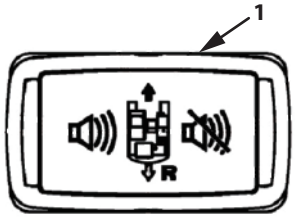


MDA4-01-006-5 ja

Deactivating Travel Alarm

More than 12 seconds after starting to travel the machine, raise the armrest and push travel alarm deactivation switch (1) to stop the travel alarm. (Within 12 seconds, travel alarm deactivation switch (1) is inoperable.)

When restarting travel after stopping, the travel alarm will sound again. To stop the alarm, push travel alarm deactivation switch (1) again.



MDF3-01-049-1 ja

NOTE

The optional switch locations differ depending on what kinds of optional devices are equipped. Before using the switches, make sure what kinds of optional devices are equipped.

Traveling on Soft Ground

Avoid traveling on very soft ground that does not have sufficient strength to firmly support the machine. When traveling on soft ground is unavoidable, operate carefully and observe the following points.

- If the machine is operated on very soft ground or becomes stuck, it may be necessary to clean the track frame area. Do not go in so far that the machine cannot be towed out, in the worse case scenario.
- If the machine can no longer move, put the bucket on the ground and use the boom and arm functions to pull the machine toward firm ground. When doing so, operate the boom and arm at the same time as the travel lever to avoid applying excessive force.
- If the belly of the machine is high-centered, or if the undercarriage is blocked by mud and/or gravel, use the boom and arm to support the machine and lift up one side of the tracks at a time. Clear the mud and/or gravel so the machine can get out. Rotating the raised track back and forth can clear it of stones and mud.
- Tow the machine if it becomes stuck in soft ground and cannot escape on its own. For how to fasten wire ropes when doing so, refer to the section “Retrieval”.

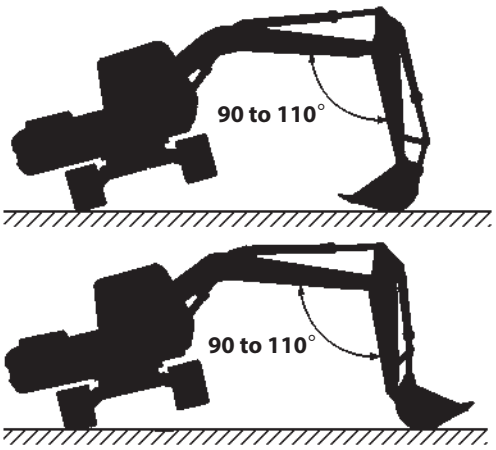
M104-05-012 ja

Raising One Track Using the Boom and Arm

WARNING

Be careful during this operation as the machine may slide to the side. Keep the angle between boom and arm 90 to 110°.

1. Swing the upperstructure 90 °.
2. Keep the angle between boom and arm 90 to 110 ° and position the bucket's round side on the ground.



M104-05-013-1 en_GB

3. Place supports, such as blocks, under the frame to support the machine.

IMPORTANT

When the machine is modified for use as a face shovel by installing the hoe bucket in reverse, avoid raising the machine above the ground using the front attachment with the bucket cylinder fully extended. Excessive loads will be applied to the pins around the bucket and the bucket cylinder, resulting in breakage of the pins.

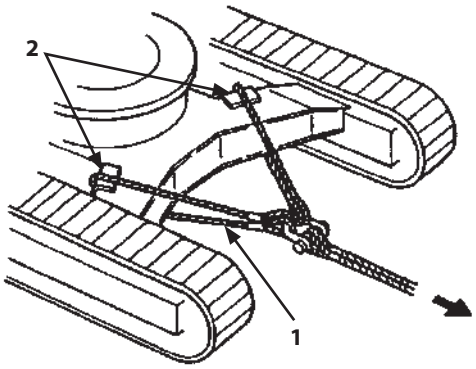
MZX5-04-003 ja

Retrieval

CAUTION

Cables, straps, or ropes can break causing serious injury. Do not tow the machine with damaged chains, frayed cables, slings, straps, or wire ropes. Always wear gloves when handling cable, straps or wire ropes.

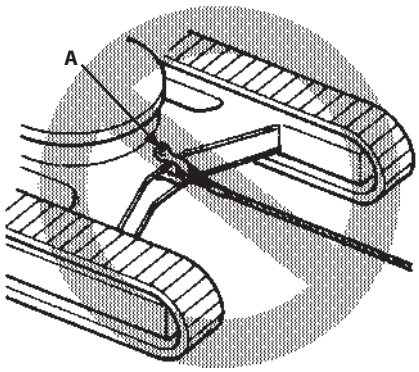
When it becomes unable to evacuate from soften ground by machine itself, retrieve the machine with another machine by attaching the wire rope (1) as shown. Be sure to attach the wire ropes (1) around the track frames of both machines as shown. To prevent the wire ropes (1) from being damaged, place protective material (2) between the track frame and the wire ropes (1).



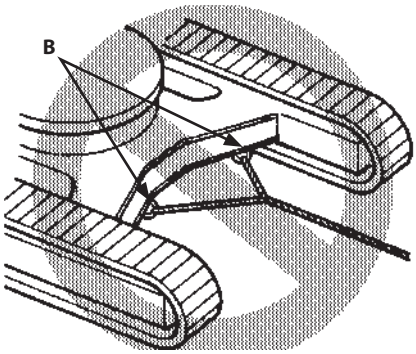
M104-05-010-4 ja

IMPORTANT

- **Track frame has two shackle holes; The center shackle hole (A) on the track frame is provided to pull lightweight objects. The shackle holes (B) on the bottom of the track frame are used to secure the machine for transportation.**
- **Do not use these shackle holes on the track frame for retrieval the machine. This may damage the holes (A) (B).**
- **Refer to the instructions on "Shackle Hole Usage" for using the center shackle hole (A) appropriately.**



MZX5-04-004-2 ja



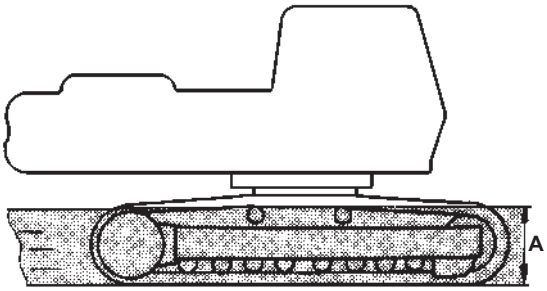
MZX5-04-005-2 ja

Operating in Water or Mud

If the riverbed is flat and the river has a gentle current, allowable water depth (A) for submerged travel is up to the top edge of the upper rollers.

If the river bed is not flat or the flow of water is strong, make sure the swing bearing, swing pinion, gears and the center joint are not submerged in water or sand.

The machine may sink slightly on soft ground. Always pay attention to the undercarriage of the machine.



M104-05-009-1 ja

Model	A
ZX135US-7H	660 mm (26 in)
ZX245USLC-7H	770 mm (30 in)
ZX345USLC-7H	860 mm (34 in)

IMPORTANT

If the swing bearing, swing internal gear and center joint are accidentally submerged and are then used, the swing bearing and these parts may experience abnormal wear. The grease must be replaced immediately or the parts disassembled and serviced. Stop operation and contact Authorized Dealer.

Grease capacity of swing internal gear

Model	Capacity
ZX135US-7H	9 L (2.4 US gal)
ZX245USLC-7H	17 L (4.5 US gal)
ZX345USLC-7H	19 L (5.0 US gal)

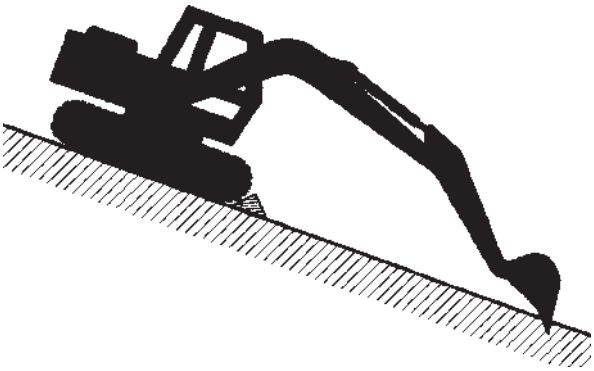
Lubricate the swing internal gear.

Parking the Machine on Slopes

WARNING

Avoid parking the machine on slopes. The machine may tip over, possibly resulting in personal injury.

If parking the machine on a slope is unavoidable: Thrust the bucket teeth into the ground. Return the control levers to neutral and set pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position. Block both tracks.



SA-2273 ja

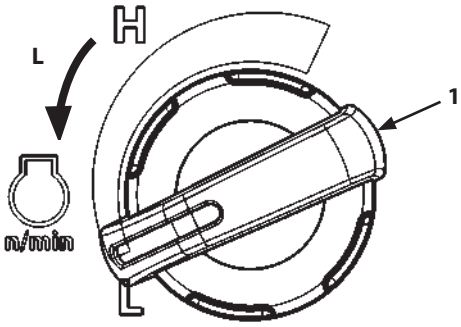
Parking

IMPORTANT

If the machine is parked with cab windows or the door open, electrical components may be damaged if rain is blown inside the cab. Close all windows and the door when parking the machine.

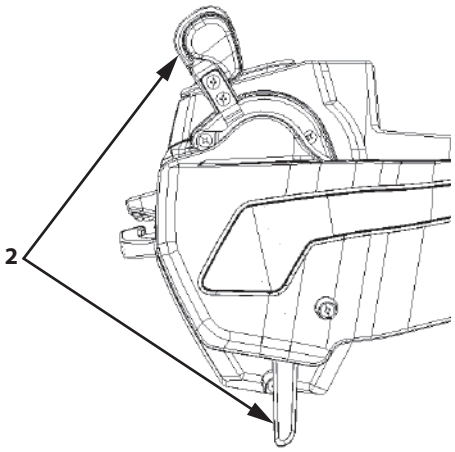
How to Park

1. Park the machine on a firm, level surface. Place the arm upright, and lower the bucket and blade (excluding ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H) to the ground.
2. Turn engine control dial (1) counterclockwise fully to the Slow Idle position. Run the engine for approximately 5 minutes to cool the engine.
3. Turn the key to the OFF position to stop the engine, and remove the key.



MDFY-01-010-3 ja

4. Always set pilot shut-off lever (2) to the LOCK position.
5. Before leaving the machine, close and lock all windows, cab doors and covers.

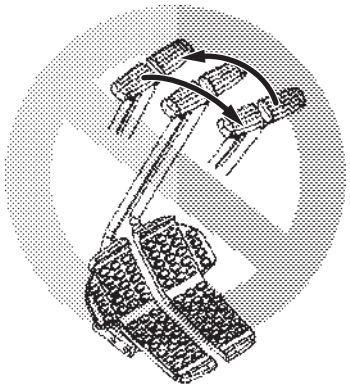


LOCK Position

MDFY-01-088-4 ja

Prohibition of Sudden Control Operations when Traveling at High Speed

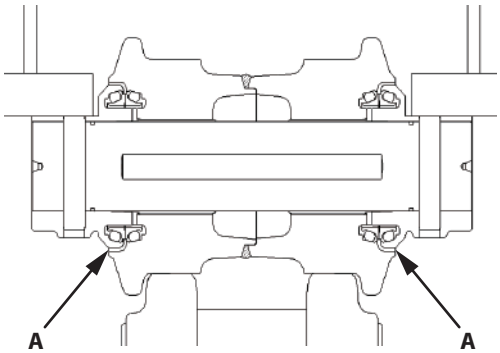
When traveling at high speed, do not perform operations such as emergency stop.
Do not perform operations such as repeated switching between forward and reverse.
Repetition of these kinds of operation increases the load on rollers, front idler and travel device, and risks damaging internal parts of the machine and shortening their life.



MJAQ-04-001 ja

Prohibition of Traveling for Long Periods

When the machine travels for a long period, the temperature of parts such as the rollers, front idler and travel device increases. This risks damage to internal seals, oil leakage and damage to other components.
If there is no option but to travel for an extended period, contact Authorized Dealer.



Lower Roller

MDFY-04-001-1 ja

A- Location at risk of oil leakage

Control Lever (ISO Pattern)

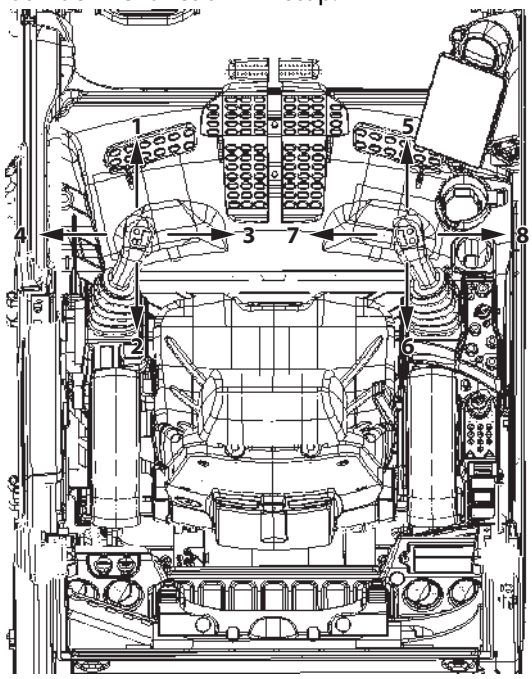
WARNING

- **Never extend any part of body beyond window bars or frame, as it could be crushed, if boom control lever is accidentally bumped or otherwise engaged.**
  Never remove the window sash bar.
- **Make sure you know the location and function of each control before operating.**
- **Do not change the operation pattern of the control lever. Failure to do so may result in mistaken operation of the machine.**

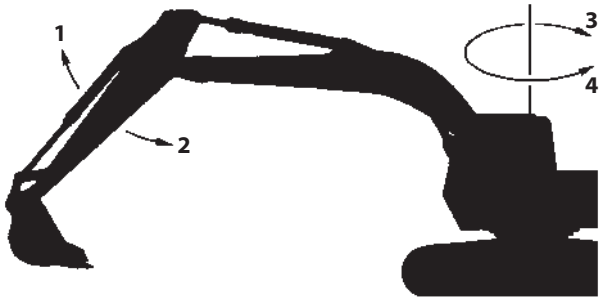
A label showing the control patterns of the levers and pedals is attached on the right side in the cab.

When a lever is released, it will automatically return to neutral, and that machine function will stop.

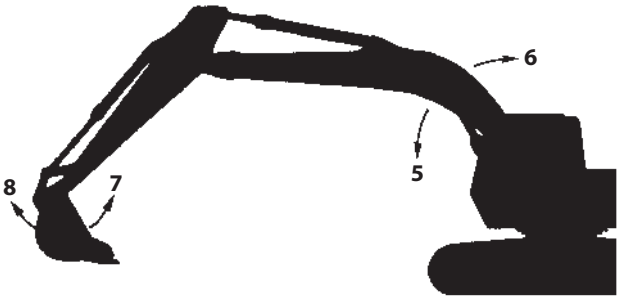
1- Arm Roll-Out
2- Arm Roll-In
3- Swing Right
4- Swing Left
5- Boom Lower
6- Boom Raise
7- Bucket Roll-In
8- Bucket Roll-Out



MDA4-01-005-1 ja



M104-05-001-1 ja



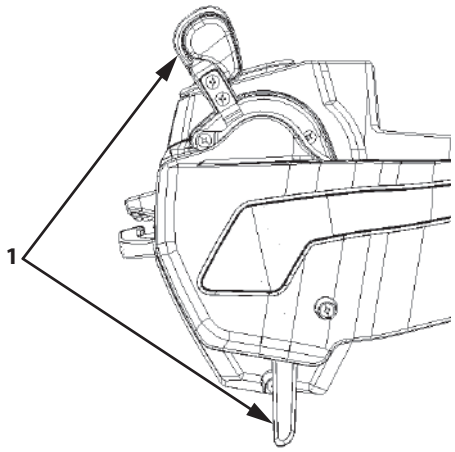
M104-05-002-1 ja

Pilot Shut-Off Lever

Pilot shut-off lever (1) functions to prevent the machine from being mistakenly operated when the operator accidentally touches the control lever or pedals when climbing in or out of the machine.

WARNING

To lock it, put pilot shut-off lever (1) in the LOCK position. If in an intermediate position, it is not locked, which is dangerous. When leaving the operator's seat, always stop the engine and put pilot shut-off lever (1) in the LOCK position. Make sure it is in the LOCK position before transporting the machine or leaving the machine at the end of a shift.



LOCK Position

MDFY-01-088-2 ja

Operating the Pilot Shut-Off Lever Before Leaving the Operator's Station

1. Park the machine on a firm, level surface. Lower the bucket and blade (ZX135US-7H only) to the ground. Return all control levers to the NEUTRAL position. Properly shut down the engine.
2. Pull pilot shut-off lever (1) to the LOCK position.

Operating the Pilot Shut-Off Lever Before Starting Work

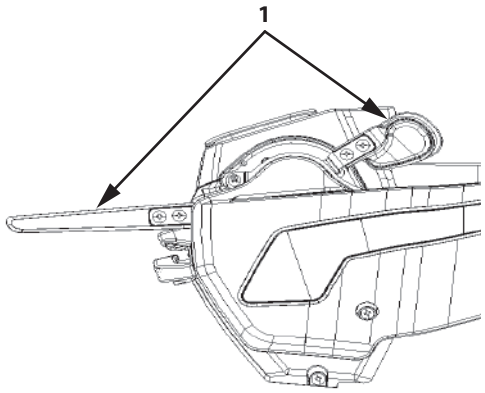
Confirm that pilot shut-off lever (1) is in the LOCK position before starting the engine. The engine cannot start if the pilot shut-off lever is in the UNLOCK position.

Before starting work, slowly switch pilot shut-off lever (1) from the LOCK position to the UNLOCK position.

Before unlocking, confirm that all control levers and pedals are in neutral and that no part of the machine is in motion.

WARNING

With all the levers and pedals in neutral, if simply setting pilot shut-off lever (1) in the UNLOCK position causes any part to move, the machine is malfunctioning. If this happens, immediately return pilot shut-off lever (1) to the LOCK position, stop the engine and contact Authorized Dealer.



UNLOCK Position

MDFY-01-113-2 ja

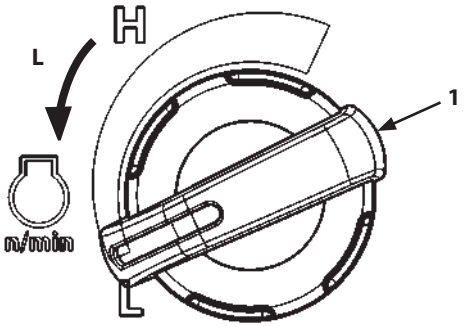
Warming-Up Operation

In cold weather, warm up the machine until coolant and hydraulic oil temperature increases to the appropriate operating temperature.

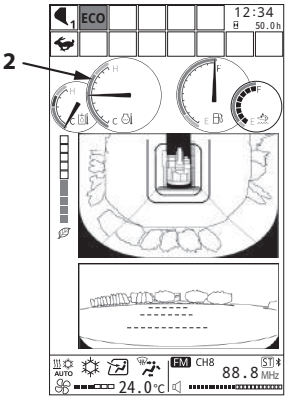
IMPORTANT

- **The appropriate hydraulic oil operating temperature on this machine is 50 to 80 °C (122 to 176 °F). Hydraulic components may be seriously damaged if the machine is operated with low temperature hydraulic oil. In particular, relieving with an attachment other than a bucket while the oil is cold may lead to damage to hydraulic components, so do not do so. If warming up machine hydraulic system with the boom, arm and or bucket cylinders being held at each stroke end operation, pause for 5 to 10 seconds after every hydraulic system relief for 10 to 15 seconds.**
- **When the hydraulic oil temperature is 5 °C (41 °F) or lower, the pump torque is restricted to protect the engine.**

1. Even after engine starts, leave engine control dial (1) in the slow idle position.
   (Do not operate the machine until the needle of coolant temperature gauge (2) starts swinging.)
2. After the needle of coolant temperature gauge (2) starts swinging, turn engine control dial (1) to approx. Medium position.
3. Operate the boom, arm and bucket cylinders slowly to each stroke end several times. If the machine is equipped with various attachments, operate the attachment function slowly to allow hydraulic oil to circulate through the system. When doing so, relieving the circuit may cause damage to hydraulic components. Do not relieve any attachment other than a bucket during warmup.
4. Operate the travel and swing functions slowly to allow hydraulic oil to circulate through the systems.



MDFY-01-010-3 ja



MDFY-MT-100-10 ja

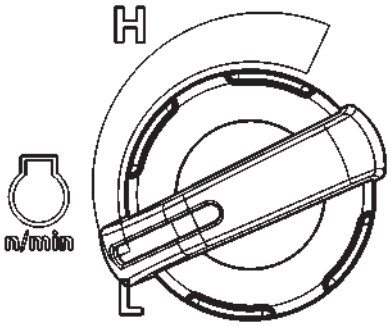
5. Warming-up operation ends after the above operation is completed.

NOTE

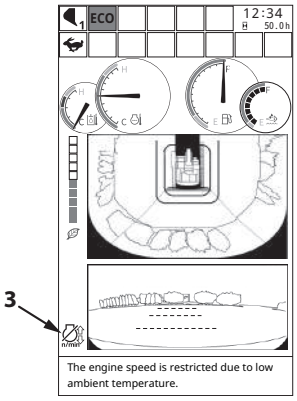
- *The engine speed will be kept to slow idle speed just after the engine starts. When engine speed control indicator (3) is displayed, slow idle speed will be maintained. When the coolant temperature or hydraulic oil temperature is low, the time will be longer. The engine speed will be kept to slow idle speed even if engine control dial (1) is not set in the slow idle position.*
- *The warm-up system automatically operates after keeping slow idle speed, and the engine speed will temporarily increase even if engine control dial (1) is in the slow idle position.*

CAUTION

Do not attempt to operate the machine when engine speed control indicator (3) is lit. The engine speed may change after the slow idle period and operation speed of work device may suddenly increase, which may cause a serious accident.



MDFY-01-010 ja

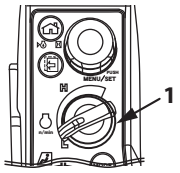


MDFY-MT-131-2 en_GB

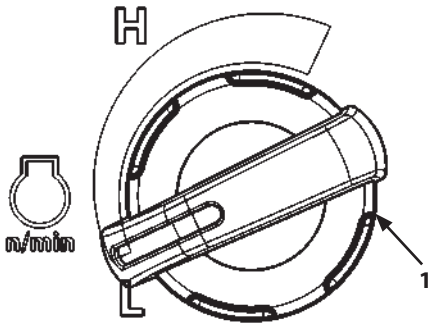
Engine Speed Control

Increase and decrease the engine speed using engine control dial (1) located on the switch panel.

- Turn engine control dial (1) clockwise to increase the engine speed or counterclockwise to decrease the engine speed.
- Note that the auto-idle function is deactivated if engine control dial (1) is operated while the engine is running at the auto-idle setting.
- Before stopping the engine, always turn engine control dial (1) counterclockwise to the stop (to the slow idle setting). Run the engine 5 minutes to cool the engine. Then, turn the key switch to the OFF position to stop the engine.



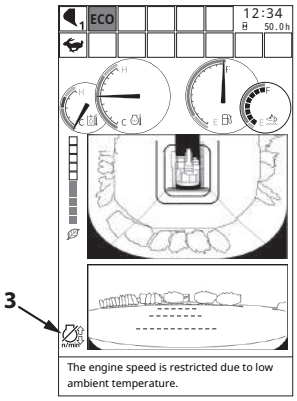
MDFY-01-094-5 ja



MDFY-01-010-4 ja

NOTE

- *The engine speed is kept to slow idle speed just after the engine starts. While engine speed control indicator (3) is displayed, slow idle speed is maintained. This period lasts longer when the coolant temperature or hydraulic oil temperature is low. Note also that the engine speed is kept to slow idle speed even when engine control dial (1) is not set in the slow idle position.*
- *After the slow idle period, the warm-up system operates automatically, and the engine speed increases temporarily, even if engine control dial (1) is set in the slow idle position.*



MDFY-MT-131-2 en_GB

CAUTION

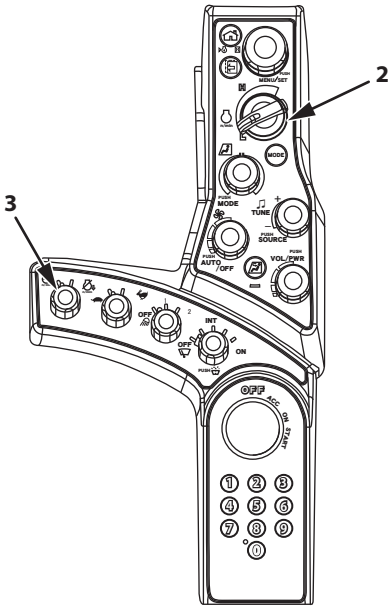
Do not attempt to operate the machine while engine speed control indicator (3) is lit. If the machine is operated during this period, the engine speed may change suddenly upon completion of the slow idle period. This could cause a sudden increase in the speed of operation of the machine and result in a serious accident.

Auto-Idle

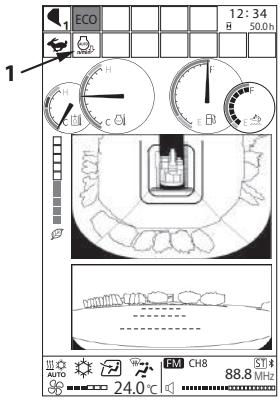
Auto-Idle Function

When auto-idle switch (3) is turned to the A/I ON position, approximately 4 seconds after all control levers are returned to neutral, the engine speed decreases to the auto-idle speed to reduce fuel consumption.

When any control lever is operated, the engine speed increases immediately to the speed set with engine control dial (2).



MDFY-01-002-4 ja



MDFY-MT-133-1 ja

IMPORTANT

- **Before operating the control lever, always check if auto-idle indicator (1) is turned ON or OFF . If the lamp is lit, the auto-idle function is activated.**
- **When auto-idle switch (3) is turned to the A/I ON position, and control levers are in neutral, operating any control lever increases the engine speed to the speed set with engine control dial (2). If the engine speed is set high with engine control dial (2), and the operator is not aware of the high engine speed setting, the engine speed will unexpectedly increase when any control lever is operated, causing the machine to move unexpectedly, possibly resulting in serious personal injury.**

WARNING

Be sure to turn auto-idle switch (3) to the A/I OFF position when doing work that would be dangerous if the machine were to move unexpectedly, especially when loading/unloading the machine for transportation.

NOTE

- *Auto-idle control may not work until the end of the warm-up.*
- *The auto-idle control function does not operate when the aftertreatment device is regenerating.*

Auto-Idle ON/OFF

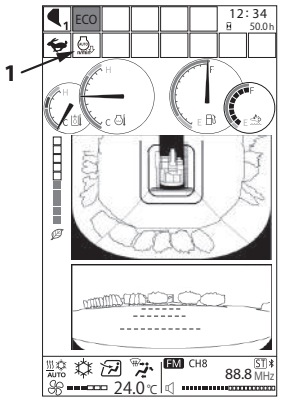
Note that the auto-idle function can only be turned ON or OFF using auto-idle switch (3) when the key switch is in the ON position.

The ON or OFF status can checked using icons (1) and (2).

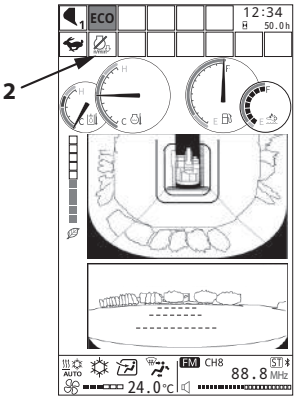
Icon (1) lit: Auto-idle function is ON

Icon (2) lit: Auto-idle function is OFF

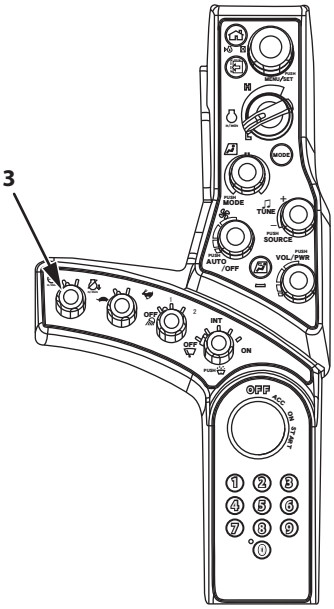
- When icon (1) is lit, turning auto-idle switch (3) to OFF will toggle icon (2) and deactivate the auto-idle function.
- Be aware that turning engine OFF using the key does not deactivate the auto-idle system switch if auto-idle switch (3) remains in the A/I ON position (icon (1) is lit). When the engine is restarted, the auto-idle system remains activated. Icon (1) will flash for 10 seconds and then stay lit.



MDFY-MT-133-1 ja



MDFY-MT-153-1 ja



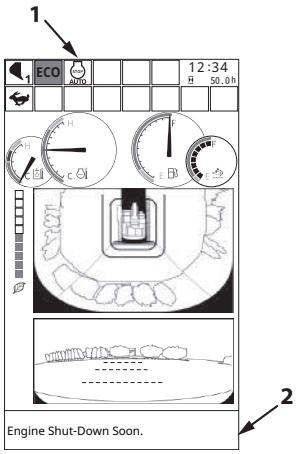
MDFY-01-002-5 ja

Auto Shut-Down

WARNING

This function automatically stops the engine. Take extra care on the work and work environment when using this function.

When the auto shut-down function is turned ON, the engine automatically stops after the preset time at the state in which the pilot shut-off lever is LOCK position. 30 seconds before the engine stop, monitor screen (2) displays "Engine Shut-Down Soon." message and indicator (1) starts flashing. Also the buzzer sounds. The buzzer sounds once at 30 seconds before, and continuously sounds from 15 seconds. The engine speed decreases to the idling speed, and then stops after 15 seconds. When the pilot shut-off lever is UNLOCK position before stopping the engine, the auto shut-down is disabled and the engine will not stop.



MDFY-MT-134-1 en_GB

IMPORTANT

Check whether the status of auto shutdown indicator (1) is ON or OFF. If indicator (1) is ON, the auto shut-down function will be activated.

Operating Condition

- The engine is running.
- The pilot shut-off lever is in the LOCK position.
- Coolant and hydraulic oil temperature are not high.
- The aftertreatment device is not in the process of manual regeneration.

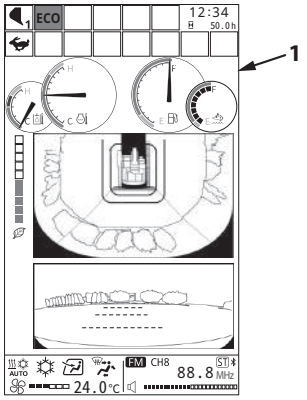
IMPORTANT

- **When the engine is stopped by the auto shut-down function, turn the key switch to ACC or OFF once and then turn it to START to restart the engine. Turn the key switch OFF after auto shut-down when leaving the machine for long period of time. Do not leave the machine after auto shut-down. Failure to do so may discharge the batteries.**
- **Even if the auto shut-down function is ON, the engine will not stop during manual regeneration of the aftertreatment device.**
- **When the auto shut-down activates, the air conditioner will also stop.**

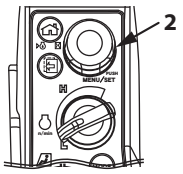
Setting the Auto Shut-Down Function

Auto Shut-Down: ON/OFF

1. From basic screen (1) push selector/set switch (2) to display main menu screen (3).

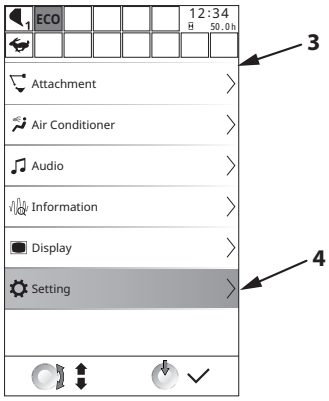


MDFY-MT-100-2 ja



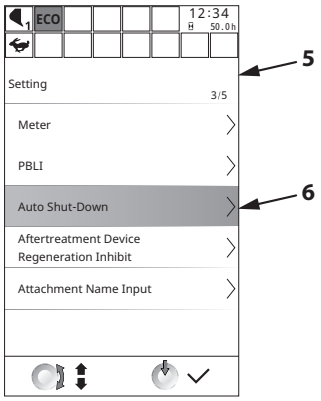
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Settings (4).
3. Push selector/set switch (2) to display Setting screen (5).



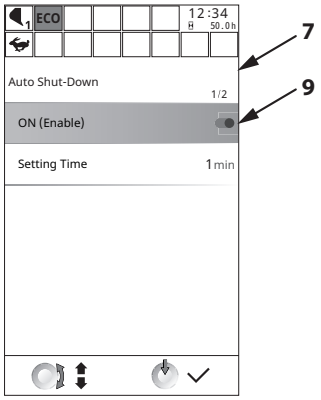
MDFY-MT-009-1 en_GB

4. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Auto Shut-Down (6).
5. Push selector/set switch (2) to display Auto Shut-Down screen (7).



MDFY-MT-066-1 en_GB

6. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight ON (9).
7. Push selector/set switch (2) to turn the auto shut-down function ON. Push selector/set switch (2) again to turn the auto shut-down function OFF.



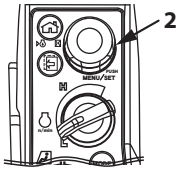
MDFY-MT-015-1 en_GB

Auto Shut-Down : Setting Time

NOTE

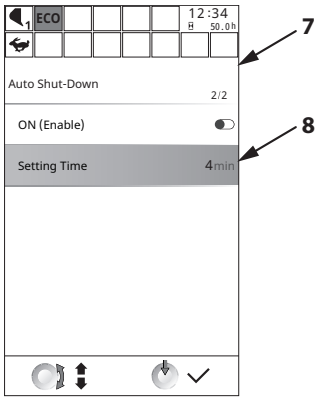
The setting time can only be changed when the auto shut-down function is OFF. First change the setting time.

1. On Auto Shut-Down screen (7), rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Setting Time (8).



MDFY-01-094-7 ja

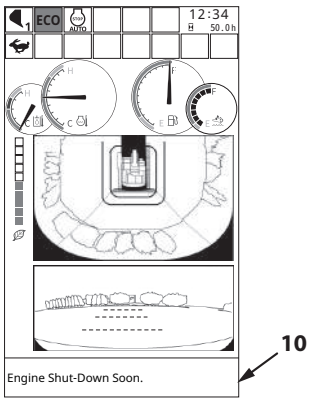
2. Push selector/set switch (2) and then rotate selector/set switch (2) to adjust the auto shut-down setting time.
3. Push selector/set switch (2) to make the change.



MDFY-MT-016-1 en_GB

NOTE

When the function is turned ON, the message "Engine Shut Down Soon" is displayed (10) on the monitor 30 seconds before the engine stops.

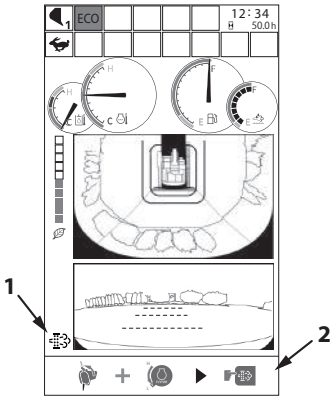


MDFY-MT-134-2 en_GB

Aftertreatment Device Manual Regeneration

Manual Regeneration Procedure

When manual regeneration is required, warning icon (1) and operating guidance (2) are displayed on the monitor. When they are displayed, it means manual regeneration is required. Before starting manual regeneration, be sure to check the following.



MDFY-MT-114-1 ja

Check the Following

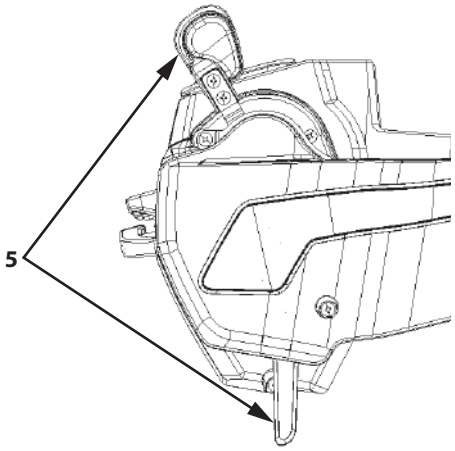
- No one is around the machine
- No flammable materials near the aftertreatment device
- Remaining fuel alarm is not lit
- DEF level alarm is not lit

Step

1. Park the machine in a safe place. Lower the front attachment and blade (ZX135US-7H only) to the ground.

SA-2590 ja

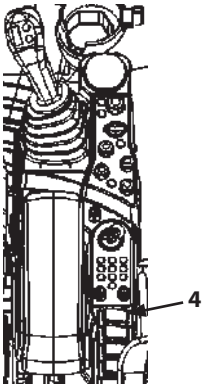
2. Put pilot shut-off lever (5) in the LOCK position.
3. Set the engine control dial to slow idle.



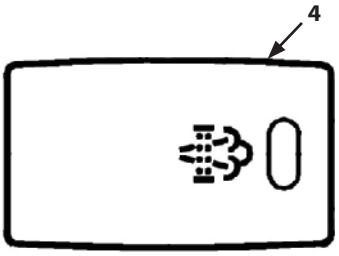
LOCK Position

MDFY-01-088-5 ja

4. Push aftertreatment device manual regeneration switch (4).



MDFY-01-001-1 ja

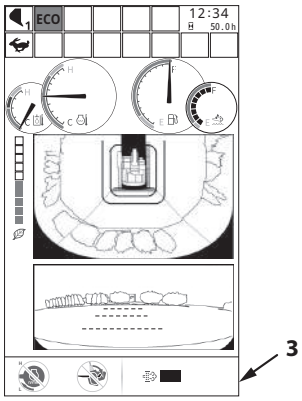


MDFY-01-118-1 ja

5. When aftertreatment device manual regeneration switch (4) is pressed, screen (3) illustrated at right is displayed and manual regeneration starts. A bar graph on screen shows the progress of the regeneration process.

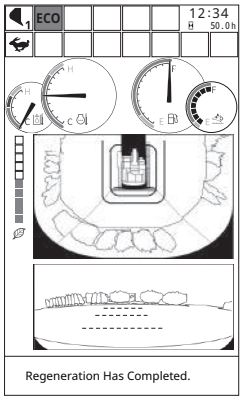
IMPORTANT

Manual regeneration will not start unless the pilot shut-off lever is in the LOCK position and the engine control dial is on slow idle. Furthermore, during manual regeneration, if either the pilot shut-off lever or the engine control dial are touched, regeneration control will fail. If the process is aborted, start over again.

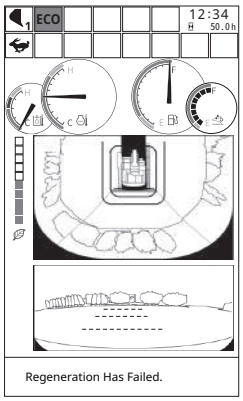


MDFY-MT-115-1 ja

6. When manual regeneration is finished, the message "Regeneration Has Completed." is displayed. If the message "Regeneration Has Failed." is displayed, start the manual regeneration process over again. The regeneration process may fail in conditions other than those mentioned above (such as regeneration-regulating sensor malfunction or low outside air temperature).



MDFY-MT-116 en_GB



MDFY-MT-117 en_GB

NOTE

- *The engine sound may change and the engine speed may increase when manual regeneration starts, this is not a malfunction.*
- *Regeneration time varies depending on the outside air temperature.*
- *White smoke may come from the tail pipe for a time during the regeneration process, this is not a malfunction.*
- *The time required for manual regeneration is shorter right after operating the machine, and longer when the engine is cold.*
- *Coolant temperature may increase during manual regeneration.*

IMPORTANT

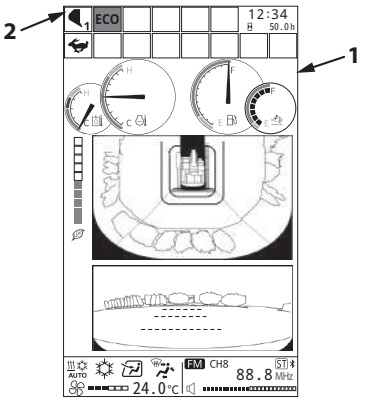
- **If absolutely necessary to interrupt regeneration and move the machine, press the manual regeneration switch again. "Regeneration Has Failed" is displayed on the monitor, but the machine can be moved. In such case, manual regeneration should be performed again. Restart manual regeneration as soon as possible.**
- **Depending on the working and environmental conditions, the performance of the catalyst in aftertreatment device may decrease and replacement may become necessary. After warm-up is complete, manual regeneration normally takes around 15 to 30 minutes to complete. If regeneration takes over 40 minutes, contact Authorized Dealer to arrange an inspection.**

Attachments

To select an attachment, select Attachments from the main menu. From the attachments screen, select the applicable hydraulic circuit and pump flow rate.

When the engine is started, bucket mode is set automatically. From the attachments screen, the following 6 attachment modes can be selected.

- Bucket 1 Mode
- Thumb 1 Mode
- Breaker 1 Mode
- Breaker 2 Mode
- Pulverizer 1 Mode
- Crusher 1 Mode



MDFY-MT-100-6 ja

The selected attachment mode is indicated by attachment mode indicator (2) on basic screen (1).
Select the most suitable attachment for the work from the table below.

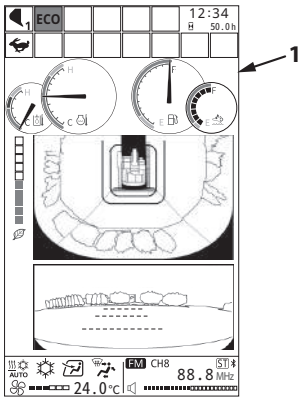
	Mode	Description
	Bucket 1 to 5 Modes	Select when using the bucket.
	Thumb 1 to 5 Modes	Select when using the thumb.
	Breaker 1 to 5 Modes	Select when using the breaker.
	Pulverizer 1 to 5 Modes	Select when using the pulverizer.
	Crusher 1 to 5 Modes	Select when using the crusher.
	Vibrating Hammer 1 to 5 Modes	Select when using the vibrating hammer.
	Grapple 1 to 5 Modes	Select when using the grapple.
	Clamshell 1 to 5 Modes	Select when using the clamshell.
	Rotary Tilt 1 to 5 Modes	Select when using the rotary tilt.
	Tilt Bucket 1 to 5 Modes	Select when using the tilt bucket.
	Miscellaneous Modes 1 to 5	Select when using an attachment other than those mentioned above.

NOTE

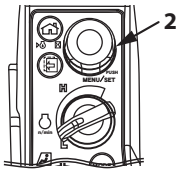
The 55 modes available are listed in the table above. The bucket mode has 5 available mode settings. The attachment mode has 16 available mode settings exclusive of bucket mode. To add or change the attachment modes, consult Authorized Dealer.

Attachment Selection

1. Push selector/set switch (2) while displaying basic screen (1) to display main menu screen (3).

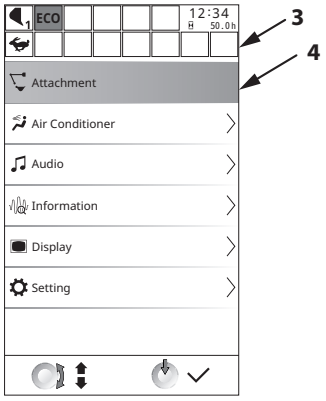


MDFY-MT-100-2 ja



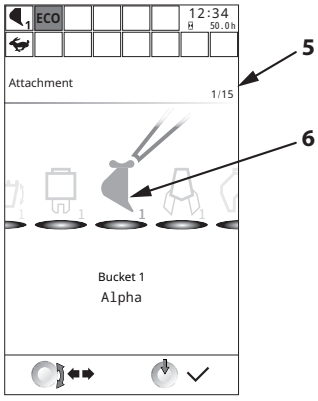
MDFY-01-094-7 ja

2. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight Attachment (4).
3. Push selector/set switch (2) to display Attachment screen (5).



MDFY-MT-005-1 en_GB

4. Rotate selector/set switch (2) to highlight the desired front attachment.
   (In the example here, "Bucket" (6) is highlighted.)
5. Push selector/set switch (2) to enable the changes.

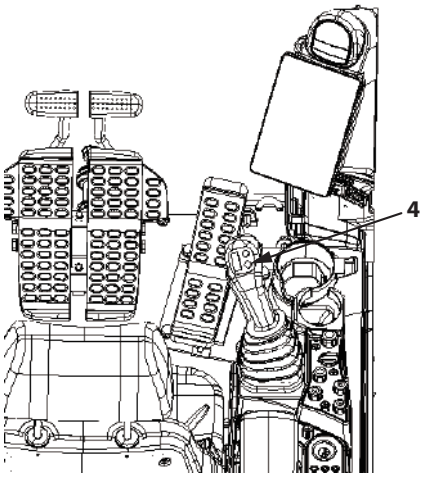


MDFY-MT-043-3 en_GB

Power Boost Switch

Power boost switch (4) is located on the top of the right control lever.

When power boost switch (4) is pushed, increased front attachment power will be supplied for about 8 seconds.



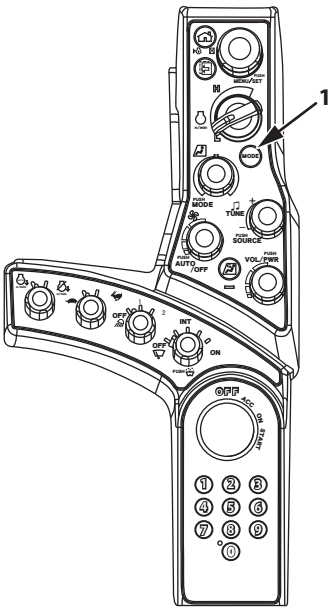
MDFY-05-002-1 ja

Power Mode

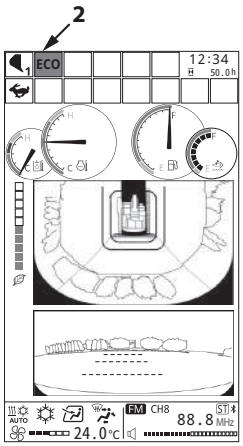
Three engine speed modes, ECO, PWR or H/P can be selected by operating power mode switch (1).

NOTE

- *ECO mode is set automatically when starting the engine. Set PWR mode or H/P mode whenever necessary.*



MDFY-01-002-6 ja



MDFY-MT-100-7 ja

ECO (Economy) Mode

Operate the machine in this mode when performing normal work.
ECO is displayed on Power Mode Display (2).

PWR (Power) Mode

Use PWR (Power) mode when extra horsepower is needed.
PWR is displayed on Power Mode Display (2).

H/P (High Power) Mode

Select this mode when you wish to perform heavier work than in the PWR mode.
It utilizes the maximum horsepower of the machine, but at the cost of fuel consumption. H/P is displayed on Power Mode Display (2).

Attachment Settings

Boom Raise Speed Priority (Except ZX135US-7H)

A setting that gives priority to the boom raise speed when combined operation: boom raise, swing and arm roll-in is performed.
For instructions on settings, see the section “Boom Raise Speed Priority” in Chapter 1 Operator’s Station.

The following are the 3 selectable modes and corresponding operating conditions.

OFF Turns the boom raise speed priority OFF.

Auto 1 Prioritizes boom raise speed for combined operations involving boom raising, swinging and arm roll-in.
[Typical operations likely to benefit]

- Operation of lifting bucket in loaded state after digging
  (such as when loading a truck etc.)
- Operations involving moving the front attachment through air when the front attachment is a heavy one.
- Operations involving gripping a target object when a heavy front attachment is attached.

Auto 2 In addition to prioritizing boom raise speed for combined operations involving boom raising, swinging and arm roll-in, further prioritizes boom raise speed for combined operations involving boom raising and arm roll-in.
[Typical operations likely to benefit]

- Operation of lifting bucket in loaded state after digging
  (such as when loading a truck etc.)
- Operations that combine the boom raise operation and arm roll-in with a bucket loaded after digging, when excavating a ditch or deep hole.
- Operations involving moving the front attachment through air when the front attachment is a heavy one.
- Operations involving gripping a target object when a heavy front attachment is attached.

NOTE

Boom raise speed priority is a setting to increase the speed of the boom when performing combined operations. When applied, the boom cylinder is prioritized for receipt of hydraulic oil from the pump. However, it can only be applied when certain conditions relating to the amount of movement of the control levers and on the pump pressure are satisfied.

Front Speed Adjustment for Heavy Load

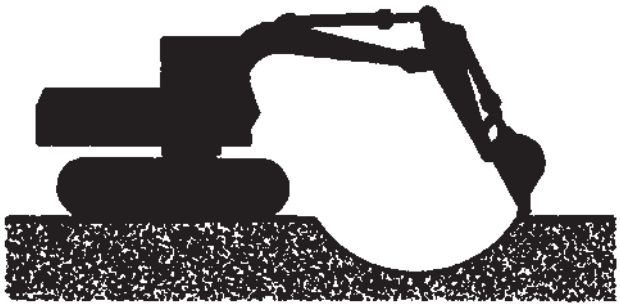
This is a setting for adjusting the speed of the front attachment a large load is being handled.
Adjusting the setting increases or decreases the speed of the front attachment.

[Typical operations likely to benefit]

- Operation of front attachment when a large load is being handled.

For details on how to configure this setting, refer to Front Speed Adjustment for Heavy Load (ECO) (PWR) in Chapter 1, Operator’s Station.

Operating Backhoe



M107-05-037 ja

- Use the appropriate arm and bucket for the work. (Refer to "Bucket Types and Applications" in Chapter 12, “Specifications”.)
- Pull the bucket toward the machine using the arm as the main digging force.
- When soil sticks to the bucket, remove it by moving the arm and/or bucket rapidly back and forth 2 or 3 times.
- Excavate with shallow strokes, keeping the teeth of the bucket aligned with the digging direction and using the maximum length of the arm stroke.
- When trenching a straight line, position the tracks parallel to the trench. After digging to the desired depth, move the machine as required to continue the trench.
- When operating the front attachment, leave some margin to the stroke end of the cylinder.

IMPORTANT

- **When digging at an angle, avoid striking the tracks with the bucket teeth.**
- **When lowering the boom, avoid stopping suddenly as this will shock the machine. Lower the boom smoothly to avoid shocking the machine.**
- **When digging a deep excavation, avoid striking the boom or bucket cylinder hoses against the ground.**
- **When operating the machine with the blade (if equipped) positioned towards the front, take care to ensure that the bucket teeth do not come into contact with the blade.**
- **When operating the machine with attachment heavier than standard bucket, do not pull the arm to the stroke end with maximum speed. Excessive power occurred inside may damage the arm cylinder.**

Shovel

Backhoe operation digs the ground using the bucket in a roll-in motion. Face shovel operation digs the ground using the arm cylinder in a scraping motion.

WARNING

Take care not to hit the cab by rolling in too far when the bucket is inverted. Be careful not to hit the cab with the teeth of the bucket when rolling the arm in.

IMPORTANT

If a bucket hook is mounted, the hook may hit the arm if the bucket is rolled in to far. Take care not to hit it.

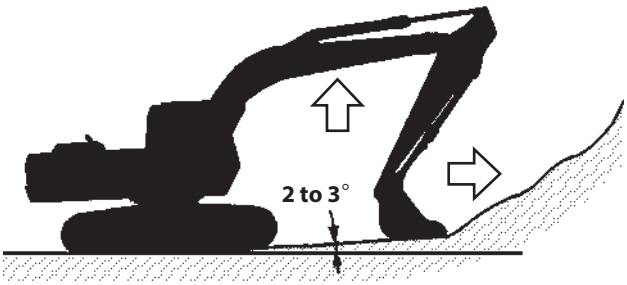
- For face shovel operation, dig the ground using the arm cylinder in a scraping motion.
- When underground water is expected, make a slope angle of 2 to 3° to drain the water as shown.

NOTE

Because of the hydraulic cylinder structure, the digging force during face shovel operation is smaller than for backhoe operation.

Warning about Rolling Too Far with the Bucket

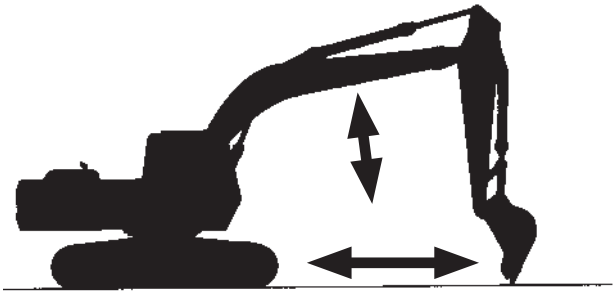
MZX5-05-003-2 ja



M104-05-020-1 en_GB

Grading Operation

Operate the boom, arm, and the bucket in such a way that the bucket teeth move horizontally, constantly keeping them perpendicular to the ground during grading work.



M104-05-017-1 ja

IMPORTANT

Do not pull or push dirt with the bucket when traveling. Excess force will be applied on its parts, and the machine may be damaged.

1. When leveling ground toward the machine, while holding the boom up, gently roll-in the arm. Once the arm moves past the vertical position, slowly lower the boom to allow the bucket to maintain a smooth surface.
2. Reverse the directions in step 1 to perform arm roll-out operation.
3. Perform slope finishing work using the same procedure described in steps 1 and 2.

Do Not Strike the Ground with Bucket Teeth

WARNING

Forcibly striking the bucket teeth on the ground may result in personal injury from flying debris. It will also shorten the service life of each part on the front attachment.

If the bucket teeth are forcibly struck on the ground, it shortens the service life of the front-end attachment parts (especially the bucket).
When digging a hard gravel layer, use the upwards digging force of the bucket. Operate the boom, arm and the bucket simultaneously so that the bucket teeth efficiently bite into the ground.
Flying debris may result in personal injury.

Avoid Hammer Work

WARNING

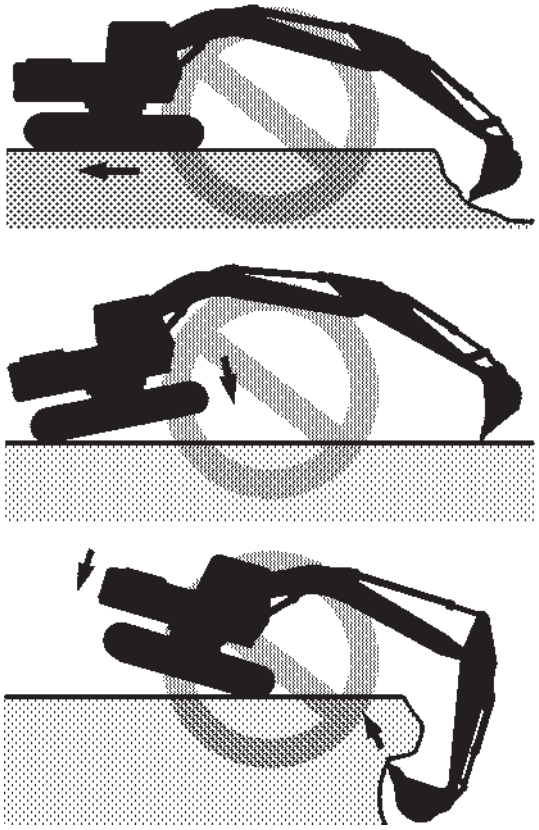
As the bucket body has a curved surface, hammer work or piling work is very dangerous. Doing so may damage the bucket and front attachment.

Do not attempt to use the bucket for hammering or piling work.
Doing so may damage the bucket and front attachment, causing personal injury. It is also dangerous, so do not do it.

MZX5-05-004 ja

Avoid Abusive Operation

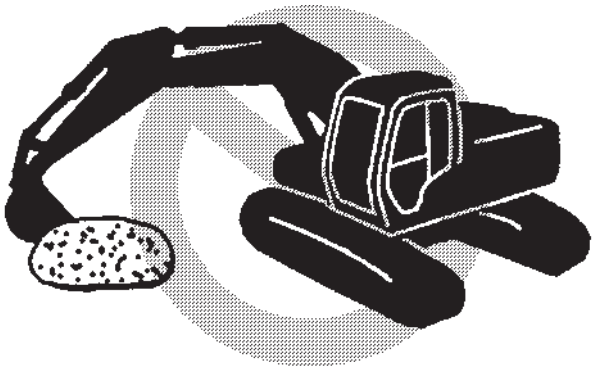
Do not attempt to add additional digging force by using travel, or raising the rear of the machine to use the machine's weight.



MZX5-05-005 ja

Never Move an Object Sideways with the Bucket

For example, do not swing the bucket to level material and do not strike objects sideways with the bucket.
Doing so may damage the front-end attachment and/or shorten the life of the swing system.



MZX5-05-006 ja

Retracting the Arm and Bucket

Pay attention to the following when installing cab equipment (optional) such as OPG front guard, OPG head guard, rain visor, cab top lights (4 lights), etc.

CAUTION

When the machine is equipped with the cab equipment mentioned above, the teeth of the bucket may hit the cab equipment if the arm is retracted excessively. Be careful not to hit the cab equipment with the teeth of the bucket when retracting the arm.

M107-05-072 ja

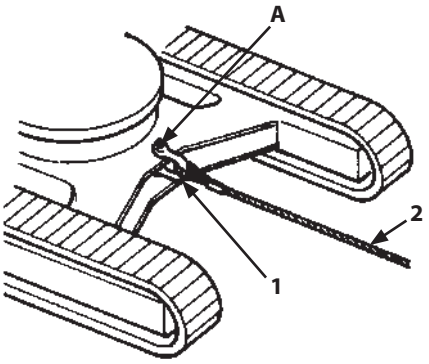
Never use Wide Track Shoes on Rough Ground

Never use wide track shoes on rough ground such as rocks, sand or gravel. Wide track shoes are designed for soft ground.

It may result in bending of shoes and/or loosening of shoe bolts, and may damage other undercarriage components, such as track links and rollers.
(Refer to “Shoe Types and Applications” in Chapter 12, “SPECIFICATIONS”.)

Using the Track Frame Shackle Hole

A shackle (1) hole (A) is provided on the track frame for towing light weight objects as specified below.



M104-05-011-2 ja

IMPORTANT

Always follow the points below when towing a light object using shackle hole (A). The track frame and/or shackle hole (A) may be damaged if any are ignored.

- Towing limits are as follows.

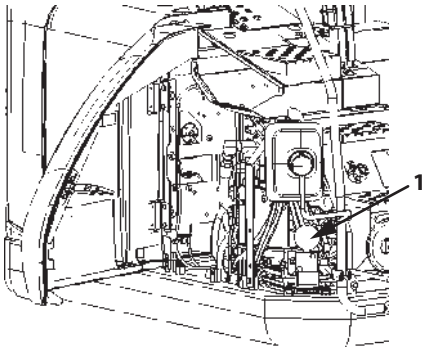
Model	Drawbar pulling capacity
ZX135US-7H	44100 N (4500 kgf, 9900 lbf) or less
ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H	73600 N (7500 kgf, 16600 lbf) or less

- Always use shackle (1).
- Keep wire rope (2) horizontal, straight, and parallel to the track frame.

Select the slow travel mode. Drive the machine slowly when towing.

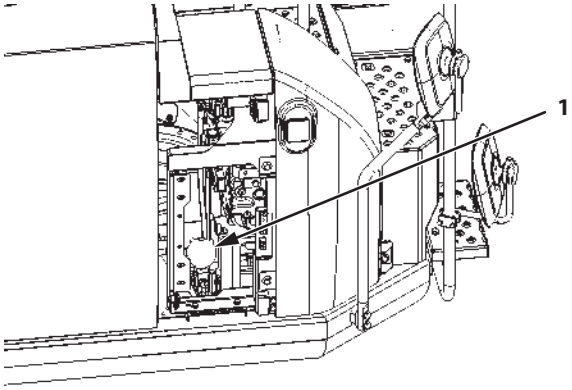
Pilot Accumulator Function (Optional)

Pilot accumulator (1) is a pressure storage reservoir of the control circuit which supplies pressure and enables operation of the control circuit even after stopping the engine.
So even after the engine stops, front attachment can still be lowered using the control lever and the weight of the front attachment itself and to release the pressure in the hydraulic circuit.



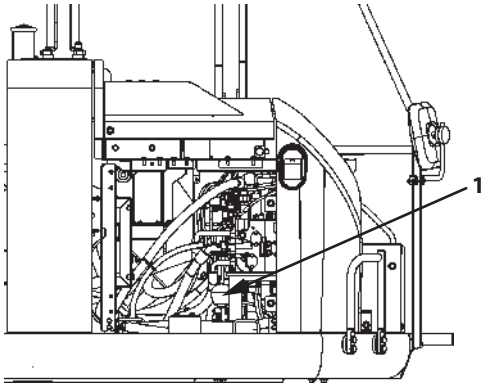
ZX135US-7H

MDCN-05-001-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-05-002-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDAT-05-001-1 ja

Guide to Releasing Pressure in the Hydraulic Circuit

1. Set the machine in the parking attitude.
2. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.

Go through procedure 3 to 5 immediatey after the engine is stopped. As the pressure in pilot accumulator (1) gradually decreases after the engine is stopped, lower the front equipment and attachment to the ground before the pressure decrease.

3. Stop the engine. Then, turn the key to the ON position.
4. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the UNLOCK position.
5. Move the control levers and attachment pedals forward and rearward or left and right to release pressure from the hydraulic circuit.
6. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position and turn the key to the OFF position.

NOTE

Front equipment and attachment can be lowered in case of engine stop and emergency situation. Refer to "How to lower front equipment and attachment" page for the procedure.

How to Lower Boom in Case of Emergency and When Engine Stops (Without hose-rupture safety valve)

WARNING

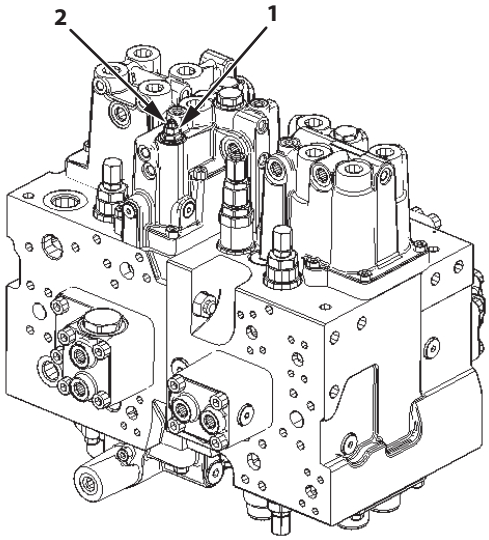
Confirm that no one is under the front equipment and attachment before starting the procedure below. The front equipment and attachment will be lowered.

In case the engine suddenly stops and the engine cannot be restarted, lower the front equipment and attachment by operating the boom with the following procedure.

IMPORTANT

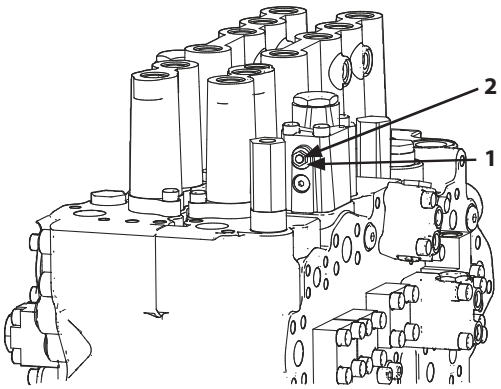
Never loosen screw (2) more than 2 turns. Screw (2) may come off.

1. Loosen lock nut (1) in the emergency valve on the right. Loosen screw (2) one half of a turn. The boom lowering speed can be partly adjusted by loosening screw (2) further.



ZX135US-7H

MDA4-05-003-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H

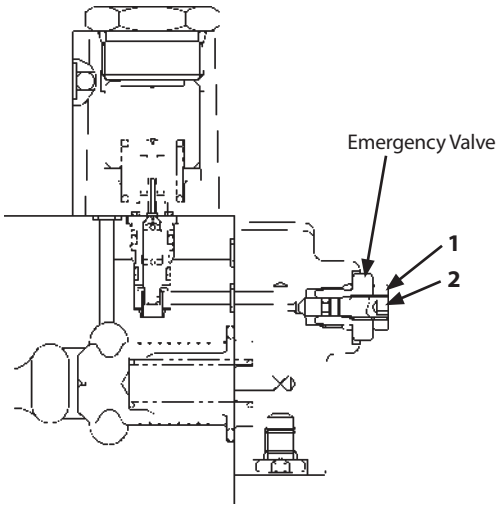
MDAA-05-003-2 ja

IMPORTANT

Excessive leakage may result if screw (2) and lock nut (1) are tightened insufficiently. Be sure to retighten screw (2) and lock nut (1) to specifications.

2. After the boom is lowered, tighten screw (2) and tighten lock nut (1) to the specifications below.

   Locknut (1)
   Tightening Torque: 13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m, 9.6 lbf·ft)
   Screw (2)
   Tightening Torque: 7 N·m (0.7 kgf·m, 5.2 lbf·ft)



T1V1-03-03-038-1 en_GB

How to Lower Front Equipment and Attachment in Case of Emergency and When Engine Stops (With hose-rupture safety valve)(Optional)(ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H)

WARNING

Confirm that no one is under the front equipment and attachment before starting the procedure below. The front equipment and attachment will be lowered.

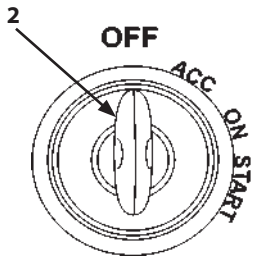
IMPORTANT

If the engine stops suddenly while the machine is running, contact Authorized Dealer.

If the engine stops unexpectedly with the front attachment off the ground, it can be lowered to the ground as follows. However, if the front attachment cannot be operated by following the steps below, stop trying to lower the front attachment and wait for service personnel in a safe place.

Step

1. Turn key switch (2) ON.
2. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the UNLOCK position.
3. Operate the boom lowering lever and lower the front attachment so it touches the ground.



MDCD-01-030-3 ja

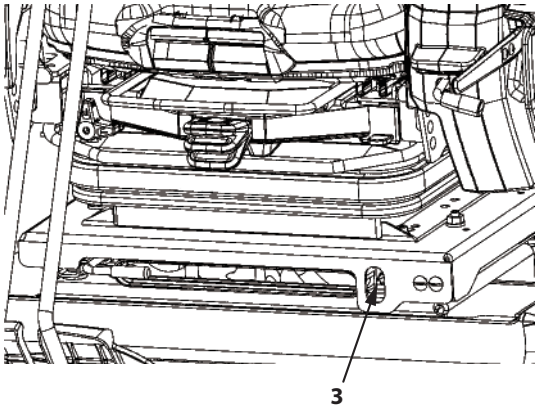
IMPORTANT

If the front attachment stops partway down with the lever actuated, put the control lever in its neutral position at that point.

4. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position and turn key switch (2) to the OFF position.

If the front attachment cannot be positioned as desired after performing steps 1 to 4 above, perform the additional steps below.

5. Turn engine stop switch (3) ON.
6. Confirm that the pilot shut-off lever is in the LOCK position.
7. After turning key switch (2) ON, turn it to the START position and turn the starter over.



MDFY-01-024-4 ja

IMPORTANT

The engine may be damaged if the starter turns for too long a time. Never turn the starter over for longer than 20 seconds at a time.

8. Immediately after completing step 7, put engine stop switch (3) in its OFF position.
9. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the UNLOCK position.
10. Immediately after step 9, operate the boom lowering lever and lower the front attachment so it touches the ground. If the front attachment stops partway down with the lever actuated, put the control lever in its neutral position at that point.
11. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position and turn key switch (2) to the OFF position.

If the front attachment fails to come down at all after performing steps 5 to 11 above, and if repeating the steps appears unlikely to result in lowering the front attachment to the ground, the operator should evacuate to a safe location and wait for service personnel without attempting further to lower the front attachment.

Precautions for After Operations

- After finishing the day's work, drive the machine to firm, level ground where no possibility of falling stones, ground collapse, or floods are present. Park the machine according to the parking procedures.
  (Refer to “How to Park” in chapter 4, “DRIVING THE MACHINE”.)
- Fully refill the fuel tank.
- Clean the machine.

Transporting by Road

When transporting the machine on public roads, be sure to first understand and follow all local regulations.

- When transporting the machine using a trailer, check the width, height, length and weight of the trailer with the machine loaded. Note that transporting weight and dimensions may vary depending on the type of shoe or front attachments installed.
- Investigate conditions on the route to be traveled in advance, such as dimensional limits, weight limits, and traffic regulations.

M1V1-06-001 ja

In some cases it may be necessary to obtain permission from the local authority concerned, or to disassemble the machine to bring it within local regulation for dimensional or weight limits.

Contact Authorized Dealer prior to disassembly for transport.

ZX245USLC-7H

IMPORTANT

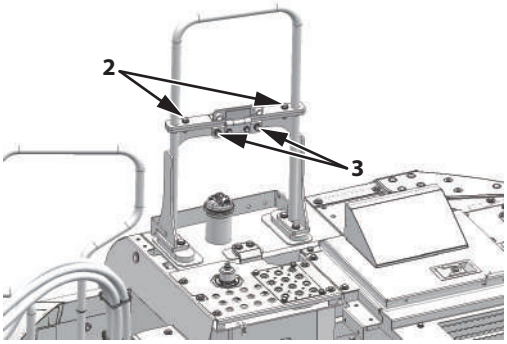
Handrail (1) can be folded and stored. Fold the handrail during transport.

Handrail Storage Steps

1. Remove bolts (2) and (3).
2. Fold up the handrail.
3. Install bolts (2) in the positions indicated in the illustration below to secure the handrail.
4. Install bolts (3) in the positions shown in the illustration below.
5. After transport, remove bolts (2) and (3) and return the handrail to its original position. Secure the handrail with bolts (2) and (3).

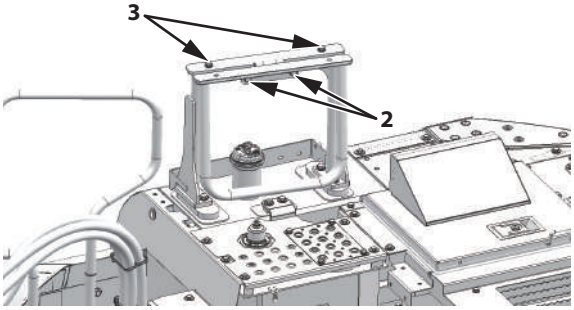
Wrench size : 19 mm

Tightening Torque : 90 N·m (9 kgf·m, 66 lbf·ft)



Handrail Position when Working

MDHE-06-001-1 ja



When Storing the Handrail (during Transport)

MDHE-06-002-1 ja

Loading/Unloading on a Trailer

Always load and unload the machine on a firm, level surface.

WARNING

Be sure to use a loading dock or a ramp for loading/unloading. Never use the front attachment functions when loading or unloading the machine.

Ramp/Loading Dock

1. Before loading, thoroughly clean the ramps, loading dock and trailer flatbed. Dirty ramps, loading docks, and trailers with oil, mud, or ice on them are slippery and dangerous.
2. To prevent movement of trailer, place blocks against the trailer wheels to secure.
3. Ramps must be sufficient in width, length, and strength. Be sure that the incline of the ramp is less than 15°.
4. Loading docks must be sufficient in width and strength to support the machine and have an incline of less than 15°.
5. When loading a machine equipped with a pad crawler or rubber pad shoes, take extra care not to allow the machine to slip since the surface of the rubber pad shoe is flat.
   Only load the machine after removing any soil or clay adhered to the machine.
6. When transporting a machine equipped with a blade, take care not to hit the blade.

Loading/Unloading

WARNING

- **Always turn the auto-idle switch OFF when loading or unloading the machine. In auto-idle mode, speed may automatically increase.**
- **Always select slow speed mode with the travel mode switch.**
- **Never steer while driving up or down a ramp, it is extremely dangerous and may cause the machine to turnover. NEVER attempt to change direction when positioned on the ramp. If repositioning is necessary, first move back to the ground or flatbed, change the direction of travel, and begin to drive again.**
- **At the point where the ramp meets the level surface there is a sudden change of angle. Take care when traveling over this point, as balance may be lost.**
- **Extreme care must be taken when swinging the upper structure when the machine is on the trailer flatbed. If the front attachment is fitted, swing slowly with the arm fully rolled-in underneath the boom, being careful not to lose the balance of the machine.**

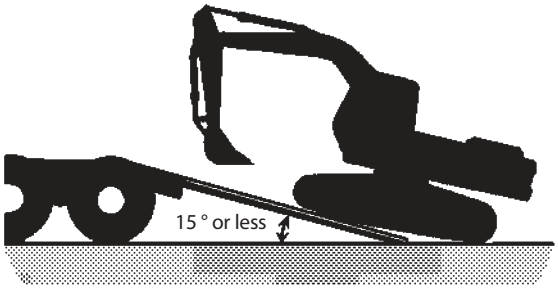
Loading

CAUTION

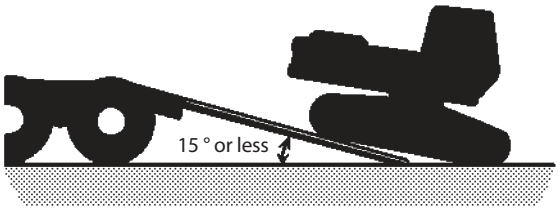
In cold weather, be sure to warm up the machine before loading or unloading it.

If the front attachment is fitted, load with the front attachment faced towards the front, if the front attachment is not fitted, reverse onto the trailer.

1. Load the machine so that the centerline of the machine aligns with the centerline of the trailer flatbed.
2. Drive the machine onto the ramp slowly.

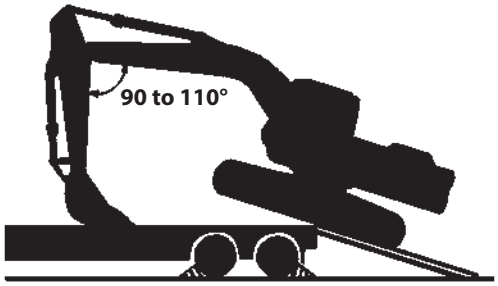


M1G6-06-002-1 en_GB



M107-06-018-1 en_GB

3. When the front attachment is fitted
   a. Determine a position for the bucket in line with the trailer. Adjust the angle of the boom and the arm at 90 to 110 °.
   b. Lower the bucket onto to the deck of the trailer before the machine passes over the end of the ramp for support.
   c. Lift the bucket slightly off the deck of the trailer after the machine has moved to the designated space. With the arm lifted inwards, slowly swing the upper structure place around 180 °.
   d. Rest the front attachment on supports such as wooden blocks placed on the trailer flatbed. Also lower the blade onto the deck at this time (if fitted).



M107-06-012-3 en_GB

M107-06-013 ja

4. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
5. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
6. Close cab windows, roof vent and door, and cover the exhaust opening, to prevent entry of wind and water. Place a cover over the exhaust outlet. Lock all doors, covers and caps if they have a lock.
7. Store all mirrors and the radio antenna correctly.

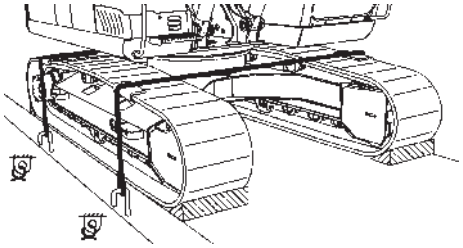
Fastening the Machine for Transport

WARNING

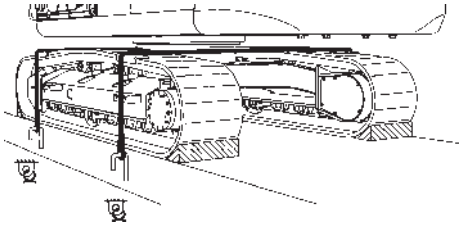
Fasten the machine frame to the deck securely with chains and cables. While traveling, loads may shake around, and move forward or backward and to the sides.

1. Place cog stoppers or blocks in front of and behind the tracks to help secure the machine.
2. Fasten each corner of the machine and front attachment to the trailer with chains or cables of the appropriate strength.

M1V1-06-001 ja

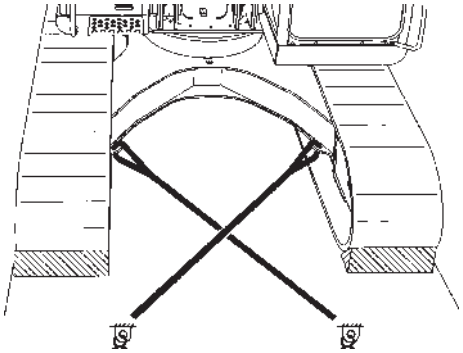


MDCD-06-001 ja

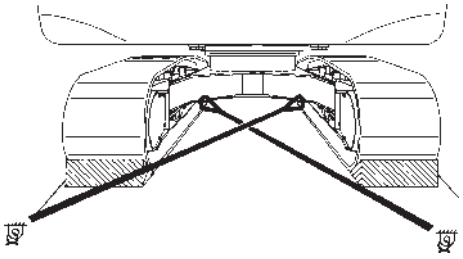


When not using the fastening holes

MDCD-06-002 ja



MDCD-06-003 ja



When using the the fastening holes

MDCD-06-004 ja

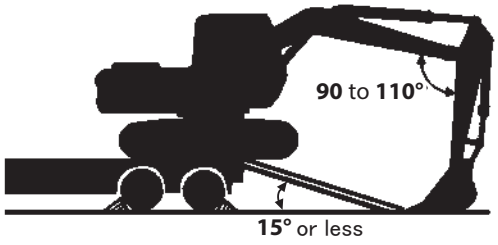
Unloading

WARNING

At the point where the ramp meets the level surface there is a sudden change of angle. Be careful to keep the machine balanced.

IMPORTANT

When unloading the machine, Make sure that the angle of the boom and the arm is kept at 90 to 110°.
Damage to the machine is possible if the arm is kept in a suspended state during unloading.



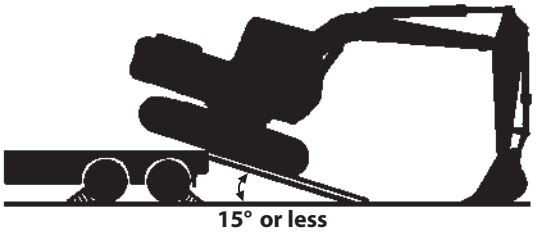
M107-06-014-2 en_GB

1. When moving from the edge of the trailer onto the ramp, travel extremely slowly with the angle of the arm and the boom kept at 90 to 110° and the bucket on the ground.

   ### IMPORTANT

   When driving the machine over the ramp, do not allow the bucket to strike the ground. Damage to the hydraulic cylinders may result.

2. Keep the bucket in contact with the ground until the machine has fully mounted the ramp.
3. As the machine moves off the ramp, proceed slowly, gradually raising the boom and extending the arm until the machine is completely clear of the ramp.



M107-06-015-1 en_GB

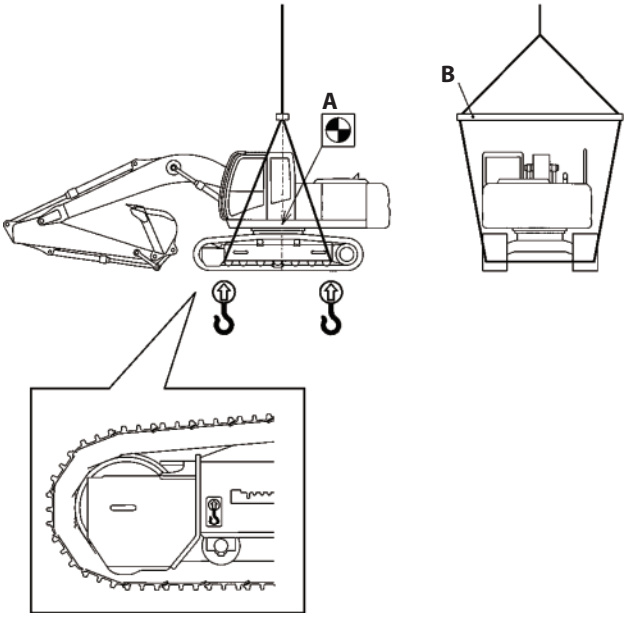
Lifting Machine

WARNING

- **Use lifting cables and other lifting tools that are sufficiently strong and free of damage and/or deterioration.**
- **Contact Authorized Dealer for correct lifting procedures, and the size and types of lifting cable and tools.**
- **Before performing the lifting operation, set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position so that the machine does not move accidentally.**
- **Incorrect lifting procedure and/or incorrect wire rope attachment will cause the machine to move (shift) while being lifted, potentially resulting in damage to the machine and/or personal injury.**
- **Do not hoist the machine quickly. Excessive load will be applied to the lifting cables and/or lifting tools, possibly causing them to break.**
- **Do not allow anyone to approach, or go underneath the lifted machine.**
- **The indicated center of gravity is for a machine with standard specifications. The center of gravity will vary depending on the kinds of attachments and/or optional equipment installed and their positioning. Take care not to unbalance the machine while lifting.**

Lifting

1. Fully extend the arm and bucket cylinders. Lower the boom until the bucket comes in contact with the ground.
2. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
3. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
4. Close and lock all doors and covers.
5. Use wire ropes and support bar of sufficient length so that they do not come in contact with the machine while lifting.
   Wrap some protectors around wire ropes and/or support bar as required to prevent the machine from being damaged.
6. Set a crane in an appropriate position.
7. Thread the wire rope through and under both sides of the track frames as illustrated. Attach the wire ropes to the crane.



MDCD-06-005-1 ja

A: Center of Gravity
B: Support Bar

Correct Maintenance and Inspection Procedures

Learn how to service your machine correctly. Follow the correct maintenance and inspection procedures shown in this manual.

SA-005 ja

Inspect machine daily before starting.

- Check controls and instruments.
- Level, leakage and contamination of coolant, fuel, DEF and hydraulic oil
- Check for leaks, kinked, frayed or damaged hoses and lines.
- Walk around machine checking general appearance, noise, heat, etc.
- Check for loose or missing parts.

  If there is any problem with your machine, repair it before operating or contact Authorized Dealer.

IMPORTANT

- **Use only specified fuel, DEF, lubricants and coolant.**
- **Be sure to use fuel, lubricants, filter and parts, suitable to the machine with adequate quality. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death, machine breakdown or failure and/or loss of Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.**
- **Hitachi Construction Machinery genuine parts are specially designed and tested to provide adequate performance for the machine, hence we highly recommend to use the genuine parts.**
- **Never adjust engine governor or hydraulic system relief valve.**
- **Protect electrical parts from water and steam.**
- **Never disassemble electrical components such as main controller, sensors, etc.**
- **Never adjust parts of engine fuel system or hydraulic equipment.**
- **Using bad quality fuel, drainage agent, fuel additives, gasoline, kerosene or alcohol refueled or mixed with specified fuel may deteriorate performance of fuel filters and cause sliding problem at lubricated contacts in the injector. It also affects the engine and aftertreatment device parts, leading to malfunction.**
- **Using bad quality DEF may deteriorate performance of the engine and affect the aftertreatment device, leading to malfunction. Using improper density DEF may derate the engine power.**

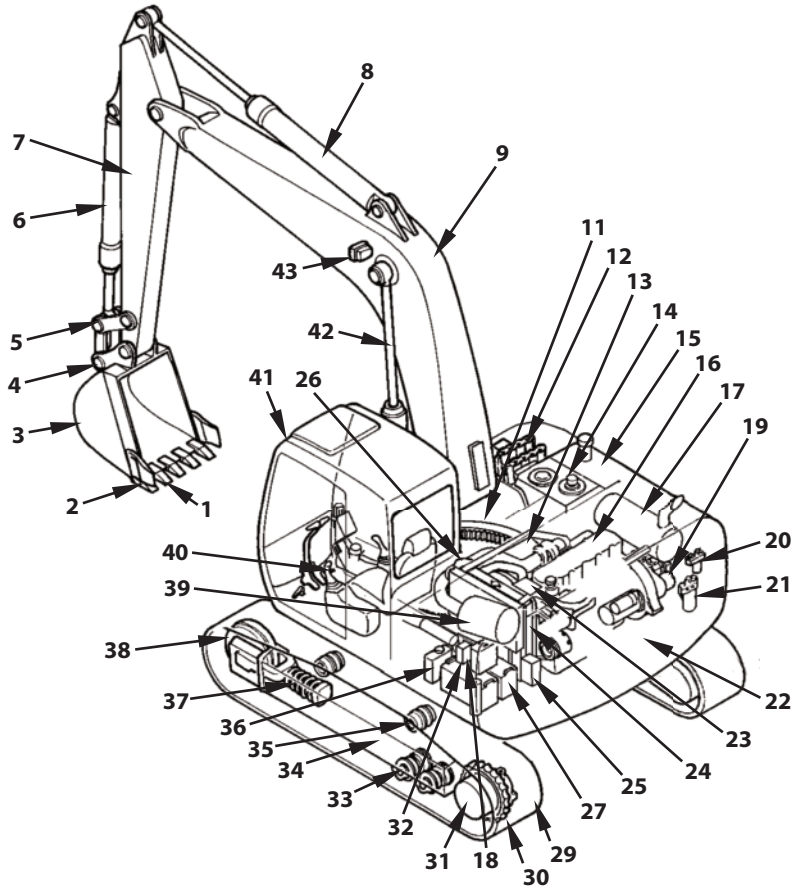
- Body Information Controller
  This machine provides a body information controller that stores machine operation information for preventive maintenance.
  When maintaining the machine, our authorized service man may down load the stored information.
  Consult with Authorized Dealer for detailed function of this device.
- Communication Terminal Operation
  It is not necessary to check or operate the communication terminal however if any abnormality is found, consult Authorized Dealer.
  Before installing any covering attachment such as a head guard, consult Authorized Dealer.
  Never spray water on the communication terminal and the wirings.
- Inquire to your local environmental or recycling center or Authorized Dealer, for the proper way to recycle or dispose of oil, fuel, coolant, filters, batteries, DEF and other waste.

WARNING

Pay attention to how the handrail is stored when getting in and out of the machine. Using a folded handrail during transport may lead to a fall from the machine resulting in serious bodily injury. (ZX245USLC-7H only)

Layout

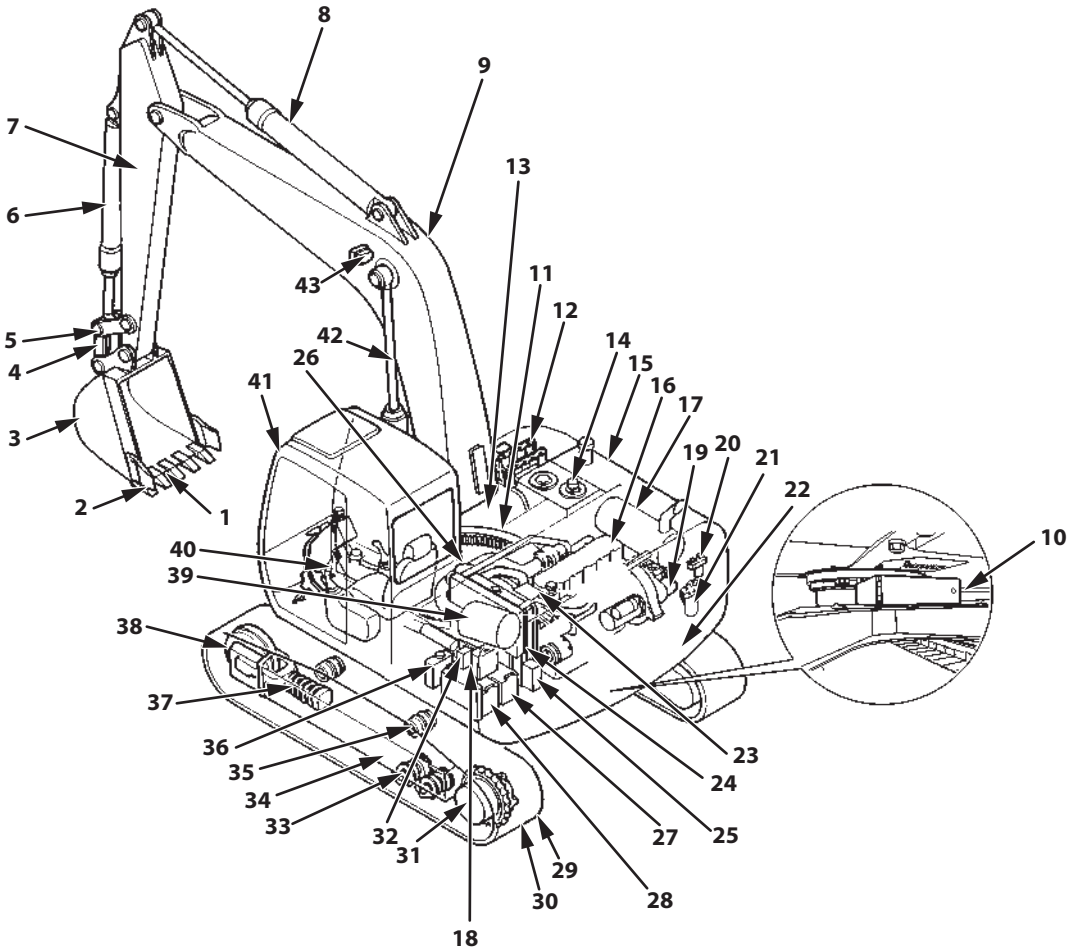
ZX135US-7H



MDHE-07-023-1 ja

1- Tooth
2- Side Cutter
3- Bucket
4- Link A
5- Link B
6- Bucket Cylinder
7- Arm
8- Arm Cylinder
9- Boom
11- Swing Bearing
12- Control Valve
13- Swing Device
14- Hydraulic Oil Tank
15- Fuel Tank
16- Engine
17- Aftertreatment Device
18- DEF Supply Module
19- Pump
20- Pilot Filter
21- Engine Oil Filter
22- Counterweight
23- Expansion Tank
24- Radiator, Oil Cooler, Inter-cooler
25- DEF Tank
26- Center Joint
27- Battery
29- Track Link
30- Shoe
31- Travel Device
32- Battery Disconnect Switch
33- Lower Roller
34- Track Frame
35- Upper Roller
36- Washer Tank
37- Track Adjuster
38- Front Idler
39- Air Cleaner
40- Control Lever
41- Cab
42- Boom Cylinder
43- Work Light

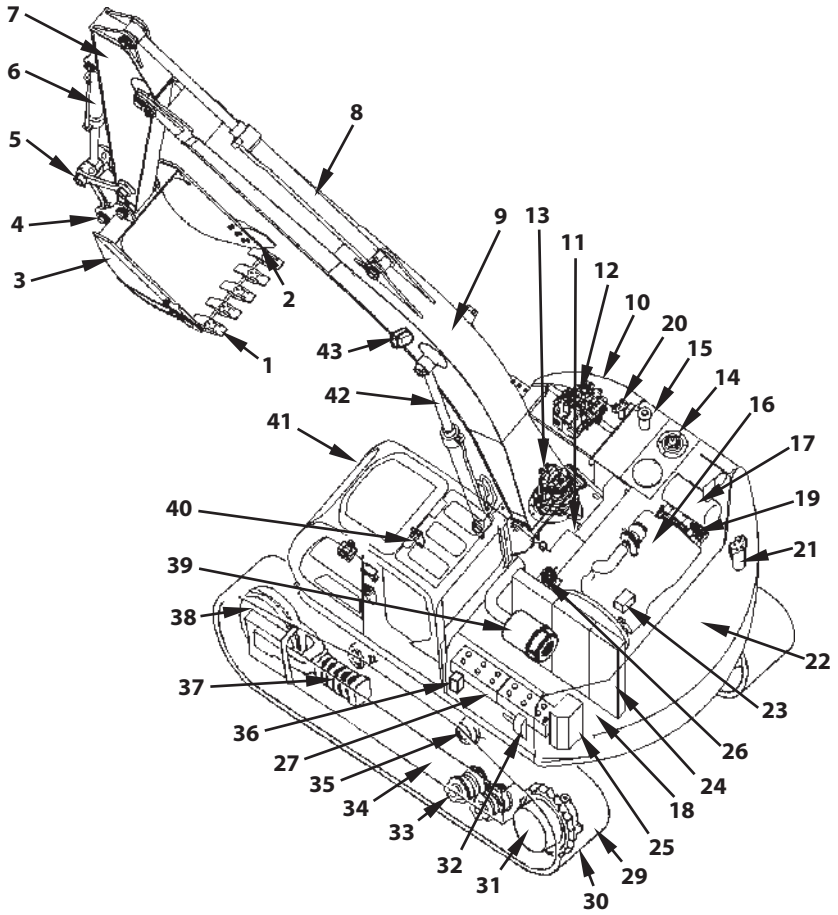
ZX245USLC-7H



MDAT-07-001-2 en_GB

1-	Tooth	12-	Control Valve	23-	Expansion Tank	33-	Lower Roller
2-	Side Cutter	13-	Swing Device	24-	Radiator, Oil Cooler, Inter-cooler	34-	Track Frame
3-	Bucket	14-	Hydraulic Oil Tank			35-	Upper Roller
4-	Link A	15-	Fuel Tank	25-	DEF Tank	36-	Washer Tank
5-	Link B	16-	Engine	26-	Center Joint	37-	Track Adjuster
6-	Bucket Cylinder	17-	Aftertreatment Device	27-	Battery	38-	Front Idler
7-	Arm	18-	DEF Supply Module	28-	Grease Gun Holder	39-	Air Cleaner
8-	Arm Cylinder	19-	Pump	29-	Track Link	40-	Control Lever
9-	Boom	20-	Pilot Filter	30-	Shoe	41-	Cab
10-	Tool Box	21-	Engine Oil Filter	31-	Travel Device	42-	Boom Cylinder
11-	Swing Bearing	22-	Counterweight	32-	Battery Disconnect Switch	43-	Work Light

ZX345USLC-7H



MDD5-01-001-1 ja

1- Tooth
2- Side Cutter
3- Bucket
4- Link A
5- Link B
6- Bucket Cylinder
7- Arm
8- Arm Cylinder
9- Boom
10- Tool Box
11- Swing Bearing
12- Control Valve
13- Swing Device
14- Hydraulic Oil Tank
15- Fuel Tank
16- Engine
17- Aftertreatment Device
18- DEF Supply Module
19- Pump
20- Pilot Filter
21- Engine Oil Filter
22- Counterweight
23- Expansion Tank
24- Radiator, Oil Cooler, Inter-cooler
25- DEF Tank
26- Center Joint
27- Battery
29- Track Link
30- Shoe
31- Travel Device
32- Battery Disconnect Switch
33- Lower Roller
34- Track Frame
35- Upper Roller
36- Washer Tank
37- Track Adjuster
38- Front Idler
39- Air Cleaner
40- Control Lever
41- Cab
42- Boom Cylinder
43- Work Light

Inspection and Maintenance Intervals

Refer to Maintenance Guide for information about lubricants, inspection and adjustment intervals. The maintenance guide table is affixed in the utility space. Refer to the next page.

This manual recommends grouping the intervals into three categories as follows:

Daily checks :To be conducted daily before operation
Monthly checks :To be conducted regularly, once per month
Annual checks :To be conducted regularly, once per year

Inspection and maintenance intervals shown in this manual are those for machines operated under normal conditions. If the machine is operated under more severe conditions, shorten the intervals.

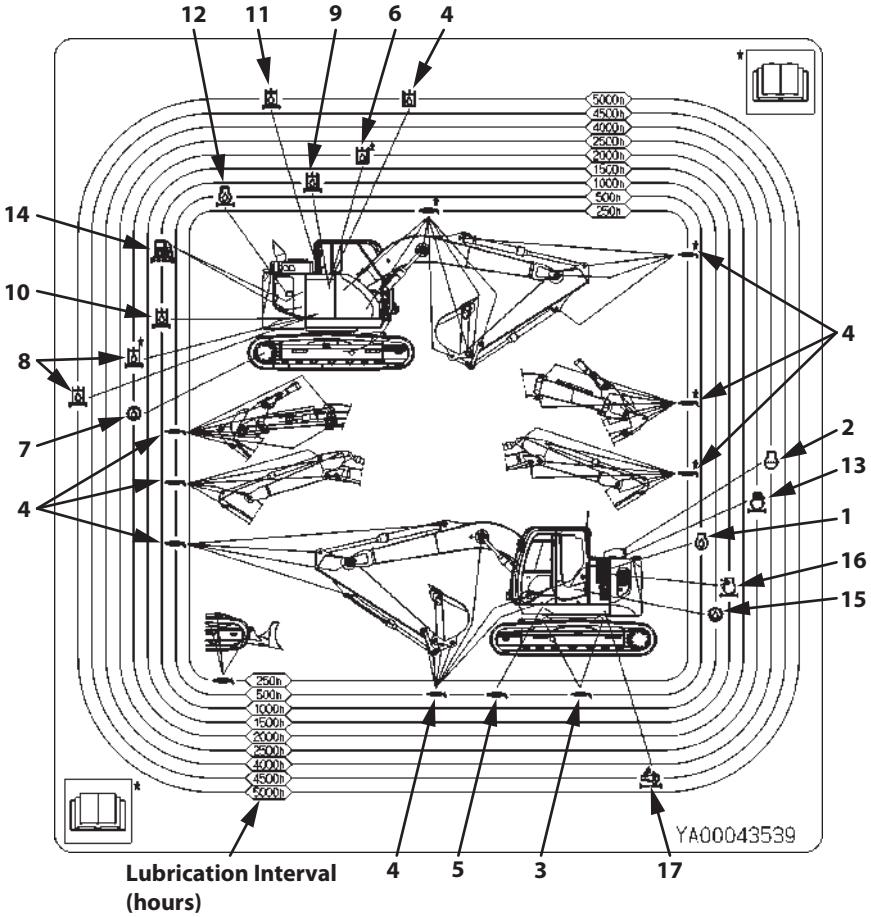
Maintenance Guide Table

The maintenance guide table is affixed in the utility space. Lubricate and/or service the parts at the intervals as instructed in the table so that all necessary maintenance can be performed regularly.

- Symbol Marks
  The following marks are used in the maintenance guide table.

	Grease (Front Joint Pin, Swing Bearing, Swing Internal Gear)		Hydraulic oil filter (Pilot Filter, Full-Flow Filter, Suction Filter)
	Gear Oil (Pump Transmission, Travel Reduction Gear, Swing Reduction Gear)		Air Cleaner Element
	Engine Oil		Coolant(Long-Life Coolant)
	Engine Oil Filter		Fuel Filter (Fuel Main Filter, Pre-Filter)
	Hydraulic Oil		DEF Filter(Supply Module Main Filter, Tank Water Supply Inlet Filter)
	Oil Separator Element (Only ZX135US-7H)		

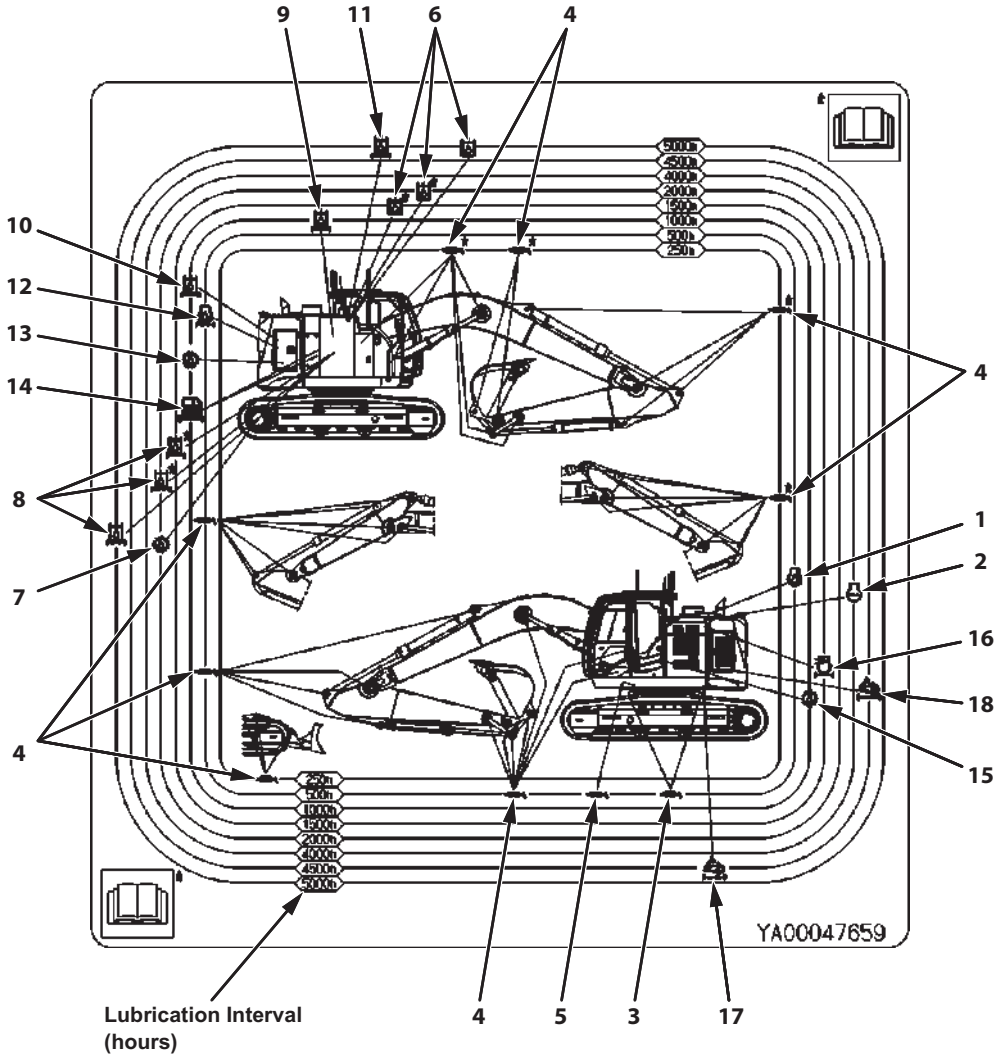
- Maintenance Guide Table
  ZX135US-7H



MDAT-07-002-1 ja

	Item	Page		Item	Page
1	Engine Oil	7-42	9	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Full-Flow)	7-67
2	Coolant (Long-Life Coolant)	7-105	10	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Pilot)	7-68
3	Grease	7-35	11	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Air Breather)	7-70
4	Grease (Every 500 hours. Only first time at 250 hours)	7-31	12	Engine Oil Filter	7-42
5	Grease	7-36	13	Oil Separator Element	7-48
6	Hydraulic Oil	7-61	14	Fuel Filter (Main/Pre)	7-86
7	Gear Oil (Travel Reduction Gear)	7-55	15	Gear Oil (Swing Reduction Gear)	7-51
8	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Suction)	7-66	16	Air Cleaner Element	7-93

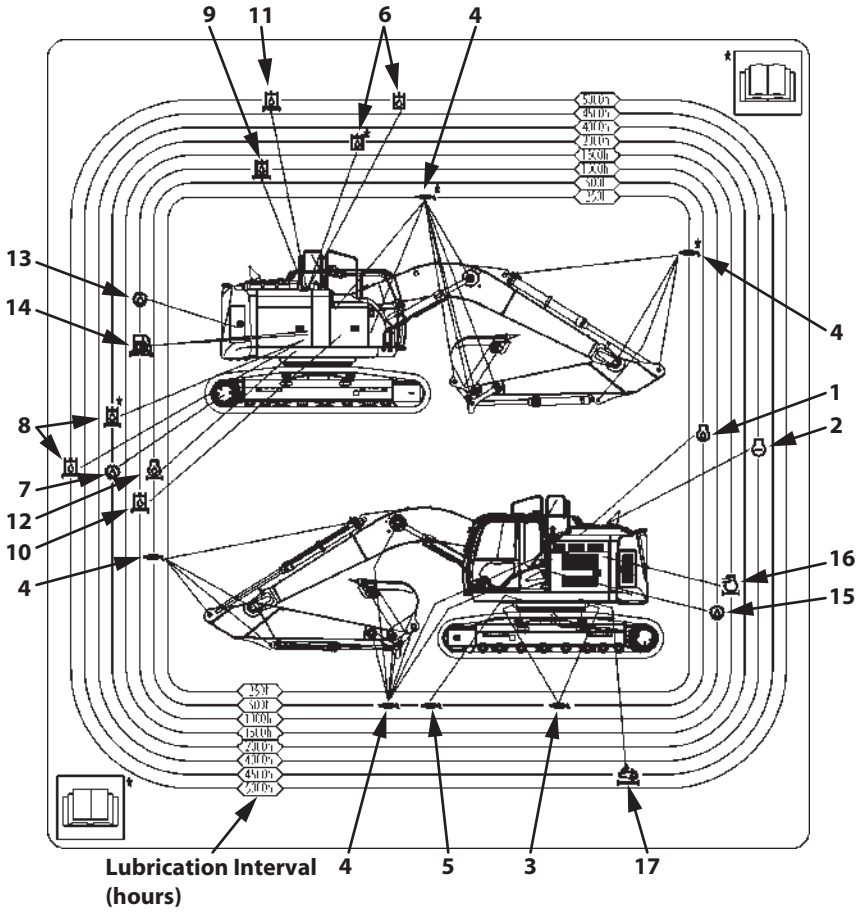
- ZX245USLC-7H



MDA4-07-122-1 en_GB

	Item	Page		Item	Page
1	Engine Oil	7-42	10	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Pilot)	7-68
2	Coolant (Long-Life Coolant)	7-105	11	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Air Breather)	7-70
3	Grease	7-35	12	Engine Oil Filter	7-42
4	Grease (Every 500 hours. Only first time at 250 hours)	7-31	13	Gear Oil (Pump Transmission)	7-49
5	Grease	7-36	14	Fuel Filter (Main/Pre)	7-86
6	Hydraulic Oil	7-61	15	Gear Oil (Swing Reduction Gear)	7-51
7	Gear Oil (Travel Reduction Gear)	7-55	16	Air Cleaner Element	7-93
8	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Suction)	7-66	17	DEF Supply Module Main Filter	7-204
9	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Full-Flow)	7-67	18	DEF Tank Water Supply Inlet Filter	7-207

- ZX345USLC-7H



MDD5-07-050-1 ja

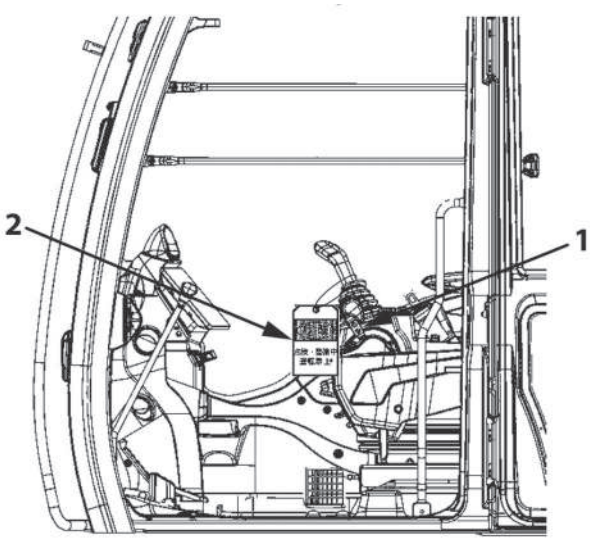
	Item	Page		Item	Page
1	Engine Oil	7-42	10	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Pilot)	7-68
2	Coolant (Long-Life Coolant)	7-105	11	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Air Breather)	7-70
3	Grease	7-35	12	Engine Oil Filter	7-42
4	Grease (Every 500 hours. Only first time at 250 hours)	7-31	13	Gear Oil (Pump Transmission)	7-49
5	Grease	7-36	14	Fuel Filter (Main/Pre)	7-86
6	Hydraulic Oil	7-61	15	Gear Oil (Swing Reduction Gear)	7-51
7	Gear Oil (Travel Reduction Gear)	7-55	16	Air Cleaner Element	7-93
8	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Suction)	7-66	17	DEF Supply Module Main Filter	7-204
9	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Full-Flow)	7-67			

Preparation for Inspection and Maintenance

Except in special cases, park the machine as indicated below before servicing the machine.

1. Park the machine on a firm, level surface.
2. Lower work equipment such as the bucket and blade (optional) to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch OFF.
4. Turn the engine control dial to the slow idle position and run the engine for 5 minutes to cool it.
5. Turn the key switch OFF to stop the engine. Remove the key. Put pilot shut-off lever (1) in the LOCK position.
6. Put a sign (2) saying "Being Serviced" in a conspicuous place, such as the door or a control lever, before starting work.

M104-07-021 ja



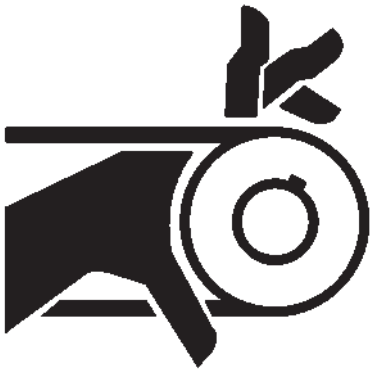
MDA4-07-004-1 ja

WARNING

To prevent accidents, never attempt to perform maintenance on the machine when the engine is running. If maintenance work with the engine running is unavoidable, strictly comply with the following items.

- **One person should take the operator's station and be ready to stop the engine at any time, while communicating with other workers.**
- **When working around moving parts is unavoidable, such as the fan or belts, pay special attention to ensure that hands, feet, and clothing do not become entangled.**
- **If parts or tools are dropped or inserted into the fan or the belt, they may fly off or be cut off. Do not drop or insert parts or tools into moving parts.**
- **Move pilot shut-off lever (1) to the LOCK position so the machine will not move.**
- **Never touch the control levers and pedals. If operating the control levers or pedals is unavoidable, signal co-workers to evacuate to a safe place.**

SA-2294 ja



SA-026 ja

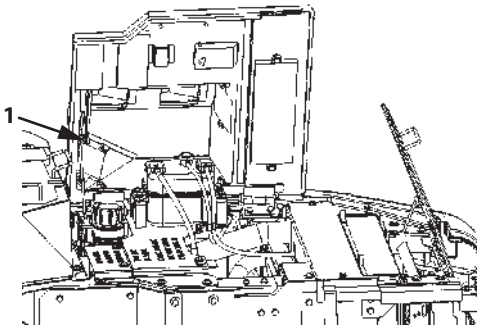
Hood and Access Covers

ZX135US-7H

WARNING

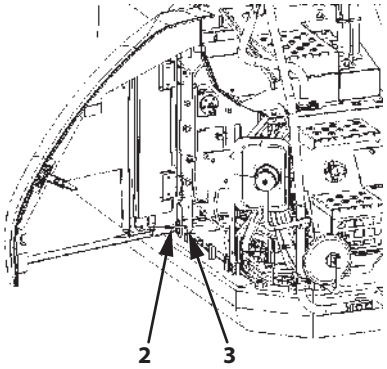
- **Do not keep the hood or access covers open when the machine is parked on a slope, or while the wind is blowing hard. The hood or access covers may close accidentally, possibly resulting in personal injury.**
- **When opening or closing the access covers, take extra care not to catch fingers between the body and the access covers.**

- Holding the handle on the engine cover, raise the cover until the cover is secured with catch (1).
- After opening the right and/or left access cover, be sure to insert rod (2) into cover lock hole (3) to hold the cover.



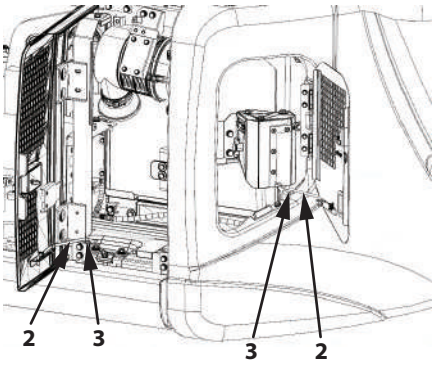
Engine Cover

MDAT-07-003-1 ja



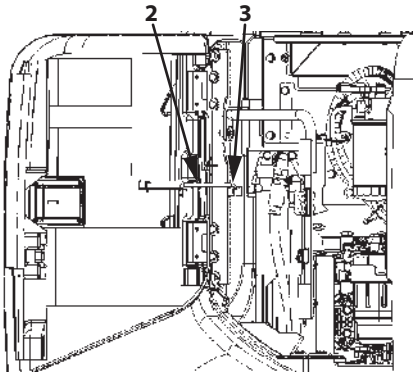
Front Right Cover

MDAT-07-006-1 ja



Rear Left Cover

MDHE-07-002-1 ja



Rear Right Cover

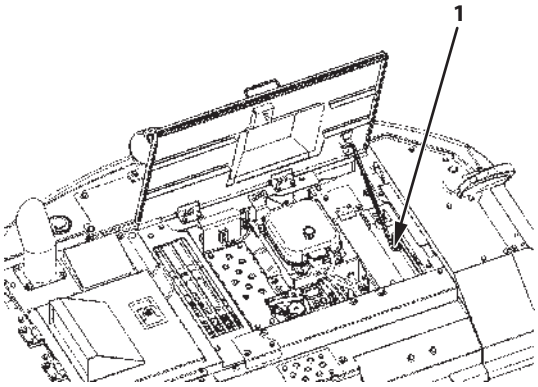
MDAT-07-004-1 ja

ZX245USLC-7H

WARNING

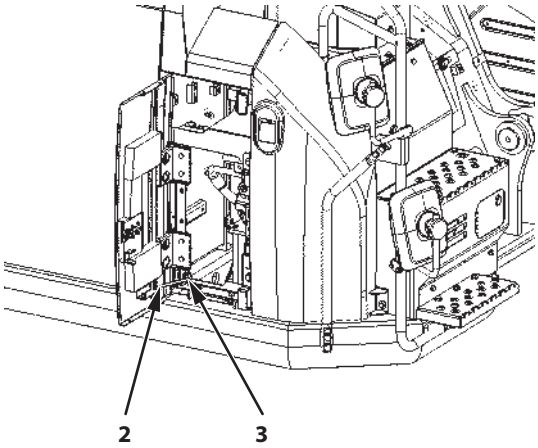
- **Do not keep the hood or access covers open when the machine is parked on a slope, or while the wind is blowing hard. The hood or access covers may close accidentally, possibly resulting in personal injury.**
- **When opening or closing the access covers, take extra care not to catch fingers between the body and the access covers.**

- Holding the handle on the engine cover, raise the cover until the cover is secured with catch (1).
- After opening the right and/or left access cover, be sure to insert rod (2) into cover lock hole (3) to hold the cover.
- After opening the right (rear) and/or left access cover, be sure to insert rod (2) into cover lock hole (3) to hold the cover.



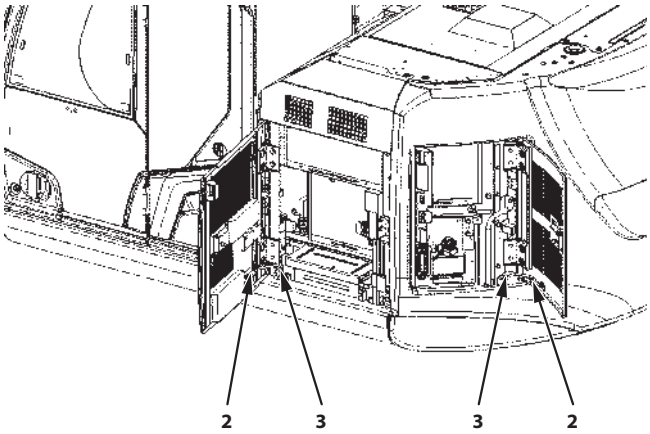
Engine Cover

MDA4-07-009-1 ja



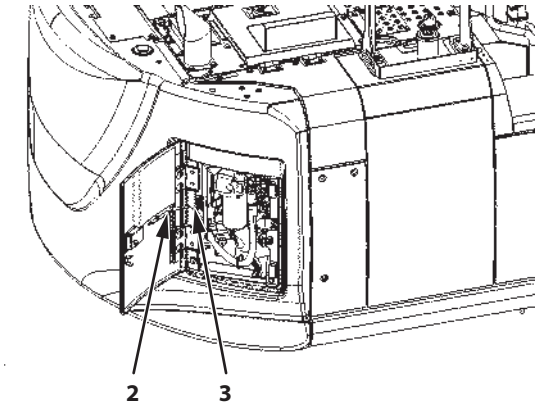
Front Right Cover

MDA4-07-010-1 ja



Rear Left Cover

MDA4-07-013-1 ja



Rear Right Cover

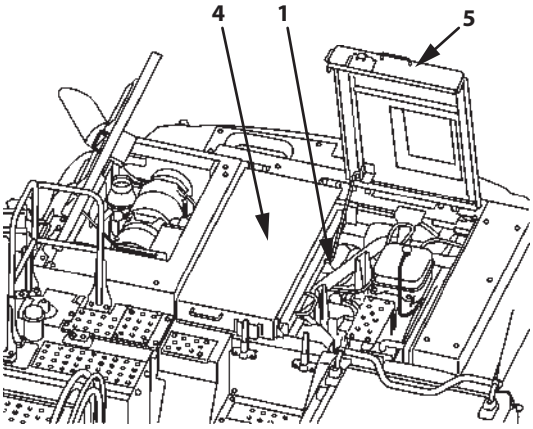
MDA4-07-011-1 ja

ZX345USLC-7H

WARNING

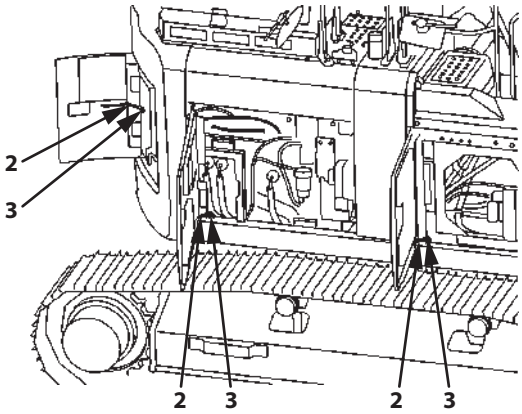
- **Do not keep the hood and access covers open when the machine is parked on a slope, or while the wind is blowing hard. The hood or access covers may close accidentally, possibly resulting in personal injury.**
- **When opening or closing the hood and access covers, take extra care not to catch fingers between the base machine and the hood or access covers.**

- Holding the handle on the access cover, raise the cover until the cover is secured with catch (1).
- When opening the engine cover, open the left engine cover (5). Then, pull to open the right engine cover (4) as illustrated.
- After opening the right and/or left access cover, be sure to insert rod (2) into cover lock hole (3) to hold the cover.



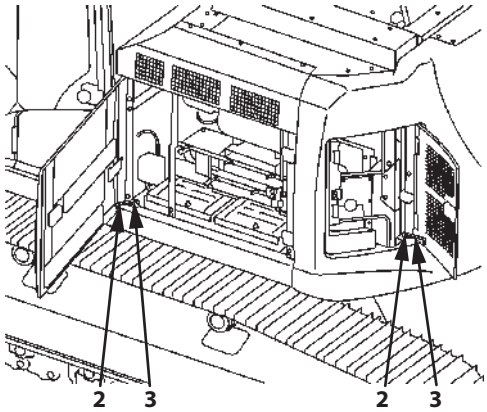
Engine Cover

MDD5-07-001-1 ja



Right Cover

MDD5-07-002-1 ja



Left Cover

MDD5-07-003-1 ja

Maintenance Guide

A. Greasing

Parts			Qty.	Interval (Hours)							Page
				8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	
1.	Front joint pins	Bucket and Link Pins	7	★			★★				7-31
		Front joint pins other than bucket & links	11	★			★★				7-31
2.	Swing bearing		2								7-35
3.	Swing Internal Gear		1					★★★			7-36

★ : Add grease daily during first 50 hours of operation.
If excavation is performed in water, grease the pin after operation is complete.
Shorten greasing intervals when the machine is operated under severe conditions or when the machine is continuously operated for a long period of time.

★★ : 250 hours the first time only.

★★★ : Check and add grease if necessary.

IMPORTANT

- **Grease bucket and link pivots every day until break-in operation (50 hours) is complete.**
- **When a bucket which does not have a clearance adjustment mechanism, such as slope-finishing bucket or V-type bucket is used, grease the two pins every 250 hours. The same applies when a genuine Hitachi Construction Machinery hoe bucket preceding the EX-5 model is used, and when an attachment that is not a genuine Hitachi Construction Machinery bucket and has a boss part that has not been treated with WC spray is used.**

B. Engine

Parts				Qty.	Interval (Hours)							Page
					8	50	100	250	500	1000	2500	
1.	Engine Oil	Check Oil Level		1	■							7-39
2.	Engine Oil	Re-place	ZX135US-7H	17 L (4.5 US gal)					■			7-42
			ZX245USLC-7H	23 L (6.1 US gal)					■			
			ZX345USLC-7H	48 L (12.7 US gal)					■			
3.	Engine Oil Filter	Replace		1					■			7-42
4.	Check and Clean around the Engine			–	As required							7-46
5.	Check the Blowby Hose			–	As required							7-47
6.	Replace Oil Separator Element (ZX135US-7H)			1							■	7-48

C. Transmission

Parts				Qty.	Interval (Hours)							Page
					8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	
1.	Pump Transmission	Check Oil Level		1				■				7-49
		Replace	ZX245USLC-7H	1.9 L (0.5 US gal)						■		7-49
			ZX345USLC-7H	1.7 L (0.5 US gal)						■		
		Clean Air Breather		1						■		7-49
2.	Swing Device	Check Oil Level		1					■			7-51
		Replace	ZX135US-7H	3.2 L (0.8 US gal)						■		7-51
			ZX245USLC-7H	6.9 L (1.8 US gal)						■		
			ZX345USLC-7H	11.7 L (3.1 US gal)						■		
3.	Travel Device	Check Oil Level		2					■			7-55
		Replace	ZX135US-7H	4.2 L×2 (1.1 US gal×2)							■	7-55
			ZX245USLC-7H	6.8 L×2 (1.8 US gal×2)							■	
			ZX345USLC-7H	11 L×2 (2.9 US gal×2)							■	

D. Hydraulic System

Parts			Qty.	Interval (Hours)										Page
				8	50	100	250	500	1000	1500	2000	2500	5000	
1.	Check Hydraulic Oil Level		1	■										7-59
2.	Change Hydraulic Oil **Hydraulic oil capacity [amount at oil change]	ZX135US-7H	155 L (41.0 US gal) [60 L (15.9 US gal)]										■	7-61
		ZX245USLC-7H	240 L (63.4 US gal) [130 L (34.3 US gal)]										★	
		ZX345USLC-7H	251 L (66.3 US gal) [160 L (42.3 US gal)]											
3.	Suction Filter Cleaning		1	Each time when hydraulic oil is changed										7-66
4.	Replace full-flow filter	Std. Model	1						■					7-67
5.	Replace Pilot Oil Filter		1						■					7-68
6.	Replace Air Breather Element		1										■	7-70
7.	Check Hoses and Lines	for leaks, loose		■										7-71
		for cracks, bend, etc.	–				■							

★ : Changing interval differs according to the brand of hydraulic oil used, kind of filter element or average attachment operating availability.
Refer to the "changing intervals of hydraulic oil and full flow filter element". See recommended oil chart.

** : Hydraulic oil capacity indicates the entire amount of oil, including oil in the hydraulic oil tank, devices and lines.
Amount at oil change means the amount of oil that is changed during inspection and maintenance.

E. Fuel System

Parts		Qty.	Interval (Hours)							Page
			8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	
1.	Drain Fuel Tank Sump	1	■							7-80
2.	Drain Fuel Pre-Filter	1	■							7-81
3.	Replace Main Fuel Filter Element	1						■		7-86
4.	Replace Fuel Pre-Filter Element	1						■		7-89
5.	Check Fuel Hoses for leaks, cracks	–	■							7-92
	Check Fuel Hoses for cracks, bend, etc.	–				■				7-92

F. Air Cleaner

Parts			Qty.	Interval (Hours)							Page
				8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	
1.	Air Cleaner Element (outer)	Clean	1	(or when indicator lit)			■				7-93
		Replace	1	After cleaning 6 times or 1 year							7-93
2.	Air Cleaner Element (inner)	Replace	1	When outer element is replaced							7-98

G. Cooling System

	Parts			Qty.	Interval (Hours)							Page
					8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	
1.	Coolant Level			1								7-100
2.	Check V-belt Tension			1		★★						7-103
3.	Replace Coolant	ZX135US-7H		21 L (5.5 US gal)	Twice a year*							7-105
		ZX245USLC-7H		28 L (7.4 US gal)								
		ZX345USLC-7H		41 L (10.8 US gal)								
4.	Clean Radiator, Oil Cooler and Intercooler Core		Out-side	1					★			7-107
			Inside	1	Once a year							7-107
5.	Clean Oil Cooler, Radiator and Inter-cooler Front Screen			1					★			7-110
6.	Clean Air Conditioner Condenser			1					★			7-111
7.	Clean Fuel Cooler			1					★			7-111
8.	Drain Intercooler			1	★★★							7-111

★ : Shorten the maintenance interval when the machine is operated in dusty sites.

★★ : 1st time only.

★★★ : If there is a risk of freezing, remove condensate after operating the machine. (only ZX135US-7H)

* : When genuine Hitachi Construction Machinery Long-Life Coolant (LLC) is used, change every 2 years or 4000 hours, whichever comes first.

IMPORTANT

- **Use the Hitachi Construction Machinery genuine Long-Life Coolant or organic Coolant for the coolant used in the machine.**
- **It is highly recommended to use Hitachi Construction Machinery genuine Long-Life Coolant as it is specially designed and tested to provide adequate performance for the machine.**
- **Condensate may accumulate inside the intercooler under some conditions of use. (only ZX135US-7H)**
- **Freezing of condensate may cause damage to the intercooler. (only ZX135US-7H)**

H. Electrical System

Parts			Qty.	Interval (Hours)							Page
				8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	
1.	Battery	Check Electrolyte Level	2	Monthly							7-116
		Check electrolyte specific gravity	2	Monthly							7-118
2.	Replace Fuses	Replace	–	As required							7-120

I. Miscellaneous

	Parts			Qty.	Interval (Hours)								Page
					8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	4500	
1.	Change Bucket			–	As required								7-125
2.	Convert Bucket Connection Into Face Shovel			–	As required								7-127
3.	Adjust Bucket Linkage			1	As required								7-129
4.	Remove Travel Levers			2	As required								7-130
5.	Check and Replace Seat Belt			1		Every 3 years							7-131
6.	Clean Cell Phone (Smartphone) Holder			–	As required								7-132
7.	Clean Drink Holder			–	As required								7-133
8.	Clean Storage Pocket			–	As required								7-134
9.	Perform Wiper Maintenance			1	As required								7-135
10.	Clean Rain Visor			–	As required								7-138
11.	Grease Cab Door Hinge			–	As required								7-138
12.	Grease Console Height Adjustment Pin			–	As required								7-139
13.	Check Windshield Washer Fluid Level			1	As required								7-140
14.	Check Track Sag			2									7-141
15.	Clean and Replace Air Conditioner Filter	Circulating Air Filter	Clean	1									7-146
			Replace	1	After cleaning 6 times or so								7-146
		Fresh Air Filter	Clean	1									7-146
			Replace	1	After cleaning 6 times or so								7-146
16.	Check Air Conditioner			–									7-150
17.	Clean Cab Floor			–	As required								7-153
18.	Retighten Engine Cylinder Head Bolt			–	*As required								7-155
19.	Inspect and Adjust Valve Clearance			–						*			7-155
20.	Measure Engine Compression Pressure			–						*			7-155
21.	Check Starter and Alternator			–						*			7-155
22.	Check and Clean EGR Valve			–								*	7-155
23.	EGR Cooler Cleaning			–								*	7-155
24.	Check Turbo Charger			–								*	7-155
25.	Check and Clean Injector			–								*	7-156
26.	Check Gas Damper			–	*As required								7-156
27.	Tightening and Retightening Torque of Nuts and Bolts			–		★★							7-157

★★ : Maintenance required only during first time check.

NOTE

** Contact Authorized Dealer for maintenance. Instruction plate for the recommended grease and lubricants is affixed inside the tool box cover.*

J. Aftertreatment Device

Parts		Qty.	Interval (Hours)								Page
			8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	4500	
1.	Check and Clean Aftertreatment Device	–	As required								7-193

NOTE

**Contact Authorized Dealer for checks and maintenance.*

K. Urea SCR System

Parts		Qty.	Interval (Hours)									Page
			8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	4500	8000	
1.	Check DEF	–										7-195
2.	Replace DEF Supply Module Main Filter	1										7-204
3.	Replace DEF Tank Water Supply Inlet Filter	1	*If DEF overflows when adding water							*		7-207

NOTE

For items with an asterisk (*), contact Authorized Dealer for checks and maintenance.

L. Aerial Angle

Parts		Qty.	Interval (Hours)								Page
			8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	4500	
1.	Daily check of camera images used to compose the aerial angle	–									7-208
2.	Check Camera Images Used to Compose the Aerial Angle	–	When performing a task affected by the installation position of the cameras.								7-209

Periodic Replacement of Parts

To ensure safe operation and long life, be sure to conduct periodic inspection and maintenance of the machine.

The parts listed below may pose serious safety/fire hazards due to deterioration, wear and fatigue due to aging of the materials or repeated operation.

It is very difficult to gauge the extent of deterioration, fatigue, or weakening of the parts listed below by visual inspection alone, therefore, replace these parts at the intervals shown in the table below.

Contact your authorized dealer for replacing the parts.

It is highly recommended to use Hitachi Construction Machinery geniune parts as these are specially designed and tested to provide adequate performance for the machine.

Names of Parts that Require Periodic Replacement			Replacement Intervals
Engine		Fuel hose (fuel tank to filter to engine)	Every 2 years
		Fuel hose (engine to fuel cooler to tank)	Every 2 years
		DEF hoses	Every 2 years
		Oil filter hose (Engine to oil filter)	Every 2 years
		Heater hose (Heater to engine)	Every 2 years
Hydraulic System	Base Machine	Pump suction hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Pump delivery hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Swing hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Travel high pressure hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Tail hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Attachment line hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Return hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
	Working Device	Boom cylinder line hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Arm cylinder line hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Bucket cylinder line hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
Seat Belt			Every 3 years

NOTE

Be sure to replace seals, such as O-rings and gaskets, when replacing hoses.

Kind of Oils

Recommended Grease

Kind of Grease		Lithium Grease
Application		Front Attachment Joint Pins, Swing Bearing, Swing Internal Gear
Air Temp.		-20 to 40 °C (-4 to 104 °F)
Recommended Products		Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Grease NLGI EP-2
Alternative Products	Specification	NLGI 2 EP

IMPORTANT

- **Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Greases are specially designed and tested to provide adequate performance for the machine, hence we highly recommend to use the greases.**
- **If you do not use Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Greases, use grease conforming to EP-2. Otherwise, the machine may suffer damage.**
- **Do not use greases which do not meet the above specification or requirements. Use of unsuitable grease may lead to failure which is not covered by Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.**
- **For details, contact Authorized Dealer.**

Recommended Engine Oil

Kind of Oil		Engine Oil
Application		Engine Crank Case
Air Temp.		-20 to 40 ˚C (-4 to 104 ˚F)
Recommended Products		Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Engine Oil 10W-40 DH-2
Alternative Products	Viscosity	10W-40
	Specification	JASO DH-2

IMPORTANT

- **Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Engine Oils are specially designed and tested to provide optimum performance for Hitachi Construction Machinery construction machinery, hence we highly recommend to use Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Engine Oils.**
- **If you do not use Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Engine Oil, use engine oil conforming to JASO DH-2. Otherwise, engine and aftertreatment device may suffer damage or performance of engine and aftertreatment device may deteriorate.**
- **Do not use oils which do not meet the above specification or requirements. Use of unsuitable oil may lead to engine damage or failure which is not covered by Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.**
- **For details, contact Authorized Dealer.**

Recommended Transmission Oil

Application		Swing and Travel Reduction Gear	Pump Transmission
Kind of Oil		Gear Oil	Engine Oil
Air Temp.		–20 to 40 °C (–4 to 104 °F)	–20 to 40 °C (–4 to 104 °F)
Recommended Products		Hitachi Construction Machinery Gear Oil GL-4 90	Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Engine Oil DH-2 10W-40 Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Engine Oil DH-1 15W-40
Alternative Products	Specification	API GL-4	API CD, JASO DH-1, JASO DH-2

IMPORTANT

- **Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Gear Oil and Hitachi Genuine Engine Oil are specially designed and tested to provide optimum performance for the machine, hence we highly recommend to use the genuine Gear Oil and Engine Oil.**
- **If you do not use genuine Gear Oil or genuine Engine Oil, use gear oil or engine oil conforming to specifications described above. Use of unsuitable oil may lead to transimission damage or failure which is not covered by Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.**
- **For details, contact Authorized Dealer.**

Brand Names of Recommended Hydraulic Oil

Kind of Lubricant		Hydraulic Oil	
Where to be applied		Hydraulic System	
Environmental Temp.		–20 to 40 °C (–4 to 104 °F)	
Recommended Products		Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Hydraulic Oil Super 46HN	
Alternative Products	Specification		Product Conforming to JCMAS HK VG46W
Change Interval		5000 hours	

NOTE

A different interval of oil change may be required for Alternative Products.
For details, contact Authorized Dealer.

IMPORTANT

- **Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Hydraulic Oils are specially designed and tested to provide optimum performance for the machine, hence we highly recommend to use the genuine Hydraulic Oils.**
- **If you do not use genuine Hydraulic Oil, use Hydraulic oil confirming to JCMAS HK VG46W.**
- **Use of unsuitable oil may lead to machine damage or failure which is not covered by Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy. For the information of JCMAS HK VG46W, refer to JALOS website.**
- **For details, contact Authorized Dealer.**

Recommended Oil Viscosity

Where to be Applied	Kind of Oil	Air Temperature (degrees Celsius)									
		-30	-20	-10	0	10	20	30	45		
Engine Oil Pan	Engine Oil										Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Engine Oil DH-2 10W-40
Pump Transmission	Engine Oil										Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Engine Oil DH-2 10W-40
											Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Engine Oil DH-1 15W-40
Swing Reduction Gear Travel Reduction Gear	Gear Oil										Hitachi Construction Machinery Gear Oil GL-4 90
Hydraulic System (Hydraulic Oil Tank)	Hydraulic Oil										Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Hydraulic Oil Super 46HN
Fuel Tank	Diesel Fuel										EN590 Class A
											EN590 Class B
											EN590 Class C
											EN590 Class D
											EN590 Class E
											EN590 Class F
Grease fitting	Lithium Grease										Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Grease NLGI EP-2
Radiator	Coolant										Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Long Life Coolant

List of Consumable Parts

ZX135US-7H

Filter Elements

	Part No.	Quantity
High Performance Full-Flow Filter	4450002	1
Hydraulic Air Breather Element	4437838	1
Pilot Oil Filter (with O-ring)	4630525	1
Engine Oil Filter	4658521	1
Fuel Main Filter Element	YA00033486	1
Fuel Pre-Filter Element	YA00005785	1
Fuel Filter Element (Automatic Refueling Device)	YA00029016	1
Air Cleaner Element (outer)	4486002	1
Air Cleaner Element (inner)	4486014	1
Air Conditioner Circulating Air Filter	YA00054032	1
Air Conditioner Fresh Air Filter	YA00022308	1
DEF Supply Module Main Filter	YA00047054	1
Oil Separator Element	YA00045915	1
DEF Tank Water Supply Inlet Filter	YA00075878	1

Drive Belts

	Part No.	Quantity
Engine Fan Belt	4668374	1
Air Conditioner Compressor Belt	4686087	1

Others

	Part No.	Quantity
Wiper Blade	YA00065534	1
Screen Fastener (For Roll Screen)	XB00017920	2

ZX245USLC-7H

Filter Elements

	Part No.	Quantity
High Performance Full-Flow Filter	YA00033064	1
Hydraulic Air Breather Element	4437838	1
Pilot Oil Filter (with O-ring)	4630525	1
Engine Oil Filter	4658521	1
Fuel Main Filter Element	YA00033486	1
Fuel Pre-Filter Element	YA00005785	1
Fuel Filter Element (Automatic Refueling Device)	YA00029016	1
Air Cleaner Element (outer)	4286128	1
Air Cleaner Element (inner)	4286130	1
Air Conditioner Circulating Air Filter	YA00074889	1
Air Conditioner Fresh Air Filter	YA00022308	1
DEF Supply Module Main Filter	YA00047054	1
DEF Tank Water Supply Inlet Filter	YA00075878	1

Drive Belts

	Part No.	Quantity
Engine Fan Belt	4642643	1
Air Conditioner Compressor Belt	4467553	1

Others

	Part No.	Quantity
Wiper Blade	YA00065534	1
Screen Fastener (For Roll Screen)	XB00017920	2

ZX345USLC-7H

Filter Elements

	Part No.	Quantity
Full-Flow Filter (with O-ring)	YA00033065	1
High Performance Full-Flow Filter	YA00033064	1
Hydraulic Air Breather Element	4437838	1
Pilot Oil Filter (with O-ring)	4630525	1
Engine Oil Filter	4658521	1
Fuel Main Filter Element	YA00033486	1
Fuel Pre-Filter Element	YA00005785	1
Air Cleaner Element (outer)	4459549	1
Air Cleaner Element (inner)	4459548	1
Air Conditioner Circulating Air Filter	YA00074889	1
Air Conditioner Fresh Air Filter	YA00022308	1
DEF Supply Module Main Filter	YA00047054	1
DEF Tank Water Supply Inlet Filter	YA00075878	1

Drive Belts

	Part No.	Quantity
Engine Fan Belt	4603925	1
Air Conditioner Compressor Belt	4612331	1

Others

	Part No.	Quantity
Wiper Blade	YA00065534	1
Screen Fastener (For Roll Screen)	XB00017920	2

A. Greasing

1 Front Joint Pins

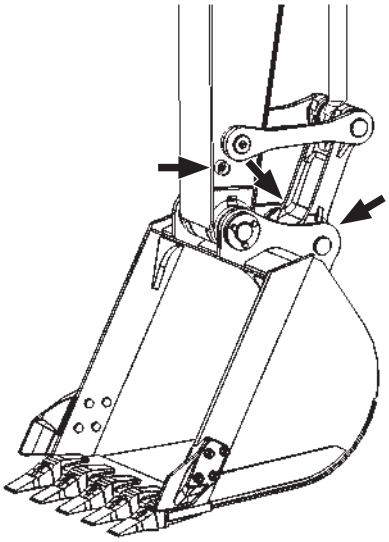
1. Park the machine according to the instructions in “Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance” ("Preparation for Inspection and Maintenance" (Refer to the page 7-10)).
2. Lubricate all grease fittings shown in the figure.

--- every 500 hours (first time only, after 250 hours)

- Bucket

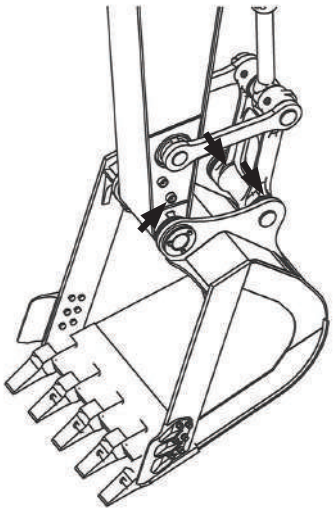
IMPORTANT

The lubrication interval varies with the type of bucket. For details, see (7-14).



ZX135US-7H

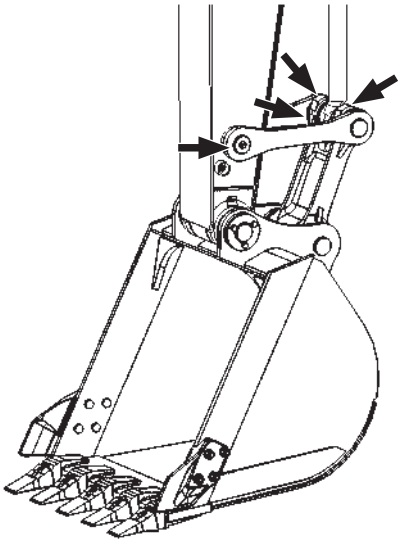
MDA4-07-015-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H

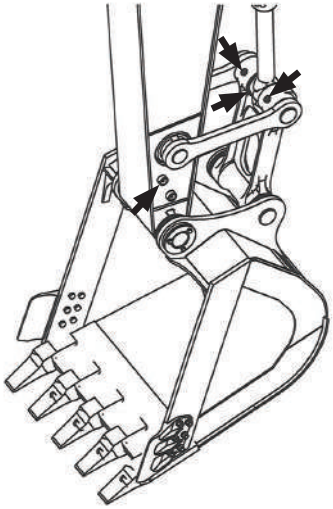
MDFY-07-061-2 ja

- Link Pin



ZX135US-7H

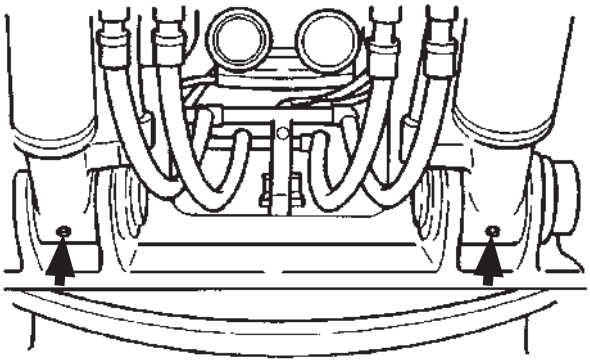
MDA4-07-016-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H

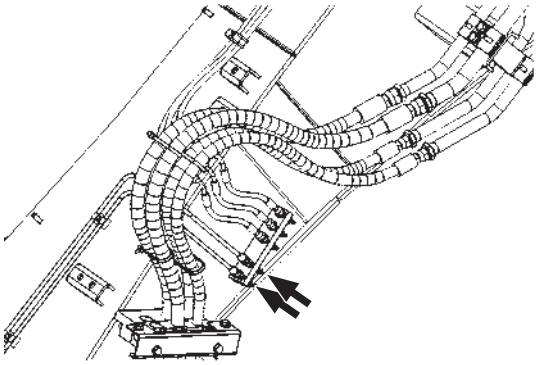
MDFY-07-061-5 ja

- Boom cylinder, bottom side



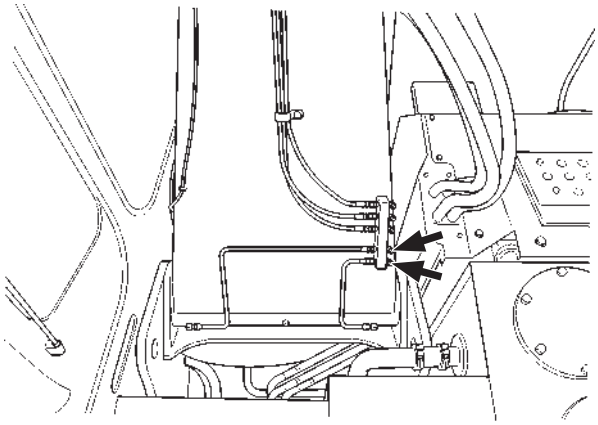
M157-07-156-2 ja

- Boom foot



ZX135US-7H

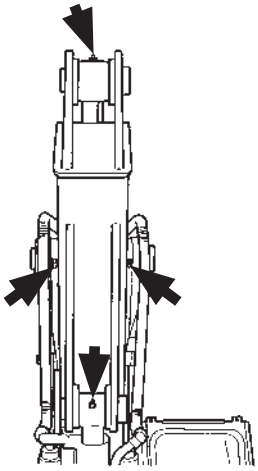
MDA4-07-111-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H

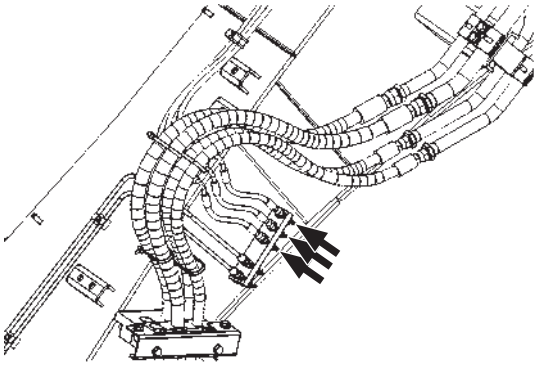
M178-07-082-1 ja

- Boom and arm joint pin, arm cylinder rod pin and bucket cylinder bottom pin



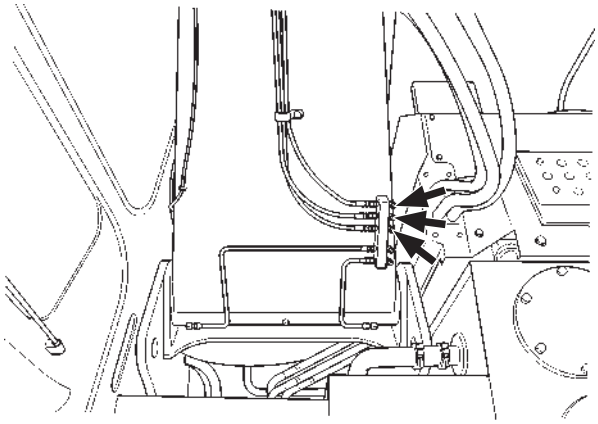
M157-07-157-1 ja

- Boom cylinder rod pins and arm cylinder bottom pin



ZX135US-7H

MDA4-07-112-2 ja



ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H

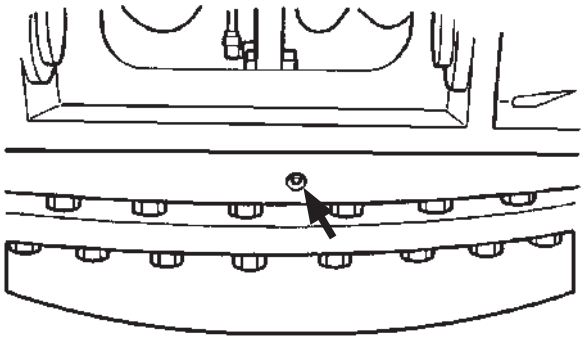
M178-07-082-2 ja

2 Swing Bearing

--- every 500 hours

CAUTION

Lubricating both the swing bearing and gear, and rotating the upperstructure must be done by one person. Before you lubricate the swing bearing, clear the area of all persons.

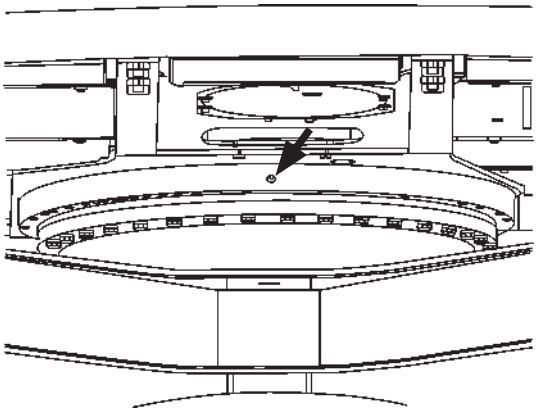


M157-07-159-2 ja

Each time you leave the cab

- Lower the bucket to the ground.
- Stop the engine.
- Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
- Use handrails.

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.



MDCR-07-015-2 ja

IMPORTANT

The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
5. Turn the key switch OFF. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
7. With the upperstructure stationary, apply grease via the 2 grease fittings.
8. Start the engine. Raise the bucket several inches off the ground and rotate the upperstructure 45 ° (1/8 turn).
9. Lower the bucket to the ground.
10. Repeat the procedure 3 times, beginning with step 3.
11. Apply grease to the swing bearing until grease can be seen escaping from the swing bearing seals.

Model	Capacity
ZX135US-7H	0.25 L (0.26 US qt)
ZX245USLC-7H	0.30 L (0.32 US qt)
ZX345USLC-7H	0.40 L (0.42 US qt)

12. Take care not to supply excessive grease.

3 Swing Gear

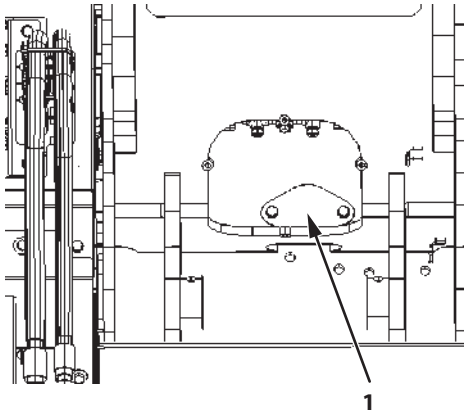
--- every 500 hours

CAUTION

Before lubricating the machine, lower the bucket on the ground, stop the engine and pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.

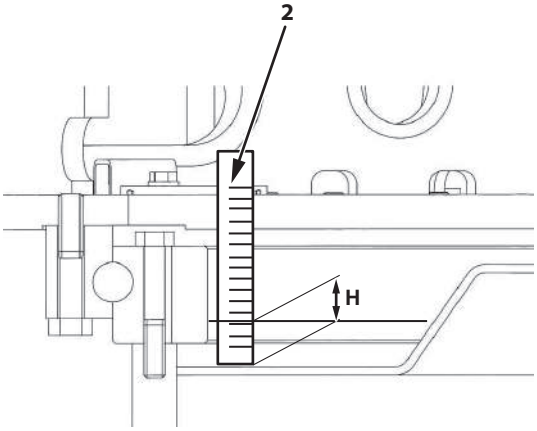
1. Remove cover (1) from upperstructure. Check if the swing internal gear is properly lubricated by grease.
2. Please insert the scale (2) and check that the height (H) of the grease amount of the swing internal gear is higher than the reference value.
   Depending on the model, the height may be different depending on the inserted position.
   Please change the inserting position when the height is greatly different.

Model	Grease Height (H)
ZX135US-7H	16 mm (0.6 in)
ZX245USLC-7H	5 mm (0.2 in)
ZX345USLC-7H	10 mm (0.4 in)



ZX135US-7H

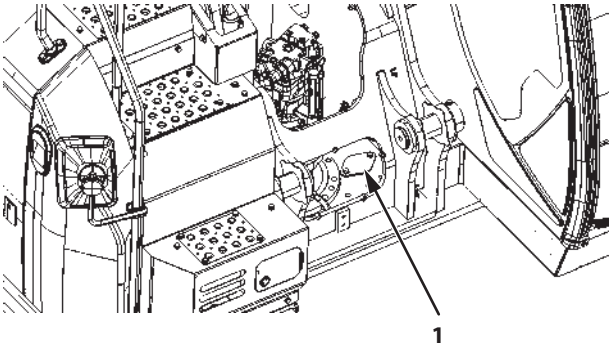
MDCN-07-012-1 ja



ZX135US-7H

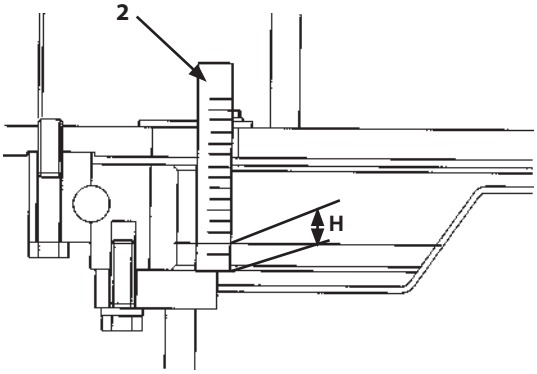
MDAT-07-079-1 ja

3. If it is insufficient, replenish the grease, pay attention to the O-ring of the cover (1), install it downward, and then start the engine. Please check the height (H) of grease amount again after swinging a few times.



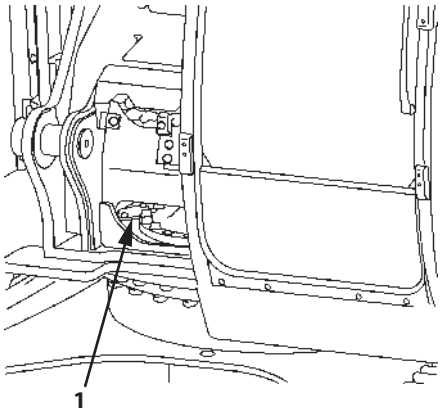
ZX245USLC-7H

MDCN-07-013-1 ja



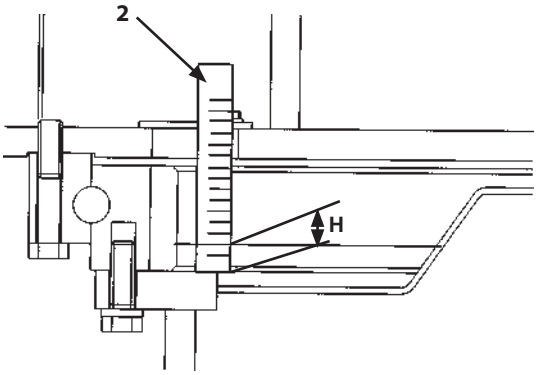
ZX245USLC-7H

MDC1-07-102-3 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-005-1 ja

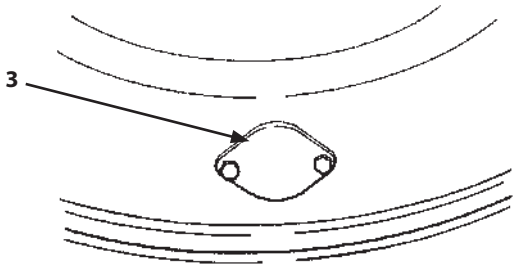


ZX345USLC-7H

MDC1-07-102-3 ja

If the grease is contaminated, remove grease by opening cover (3) at the undercarriage side and change with clean grease.

Model	Grease Capacity
ZX135US-7H	9 L (2.4 US gal)
ZX245USLC-7H	17 L (4.5 US gal)
ZX345USLC-7H	19 L (5.0 US gal)



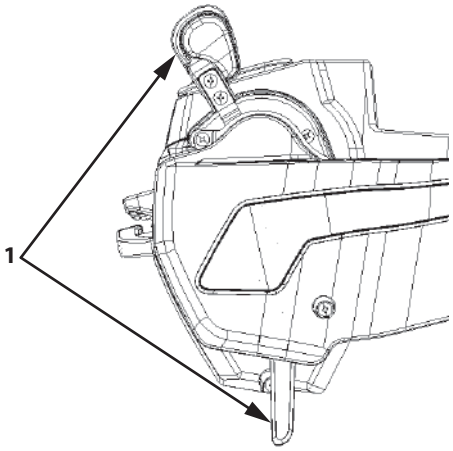
M157-07-161-3 ja

B. Engine

1 Check Engine Oil Level

--- daily (before starting the engine)

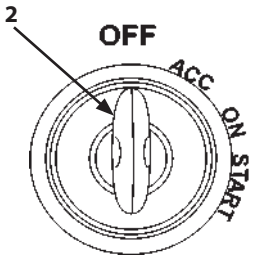
1. Confirm that pilot shut-off lever (1) is in the LOCK position.
2. Confirm that all control levers are placed in neutral.



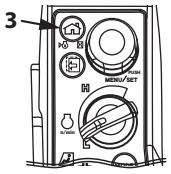
LOCK position

MDFY-01-088-2 ja

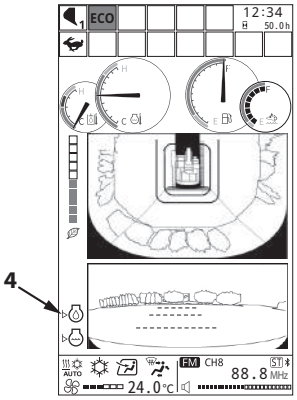
3. Insert key (2) into the key switch and turn it to the ON position. Press and hold home switch (3) with the engine stopped.
   The engine oil level indicator (4) must be displayed in green.



MDCD-01-030-3 ja



MDFY-01-094-8 ja



MDFY-MT-130-1 ja

IMPORTANT

Do not rely only on the monitor display for checking the machine conditions.
Visually check them yourself as required.
Always check the machine on a firm, level surface.
Do not start the engine during the check.

NOTE

If the security function is enabled, a password is required (refer to Security Functions (Optional) in chapter 1 "OPERATOR'S STATION").

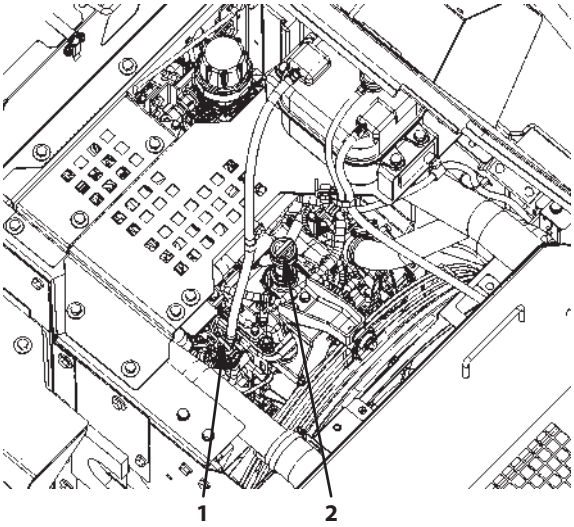
---Visual Inspection

IMPORTANT

Incorrect engine oil level may cause trouble in the engine (The oil level should be between the upper and lower marks on the oil level gauge). Even if the engine oil level is above the upper limit, get it back to the proper level before starting the engine.

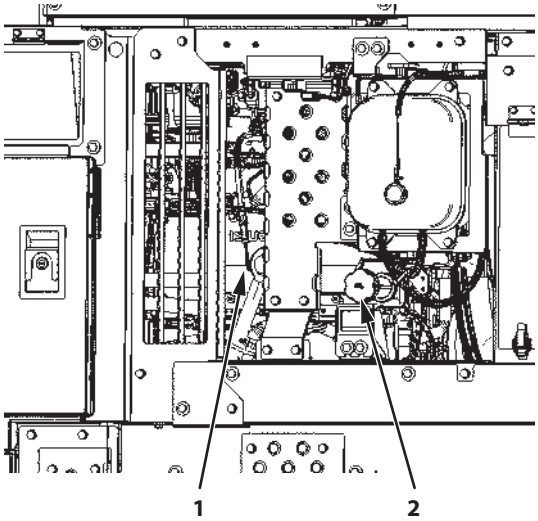
Always check the oil level before starting the engine.

Open the engine cover and pull out oil level gauge (1), wipe it off with a rag, re-insert it all the way into the pipe, and then pull it out again.



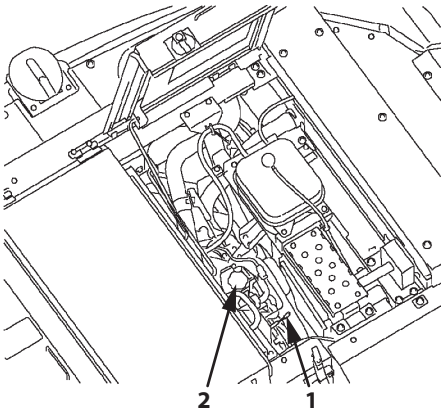
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-011-2 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-018-1 ja

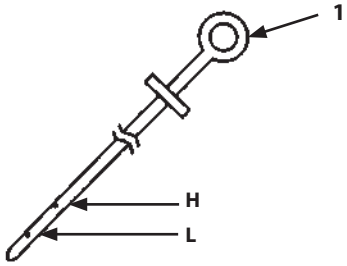


ZX345USLC-7H

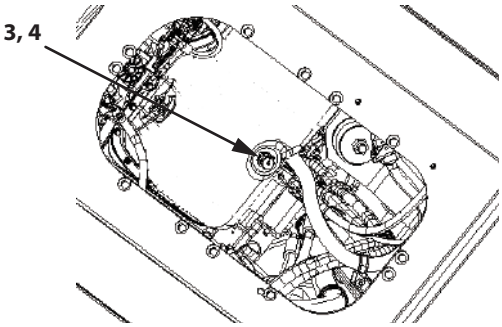
MDD5-07-006-1 ja

The level is correct if the oil is between the upper (H) and lower (L) marks on oil level gauge (1).

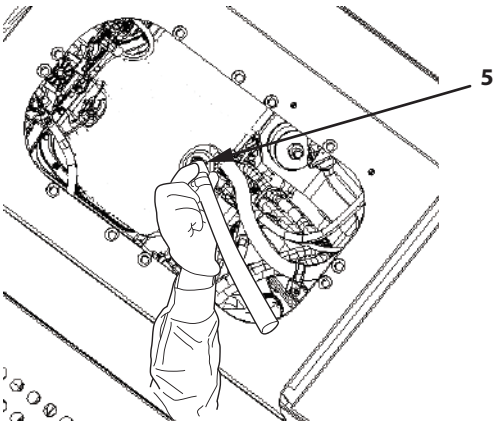
If the oil level is below the lower mark, add the recommended engine oil via oil filler (2).
If the oil level is above the upper mark (H), remove cap (4) of drain valve (3) at the bottom of the engine oil pan, and then open drain valve (3) by turning drainer (5) to drain oil.



M178-07-011-2 ja



MDFY-07-008-2 ja



MDFY-07-009-2 ja

CAUTION

Avoid spillages when adding oil. If oil is spilled, wipe it up. If spilled oil is left as-is, it may lead to a fire.
After refilling, make sure oil filler cap (2) is securely closed.

IMPORTANT

Screw in drainer (5) slowly. A large quantity of oil may be discharged if it is screwed in all at once.

2 Change Engine Oil

--- every 500 hours

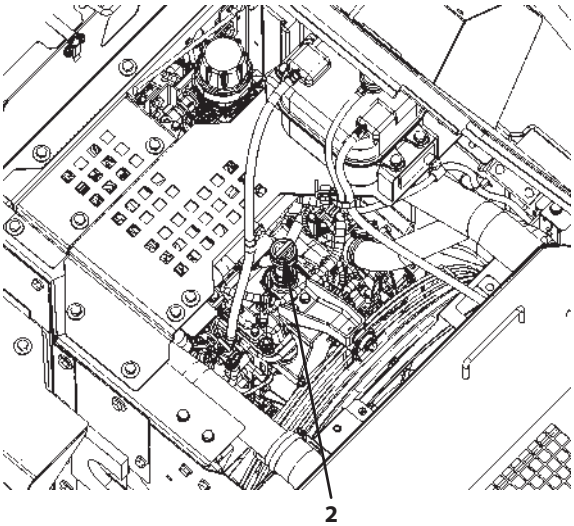
3 Replace Engine Oil Filter

--- every 500 hours

CAUTION

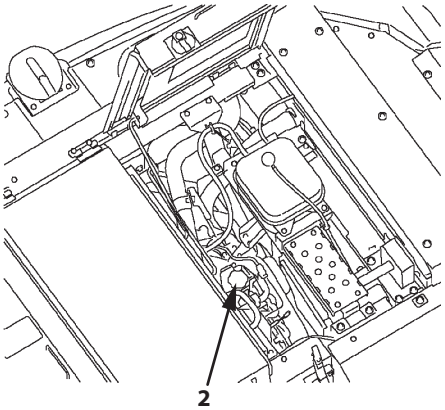
Engine oil may be hot just after operation. Take extra care to avoid burns.After refilling, make sure oil filler cap (2) is securely closed.

1. Run the engine to warm oil.
   DO NOT run the engine until oil is hot.
2. Park the machine on a level surface.
3. Lower the bucket to the ground.
4. Turn the auto-idle switch off.



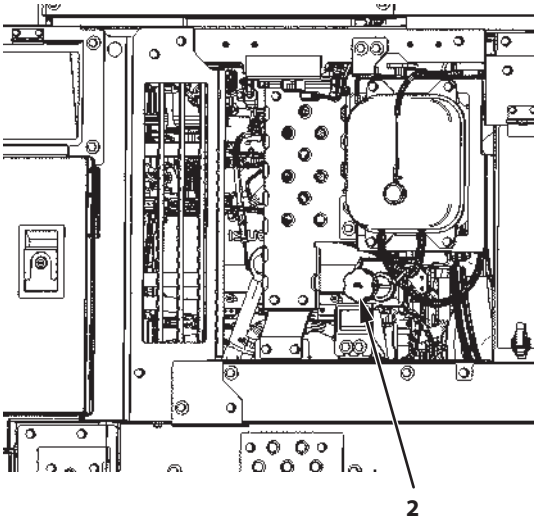
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-011-3 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-006-2 ja



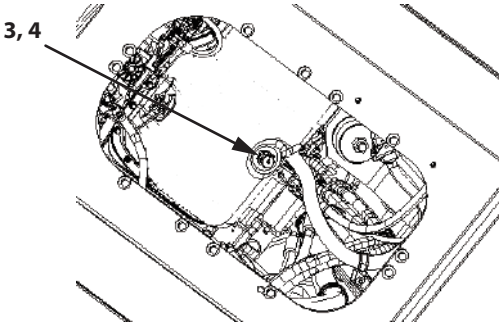
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-018-2 ja

IMPORTANT

The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

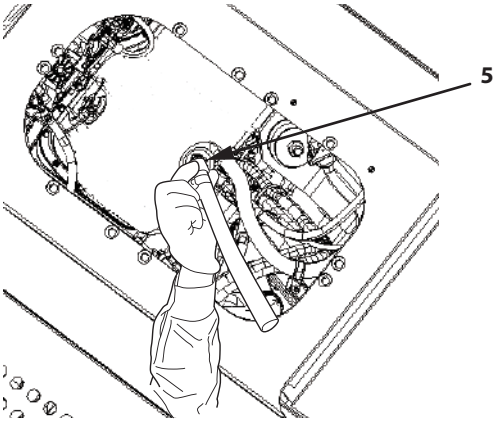
5. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
6. Turn the key switch OFF. Remove the key from the key switch.
7. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.



MDFY-07-008-2 ja

IMPORTANT

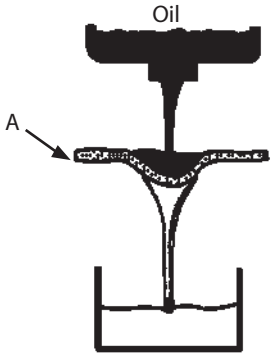
Install drainer (5) to drain valve (3) slowly. Oil may exhaust in large quantities when suddenly tightened.



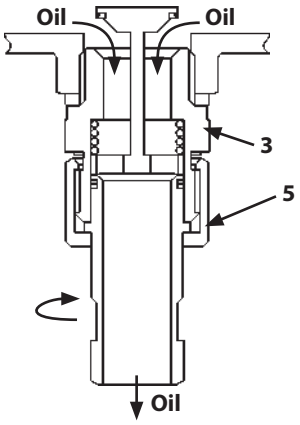
MDFY-07-009-2 ja

8. Remove oil filler cap (2).
9. Remove cap (4) from oil pan drain valve (3). Install drainer (5) to drain valve (3).
10. Screw drainer (5) into drain valve (3). Drain valve (3) will be opened to drain oil.
11. Then, allow oil to drain through a clean cloth (A) into a container.

    Container capacity : 50-liter (13 US gal)
12. After all oil has been drained, inspect the cloth(A) for any debris such as small pieces of metal.
13. Remove drainer (5). Install cap (4) to drain valve (3).



M104-07-010-2 en_GB

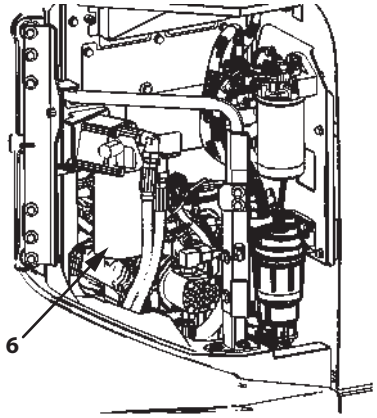


M1U1-07-002-2 en_GB

14. Open the right access cover and secure the cover with rod.
15. Remove engine oil filter (6) by turning it counterclockwise with the filter wrench.
16. Clean filter (6) gasket contact area on the engine.
17. Put new oil in from primary side (7) of new cartridge element (6) so it does not overflow. Take care not to insert it from secondary side (8).
18. Install new filter (6). Turn filter (6) clockwise by hand until the gasket touches the contact area. Be sure not to damage the gasket when installing filter (6).
19. Tighten engine oil filter (6) 3/4 to 1 turn further using the filter wrench. Be careful not to overtighten.
20. Fill the engine with recommended oil. Check that oil level is between the circle marks on the dipstick after 15 minutes.
21. Install the oil filler cap.
22. Start the engine. Run the engine at slow idle for 5 minutes.
23. Check that the engine oil pressure indicator on the monitor panel goes out immediately. If not, stop the engine immediately and find the cause.
24. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
25. Check for any leakage at the drain plug.
26. Check oil level on the dipstick and add or drain oil to maintain proper oil level. (The oil level should be between the upper and lower limit marks on the oil level gauge.) (Refer to the page 7-40)

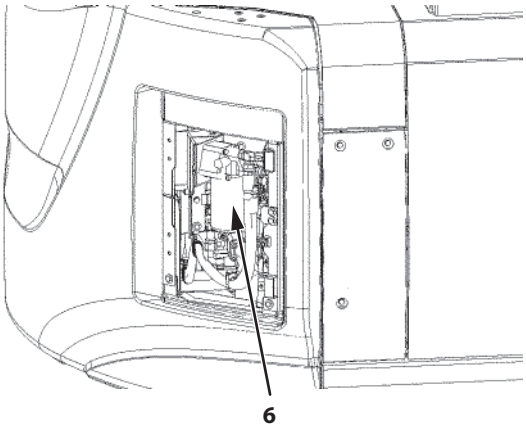
IMPORTANT

- **When putting new oil in cartridge element (6), take care that no foreign objects get in from secondary side (8).**
- **Do not re-use filter (6).**
- **Incorrect engine oil level may cause trouble in the engine. Even if the engine oil level exceeds the upper limit, control the oil level to the proper quantity before starting the engine.**



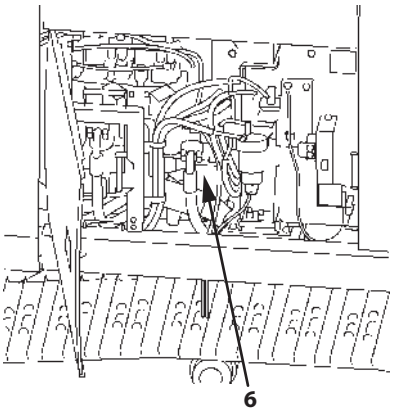
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-013-1 ja



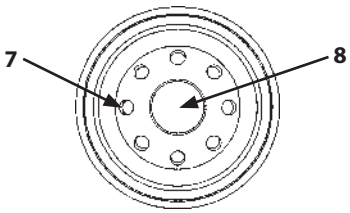
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-020-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-007-1 ja

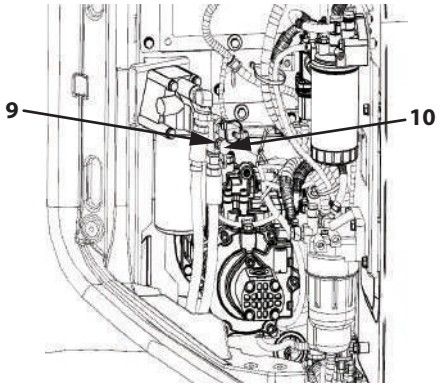


MDCR-07-007-1 ja

Sampling the Engine Oil

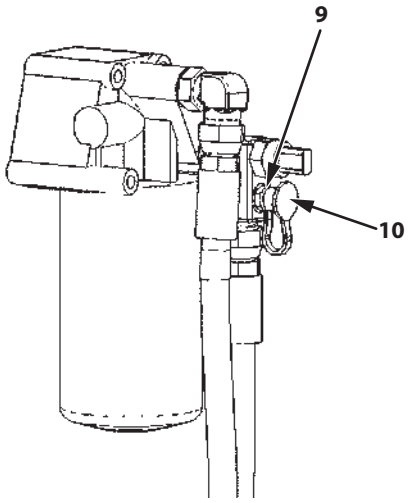
NOTE

The line is equipped with a valve (10) for sampling the engine oil. The valve has a cap (9).
For instructions on sampling the engine oil, contact Authorized Dealer.



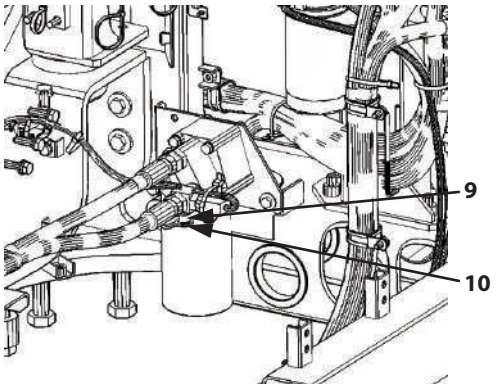
ZX135US-7H

MDHE-07-003-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-023-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDHE-07-004-1 ja

4 Check and Clean around the Engine

---as required

IMPORTANT

Check for flammable materials in the area around the engine and clean that area.

When the machine is operated in dusty areas, refer to chapter 9, “MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS”.

5 Check the Blowby Hose

--- as required

CAUTION

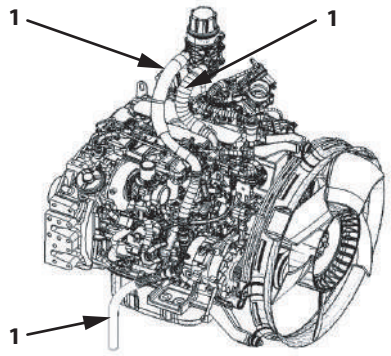
Immediately after operation, blowby hose (1) will be hot. Touching it will result in burns. Wait for the temperature to drop before starting any maintenance work.

- Check that the hoses are free from kinks and do not rub against each other or other parts.
- Repair or replace any loose or damaged hoses.
- Never reinstall bent or damaged hoses.

Use the check points below and check hoses for damage.
If any abnormality is found, replace as instructed in the table.

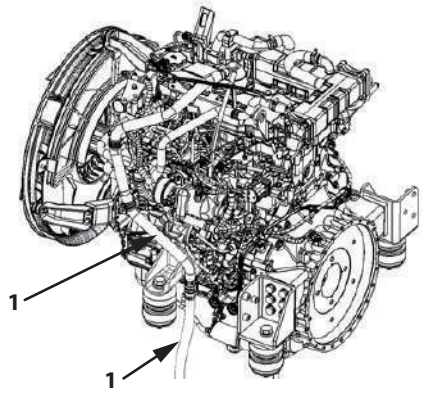
Hose

Interval (Hours)	Check Points	Check For	Remedies
As required	Hose covers	Cracking, deteriora-tion Rub marks	Replace
	Hose	Bends	Replace
	Hose clamps	Damage	Replace



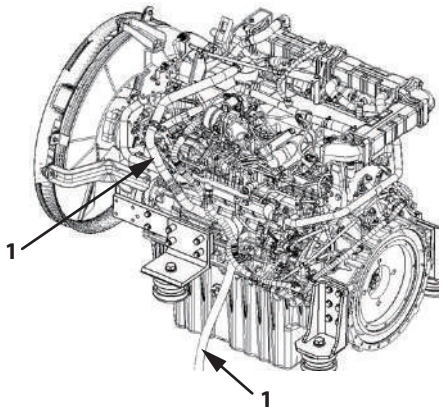
ZX135US-7H

MDHD-07-001-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDHD-07-002-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDHD-07-003-1 ja

6 Replace Oil Separator Element

(Only ZX135US-7H)
--- every 2500 hours

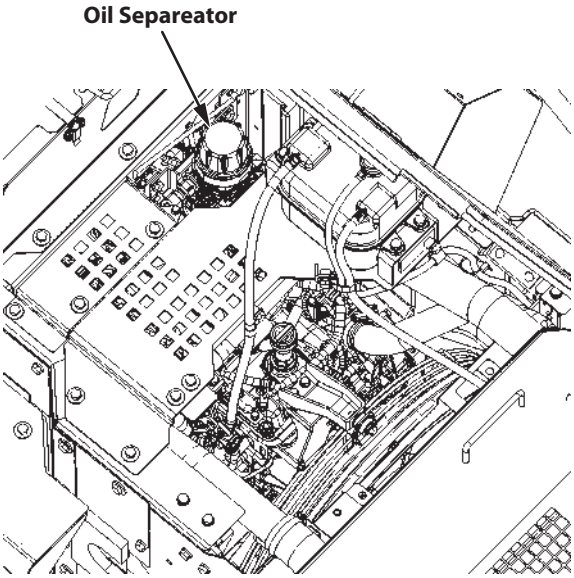
CAUTION

The oil separator becomes hot during operation. Severe burns may result if skin comes in contact with the oil separator immediately after operation. Wait for the oil separator to cool before starting any maintenance work.

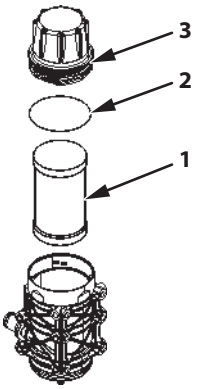
IMPORTANT

To prevent foreign matter from entering, clean cap (3) and its surround before replacing oil separator element (1).

1. Park the machine on solid and level ground with the bucket cylinder fully extended and the arm cylinder fully retracted. Lower the bucket on the ground. Stop the engine
2. Remove the cap by twisting it counterclockwise.
3. Remove the oil separator element and O-ring (2). Replace them with new ones.
4. Securely tighten the cap by twisting it clockwise by hand.



MDAT-07-011-4 en_GB



MDC1-07-079-2 ja

C. Transmission

1 Pump Transmission

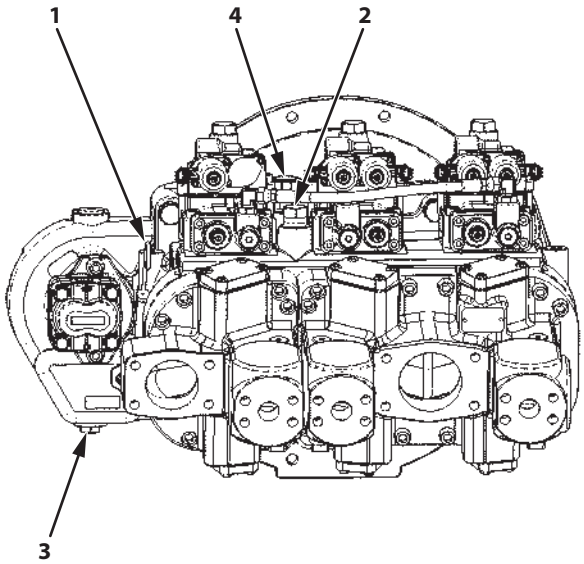
(Except ZX135US-7H)
Check Oil Level --- every 250 hours

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.

IMPORTANT

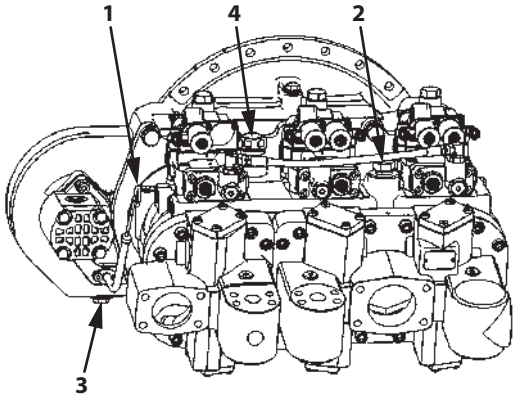
The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
5. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
7. Remove dipstick (1). Oil must be within the specified range (A).
8. If necessary, remove filler plug (2) and add oil. (See gear oil chart)
9. Recheck oil level.



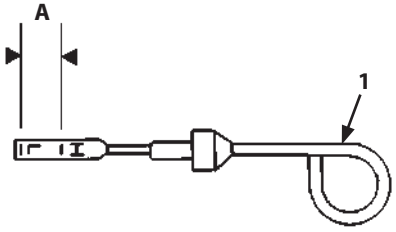
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-024-2 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-051-1 ja



M1G6-07-004-2 ja

Change Oil --- every 1000 hours

Air Breather Cleaning --- every 1000 hours

CAUTION

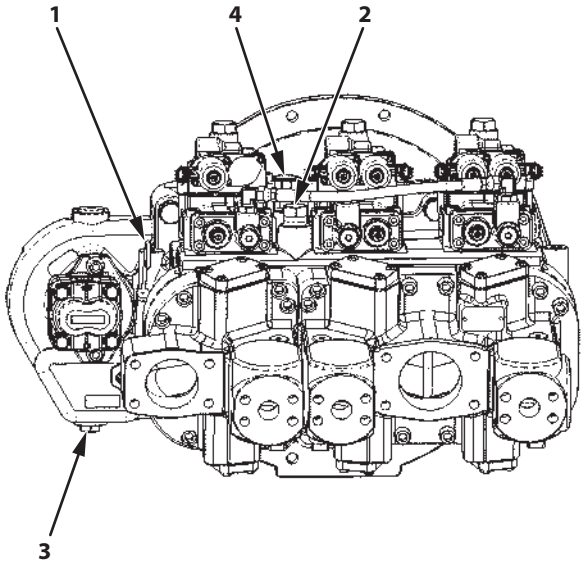
Oil may be hot just after operation. Wait for oil to cool before starting work.

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.

IMPORTANT

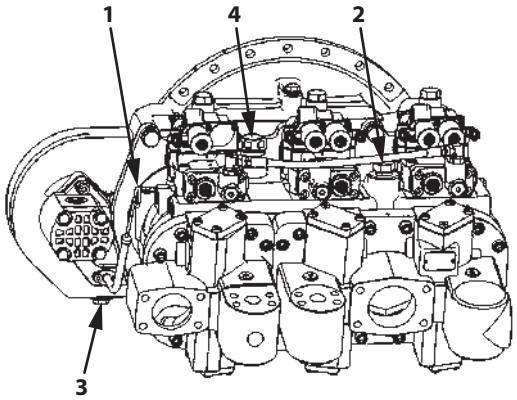
The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
5. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
7. Remove filler plug (2).
8. Remove drain plug (3). Allow oil to drain through a clean cloth into a 2-liter (2.1 US qt) container.
9. After all oil has drained, inspect cloth for any debris such as small pieces of metal.
10. Reinstall drain plug (3).
11. Add oil via filler plug (2) until it is within the specified range (A) on dipstick (1).
12. Reinstall filler plug (2).
13. Remove air breather (4) and perform cleaning. After cleaning, install air breather (4).



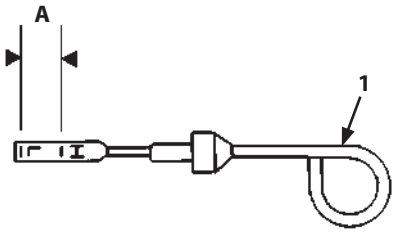
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-024-2 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-051-1 ja



M1G6-07-004-2 ja

2 Swing Reduction Gear

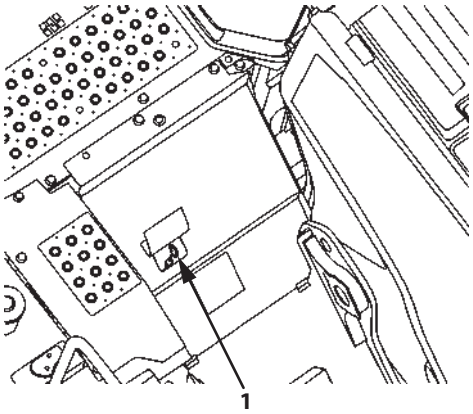
Check Oil Level --- every 500 hours

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.

IMPORTANT

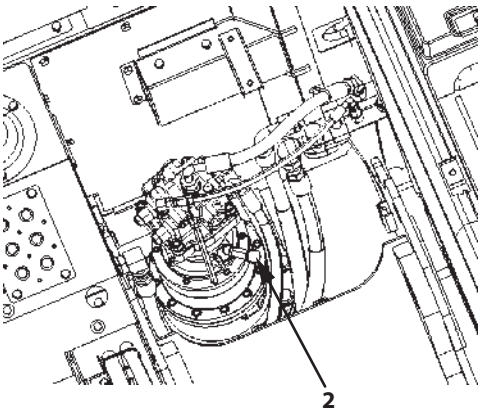
The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
5. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
7. Remove dipstick (1). Oil must be between marks (A).
8. If necessary, remove oil filler cap (2) and add oil. (See gear oil chart)
9. Recheck oil level.



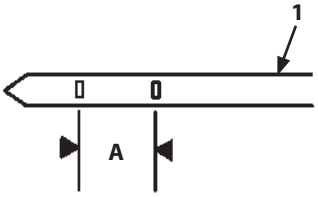
ZX135US-7H

M1U4-07-044-1 ja

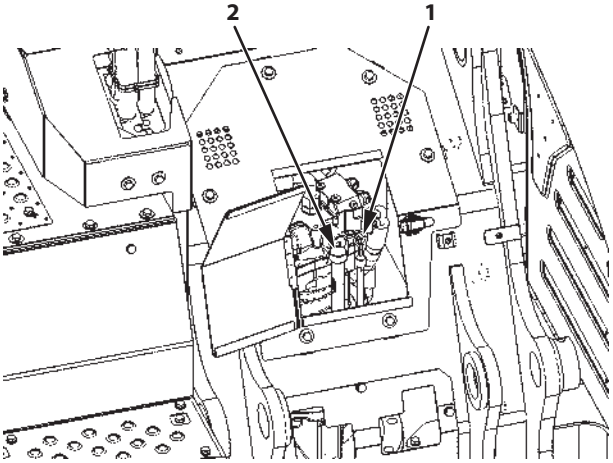


ZX135US-7H

MDCN-07-018-1 ja

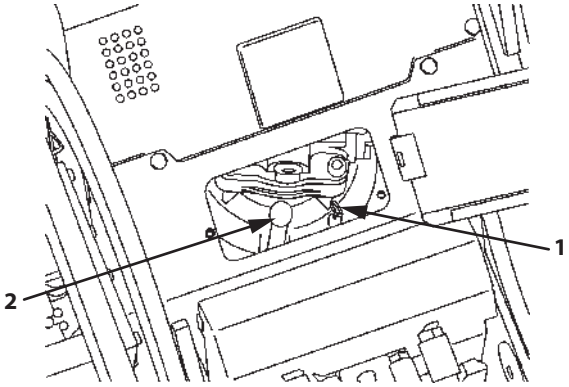


M104-07-017-2 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-026-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-008-1 ja

Change Gear Oil --- every 1000 hours

CAUTION

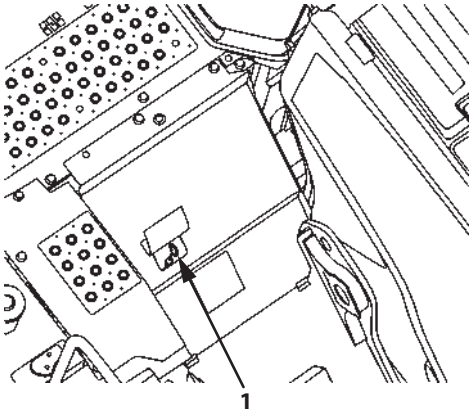
Gear oil may be hot just after operation. Wait for gear oil to cool before starting work.

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.

IMPORTANT

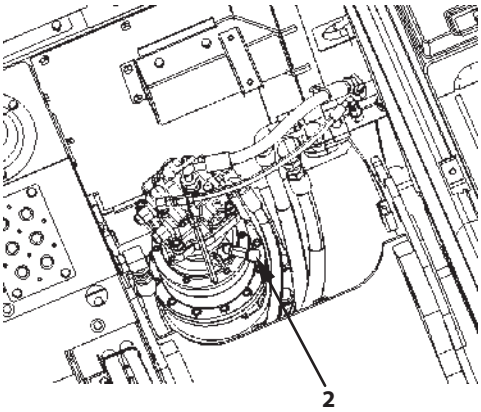
The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
5. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
7. Remove the drain plug mounted on the end of drain pipe to drain oil.
8. Reinstall the drain plug.
9. Remove oil filler cap (2) and add oil until it is between the marks (A) on dipstick (1).
10. Reinstall oil filler cap (2).



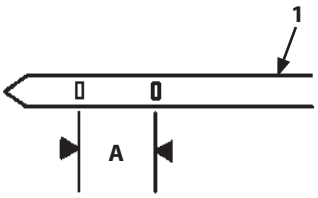
ZX135US-7H

M1U4-07-044-1 ja

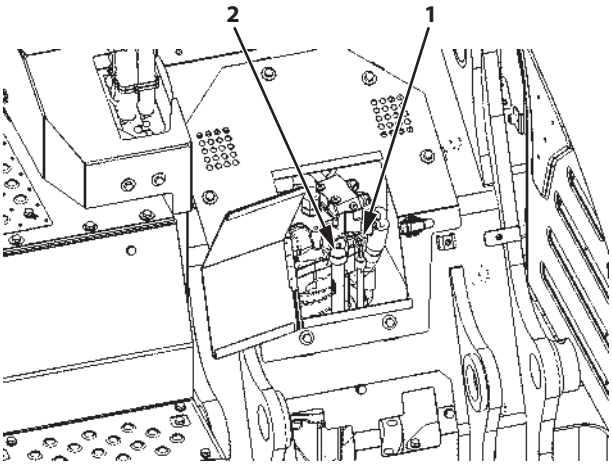


ZX135US-7H

MDCN-07-018-1 ja

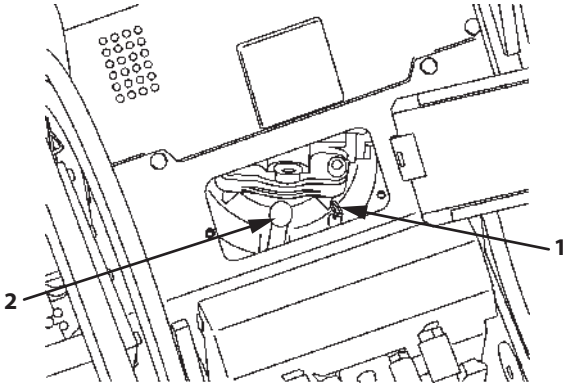


M104-07-017-2 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-026-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-008-1 ja

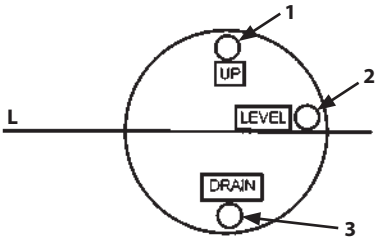
3 Gear Oil in Travel Device

Check Oil Level --- every 500 hours

WARNING

Keep body and face away from air release plug (1). Gear oil may be hot just after operation. Wait for gear oil to cool and then gradually loosen air release plug (1) to release pressure.

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Rotate the travel motor until the imaginary line through plug (1) and plug (3) are vertical.
3. Lower the bucket to the ground.
4. Turn the auto-idle switch off.



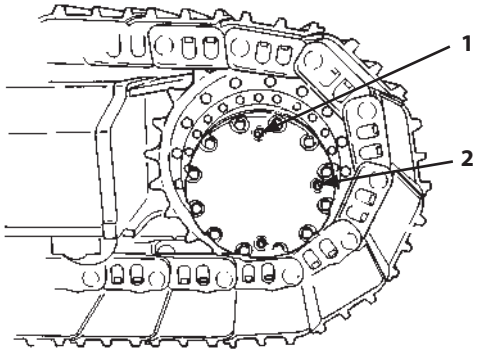
MDAA-07-047-2 ja

L	Horizontal Oil Level	2	Oil Level Check Plug
1	Air Bleed Plug (Oil Supply Plug)	3	Drain Plug

IMPORTANT

The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

5. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
6. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
7. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
8. After gear oil has cooled, slowly loosen air release plug (1) to release pressure.
9. Remove air release plug (1) and oil level check plug (2). Oil must be up to the bottom of hole.
10. If necessary, add oil until oil flows out of oil level check plug (2) hole. (See gear oil chart)



M157-07-170-1 ja

11. Wrap the plug threads with sealing-type tape. Install plugs (1) and (2). Tighten plug (1) and (2).

Tightening Torque

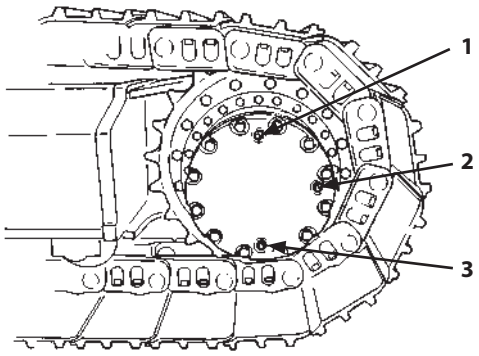
ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H : 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 37 lbf·in)

ZX345USLC-7H : 70 N·m (7 kgf·m, 52 lbf·in)

12. Check the gear oil level in the other travel reduction gear.

Change Gear Oil --- every 2000 hours

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Rotate the travel motor until the imaginary line through plug (1) and plug (3) are vertical.
3. Lower the bucket to the ground.
4. Turn the auto-idle switch off.



M157-07-170-2 ja

IMPORTANT

The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

5. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
6. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
7. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
8. After gear oil has cooled, slowly loosen air release plug (1) to release pressure, and temporarily retighten plug (1).
9. Remove drain plug (3) and plug (1), in that order, to drain oil.
10. Clean drain plug (3). Wrap the threads of drain plug (3) with sealing-type tape. Install plug (3). Tighten plug (3).

    Tightening Torque
    ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H : 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 37 lbf·in)
    ZX345USLC-7H : 70 N·m (7 kgf·m, 52 lbf·in)
11. Remove oil level check plug (2).
12. Add oil until oil flows out of oil level check plug (2) hole. (See gear oil chart)
13. Clean plugs (1) and (2). Wrap the threads of oil level check plug (2) and air release plug (1) with sealing-type tape. Reinstall the plugs (1) and (2). Tighten the plugs (1) and (2).

    Tightening Torque
    ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H : 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 37 lbf·in)
    ZX345USLC-7H : 70 N·m (7 kgf·m, 52 lbf·in)
14. Repeat steps 8. to 13. for the other travel reduction gear.

D. Hydraulic System

Inspection and Maintenance of Hydraulic Equipment

IMPORTANT

Never adjust parts of engine fuel system or hydraulic equipment.

⚠ CAUTION

When checking and/or servicing the hydraulic components, pay special attention to the following points.

1. Be sure that the machine is parked on a level, firm surface before servicing hydraulic equipment.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground and stop the engine.
3. Begin servicing hydraulic components only after components, hydraulic oil and lubricants are completely cooled, and after releasing residual pressure.
   a. Before checking and/or servicing the hydraulic system, be sure to release the residual pressure from the cylinder circuits of the boom, arm and the bucket, swing piping and pilot piping. An accumulator can be installed on some models of this machine as an option to be capable of moving the front attachment for specified time (around 10 seconds) after stopping the engine.
   b. Bleed air from the hydraulic oil tank to release internal pressure.
   c. Immediately after operation, all hydraulic components and hydraulic oil or lubricants are hot and highly pressurized. Begin inspection and/or maintenance work only after the machine has cooled down.
   Servicing heated and pressurized hydraulic components may cause plugs, screws and/or oil to fly off or escape suddenly, possibly resulting in personal injury. Hydraulic components may be pressurized even when cooled. Keep body parts and face away from the front of plugs or screws when removing them.
   d. Even after air pressure in the hydraulic oil tank is released, when the machine is parking on a slope, the oil pressure in the travel motor and the swing motor circuits are maintained at high pressure as the reaction force of the machine's own weight is constantly applied to the travel motor. Never check and/or service the machine while parked on a slope.

IMPORTANT

- **When connecting hydraulic hoses and pipes, take special care to keep seal surfaces free from dirt and to avoid damaging them.**
- **Wash hoses, pipes, and the tank interior with a washing liquid and thoroughly wipe off before reconnecting.**
- **Only use O-rings that are free of damage or defects. Be careful not to damage them during reassembly. Do not allow high pressure hoses to twist when connecting them. The life of twisted hoses will be shortened considerably.**
- **Always refill with the same hydraulic oil; do not mix brands/types of oil. When switching the brands/types of oil, be sure to change the full amuount to avoid oil mixture.**
- **The machine is filled with Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Hydraulic Oil 5000 (change every 4000 hours) at delivery. Continuous use of the genuine hydraulic oil 5000 is highly recommended.**
- **Never run the engine without oil in the hydraulic oil tank.**

Change Hydraulic Oil and Replace Full-Flow Filter Element

Hydraulic oil deteriorates and becomes contaminated much more quickly when using a hydraulic breaker than it does during digging operations.

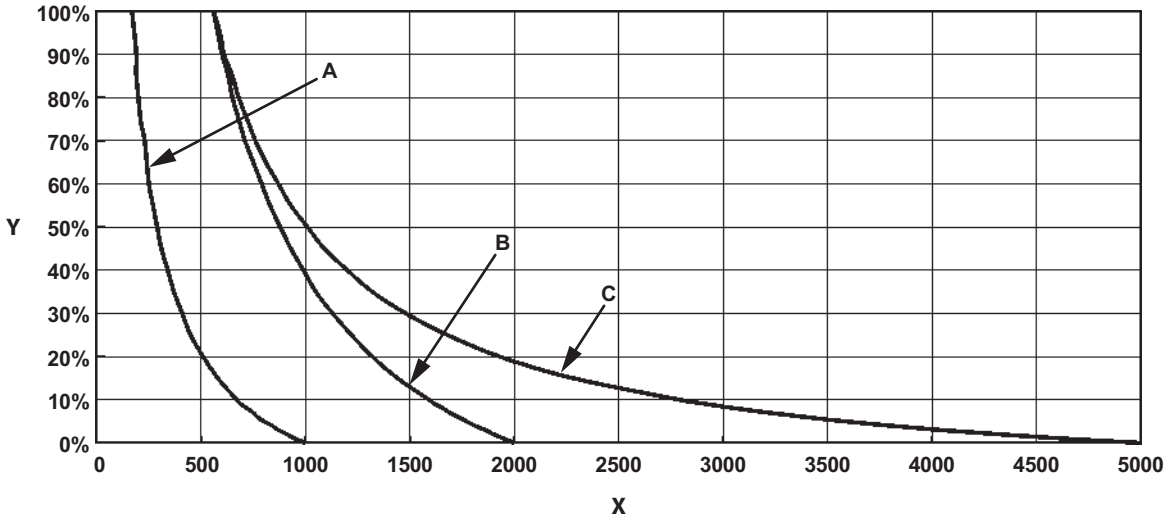
Failure to adhere to proper maintenance intervals may result in damage to the machine and the hydraulic breaker.

In order to extend service life, particularly that of the hydraulic pump, change the hydraulic oil and the full-flow filter element at the intervals specified below.

Check machine service hours by using the breaker hour meter. (Refer to “Operating Information” in chapter 1, “Operator’s Station” before confirming the breaker operation ratio)

Change/replacement intervals for high performance full flow filter (micro-glass)

Breaker operation ratio	0%	10%	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	100%
Full-Flow Filter	1000	670	510	410	340	290	250	230	200	190	170
2000 Hour Hydraulic Oil	2000	1590	1320	1130	990	880	790	710	650	600	560
5000 Hour Hydraulic Oil	5000	2790	1930	1480	1200	1010	870	760	680	610	560



MDFY-07-098-1 ja

A Element Replacement Interval

B Change interval for 2000-hour hydraulic oil

C Change interval for 5000-hour hydraulic oil

X Change Interval (Hours)

Y Average breaker operation ratio (%)

1 Check Hydraulic Oil Level

--- daily

CAUTION

The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Push the pressure release button on the tank cap to release pressure, and carefully remove the cap.

IMPORTANT

Never run the engine without oil in hydraulic oil tank.

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Position the machine with the arm cylinder fully retracted and the bucket cylinder fully extended.
3. Lower the bucket to the ground.
4. Turn the auto-idle switch off.

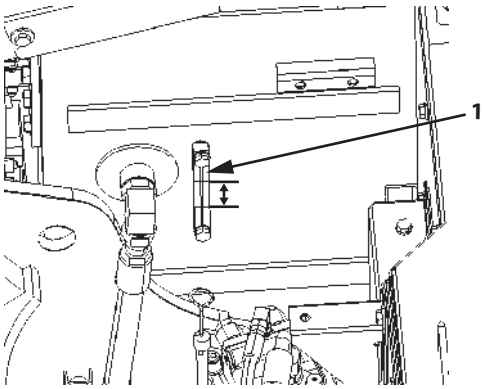
M104-07-021 ja

IMPORTANT

The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

5. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
6. Turn the key switch OFF. Remove the key from the key switch.
7. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
8. Open the access door in front of the main pump. Check oil level with level gauge (1) on hydraulic oil tank. Oil must be between marks on gauge (1). If necessary, add oil.

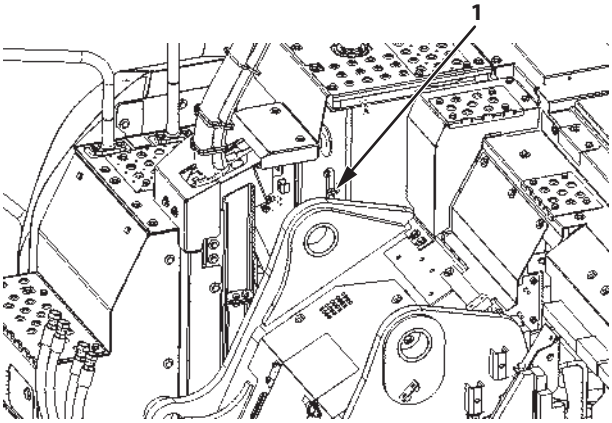
To add oil:



ZX135US-7H

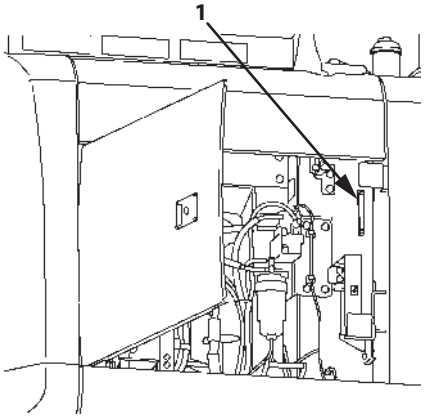
MDCN-07-020-1 ja

9. Push the pressure release button on the air breather to release pressure. Remove the cover.
10. Add oil. Recheck oil level with level gauge (1).
11. Install the cover. Make sure the filter and rod assembly are in correct position.



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-028-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-009-1 ja

2 Change Hydraulic Oil

--- every 2000 hours or 5000 hours

CAUTION

- **Hydraulic oil may be hot just after operation. Wait for oil to cool before starting work.**
- **The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Push pressure release button (1) on the air breather before removing the air breather.**

IMPORTANT

Hydraulic oil changing intervals differ according to kind of hydraulic oils used and attachment operating availability. (See Recommended Oil Chart in this group)

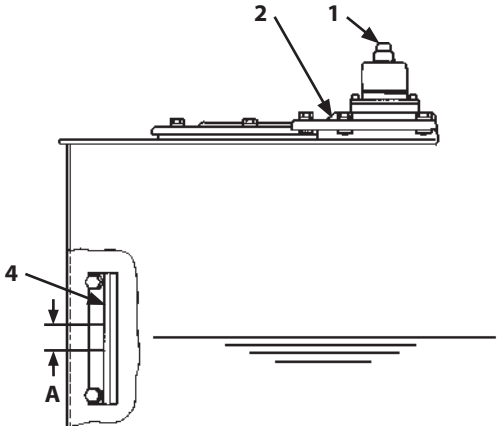
1. Park the machine on a level surface with the upperstructure rotated 90 ° for easier access.
2. Position the machine with the arm cylinder fully retracted and the bucket cylinder fully extended.
3. Lower the bucket to the ground.
4. Turn the auto-idle switch off.

M104-07-117 ja

IMPORTANT

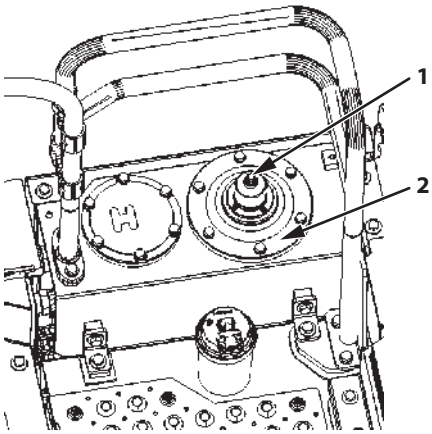
The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

5. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
6. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
7. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
8. Clean the top of the hydraulic oil tank to keep dirt out of the hydraulic system.



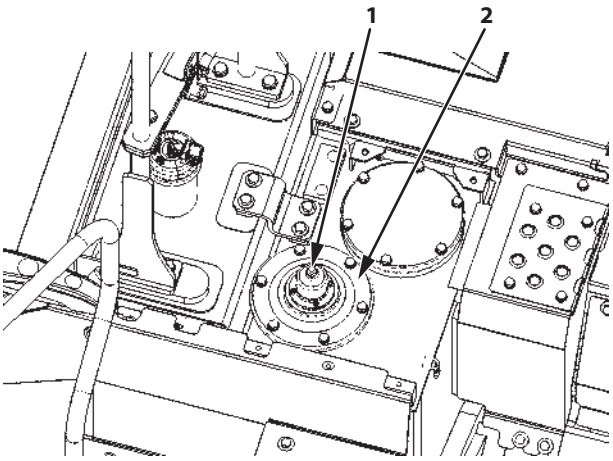
M157-07-016-2 ja

9. Push pressure release button (1) on the air breather.
10. Remove cover (2).



ZX135US-7H

MDA4-07-029-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-030-1 ja

11. Remove oil using a suction pump. The hydraulic oil tank capacity, up to specified oil level, is approximately the value shown in column A below.

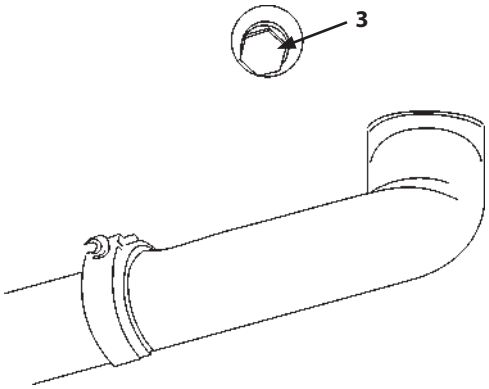
Model	A
ZX135US-7H	60 L (15.9 US gal)
ZX245USLC-7H	130 L (34.3 US gal)
ZX345USLC-7H	160 L (42.3 US gal)

12. Remove drain plug (3). Allow oil to drain.
13. Clean, install and tighten drain plug (3).
14. Add oil until it is between the marks (A) on the oil level gauge (4).
15. Install cover (2). Tighten the bolts to 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 37 lbf·ft).

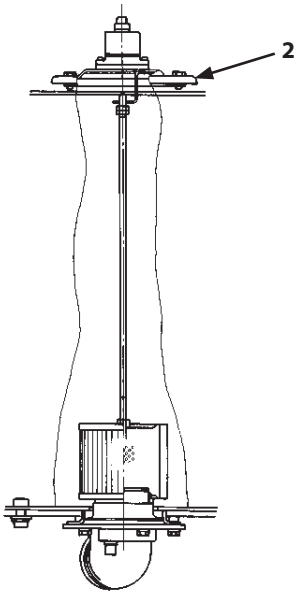
IMPORTANT

Take care when changing the hydraulic oil that nothing, such as water or sand, gets inside the tank.

16. Be sure to bleed air from the system following the procedures shown on the next page.



M1U1-07-047-1 ja

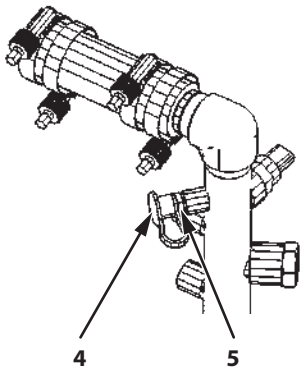


M157-07-062-2 ja

Sampling the Hydraulic Oil

NOTE

The low-pressure piping is equipped with a valve (5) for sampling the hydraulic oil. The valve has a cap (4). For instructions on sampling the hydraulic oil, contact Authorized Dealer.



MDA4-07-031-1 ja

Bleed Air from Hydraulic System

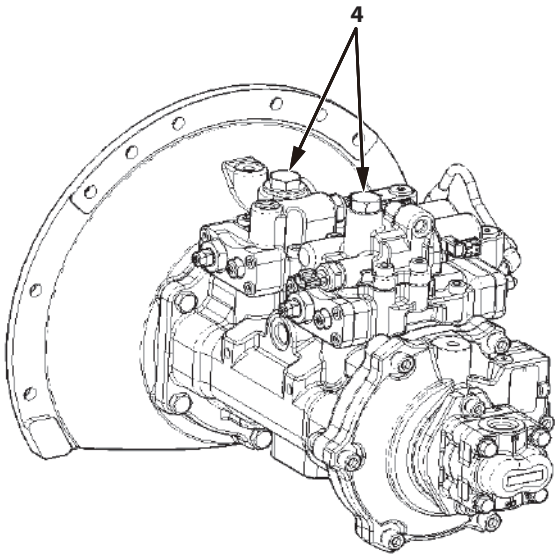
After changing hydraulic oil, bleed air from the hydraulic system by following the procedures below.

IMPORTANT

If the hydraulic pump is not filled with oil, it will be damaged when the engine is started. The bleeding of air should be conducted on a regular basis.

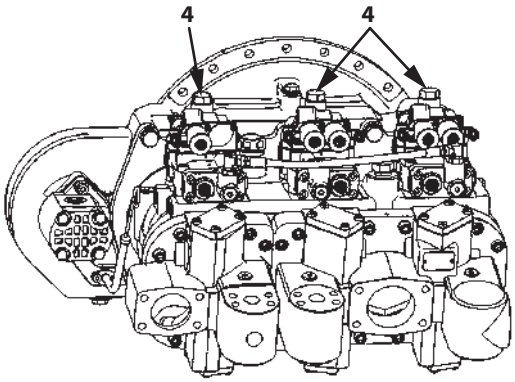
Bleeding Air from the Hydraulic Pump

1. Remove air bleed plug (4) on each pump and fill with hydraulic oil.
2. After hydraulic oil is filled in the pump, temporarily tighten plug (4). Start the engine and run it at slow idle speed.
3. Slightly loosen one of plugs (4). Allow air to bleed from the pump through the clearance until hydraulic oil comes out from around plug (4).
4. After bleeding air, tighten plug (4) to specification. Tightening Torque: 95 N·m (9.5 kgf·m, 70 lbf·ft)
5. Repeat Steps 3 and 4 for the remainder of plugs (4).



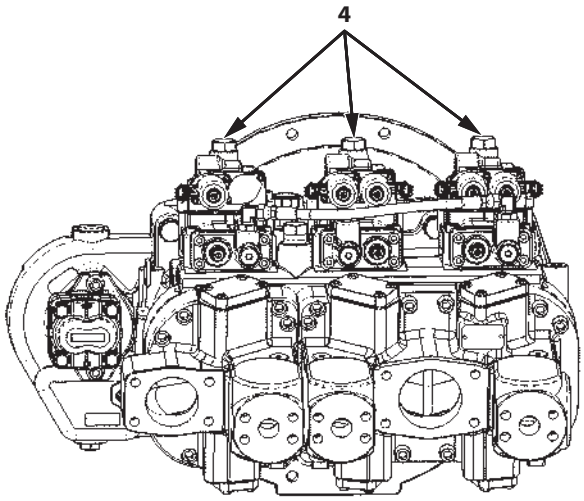
ZX135US-7H

MDA4-00-002-2 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-051-2 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-032-1 ja

Bleeding Air from the Hydraulic Circuit

1. After filling hydraulic oil, start the engine. While moving all cylinders and the swing motor evenly, lightly operate the machine for 10 to 15 minutes.
   As the air bleeding device is provided in the pilot circuit, air will be released by conducting the above operation for 5 minutes.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground to return to the position to check hydraulic oil level.
3. Stop the engine. Check the oil level and add if as needed.

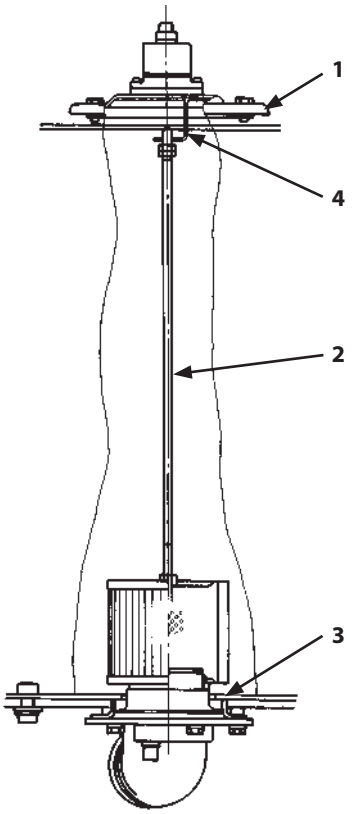
3 Suction Filter Cleaning

--- each time hydraulic oil is changed

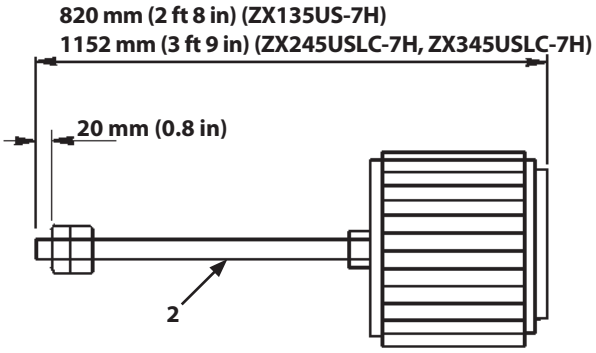
The suction filter is located on the bottom of the hydraulic oil tank.

Clean the suction filter when changing hydraulic oil.

1. After removing hydraulic oil from the hydraulic oil tank, remove cover (1) and rod assembly (2).
2. Clean the inside of the hydraulic oil tank and the suction filter.
3. Before installing the suction filter, check the dimensions of the rod assembly as illustrated at right. Securely insert the rod assembly into pipe (3).
4. Before securing cover (1) with bolts, ensure the top edge of the rod assembly (2) is completely inserted into the hole of support (4).
5. Bleed air from the hydraulic system.
   (Refer to Bleed Air from Hydraulic System of 2.)



M157-07-062-1 ja



Rod Assembly

M107-07-070-15 ja

4 Replace Full-Flow Filter

--- every 1000 hours

CAUTION

Severe burns may result if skin comes in contact with the hot, escaping hydraulic oil just after operation. Wait for the oil to cool before starting any maintenance work.

Replacement Guide

1. Park the machine according to the instructions of (7-10) Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance.

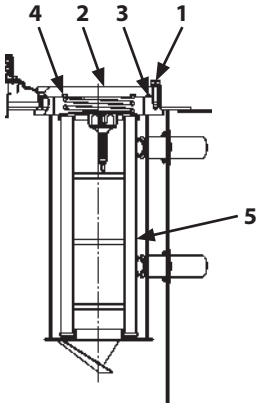
M1CC-07-002 ja

IMPORTANT

If an engine equipped with a turbocharger is stopped without first performing the cool down operation, the lubricant on the turbocharger bearing surfaces may dry out due to the intense heat inside the turbocharger, possibly causing damage to the turbocharger.

2. Before replacing element (5), be sure to bleed air from the hydraulic oil tank by pressing the air bleed valve on the hydraulic oil tank.
3. Loosen bolts (1) (6 pcs.) to remove cover (2) and O-ring (3). When removing cover (2), slowly remove it while pressing it downward so that spring (4) does not fly off.
4. Remove spring (4), and element (5).
5. Take extra care not to allow water or dust to enter the filter case.
6. Replace O-ring (3) and element (5) with new ones. Be careful not to damage element (5) and O-ring (3). Broken element (5) is unusable.
7. Install cover (2) with bolt (1) (6 pcs.).

   Tightening Torque: 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 37 lbf·ft)



MDEQ-07-032-1 ja

8. Bleed air from the pump and check the oil level of the hydraulic oil tank after replacing element. (Refer to the section (7-64) of "Bleeding Air from the Hydraulic System".) If the machine is operated with air mixed in the hydraulic circuit, damage to the pump may result.

NOTE

Replace element (5) at the regular interval to keep hydraulic oil clean and extend the service life of the hydraulic components.

5 Replace Pilot Oil Filter

--- every 1000 hours

CAUTION

The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Push the pressure release button on the air breather before replacing pilot oil filter.

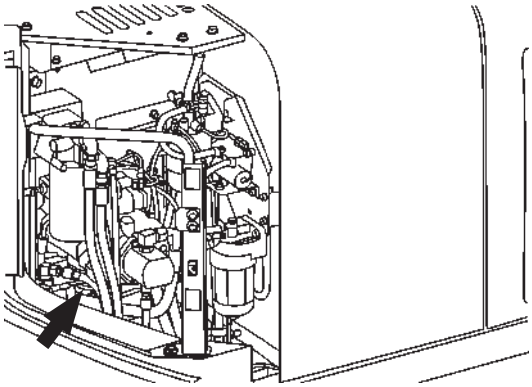
1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.

M104-07-021 ja

IMPORTANT

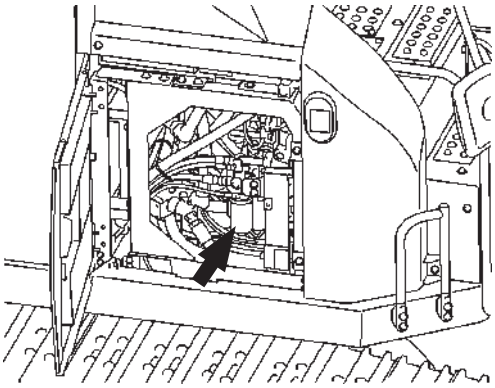
The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
5. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.



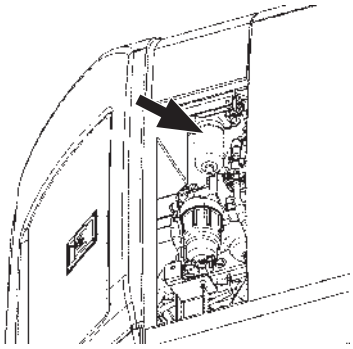
ZX135US-7H

M1U4-07-038-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-010-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

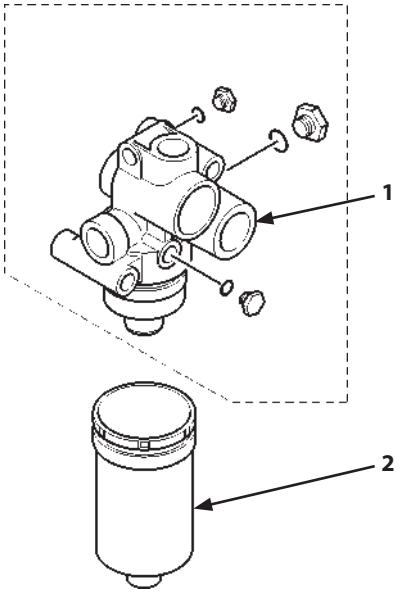
MDA4-07-034-1 ja

7. Remove pilot oil filter (2) by turning it counterclockwise with the filter wrench.
8. Clean the filter O-ring contact area on filter head (1).
9. Apply a thin film of clean oil to the gasket of new filter (2).
10. Install new filter (2). Turn filter (2) clockwise by hand until the O-ring touches the contact area. Be sure not to damage the O-ring when installing filter (2).

IMPORTANT

Do not re-use pilot oil filter (2).

11. Bleed air from the pump and check the oil level of the hydraulic oil tank after replacing element. (Refer to 2, "Bleed Air from Hydraulic System") If the machine is operated with air mixed in the hydraulic circuit, damage to the pump may result.
12. Replace filter (2) at regular intervals to keep the hydraulic oil clean and to extend the service life of the hydraulic components.



M1U1-07-050-1 ja

6 Replace Air Breather Element

--- every 5000 hours

CAUTION

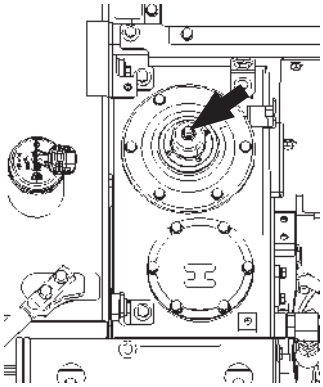
Hydraulic oil becomes hot and is under pressure during operation. Severe burns may result if skin comes in contact with escaping hydraulic oil just after operation. Wait for the oil to cool before starting any maintenance work.

Replacement Guide

1. Park the machine according to the instructions in "Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance" (7-10). Lower the bucket to the ground with the bucket cylinder extended and the arm cylinder crowded so the machine is in the position shown in the figure.

M1CC-07-002 ja

2. Before replacing element (3), be sure to bleed air pressure from the hydraulic oil tank by pushing air bleed valve on the hydraulic oil tank.

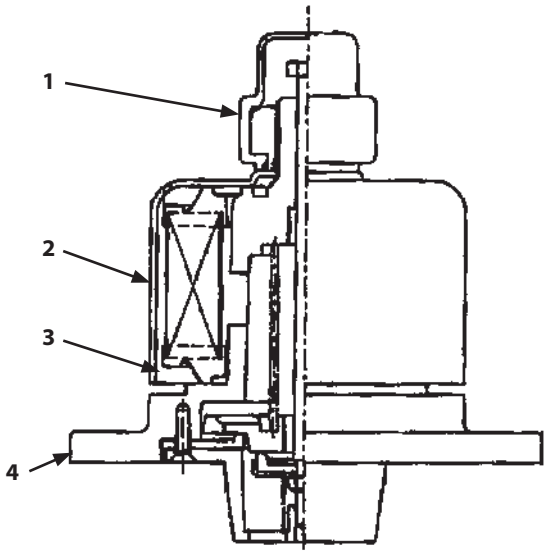


MDCN-07-022-1 ja

3. Turn cover (2) clockwise approx. 1/4 turn. Remove cap (1) by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Turn cover (2) counterclockwise and remove it. Remove element (3).
5. Install new element (3). Tighten to install cover (2) until it comes in contact with element (3). Then, tighten it a further 1/4 turn.
6. Securely tighten cap (1) clockwise by hand. While holding the cap by hand so it does not turn, securely tighten cover (2) by turning counterclockwise 5 to 10° by hand.
7. Take care so no water or contaminants get between cover (2) and body (4) (air breathing port).

NOTE

Replace element (3) regularly to keep the hydraulic oil clean and to extend the service life of the hydraulic components.



M1G6-07-001-1 ja

7 Check Hoses and Lines

...daily

--- every 250 hours

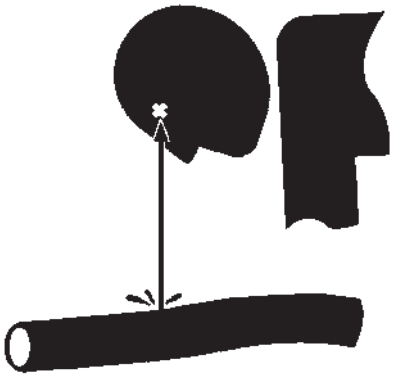
WARNING

- **Hydraulic oil and lubricant leaks can lead to fire that may result in serious injury. Check for missing or loose clamps, kinked hoses, lines or hoses that rub against each other, oil cooler damage and loose oil cooler flange bolts, and check for leaks.**
- **Escaping oil under high-pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. To avoid this hazard, use a piece of cardboard when searching for high pressure oil leaks. Take care to protect hands and body from high-pressure fluids. If oil penetrates your skin, immediately get treatment from a doctor familiar with how to treat such an injury.**
- **Tighten, repair or replace any missing, loose or damaged clamps, hoses and pipes.**
- **Do not bend or strike high-pressure oil pipes.**
- **Never install bent or damaged hoses or pipes.**

SA-031 ja

Use the check points below and check hoses and pipes for oil leaks and damage.

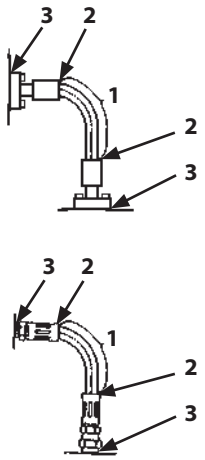
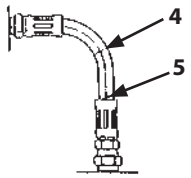
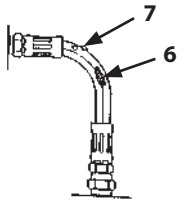
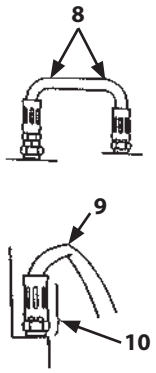
If any abnormality is found, replace or retighten as instructed in the table.



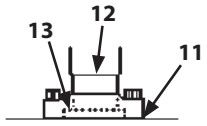
SA-292 ja

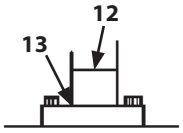
SA-044 ja

Hose

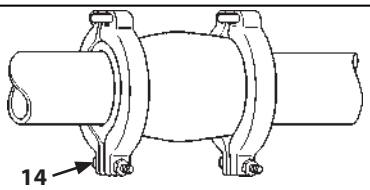
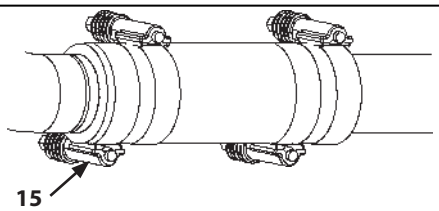
Interval (Hours)	Check Points	Check For	Remedies	
Daily	Hose covers	Leak (1)	Replace	
	Hose ends	Leak (2)	Replace	
	Hose fittings	Leak (3)	Retighten or replace hose or O-ring	
Every 250 hours	Hose covers	Damage or leak (4)	Replace	
	Hose ends	Damage or leak (5)	Replace	
	Hose covers	Exposed reinforcement (6)	Replace	
	Hose covers	Cracking or bulging (blistering) (7)	Replace	
	Hose	Bend (8), Collapse (9)	Replace	
	Hose ends and fittings	Deformation or corrosion (10)	Replace	

Pipes

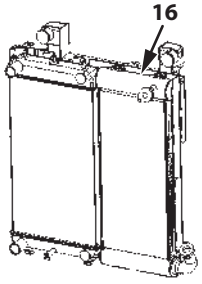
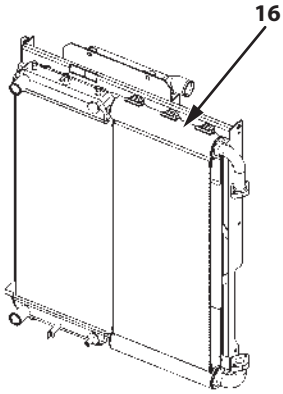
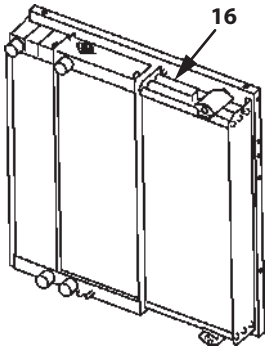
Interval (Hours)	Check Points	Check For	Remedies	
Daily	Contact surfaces of flange joints	Leak (11)	Replace	
	Bolts	Loose or leak (11)	Retighten or replace O-ring	
	Welded surfaces on flange joints	Leak (12)	Replace	

Interval (Hours)	Check Points	Check For	Remedies	
Every 250 hours	Flange joint neck	Crack (13)	Replace	
	Welded surfaces on flange joints	Crack (12)	Replace	
	Clamps	Missing, deformed or loose bolts	Replace or re-tighten	

Hose and Lines

Interval (Hours)	Check Points	Check For	Remedies	
Daily	Flexible master coupling	Leak (14)	Replace or re-tighten	
Every 250 hours	Constant torque clamp	Leak (15)	Replace or re-tighten	

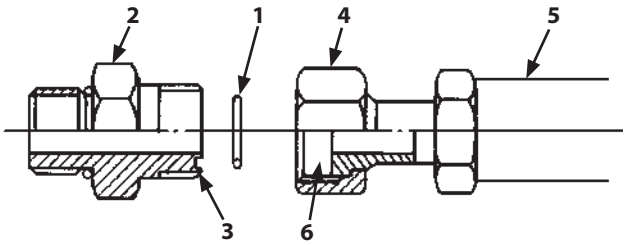
Oil Cooler

Interval (Hours)	Check Points	Check For	Remedies	
Every 250 hours	Oil Cooler	Leak (16)	Replace	 ZX135US-7H MDAT-07-015-1 ja  ZX245USLC-7H MDA4-07-036-1 ja  ZX345USLC-7H MDD5-07-012-1 ja

Types of Hydraulic Fittings

Two hydraulic fitting designs are used on this machine.

- Flat Face O-ring Seal Fitting (ORS Fitting)
  O-ring (1) is used on the sealing surface of adapter (2) to prevent oil leakage from the fitting.



Flat Face O-ring Seal Fitting (ORS Fitting)

M104-07-033-1 ja

Precautions for Use

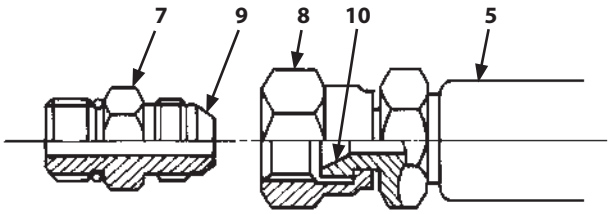
1. Replace O-ring (1) with a new one when assembling fittings.
2. Check that O-ring (1) is properly fitted in O-ring groove (3). Tighten union (4).
   Tightening union (4) with O-ring (1) out of the groove may damage O-ring (1) and cause an oil leak.
3. When assembling fittings, take care not to make a dent on O-ring groove (3) of adapter (2) and sealing surface (6) on hose (5) or the side of the valve. If these surfaces are scratched, it may result in damage to O-ring (1) and lead to an oil leak.
4. If oil leaks from a loose connection of union (4), do not retighten the fitting. Open the connection, replace O-ring (1) with a new one. Before tightening, check that O-ring (1) is correctly located in O-ring groove (3).

Tightening Torque

Tighten fittings to the tightening torques shown below.

Wrench size (mm)		27	32	36	41, 46
Tightening torque ±10%	N·m	95	140	180	210
	(kgf·m)	(9.5)	(14)	(18)	(21)
	(lbf·ft)	(70.1)	(103.3)	(132.8)	(154.9)

- Metal Face Seal Fittings
  Tight contact between metal flares on adapter (7) and metal connector (8) of hose (5) prevents pressure oil leakage. This type of fitting is used on smaller diameter joints.



Metal Face Seal Fittings

M202-07-051-1 ja

Precautions for Use

Connect or disconnect fittings with care not to damage seat surfaces (9 and 10).

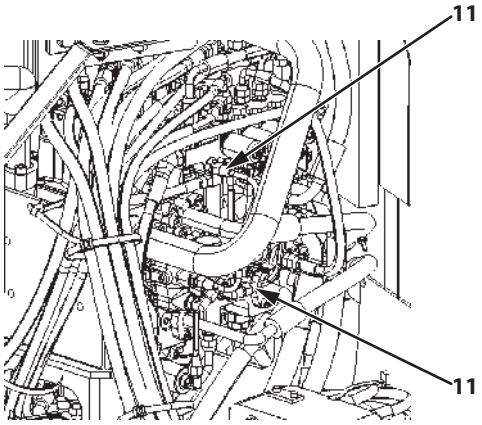
Tightening Torque

Tighten fittings to the tightening torques shown below.

Wrench size (mm)		17	19	22	27
Tightening torque ±10%	N·m	25	30	40	80
	(kgf·m)	(2.5)	(3)	(4)	(8)
	(lbf·ft)	(18.4)	(22.1)	(29.5)	(59.0)

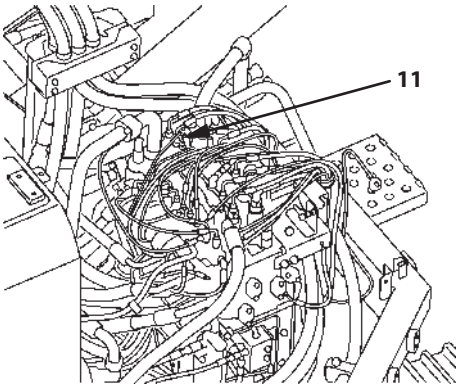
- Bent tube
  Tighten bent tube (11) mounted on the control valve to the torque value shown below.

Wrench size (mm)		17, 19
Tightening Torque	N·m	35
	(kgf·m)	(3.5)
	(lbf·ft)	(25.8)



ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

MDCN-07-029-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-013-1 ja

E. Fuel System

CAUTION

Beware of fire. Fuel is flammable. Keep fuel away from fire hazards.

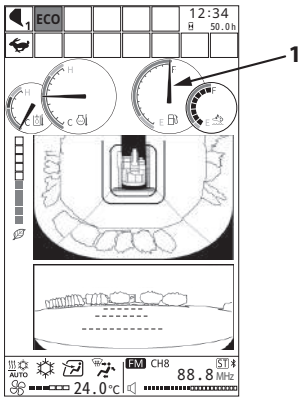
Required fuel specification

Use only super high quality or high quality DIESEL FUEL (JIS K-2204) (ASTM D-975) (EN-590). Kerosene must NOT be used. Using bad quality fuel, drainage agent, fuel additives, gasoline, kerosene or alcohol refueled or mixed with specified fuel may deteriorate performance of fuel filters and cause sliding problem at lubricated contacts in the injector. It also affects the engine parts, leading to malfunction. Using fuel other than ultra low-sulfur or low-sulfur diesel fuel has adverse effects on the engine and the aftertreatment device, which may result in malfunction.

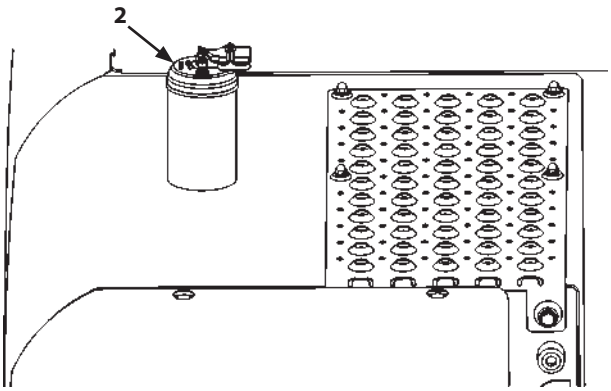
Refueling

1. Park the machine on a firm, level surface. Lower the bucket to the ground. Check the fuel level with fuel gauge (1).
   If the fuel level is low, stop the engine. Remove cap (2) on top of the fuel tank to refuel.
2. Remove cap (2) of filler port.
   [Cap unlock procedures]
   - Release the key lock.
   - Pull up handle (3) and turn it counterclockwise to release cap lock.
   - Remove cap (2).
3. To avoid condensation, fill the tank at the end of each day's operation. Fuel tank capacity is as follows.
   Do not fill the tank more than needed. Use the float on level gauge (4) to check the level.
   Stop filling when red mark (5) on the float becomes visible.
   Position the oil filler gun so that the gun will not obstruct the floating movement of level gauge (4).

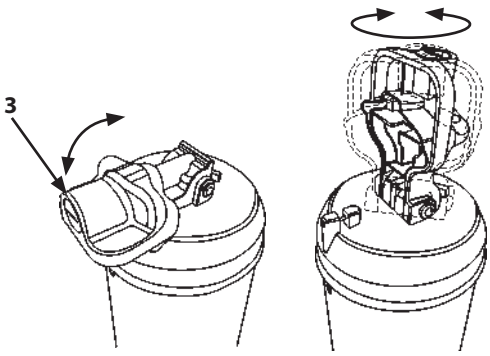
Model	Fuel tank Capacity
ZX135US-7H	220 L (58.1 US gal)
ZX245USLC-7H、ZX345USLC-7H	380 L (74.0 US gal)



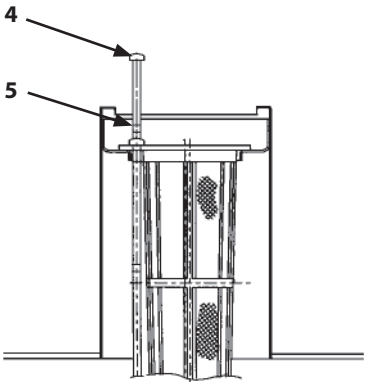
MDFY-MT-100-8 ja



MDCF-07-032-1 ja



MLBA-07-093-MLBA-07-095 ja

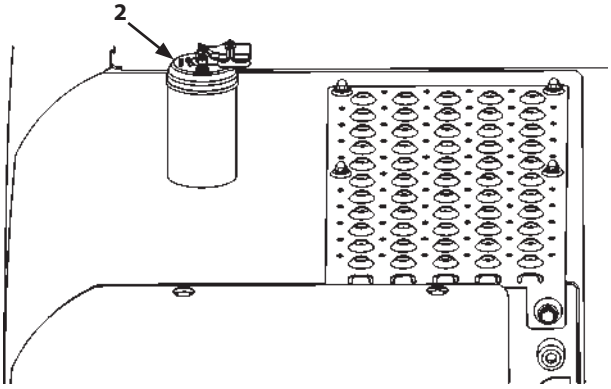


MDFY-07-001-1 ja

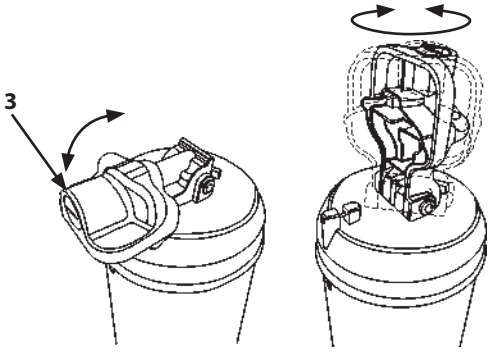
4. Just after fueling, install and lock filler cap (2) on top of the fuel tank to prevent vandalism and loss.
5. Install cap (2) of filler port.
   [Cap lock procedures]
   - Install cap (2).
   - Turn handle (3) clockwise until the cap is locked, and push down the handle.
   - Lock the key.

IMPORTANT

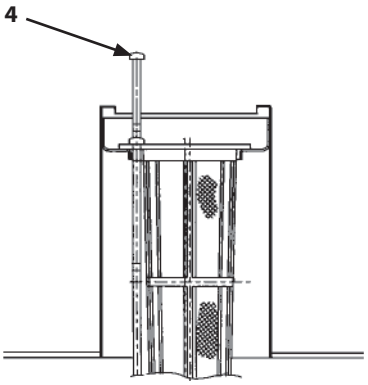
- **Keep contaminants like dirt and water out during refueling.**
- **Wipe up any spilled fuel.**
- **When fueling with the auto fuel filling device, do not forget to remove filler port cap (2). Monitor the float of level gauge (4) while fueling.**



MDCF-07-032-1 ja



MLBA-07-093-MLBA-07-095 ja



MDFY-07-001-2 ja

1 Drain Fuel Tank Sump

--- daily

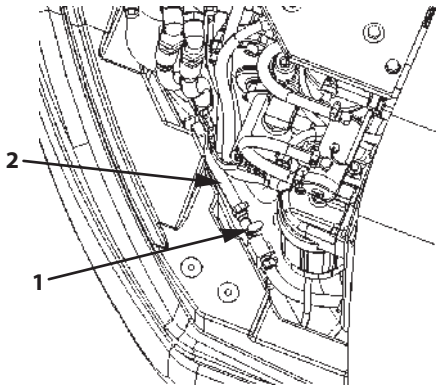
1. Park the machine on a level surface with the upperstructure rotated 90 ° for easier access.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.

M104-07-117 ja

IMPORTANT

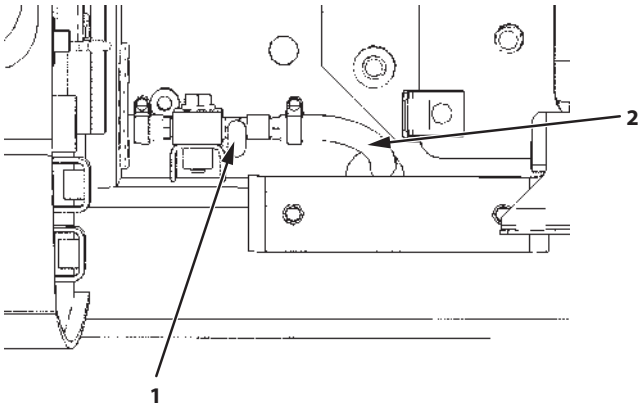
The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
5. Turn the key switch OFF. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
7. Place 0.5 liters (0.53 US qt) or larger capacity container under drain hose (2) to collect the drained water.
8. Open drain valve (1) to drain water and/or sediment through drain hose (2).
9. After draining water, securely tighten drain valve (1).



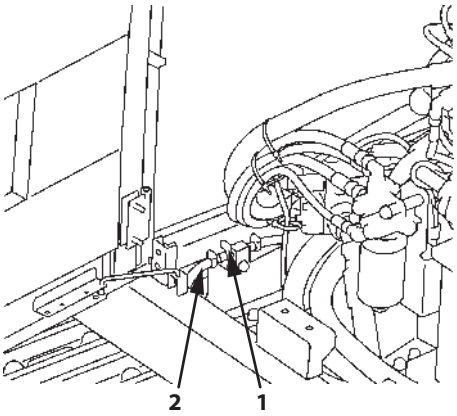
ZX135US-7H

MDCN-07-030-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-038-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-014-1 ja

2 Drain Fuel Pre-Filter

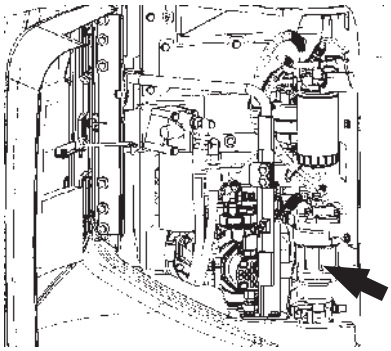
--- daily

IMPORTANT

Drain fuel pre-filter daily before starting operation. The engine may be damaged if the fuel pre-filter is not drained daily.

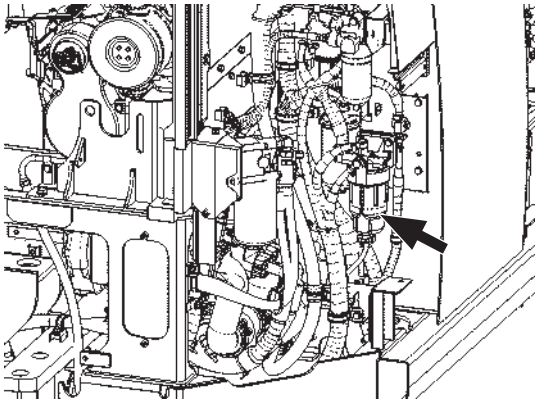
The fuel pre-filter has a water separator function. There is a float (8) inside the case which floats when water accumulates.

Check float (8) position during daily pre-work inspection. Drain water until float (8) goes to the bottom of the pre-filter case.



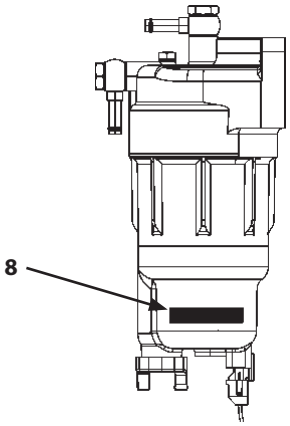
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-017-1 ja

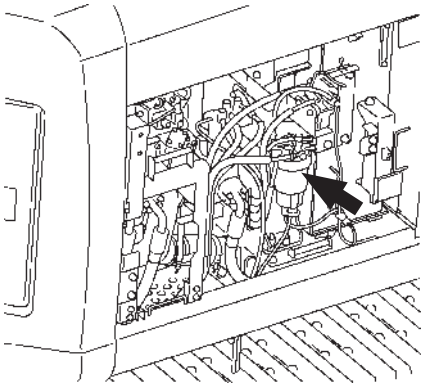


ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-040-1 ja



MDC1-07-092-1-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

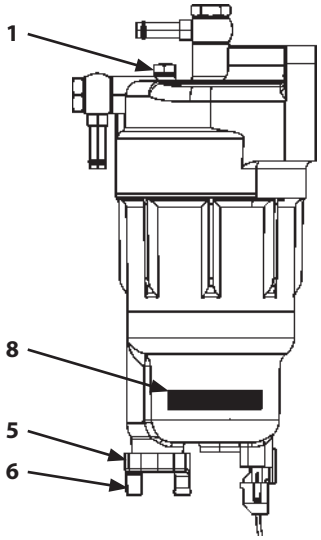
MDD5-07-015-1 ja

Drain Procedure

1. Place 0.5 l (0.53 US qt) or larger capacity container under drain hose (6).
2. Rotate drain plug (5) on the bottom of the pre-filter case counterclockwise. Drain the water accumulated in the pre-filter until float (8) goes to the bottom of the pre-filter case. If it is difficult to drain, loosen plug on the top of the pre-filter.
3. After draining water, securely tighten drain plug (5).
4. Start the engine. Check drain plug (5) for fuel leaks.

IMPORTANT

After draining water mixed in fuel, bleed air from the fuel supply system.



Fuel Pre Filter

MDC1-07-092-1-2 ja

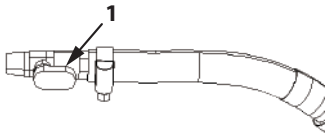
Bleeding Air from the Fuel System

Air in the fuel system may make the engine hard to start or run irregularly.

If the fuel tank has run dry, and after operations such as draining water from the fuel filter or replacing the fuel element, be sure to bleed air from the fuel system.

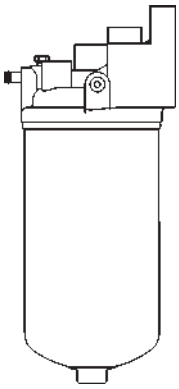
Bleeding Air

This machine is equipped with an electric fuel pump.



Fuel Cock Open Position

MDFY-07-054-1 ja



Fuel Main Filter

MDC1-07-047-1-1 ja

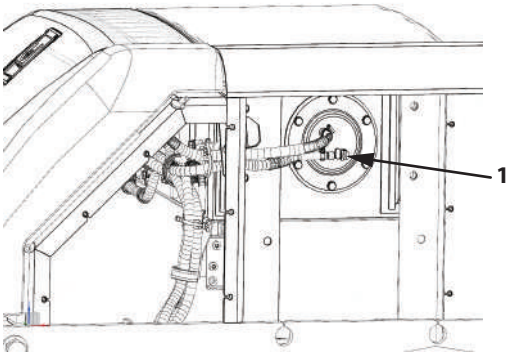
CAUTION

Fuel leaks may lead to fires.

1. Check that fuel cock (1) is open.
2. Turn the key switch ON and hold it in that position for approx. 3 minutes. This operates the electric fuel pump and starts bleeding air.
3. Start the engine. Check the fuel supply system for fuel leaks.

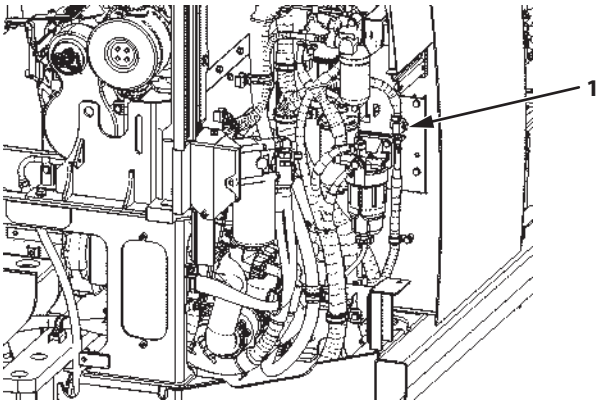
IMPORTANT

Even if air is not thoroughly bled, do not hold the key switch in the ON position for more than 5 minutes. In case air is not thoroughly bled, first return the key switch to the OFF position. After waiting for at least 30 seconds, turn the key switch ON again. Failure to do so may cause damage to the electric fuel pump and/or discharging the batteries.



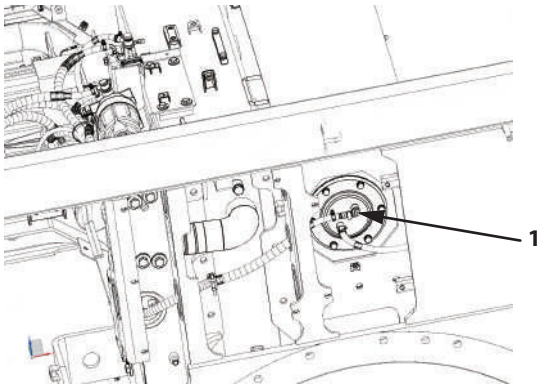
ZX135US-7H

MDHE-07-005-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-040-2 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDHE-07-006-1 ja

If Air Mixed Downstream of Common Rail

If air becomes mixed into the fuel system due to lack of fuel and the engine is difficult to start, release air by following the procedure below.

1. Following the above mentioned procedures, bleed enough air up to the engine supply pump entrance.
2. Operate starter motor for long cranking within 20 seconds. If engine falls to start, return key switch to OFF. Wait more than about 60 seconds, and then try again.

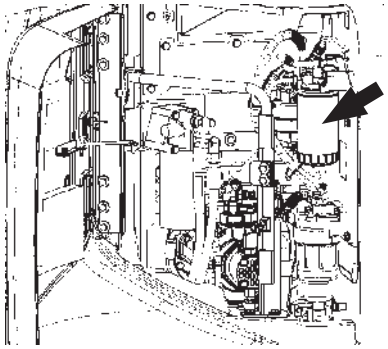
3 Replace Fuel Main Filter Element

--- every 1000 hours

IMPORTANT

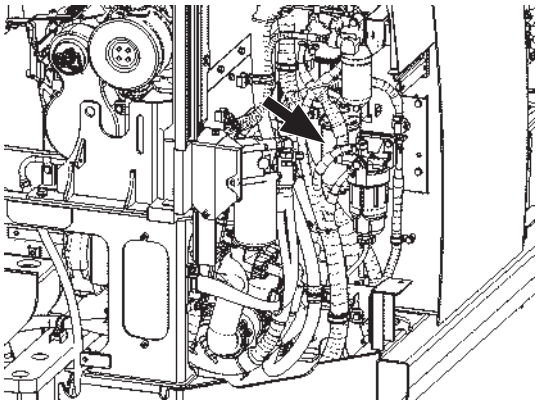
- **Be sure to use only genuine Hitachi Construction Machinery elements for the fuel main filter element and the pre-filter element. Using a different element may adversely affect engine performance and/or shorten the engine service life. Note: any engine failure caused by using other manufacturers' elements, is not covered by Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.**
- **Take care not to allow dirt and/or water to enter the fuel tank.**

The fuel main filter is located as shown at right.



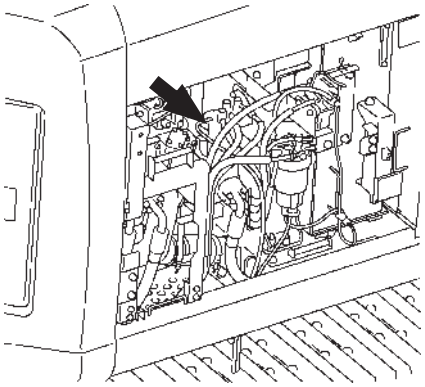
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-017-2 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-040-3 ja

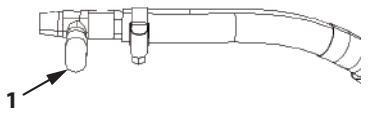


ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-015-2 ja

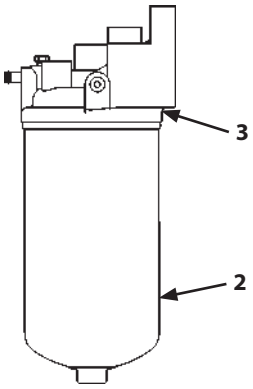
Replacement Guide

1. Close fuel cock (1).
2. Rotate the bottom of filter element (2) counterclockwise by using a spanner to remove filter element (2) from head cover (3).
   Wrench size: 24 mm
3. Apply a thin layer of fuel to the gasket (O-ring) of new filter element (2).
4. Install new filter element (2) on head cover (3) while rotating filter element clockwise. Tighten to a torque of 25±2 N·m (2.5±0.2 kgf·m, 18.5±1.5 lbf·ft).
   Wrench size: 24 mm
5. Open fuel cock (1).
6. After replacing fuel filter element (2), bleed air from the fuel supply system.
   (Refer to Bleeding Air from the Fuel System of 2.)



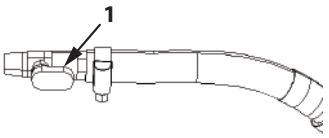
Fuel Cock Closed Position

MDFY-07-057-1 ja



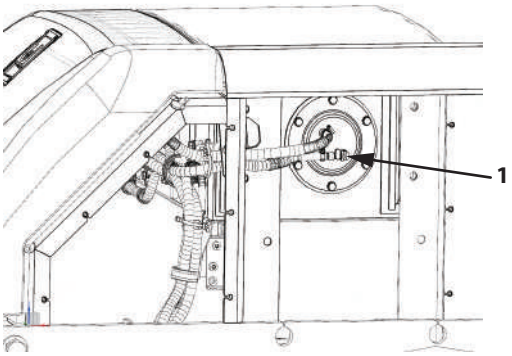
Fuel Main Filter

MDC1-07-047-2 ja



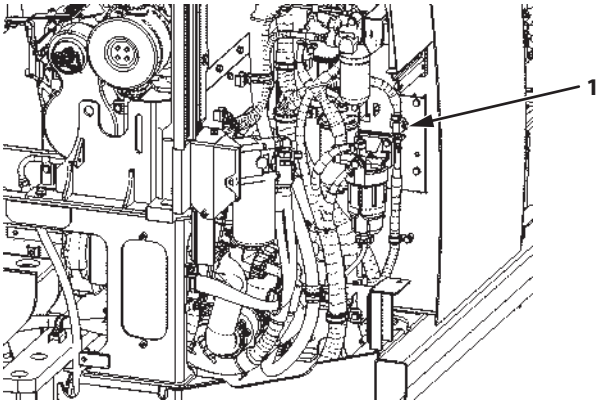
Fuel Cock Open Position

MDFY-07-054-1 ja



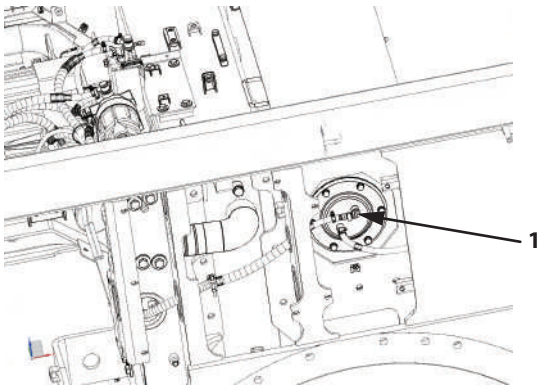
ZX135US-7H

MDHE-07-005-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-040-2 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDHE-07-006-1 ja

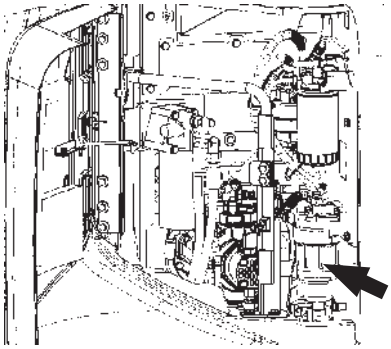
4 Replace Fuel Pre-Filter Element

--- every 1000 hours

IMPORTANT

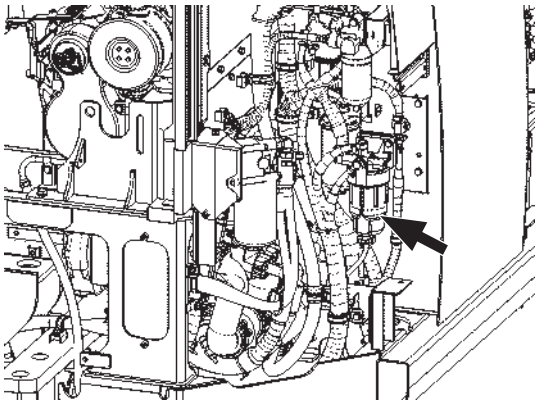
- **Be sure to use only genuine Hitachi Construction Machinery elements. Using a different element may adversely affect engine performance and/or shorten the engine service life. Note: any engine failure caused by using other manufacturers' elements, is not covered by Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.**
- **Take care not to allow dirt and/or water to enter the fuel tank.**

The fuel pre-filter is located as shown at right.



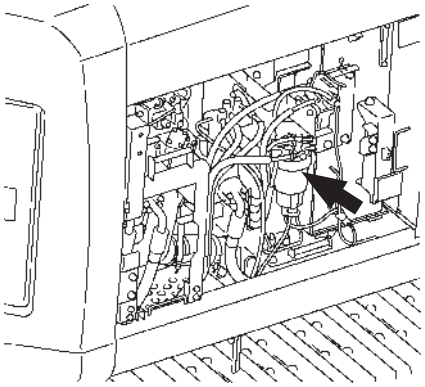
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-017-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-040-1 ja

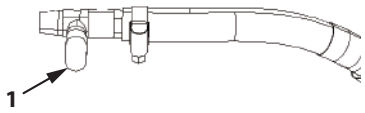


ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-015-1 ja

Replacement Guide

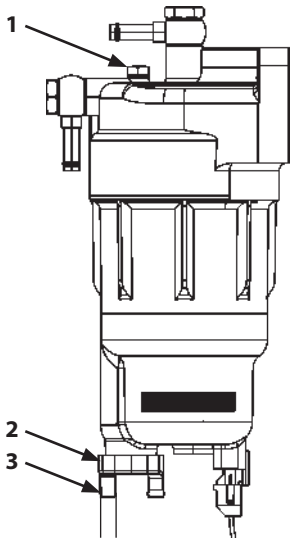
1. Close fuel cock (1).



Fuel Cock Closed Position

MDFY-07-057-1 ja

2. Place 1 liter (1.1 US gal) or larger capacity container under drain hose (3).
3. Loosen air bleed plug (1) and drain plug (2). Drain fuel until fuel does not flow out of the filter. After draining fuel, remove drain plug (2) and replace O-ring.



Fuel Pre Filter

MDFY-07-102-1 ja

4. Remove the wire harness connected to sensor (7).

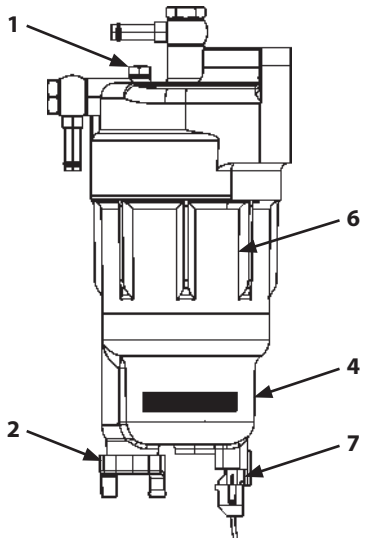
IMPORTANT

The wire harness connector has a lock (8). Press lock (8) and disconnect the connector. If an attempt is made to disconnect the connector without releasing lock (8), it may damage the connector.

5. Remove transparent filter case (4) using the special tool.
6. When transparent filter case (4) is removed, the O-ring for transparent filter case (4) is exposed. Remove the element by hand.
7. Remove filter cartridge (6).
8. Install new filter cartridge (6). After the upper gasket of cartridge (6) touches the head, hand tighten the cartridge a further 3/4 turn.
9. Replace the O-ring with a new one and tighten transparent filter case (4) to 30 ±2 N·m (3.0±0.2 kgf·m, 22±1.5 lbf·ft) using the special tool.
10. Tighten air bleed plug (1) and drain plug (2).
11. Reconnect the wire harness that was disconnected from sensor (7).

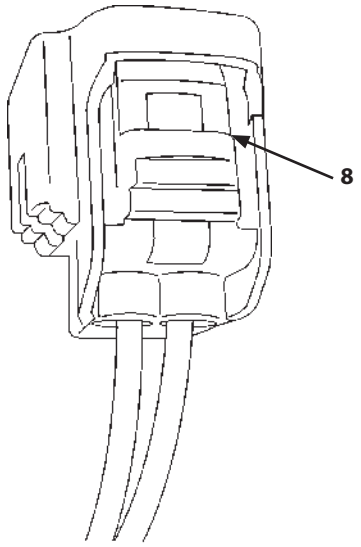
IMPORTANT

Fit the parts together until lock (8) of the wire harness connector locks in place.



Fuel Pre Filter

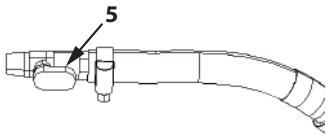
MDC1-07-092-4 ja



Detailed View of Sensor (7) Connector

MDAK-07-057-1 ja

12. Open fuel cock (5).
13. After replacing fuel filter element, bleed air from the fuel supply system.
    (Refer to Bleeding Air from the Fuel System of 2.)



Fuel Cock Open Position

MDFY-07-054-2 ja

5 Check Fuel Hoses

...daily

--- every 250 hours

CAUTION

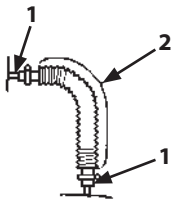
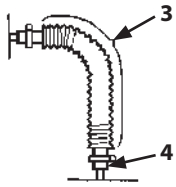
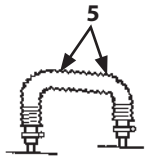
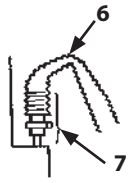
Fuel leaks can lead to fires that may result in serious injury.

- **Escaping combustible fluid can cause fires. Check for kinked hoses, hoses that rub against each other, and any fuel leaks.**
- **Repair or replace any loose or damaged hoses.**
- **Never reinstall bent or damaged hoses.**

According to the check points shown below, check hoses for oil leaks and damage.

If any abnormality is found, replace or retighten as instructed in the table.

Hose

Interval (hours)	Check Points	Check For	Remedies	
Daily	Hose ends	Leak (1)	Retighten or replace	
	Hose covers	Wear, crack (2)	Replace	
Every 250 hours	Hose covers	Crack (3)	Replace	
	Hose ends	Crack (4)	Replace	
	Hose	Bend (5), Collapse (6)	Replace	 
	Hose fittings	Corrosion (7)	Replace	

F. Air Cleaner

1 Clean and Replace Air Cleaner Element (Outer)

Clean --- every 250 hours or when the restriction indicator comes ON

Replace --- after cleaning 6 times or after one year

CAUTION

- **Clean and replace the air cleaner element with the engine stopped.**
- **Dust will fly about when cleaning. Getting dust in the eyes, on the skin or breathing it may be bad for the health. Only clean outside or in a well-ventilated place and wear the appropriate protective clothing (such as safety glasses, gloves, dust mask, etc.).**

IMPORTANT

Clean and replace the air cleaner element as indicated below. If the procedure below is not followed correctly, the air cleaner element may be damaged. Damage to the air cleaner element may lead to engine malfunction.

- **Do not remove the inner element when cleaning the outer element.**
- **Use compressed air at 0.69 MPa (7 kgf/cm^2, 100 psi) or less when cleaning the outer element.**
- **Use clean, dry compressed air.**
- **Keep the element and the compressed air nozzle well away from yourself.**
- **When replacing the outer element, replace the inner element as well; do not reuse it.**

Clean or replace the outer element.

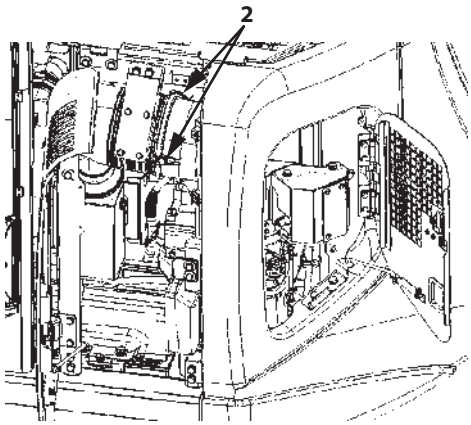
Stop the engine before servicing outer element (1).

1. Remove clamp (2) of the cover. Remove the cover. Remove any dirt from the case.
2. Remove outer element (1) by holding its edge and slowly shaking it left to right, up and down while twisting it. Do not scatter dirt while removing outer element (1).
3. Do not remove the inner element.

IMPORTANT

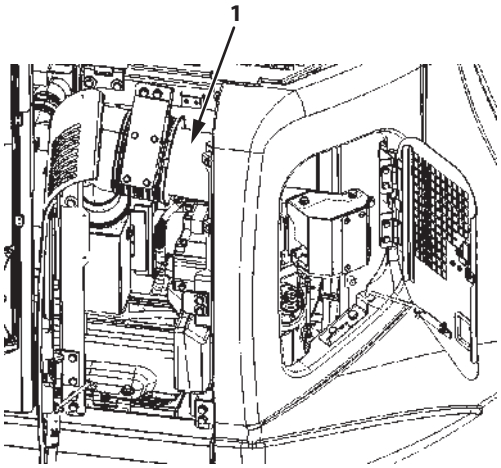
Do not hit or strike outer element (1) against another object to clean it.

4. Use compressed air pressure [less than 0.69 MPa (7 kgf/cm^2, 100 psi)] to blow from the inside to the outside of outer element (1) to clean it.
   After that, blow compressed air along the pleats, and then blow out from the inside.
   When blowing compressed air, be sure to keep the air nozzle at least 50 mm (2 in) away from the element.
5. After cleaning is complete, be sure to check outer element (1) for any damage such as holes or wear of filter paper. If any damage is found, replace the element with a new one.



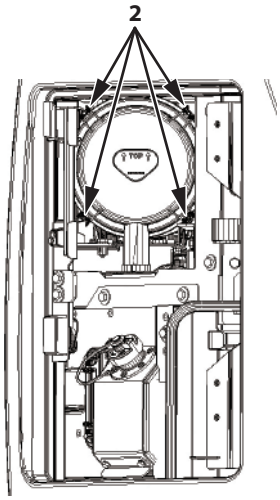
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-019-1 ja



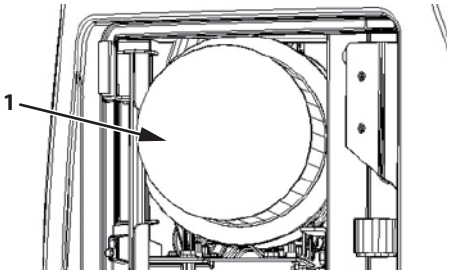
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-020-1 ja



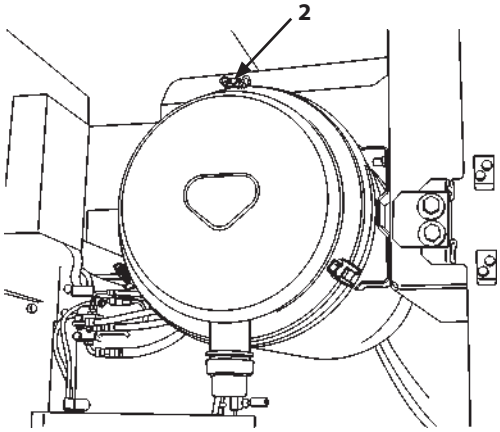
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-149-1 ja



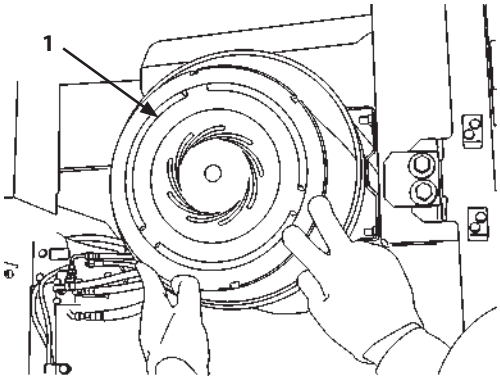
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-135-1 ja



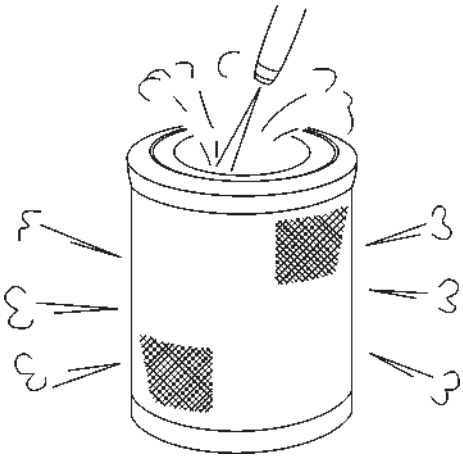
ZX345USLC-7H

M1U1-07-027-1 ja



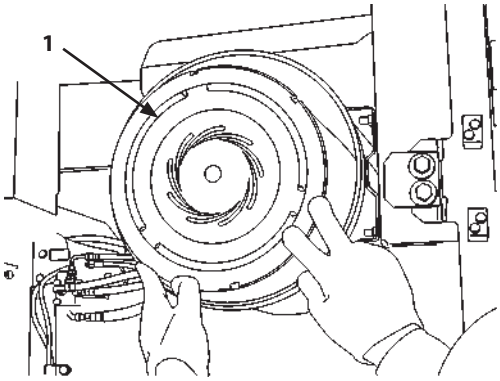
ZX345USLC-7H

M1U1-07-028-1 ja



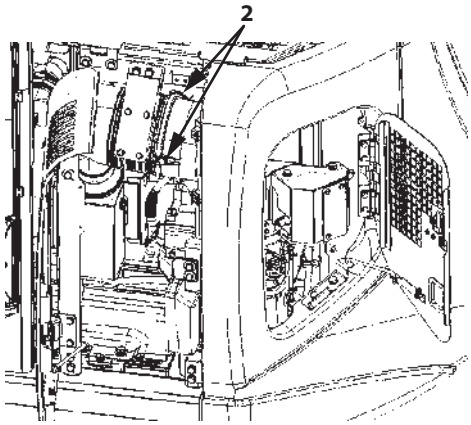
MJAE-07-059 ja

6. Press outer element (1) into the air cleaner body straightly by hand. Ensure that outer element (1) is properly installed by pushing its bottom edge.



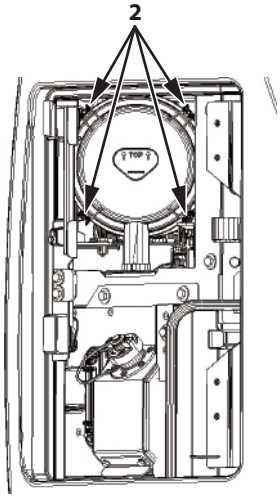
M1U1-07-028-1 ja

7. Install cover and tighten clamps (2).



ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-019-1 ja



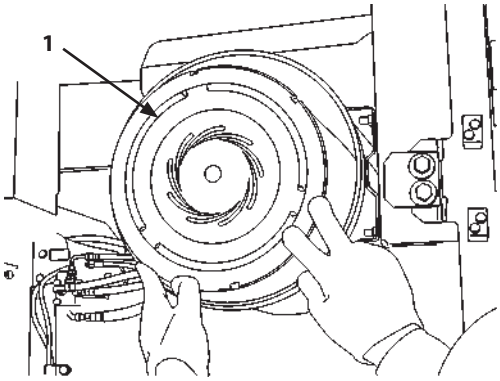
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-149-1 ja

8. In the case that the air cleaner clog indicator lights soon after cleaning outer element (1), even if it has been cleaned less than 6 times, replace the inner element with a new element (1).

IMPORTANT

Do not install outer element (1) and/or the cover forcibly when installing the clamps. Doing so may result in deformation of clamps (2), element, and/or cover.



ZX345USLC-7H

M1U1-07-028-1 ja

2 Replace Air Cleaner Element (Inner)

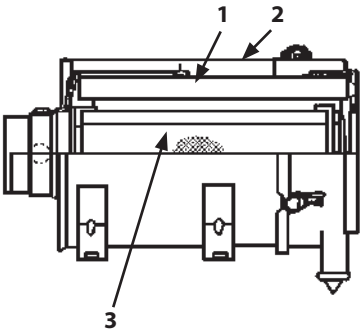
Replace --- When outer element is replaced

Replacing the Inner Element

IMPORTANT

Do not clean and reuse inner element (3).

1. After removing outer element (1), clean inside the air cleaner body (2) with a clean cloth before removing inner element (3).
2. Remove inner element (3). Replace it with new one.



Cross Section of Air Cleaner Housing

M157-07-061-2 ja

G. Cooling System

Coolant

IMPORTANT

Adjust the coolant used in the machine to the appropriate concentration of soft water and coolant according to the operating environment temperature. For the concentration for each operating temperature, refer to the table below.
Do not use strong acid or alkaline water.
If the concentration is inappropriate, service life of the cooling parts and engine may be shortened due to damage by freezing or corrosion of coolant system parts, or machine over heat.
Use the Hitachi Construction Machinery genuine Long-Life Coolant or organic Coolant.
It is highly recommended to use Hitachi Construction Machinery genuine Long-Life Coolant as it is specially designed and tested to provide adequate performance for the machine.

Recommended Products	Alternative Products
Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Long-Life Coolant	Organic type corrosion inhibitor long life coolant

Coolant Mixing Ratio

Air Temperature		Mixing Ratio	ZX135US-7H				ZX245USLC-7H				ZX345USLC-7H			
			Coolant		Soft water		Coolant		Soft water		Coolant		Soft water	
°C	°F	%	L	US gal	L	US gal	L	US gal	L	US gal	L	US gal	L	US gal
-1	30	30	6.3	1.7	14.7	3.9	8.4	2.2	19.6	5.2	12.3	3.3	28.7	7.5
-15	5	35	7.4	2.0	13.6	3.6	9.8	2.6	18.2	4.8	14.4	3.8	26.6	7.0
-20	-4	40	8.4	2.2	12.6	3.3	11.2	3.0	16.8	4.4	16.4	4.3	24.6	6.5
-25	-13	45	9.5	2.5	11.5	3.0	12.6	3.3	15.4	4.1	18.5	4.9	22.6	6.0
-30	-22	50	10.5	2.8	10.5	2.8	14.0	3.7	14.0	3.7	20.5	5.4	20.5	5.5

Precautions for handling antifreeze

CAUTION

Antifreeze is poisonous.

- **Antifreeze is poisonous; if ingested, it can cause serious injury or death. Induce vomiting and get emergency medical attention immediately.**
- **If antifreeze is accidentally splashed into eyes, flush with water for 10 to 15 minutes and get emergency medical attention.**
- **When storing antifreeze, be sure to keep it in a clearly marked container with a tight lid. Always keep antifreeze out of the reach of children.**
- **Pay attention to fire hazards. Antifreeze is specified as a dangerous substance in the fire protection law.**
- **When disposing of antifreeze, be sure to comply with all local regulations. When storing or disposing of antifreeze, be sure to comply with all local regulations.**

1 Check Coolant Level

--- daily

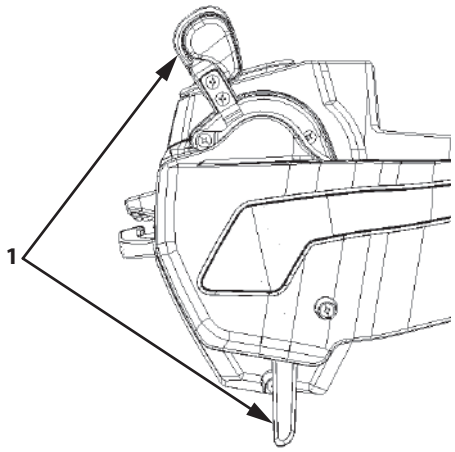
1. Confirm that pilot shut-off lever (1) is in the LOCK position.
2. Confirm that all control levers are placed in neutral.
3. Insert key (2) into the key switch and turn it to the ON position. Press and hold home switch (3) with the engine stopped.
   Coolant level indicator (4) must be displayed in green.

IMPORTANT

Do not rely only on the monitor display for checking machine conditions, such as coolant level.
Visually check them yourself as required.
Always check the machine on a firm, level surface.
Do not start the engine during the check.

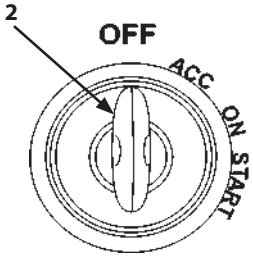
NOTE

If the security function is enabled, a password is required.

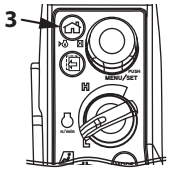


LOCK position

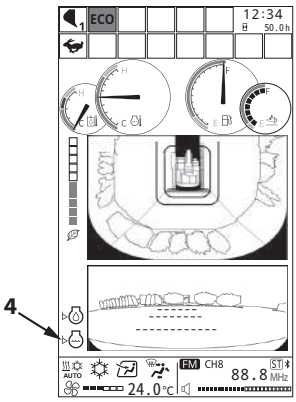
MDFY-01-088-2 ja



MDCD-01-030-3 ja



MDFY-01-094-8 ja



MDFY-MT-130-2 ja

---Visual Inspection

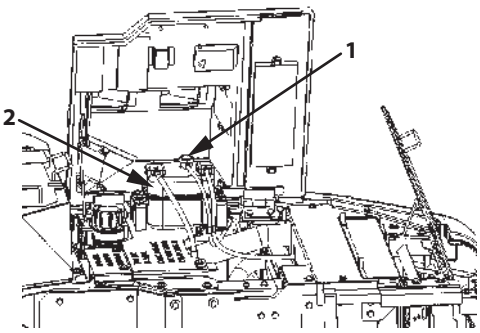
The coolant level must be between the FULL (3) and LOW (4) marks on expansion tank (2).

If the coolant level is low, remove cap (1) from expansion tank (2) and refill coolant.

CAUTION

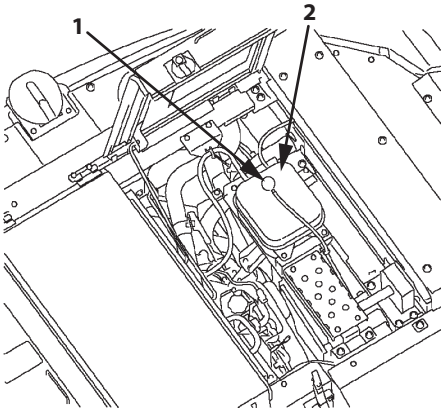
Do not remove cap (1) until the coolant in the radiator cools. Hot steam may gush out, possibly causing severe burns. Once the coolant cools down, loosen cap (1) gradually to release the pressure before removing it.

If expansion tank (2) is empty, add coolant from the cap (1) side of the tank.



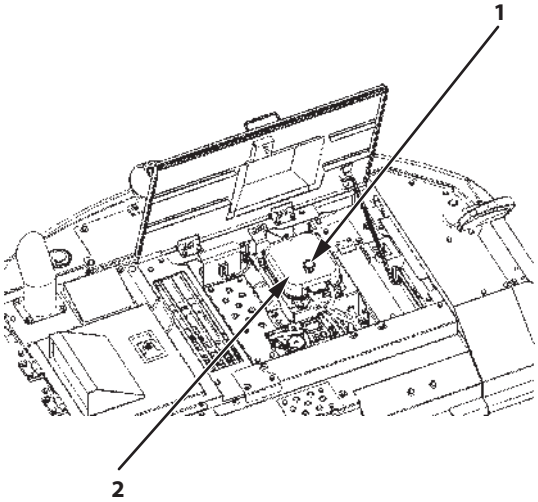
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-003-2 ja



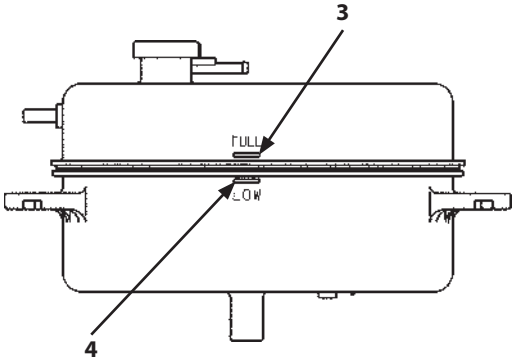
ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-006-3 ja



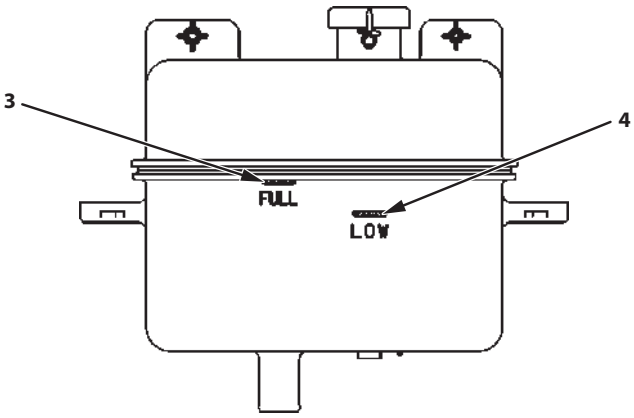
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-009-2 ja



ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H

MDAK-07-048-1 ja



ZX135US-7H

MDAK-07-047-1 ja

2 Inspect V-belt

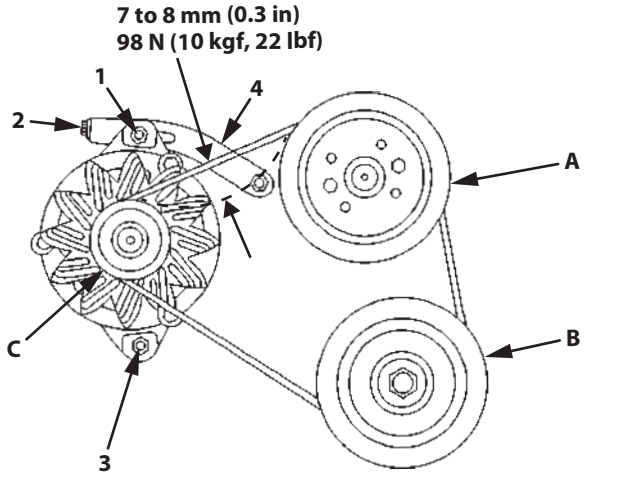
(Only ZX135US-7H)
--- every 250 hours (first time after 50 hours)

IMPORTANT

Loose fan belt may result in insufficient battery charging, engine overheating, as well as a rapid, abnormal belt wear. Belts that are too tight can damage both bearings as well as the belts.

Inspection

Check fan belt tension by depressing the midpoint between the fan pulley and the alternator pulley by your thumb with a depressing force of approximately 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf). Deflection must be within the value illustrated in the right. Visually check the belt for wear. Replace if necessary.



M1U1-07-089-3 ja

A	Fan Pulley	C	Alternator Pulley
B	Crank Pulley		

Adjust Drive Belt Tension

1. Loosen lock nut (1) and alternator lower mounting bolt (3).
2. Rotate tension adjust bolt (2) to adjust the belt tension.
3. After completing adjustment, tighten lock nut (1) and alternator lower mounting bolt (3) to specifications. Standard Tightening Torque:

   Nut : 25 N·m (2.5 kgf·m, 19 lbf·ft)
   Bolt : 52 N·m (5.2 kgf·m, 38 lbf·ft)

IMPORTANT

When a new belt is installed, be sure to readjust the tension after operating the engine for 3 to 5 minutes at slow idle speed to be sure that the new belt is seated correctly.

3 Check and adjust V-belt tension

(Except ZX135US-7H)

--- every 250 hours (first time only, after 50 hours)

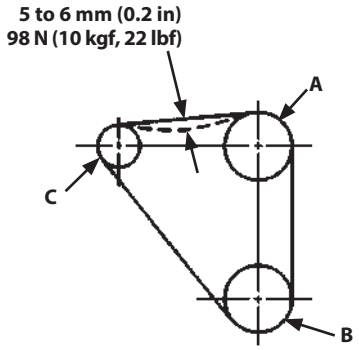
IMPORTANT

A loose fan belt may result in insufficient battery charging, engine overheating, as well as a rapid, abnormal belt wear. Belts that are too tight can damage both the belts themselves and the bearings of the water pump and/or alternator.

Inspect

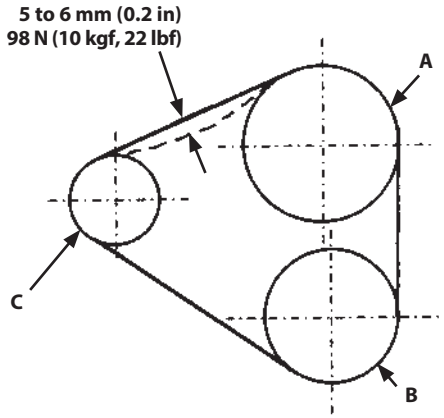
Check belt tension at the midpoint between the fan pulley (A) and the alternator pulley (C) by pressing down with your thumb at a force of approximately 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf). The correct amount of deflection is illustrated at right.

Inspect the belt for wear. Replace if necessary.



Appearance of fan belt (ZX245USLC-7H)

M1GR-07-006-5 en_GB



Appearance of fan belt (ZX345USLC-7H)

M1HM-07-001-6 en_GB

A	Fan pulley	C	Alternator pulley
B	Crank pulley		

Adjust Belt Tension

1. Loosen lock nut (1) at the top of alternator (3), and lock nut (4) at the bottom of alternator.
2. Rotate tension adjust bolt (2) to adjust the belt tension and turn alternator (3) back and forth to make sure the tension is adjusted accurately.
3. Securely tighten lock nuts (1) and (4).

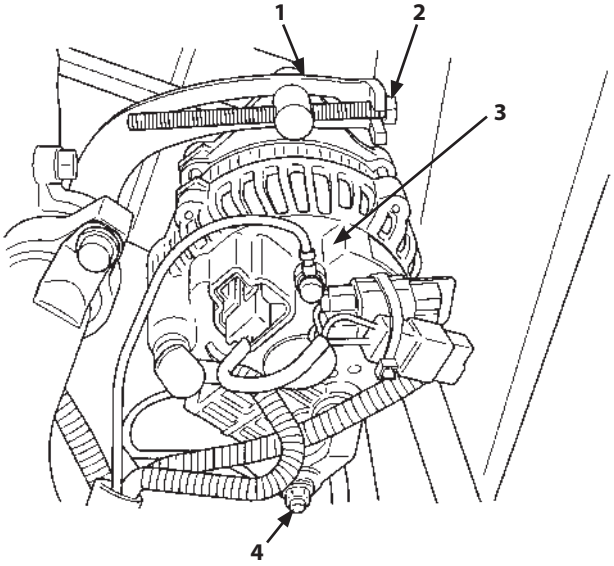
   Tightening Torque

   Nut (1) : 76 N·m (7.6 kgf·m, 56 lbf·ft)

   Nut (4) : 127 N·m (12.7 kgf·m, 94 lbf·ft)

IMPORTANT

When a new belt is installed, be sure to re-adjust the tension after operating the engine for 3 to 5 minutes at slow idle speed to be sure that the new belt is seated correctly.



M197-07-072-1 ja

4 Change Coolant

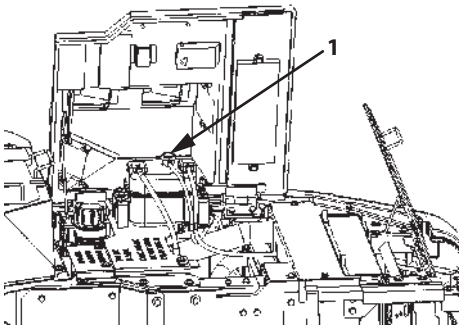
--- twice a year (in spring and autumn)

NOTE

When Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Long-Life Coolant is used, change interval is once every two years (For example in autumn every other year) or every 4000 hours whichever comes first.

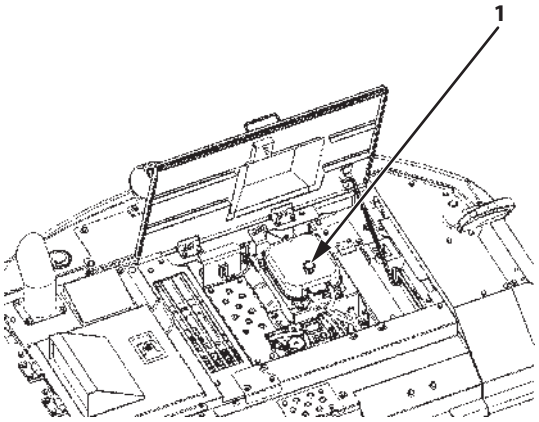
CAUTION

Do not loosen cap (1) on the expansion tank when coolant in the radiator is hot. Hot steam may gush out, possibly causing severe burns. After the coolant cools down, slowly loosen cap (1) to release the pressure inside the radiator before removing it.



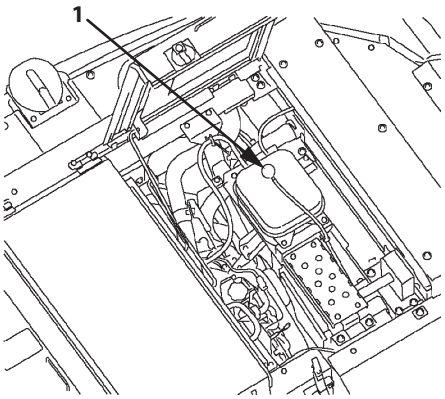
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-003-3 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-009-3 ja

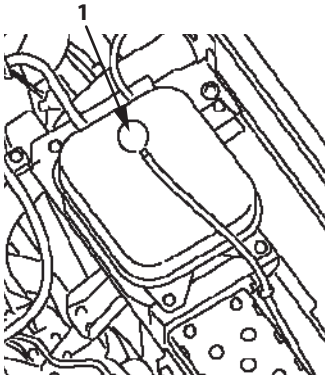


ZX345USLC-7H

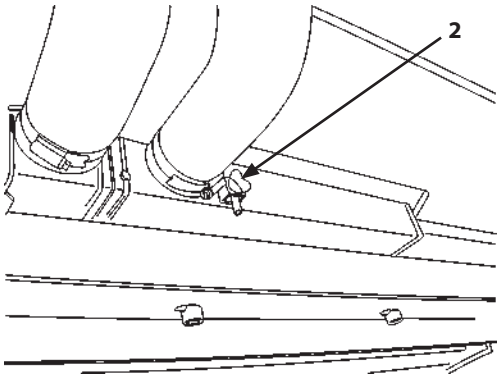
MDD5-07-006-4 ja

Guide to Changing Coolant

1. Park the machine according to the instructions in "Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance" (7-10).
2. Remove the under cover. Remove cap (1) of the expansion tank and open drain cock (2) of the radiator to drain the coolant. Remove impurities such as scale and sludge at the same time.
3. Close drain cock (2) and fill with soft or tap water with few impurities, along with detergent (radiator cleaner); put cap (1) of the expansion tank back in place. Run the engine at slightly higher than slow idle and warm it up until the coolant temperature gauge reaches horizontal. Then continue to run it for another 10 minutes.
4. Stop the engine and open radiator drain cock (2). Flush out the cooling system with tap water until the water coming out is clear; this helps remove rust and sediment.
5. Close radiator drain cock (2) and fill with soft or tap water with few impurities and this time mix in LLC. When adding coolant, do so slowly to avoid introducing air bubbles into the system.
   Fill coolant in the expansion tank until its level reaches the upper limit line.



MDHE-07-007-1 ja



M1U1-07-029-2 ja

IMPORTANT

If coolant is filled above the upper limit line, air in the cooling system may not be bled from the expansion tank. Do not fill coolant above the upper limit line.

6. Run the engine for several minutes to stabilize the coolant temperature gauge, and then fully bleed air from the cooling system. Stop the engine and make sure the coolant level is in between the upper and lower lines inside the expansion tank. Add coolant if necessary. Check the coolant level again. (The coolant level should be between the upper and lower limit lines.)

5 Clean Radiator, Oil Cooler and Intercooler Core

Outside --- every 500 hours

Inside --- once a year

WARNING

- **Touching moving parts is hazardous. Getting cut or entangled can lead to serious injury or death.**
- **Before servicing, stop the engine and the fan to prevent any accident.**
- **Never attempt to start the engine when the cover is open.**
- **If tools or parts are dropped into the radiator/oil cooler/intercooler core, remove them before starting the engine.**

CAUTION

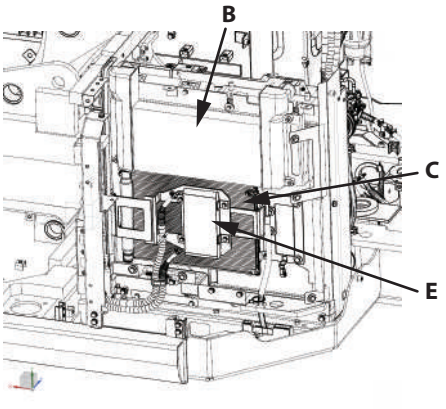
Dust goes flying if compressed air or water is used for cleaning. Getting dust in the eyes, on the skin or breathing it may be bad for the health. Only clean outside or in a well-ventilated place and wear the appropriate protective clothing (such as safety glasses, gloves, dust mask, etc.).

IMPORTANT

Cleaning with high-pressure air or water may cause damage, so only use at a pressure of 0.2 MPa (2 kgf/cm^2) or less.

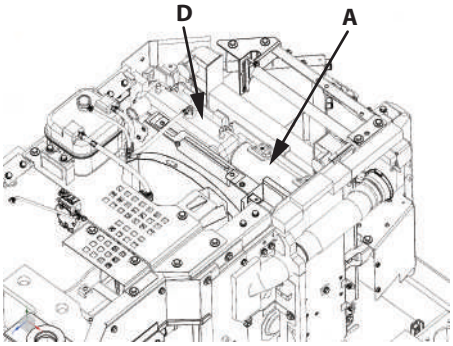
The radiator, oil cooler and intercooler are arranged in parallel.

To prevent a drop in performance of the cooling system when dust or dirt is sticking to the radiator, oil cooler or intercooler core, clean them with compressed air at 0.2 MPa (2 kgf/cm^2) or lower or with water.



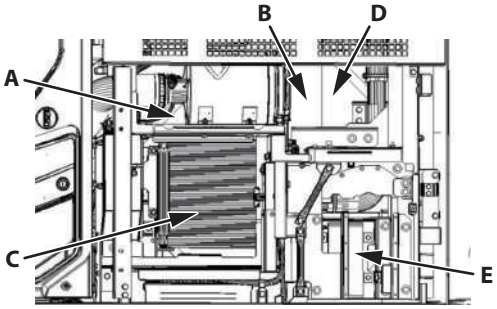
ZX135US-7H

MDHE-07-008-1 ja



ZX135US-7H

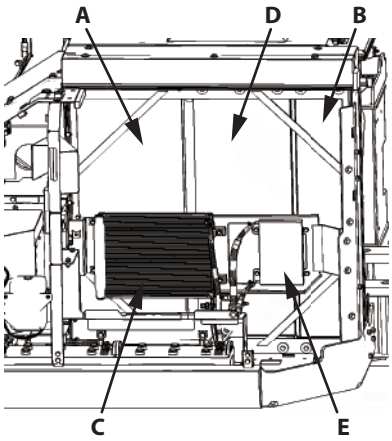
MDHE-07-009-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-136-1 ja

A	Oil Cooler	D	Radiator
B	Intercooler	E	Fuel Cooler
C	Air Conditioner Condenser		



ZX345USLC-7H

MDHE-07-010-1 ja

A	Oil Cooler	D	Radiator
B	Intercooler	E	Fuel Cooler
C	Air Conditioner Condenser		

Cleaning

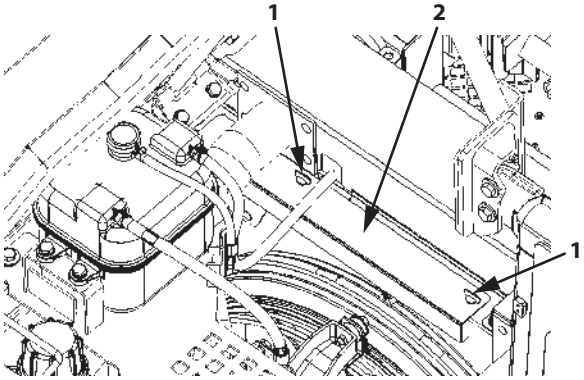
ZX135US-7H, ZX345USLC-7H

1. Loosen bolt (1) to open cover (2) and perform cleaning.

Take care not to break fins during cleaning. Close cover (2) and tighten bolt (1) after cleaning.

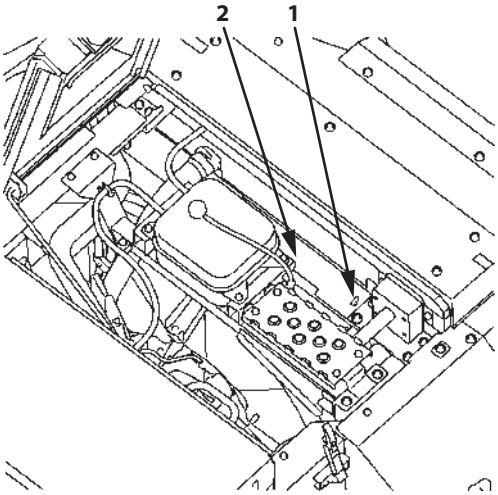
IMPORTANT

When the machine is operated in dusty sites, check the cores periodically and clean if necessary.



ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-026-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-017-1 ja

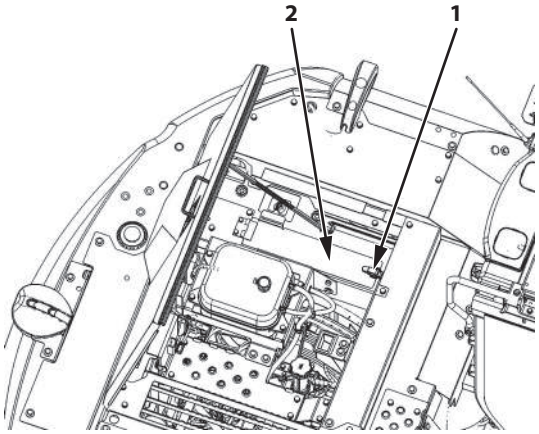
ZX245USLC-7H

1. Release latch (1), open cover (2) and perform cleaning.

Take care not to break fins during cleaning. After finishing the cleaning, close cover (2) and engage latch (1) to secure.

IMPORTANT

When the machine is operated in dusty sites, check the cores periodically and clean if necessary.



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-051-1 ja

6 Clean Oil Cooler, Radiator and Intercooler Front Screen

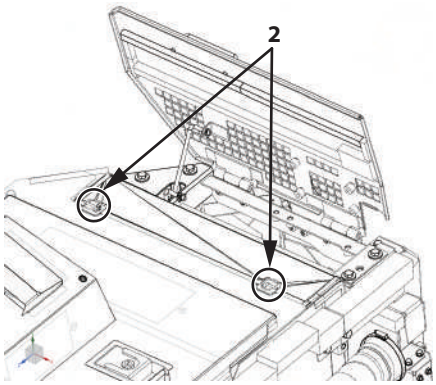
--- every 500 hours

IMPORTANT

Check the screen daily for dirt when working at very dusty sites; if clogged, remove the screen and clean it.

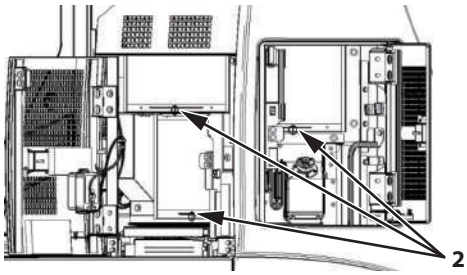
Remove ring pins (2) and take off the screen.

When refitting the screen, be sure to attach the ring pins (2) to prevent the screen falling off.



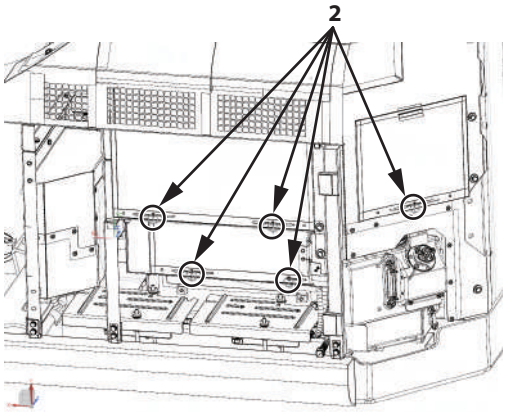
ZX135US-7H

MDHE-07-011-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-137-2 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDHE-07-012-1 ja

7 Clean Air Conditioner Condenser

--- every 500 hours

IMPORTANT

Check the condenser daily for dirt when working at very dusty sites; if clogged, remove the screen and clean it.

8 Clean fuel oil cooler

--- every 500 hours

IMPORTANT

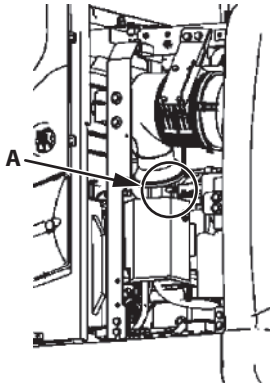
Check the fuel cooler daily for dirt when working at very dusty sites; if clogged, remove the screen and clean it.

9 Drain Intercooler (Only ZX135US-7H)

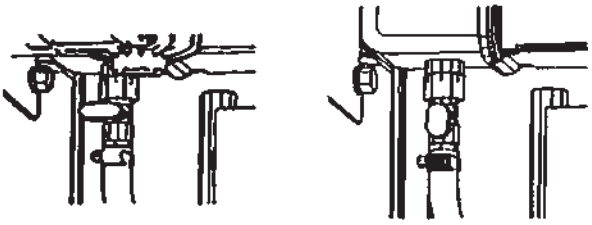
---After operation (If there is a risk of freezing)

IMPORTANT

- **Condensate may accumulate in the intercooler under certain operating conditions.**
- **If the condensate freezes, it may damage the intercooler.**
  If there is a risk of freezing, drain the condensate after operating the machine.
  The intercooler is extremely hot just after machine operation and should be allowed to cool before being drained.
  Be careful handling the drained condensate as it may be hot.
- **After draining, close the drain valve tight.**
  Failure to close the drain valve may result in abnormal engine output.



MDAT-07-088-1 ja



MLAD-07-056 ja

Details A:

Closed Position (Other than when Draining) | Open Position (when Draining)

H. Electrical System

WARNING

Improper radio communication equipment and associated parts, and/or improper installation of radio communication equipment affects the machine's electronic parts, causing unintended movement of the machine.

Improper installation of electrical equipment may cause machine failure and/or a fire on the machine.

Contact Authorized Dealer when installing radio communication equipment or additional electrical parts.

IMPORTANT

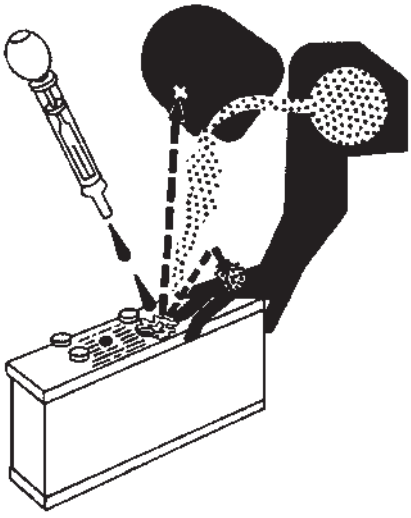
Do not disassemble or modify electrical parts and electronic components. If replacement or modification of such components is required, contact Authorized Dealer.

1 Battery

WARNING

- **While charging or using the battery, explosive gas can be produced. Keep sparks and flames away from batteries.**
- **Do not leave cover (1) removed. Do not keep tools, metals or flammable materials around the battery or inside the battery room. If a metal tool is placed across the battery terminal and a vehicle component such as the engine block, sparks may be created, possibly resulting in fire and/or explosion.**
- **Do not continue to use or charge the battery when the electrolyte level is lower than specified. Explosion of the battery may result.**
- **Charge the batteries in a well ventilated location.**
- **Sulfuric acid is used in the battery electrolyte. It eats skin and clothing, and even metal. Wearing safety glasses and rubber gloves.**
- **Do not tilt the battery. The battery may leak, causing burns or damaging clothing.**

SA-032 ja



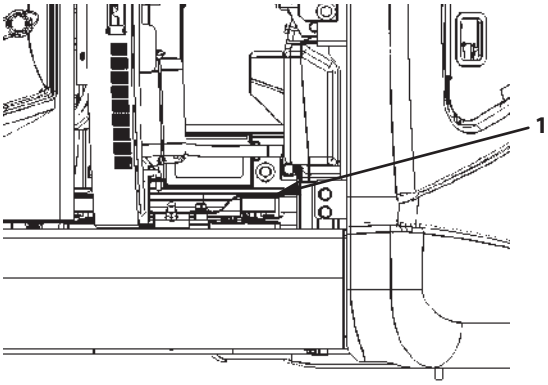
SA-036 ja

IMPORTANT

- **If the battery is used with the electrolyte level lower than the specified lower level, the battery may deteriorate quickly.**
- **Do not refill battery electrolyte more than the specified upper level. Electrolyte may spill, damaging painted surfaces and/or corroding other machine parts.**

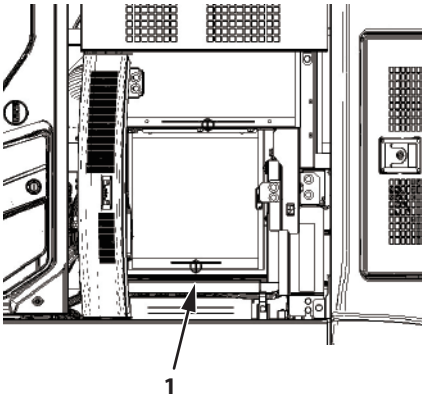
NOTE

If battery electrolyte is refilled above the specified upper level line or beyond the bottom end of the sleeve, use a pipette to remove the excess electrolyte until the electrolyte level is down to the bottom end of the sleeve. After neutralizing the wiped up electrolyte with baking soda (sodium bicarbonate), flush it with plenty of water. Or, contact the battery manufacturer.



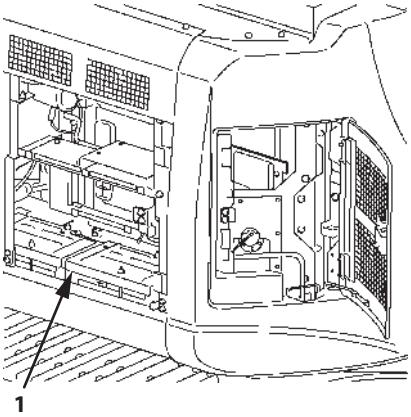
Battery Location
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-030-1 ja



Battery Location
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-151-1 ja



Battery Location
ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-016-1 ja

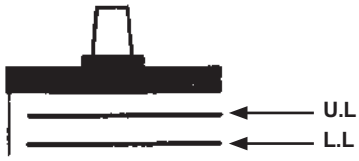
Precautions for Handling Batteries

- If electrolyte spills on your skin and/or clothes, immediately flush the skin and/or clothes with water and then wash further with soap.
  If splashed in the eyes, flush with water for approximately 15 minutes and seek immediate medical attention.
- Avoid using fire hazards such as matches, lighters and tobacco near the batteries. Do not allow sparks to fly.
- Check or service the battery only after stopping the engine, turning the key OFF and removing the battery caps.
- Contact with the battery just after operation may cause personal injury. Wait for the battery to cool.
- When the battery is charging, flammable hydrogen gas is created. Remove the battery from the machine and charge the battery with the caps off in a well ventilated area.
- When disconnecting the battery terminals, first disconnect the ground line [minus (-)] side terminal. When connecting the battery terminals, connect the ground line [minus (-)] side terminal last. If a piece of metal, such as a tool comes in contact with the battery plus (+) side terminal and the machine frame when both terminals are connected, the electrical system may short-circuit, possibly creating a dangerous situation.
- When a battery gets old, mixing in a new battery with an old may cause the new battery to have a shorter than normal life. Replace both batteries at the same time.
- Loose terminals may cause sparks to fly. Securely tighten them.

Electrolyte Level Check --- monthly

Check the electrolyte level at least once a month.

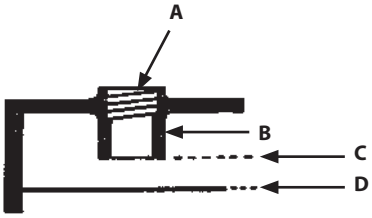
1. Park the machine on level ground and stop the engine.
2. How to Check the Electrolyte Level
   a. When checking the level from the battery side: Clean around the level marks with a water-dampened cloth and make sure the electrolyte level is between U.L (Upper Level) and L.L (Lower Level). Do not use a dry towel. Static electricity may develop, causing the battery gas to explode.
   If the electrolyte level is lower than the middle level between the U.L and L.L, immediately refill with distilled water or commercial battery fluid.
   After refilling, securely tighten the filler plug.
   Be sure to refill with distilled water before charging (operating the machine).



Side of Battery

M146-07-109-2 ja

U.L Upper Level L.L Lower Level



Inside of Battery

M146-07-110-2 ja

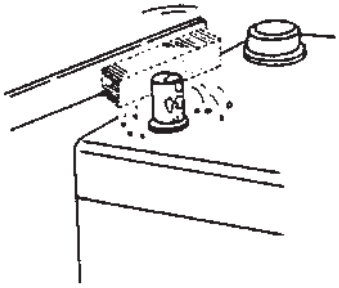
A Filler plug C Upper Level
B Sleeve D Lower Level (Separator Top)

   b. If checking from the side is not possible, or if there are no level marks on the side:
   After removing the filler plug from the top of the battery, check the electrolyte level by viewing through the filler port. It is difficult to judge the electrolyte level accurately in this case, so judge its level as shown in the diagrams. When the electrolyte level is lower than the bottom end of the sleeve, refill with distilled water or commercial battery fluid up to the bottom end of the sleeve.
   After refilling, securely tighten the filler plug.
   Be sure to refill with distilled water before charging (operating the machine).
   c. If the level can be checked with an indicator, etc., follow its instructions.

   Checking the Level via an Indicator

Normal		When electrolyte reaches the bottom of the sleeve, surface tension makes the electrodes appear bent.
Low		When the electrolyte surface is lower than the bottom end of the sleeve, the electrode ends are seen straight.

3. Always keep the area around the battery terminals clean. To prevent battery discharge.
   Check terminals for looseness and/or rust. Coat terminals with grease or petroleum jelly to prevent corrosion build up.



M409-07-072 ja

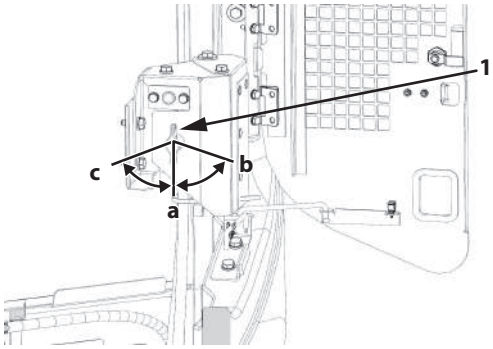
Replace Battery

IMPORTANT

Before replacing the battery, put battery disconnect switch (1) in the OFF position (c).

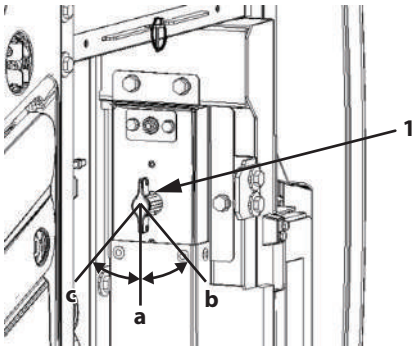
This machine is equipped with two 12 volt batteries, which are negatively grounded.

If one battery is damaged on the 24 V system, replace the damaged battery with the same type of new battery. If a maintenance-free battery is damaged, replace it with new maintenance-free battery. The type of battery charger differs depending on the type of battery. So, the batteries may be overloaded and damaged.



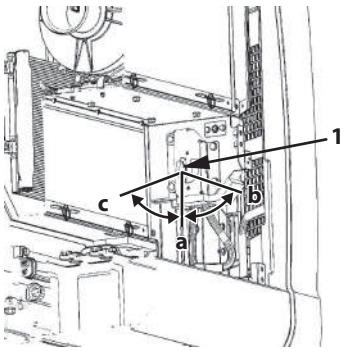
ZX135US-7H

MDHE-01-013-2 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-060-3 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDHE-01-015-2 ja

a: ON position

b: OFF position (with communication terminal power supply ON)

c: OFF position

Check Electrolyte Specific Gravity ---every month

WARNING

- **Gas produced by the battery can be explosive.**
  Keep sparks and flames away from batteries.
  Use a flashlight to check the battery electrolyte level.
- **Sulfuric acid in battery electrolyte is poisonous. It is strong enough to burn skin, eat holes in clothing, and cause blindness if splashed into the eyes.**
- **Never check the battery charge by placing a metal object across the posts. Use a voltmeter or hydrometer.**
- **Always remove the grounded (-) battery clamp first and replace it last.**

Avoid hazards by:

1. **Charge the batteries in a well ventilated location.**
2. **Wear safety glasses and rubber gloves.**
3. **Avoiding breathing fumes when electrolyte is added.**
4. **Avoiding spilling or dripping electrolyte.**
5. **Start the engine using the proper procedure and booster cables.**

If you spill acid on yourself:

1. **Flush your skin with water.**
2. **Apply baking soda or lime to help neutralize the acid.**
3. **If it gets in your eyes, rinse them out for 15 to 30 minutes and get medical attention immediately.**

If acid is swallowed:

1. **Do not induce vomiting.**
2. **Drink large amounts of water or milk.**
3. **Get medical attention immediately.**

IMPORTANT

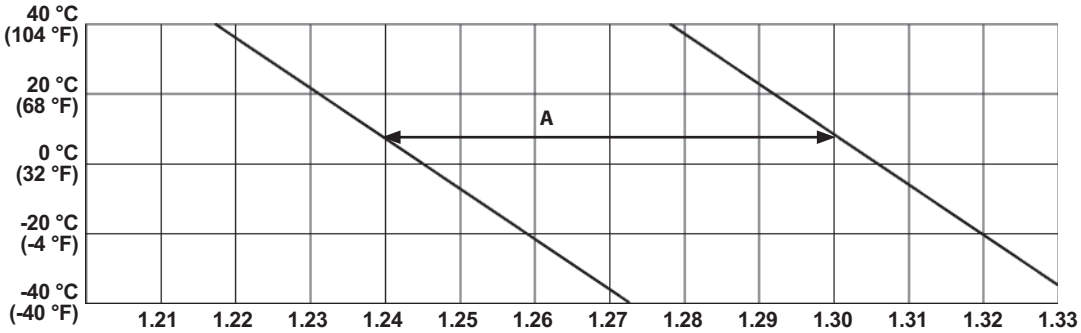
- **Add water to batteries in freezing weather before you begin operating your machine for the day, or before charging the batteries.**
- **If the battery is used with the electrolyte level lower than the specified lower level, the battery may deteriorate quickly.**
- **Do not refill electrolyte above the specified upper level. Electrolyte may spill, damaging painted surfaces and/or corroding other machine parts.**
- **Take care to keep batteries in a good, charged condition. Failure to do so may prevent the engine from starting.**

NOTE

Check the specific gravity of the electrolyte after it is cooled, not immediately after operation. Immediately after operation the electrolyte is still changing, so it cannot be measured accurately.

Check the electrolyte specific gravity in each battery cell.

The lowest limit of the specific gravity for the electrolyte varies depending on electrolyte temperature. The specific gravity should be kept within the range (A) shown below. Charge the battery if the specific gravity is below the limit.



Relationship between Electrolyte Specific Gravity and Temperature

M104-07-054-2 en_GB

2 Replace Fuses

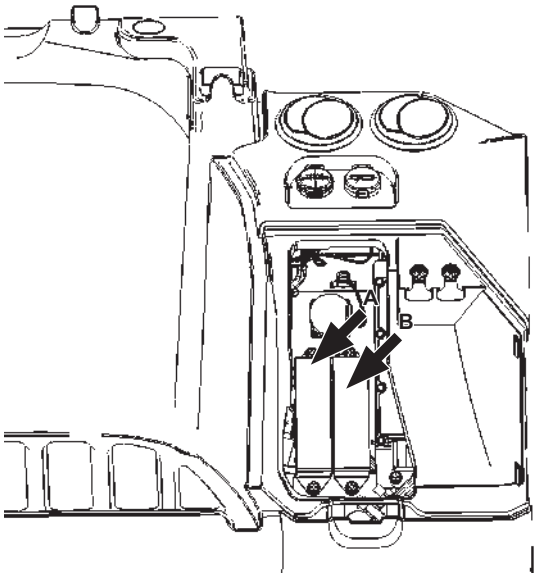
...as required

If any electrical equipment fails to operate, first check the fuses. The fuse box is located behind the operator's seat.

NOTE

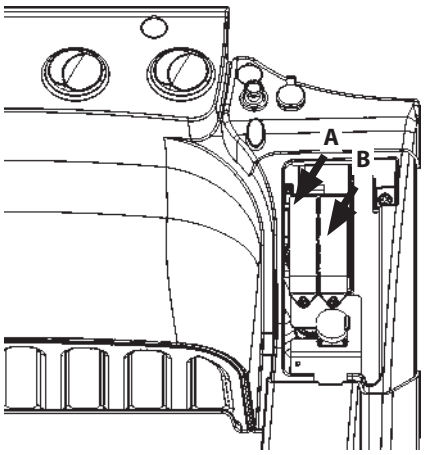
- *One spare fuse for each fuse capacity is provided in the fuse box.*
- *A fuse removing tool is provided in the fuse box.*

Fuse Box



ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-01-013-1 ja

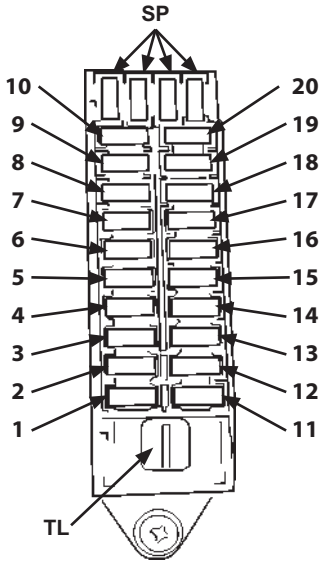


ZX345USLC-7H

MDFY-01-025-1 ja

Fuse box (A)

10-	CONTROLLER 5 A	20-	OPT.3 (BATT) 5 A
9-	BACKUP 10 A	19-	HORN 10 A
8-	ECU-IG 30 A	18-	IDLE STOP 5 A
7-	START 5 A	17-	POWER ON 5 A
6-	OPT.2 (ALT) 20 A	16-	GLOW RELAY 5 A
5-	OPT.1 (ALT) 5 A	15-	AUX 10 A
4-	SOLENOID 20 A	14-	MONITOR 5 A
3-	HEATER 20 A	13-	RADIO 5 A
2-	WIPER 15 A	12-	LIGHTER/SOCKET (24 V) 5 A
1-	LAMP 20 A	11-	FUEL PUMP 5 A



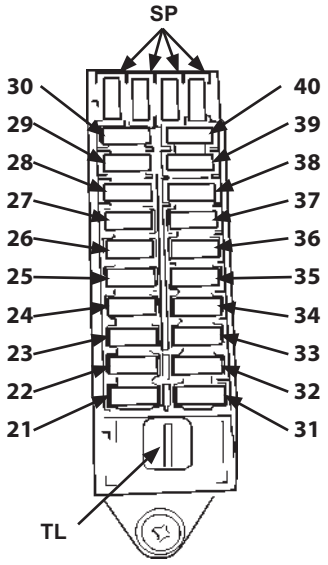
Fuse box (A)

M1GR-01-003-3-1 ja

SP: Spare Fuses TL: Tool

Fuse box (B)

30-	-	40-	-
29-	EL POWER 10 A	39-	USB (12 V) 5 A
28-	MG POWER 10 A	38-	AUX 3 10 A
27-	SOCKET (12 V) 10 A	37-	AUX 2 10 A
26-	AERIAL C/U (12 V) 5A	36-	DISCONNECT BACK-UP 5 A
25-	PI SHUT-OFF 5 A	35-	UREA HEAT 20 A
24-	SENSOR UNIT 10 A	34-	DCU 20 A
23-	12 V UNIT 20 A	33-	WARNING LAMP 10 A
22-	CAB LAMP REAR 10 A	32-	SEAT COMPR 10 A
21-	SEAT HEATER 10 A	31-	QUICK COUPLER 5 A



Fuse box (B)

M1GR-01-003-4-1 ja

SP: Spare Fuses

TL: Tool

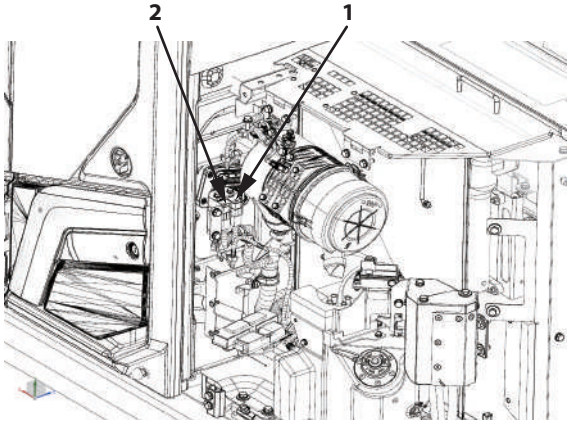
ZX135US-7H, ZX345USLC-7H

- Slow Blow Fuse (Main Fuse)
  If the machine does not start when the key is put in the START position, the slow blow fuse may be blown. Check and replace the fusible link.

Check and Replacement Procedure

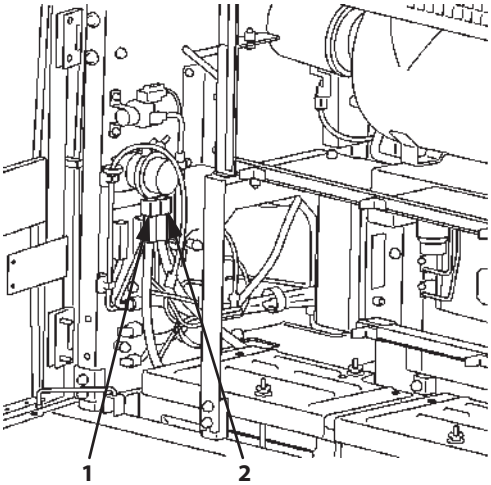
Open the cover on the left rear of the machine, remove the cover next to the battery and check and/or replace.

1- Slow Blow Fuse
   45 A
2- Slow Blow Fuse
   65 A



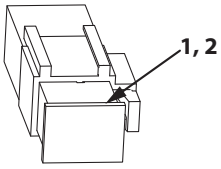
ZX135US-7H

MDHE-07-013-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-020-1 ja



MDFY-07-090-3 ja

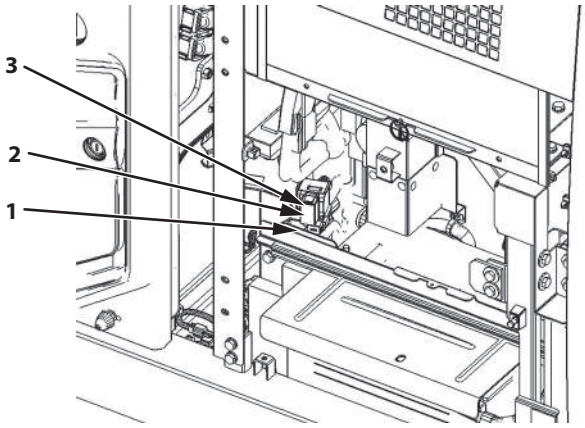
ZX245USLC-7H

- Slow Blow Fuse (Main Fuse)
  If the machine does not start when the key is put in the START position, the slow blow fuse may be blown. Check and replace the fusible link.

Check and Replacement Procedure

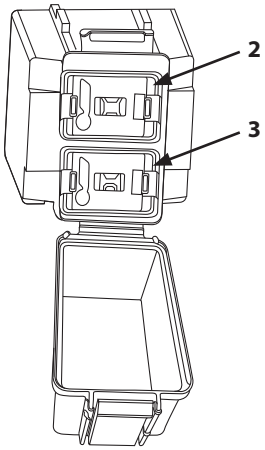
Open the cover on the left rear of the machine, remove the cover next to the battery and check and/or replace.

1- Slow Blow Fuse
   45 A
2- Slow Blow Fuse
   100 A
3- Slow Blow Fuse
   80 A

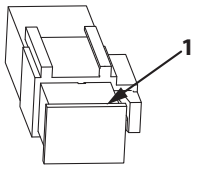


ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-057-1 ja



MDFY-07-091-1 ja



MDFY-07-090-1 ja

I. Miscellaneous

1 Change Bucket

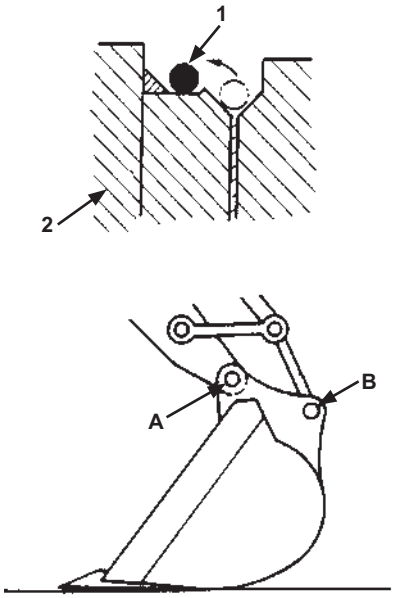
CAUTION

When removing/mounting pins, be careful of flying pieces of metal to avoid injury. Wear goggles or safety glasses, and safety equipment appropriate for the job.

Select a roomy area with good footing, and ensure the safety of anyone in the area while working. Slowly move the front attachment. When using a signal person, coordinate hand signals before starting.

Removal

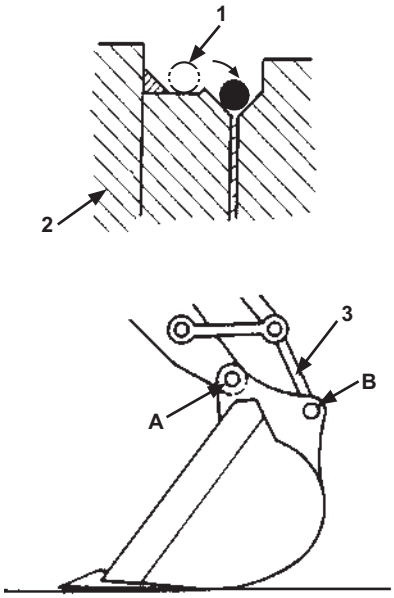
1. Place the bucket in a stable position.
2. Slide O-ring (1) out of its normal position toward the boss side of bucket (2).
3. Remove bucket pins A and B to separate the arm and bucket.



M104-07-063-2 ja

Mounting

1. Clean the pins and pin bores. Apply sufficient grease to the pins and pin bores.
2. Place the new bucket in stable position as shown in the figure.
3. Fit the arm to hole A and link (3) to hole B with the pins.
4. Install the locking pins and snap rings on each pin.
5. Install O-rings (1) to the specified positions.
6. Apply grease to each pin.
7. Start the engine and run it at slow idle. Slowly operate the bucket in both directions to check for any interference in bucket movement.



M104-07-063-3 ja

2 Convert Bucket Connection Into Face Shovel

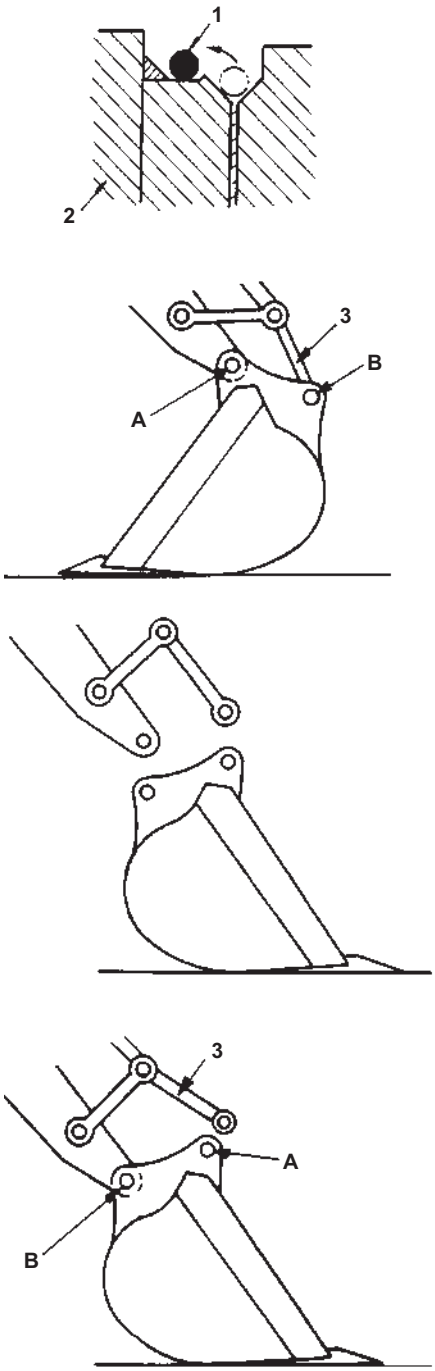
CAUTION

When removing/mounting pins, be careful of flying pieces of metal to avoid injury. Wear goggles or safety glasses, and safety equipment appropriate for the job.

Converting the bucket connection allows you to use the machine as a face shovel. Select a roomy area with good footing, and ensure the safety of anyone in the area while working. Slowly move the front attachment. When using a signal person, coordinate hand signals before starting.

Guide to Inverting Bucket

1. Place the bucket in a stable position.
2. Slide O-ring (1) out of its normal position toward the boss side of bucket (2).
3. Remove bucket pins A and B to separate the arm and bucket.
   Clean the pins and pin bores. Apply sufficient grease to the pins and pin bores.
4. Invert the bucket so it is in a stable position as shown in the figure.
5. Fit the arm to hole B and link (3) to hole A with the pins.
6. Install the locking pins and snap rings on each pin.
7. Install O-rings (1) to the specified positions.
8. Apply grease to each pin.
9. Start the engine and run it at slow idle. Slowly operate the bucket in both directions to check for any interference in bucket movement.



M104-07-064-2 ja

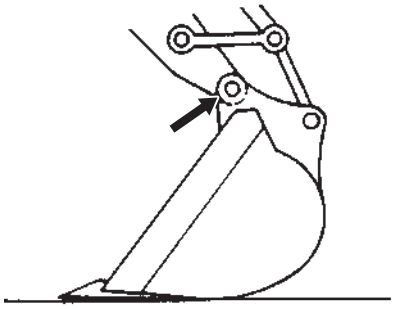
3 Adjust Bucket Linkage

The machine is equipped with a bucket adjustment system to take up play in the linkage. When the gap between the bucket and the boss at the tip of the arm gets too big, adjust it as follows.

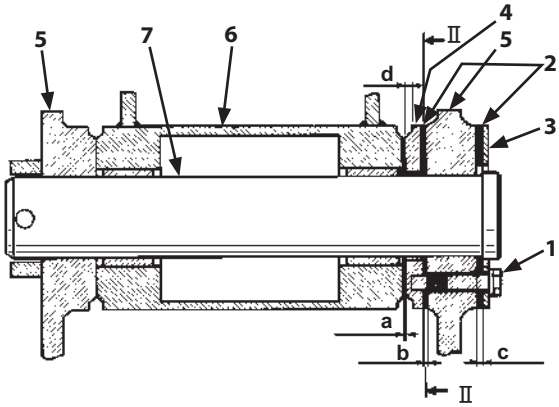
1. Place the bucket in a stable position as illustrated.
2. Swing it ever so slightly counter-clockwise and press gently on the arm tip boss to the left side of the bucket (side without the gap adjusting mechanism).
3. Stop the engine and put the pilot shut-off lever in the LOCK position.
4. Slightly loosen the 3 bolts (1) (using a 22 mm spanner wrench). Remove all shims (2) from "gap (c)" between plate (3) and the bucket. As shim (2) is a dual partitioning type, it can be easily removed by slightly loosening bolt (1) and inserting the tip of a screw driver in the gap between the left and right shims (2).
5. Pressing on the head of bolt (1) by hand eliminates gap (a) and gap (b) gets larger by that amount; put as many of the shims (2) just removed into gap (b) as possible, without forcing it.
6. Install remaining shims (2) into "gap (c)" and tighten bolts (1) to a tightening torque of 140 N·m (14 kgf·m, 103 lbf·ft).

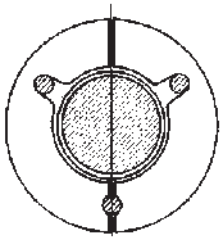
NOTE

The total number of shims (2) used in "gap b" and "gap c" are 6x2=12. Forgetting to return the remaining shims (2) into "gap c" in step 6 above will cause the end of bolt (1) to stick out and it may scratch the end of the arm tip boss (4) and/or damage the bolt. When the end face of boss (4) wears such that "groove (d)" for the O-ring reaches 5 mm (0.2 in), replace boss (4) with a new one.



M503-07-056-2 ja





Shim Shape (Cross-section II)

M1G6-07-010-2 ja

a	Gap	3	Plate
b	Gap	4	Boss
c	Gap	5	Bucket
d	Groove width	6	Arm Tip Boss
1	Bolts	7	Pin
2	Shim		

4 Remove Travel Levers

The machine can be operated with just the travel pedals. However, its operability suffers compared to using the levers.

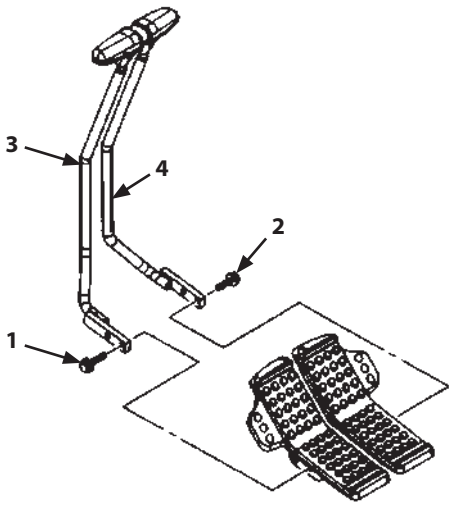
How to Remove Travel Control Levers

Remove 2 each of bolts (1) and (2) to remove travel control levers (3) and (4) from the brackets.

NOTE

Wrench size: 17 mm

Tightening Torque: 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 37 lbf·ft)



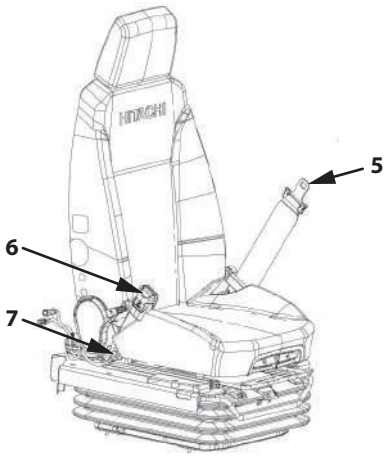
M178-07-077-1 ja

5 Check and Replace Seat Belt

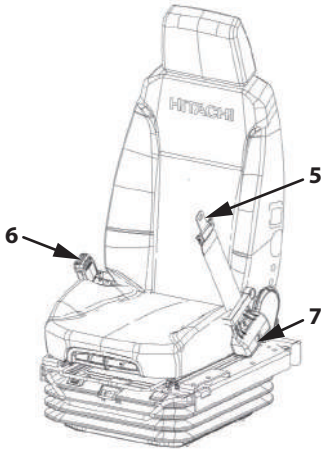
Check --- daily

Replace --- every 3 years

Prior to operating the machine, thoroughly examine belt (5), buckle (6) and attaching hardware (7). If any item is damaged or substantially worn, replace seat belt or components before operating the machine. We recommend that seat belt (5) be replaced every 3 years regardless of its apparent condition.



MDHE-07-014-1 ja



MDHE-07-015-1 ja

6 Clean Mobile Phone (Smartphone) Holder

--- as required

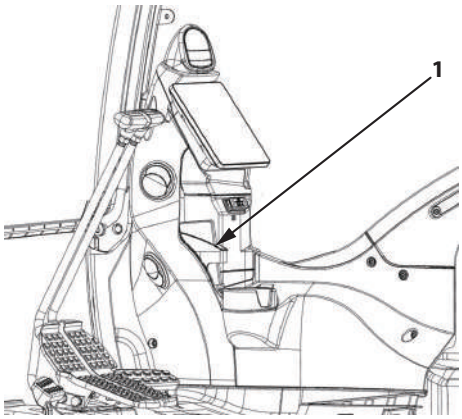
A mobile phone (smartphone) holder (1) is provided to the front right of the operator's seat.
The holder can be removed by pulling towards you while raising part A.
Once removed, holder (1) can be washed.
For washing, use a neutral detergent.

To reattach, follow the procedure below.

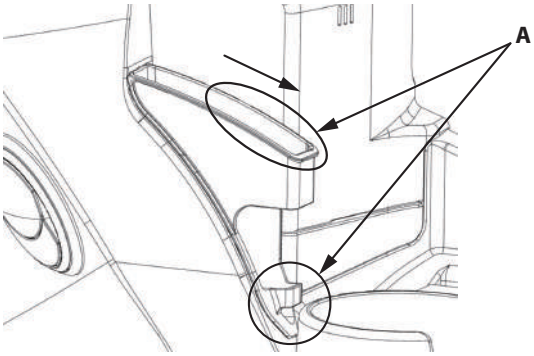
1. Press hook (2) into attachment part (5).
2. Press hook (4) into attachment part (7) while simultaneously pressing hook (3) into attachment part (6).

Repeated removal and reattachment will wear out the hook parts.

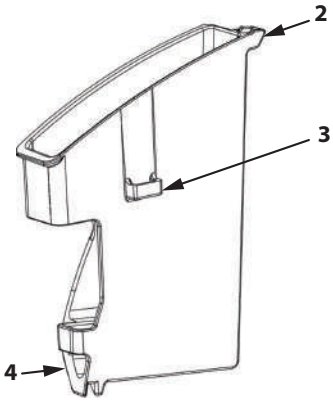
If holder (1) can no longer be securely attached, it should be replaced.



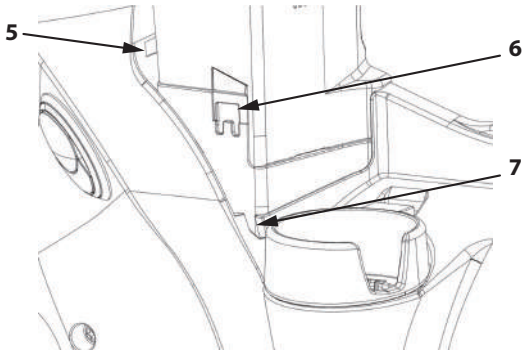
MDFY-07-065-1 ja



MDFY-07-066-1 ja



MDFY-07-067-1 ja



MDFY-07-068-1 ja

7 Clean Drink Holder

--- as required

Drink holder (1) is attached to the front left of the operator's station. It can be removed by inserting fingers into handle part A and pulling towards you.

Once removed drink holder (1) can be washed. For washing, use a neutral detergent.

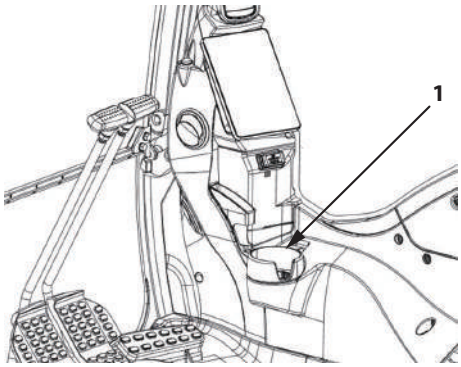
When reattaching, press drink holder (1) straight into cover (2). While pressing, ensure that hooks (3) on the side surface of drink holder (1) locate in groove (4) of cover (2).

Repeated removal and reattachment will wear out hooks (5).

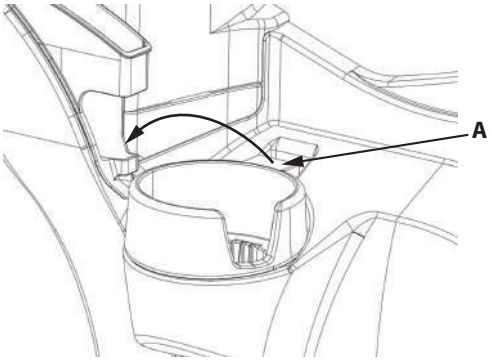
If drink holder (1) can no longer be securely attached, it should be replaced.

IMPORTANT

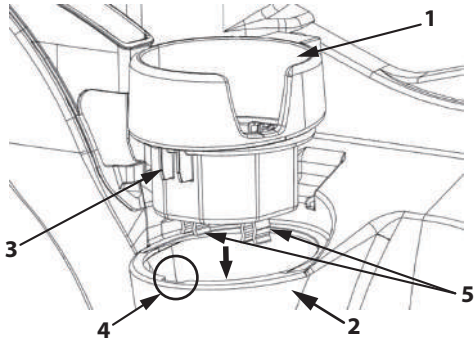
If the drink holder is forced into the cover at an angle, the hook parts may break.



MDFY-07-069-1 ja



MDFY-07-070-1 ja



MDFY-07-071-1 ja

8 Clean Storage Pocket

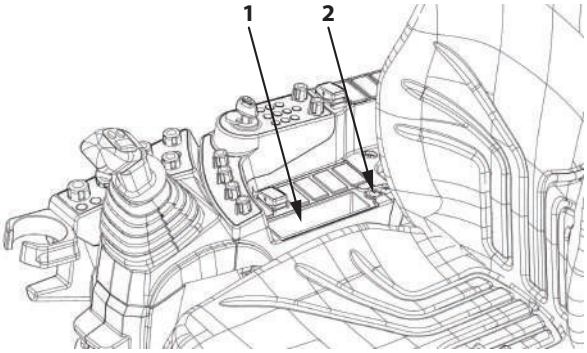
--- as required

If storage pocket (1) is mounted in the console, it can be removed for cleaning by unscrewing screw (2). For washing, use water or a neutral detergent.

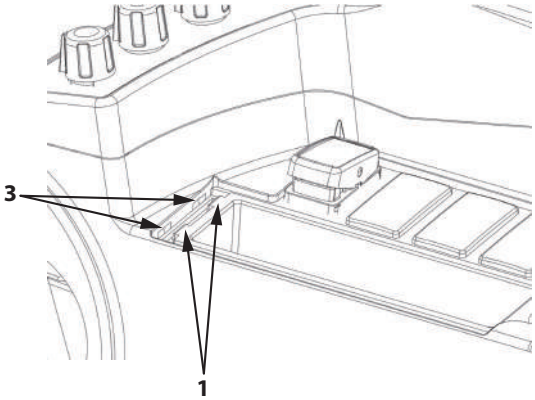
NOTE

In the case that the machine has been fitted out with other options, pocket (1) may be mounted in a different position or not be provided at all.

When reattaching, fit the hooks on pocket (1) into holes (3) provided in the cover.



MDFY-07-072-1 ja

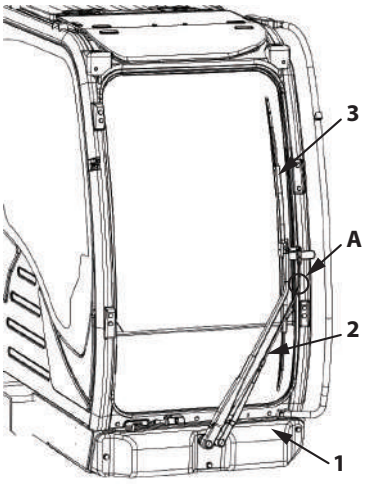


MDFY-07-073-1 ja

9 Wide View Wiper (Parallel Link Wiper) Maintenance (ZX135US-7H (Optional))

. . . As required

To ensure good visibility at all times, replace the wiper blade when it wears out.
If the wiper blade is dirtied by mud or dirt, it will not perform at the optimum level.
Use water and a neutral detergent to clean away the dirt.



MDFY-07-074-1 ja

CAUTION

- **Do not stand on metal cover (1) in front of the operator's station. There is a risk of falling off.**
- **During maintenance of the wiper or window glass, do not stand on anything unstable, such as on the undercarriage. Use a step ladder or the like to ensure stable footing.**

To stand up the wiper arm, grip in the region of the upper portion A of narrow arm (2) and move with a smooth motion.

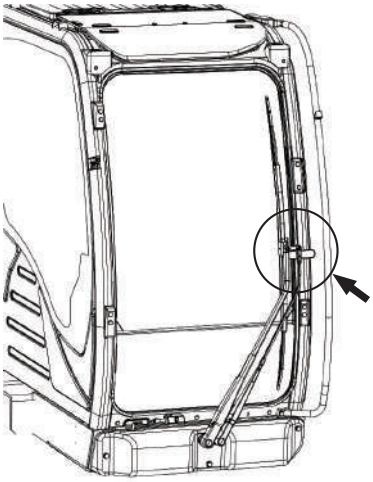
CAUTION

- **When standing up the wiper arm, the tips of wiper blade (3) will move significantly. Check there are no people or objects in the immediate vicinity before moving.**
- **When lifting up wiper arm (2) and putting it back, make sure wiper blade (3) is not blocking wiper arm (2). Forcing it to move may damage wiper blade (3).**
- **When putting wiper arm (2) back in position, do so carefully until wiper blade (3) touches the glass. Putting wiper arm (2) back carelessly may damage the blade and/or the glass.**

Replacing Wide View Wiper Blade (ZX135US-7H (Optional))

As the rubber of wiper blade is integrated with the wiper frame, the entire frame must be replaced.
The replacement blade consists of a set of components (1) to (8). Be sure to replace all of the corresponding old components with new ones.

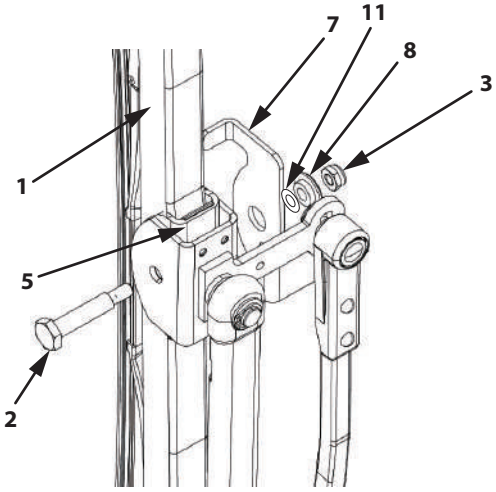
1. Remove bolt (2) and nut (3) that secure wiper blade (1).
2. Separate wiper blade (1) from wiper arm (10) and replace with the new part.
3. Place resin spacer (5) onto wiper arm (10) and fit new wiper blade (1) onto the wiper arm. Fit metal spring (6) onto resin spacer (5) with the open end of the spring pointing upwards.
   Make sure the end part of the spring hooks onto part A of resin spacer (5).



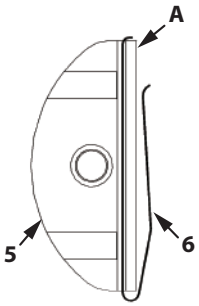
MDFY-07-074-2 ja

IMPORTANT

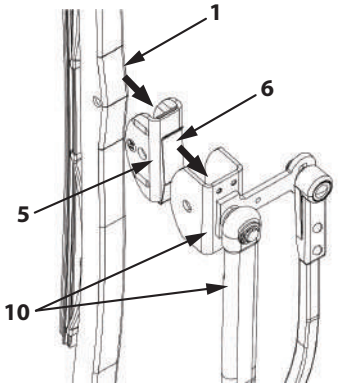
When fitting metal spring (6) onto resin spacer (5), be sure to pay attention to the instruction about the fitting orientation.
If metal spring (6) is not correctly orientated, the wiper blade will snag on the window frame when the front window is opened and closed, potentially damaging the blade.



MDFY-07-075-3 ja



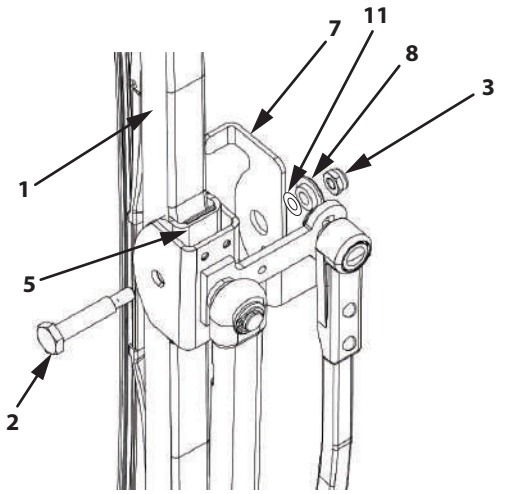
MDFY-07-094-1 ja



MDFY-07-076-1 ja

4. Insert bolt (2) through the hole in wiper arm (10), resin spacer (5), bracket (7), spacer (8) and shim (11), and secure with nut (3).
   When tightening bolt (2) and nut (3), check that there are not gaps at A or B.
   If the bolt is tightened when such a gap is present, it may not be possible to securely attach the blade.

   Nut (3) Tightening Torque: 10 N·m (1 kgf·m, 7.4 lbf·ft)

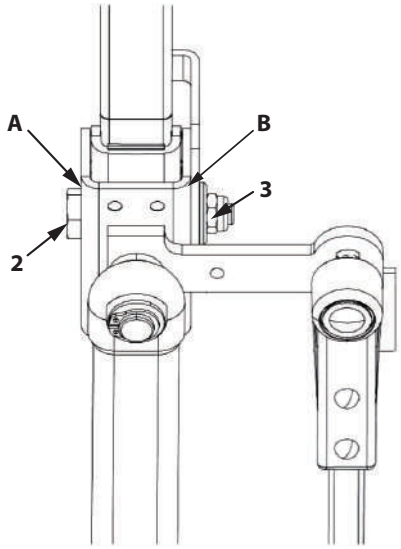


MDFY-07-075-3 ja

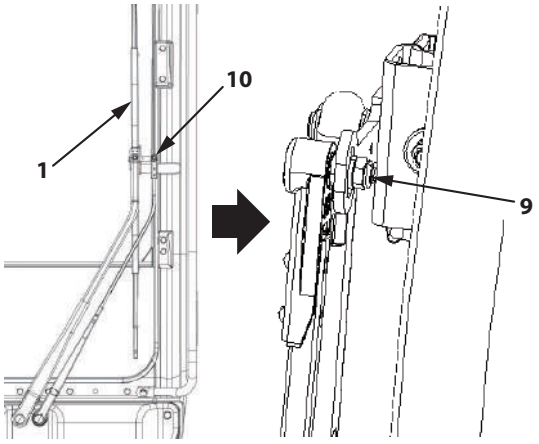
5. If the window frame and blade (1) are not parallel, adjust the angle of the blade by loosening nut (9) located behind wiper arm (10).
   After adjusting the angle of the blade, retighten nut (9) to secure.

   Nut (9) Tightening Torque: 10 N·m (1 kgf·m, 7.4 lbf·ft)

   If the wiper blade is used without correcting the tilt and it makes contact with the window frame or pillar, the wiper system may break. Check that the blade does not make contact with the window frame or pillar when the wiper is stopped or when it is operating.



MDFY-07-077-1 ja



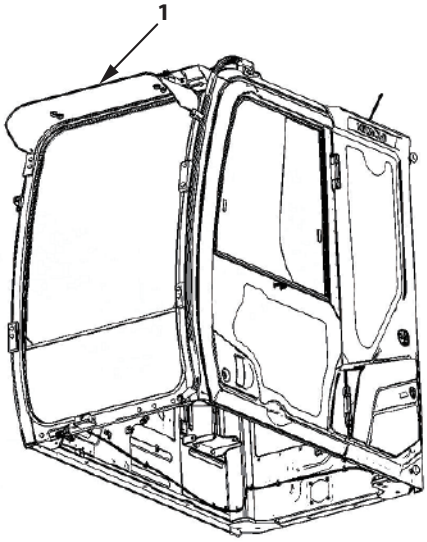
MDFY-07-078-1 ja

10 Clean Rain Visor

. . . As required

IMPORTANT

- **When cleaning rain visor (1), use a neutral detergent. If an acidic or alkaline detergent is used, the rain visor may become discolored or crack.**
- **Keep organic solvents away from rain visor (1). Contact with such solvents may cause the rain visor to become discolored or crack.**
- **When cleaning rain visor (1), do not stand on anything unstable, such as on the undercarriage. Use a step ladder or the like to ensure stable footing.**

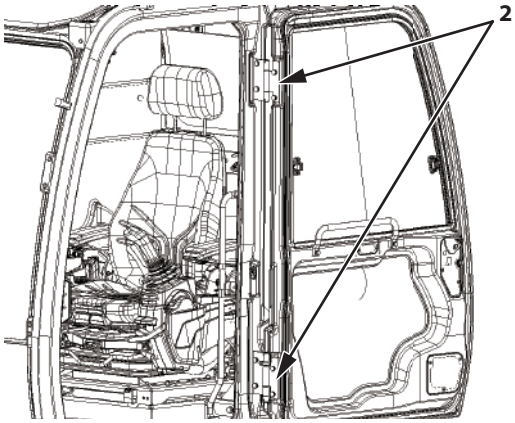


MDFY-07-079-1 ja

11 Grease Cab Door Hinge

. . . As required

If the door does not open and close smoothly, apply a suitable amount of lubricant to hinge (2).
If this does not improve matters or the lock cannot be engaged securely, the hinge may be damaged.
Stop using the door and contact Authorized Dealer.

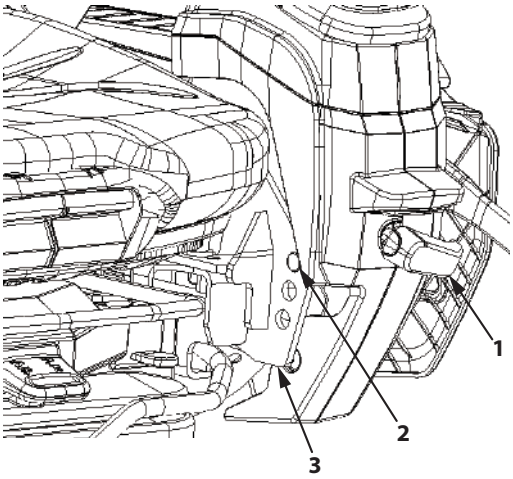


MDFY-07-111-1 ja

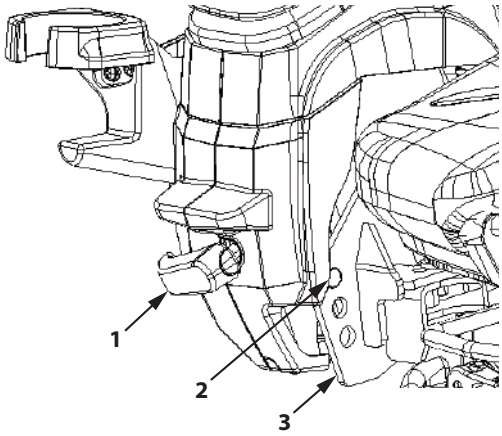
12 Grease Console Height Adjustment Pin

. . . As required

If console height adjustment lever (1) fails to move smoothly, apply lubricant to lock pin (2) and/or the hole in lock bracket (3) as needed.
If this does not improve matters or the lock cannot be engaged securely, the hinge may be damaged. Stop using it and contact Authorized Dealer.



MDFY-01-033-1 ja

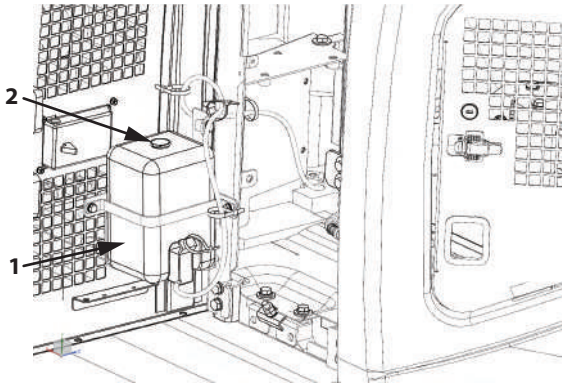


MDFY-01-034-1 ja

13 Check Windshield Washer Fluid Level

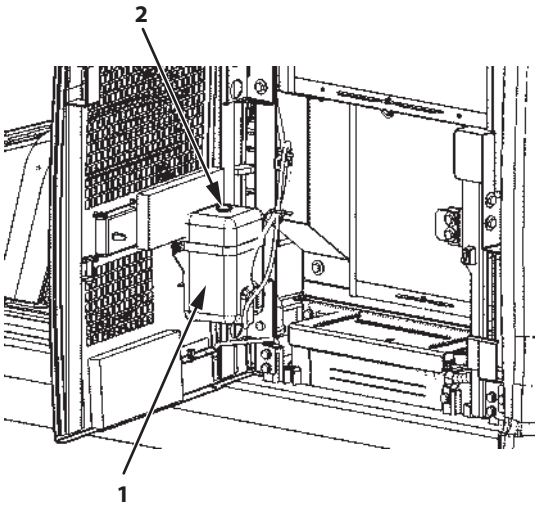
. . . As required

Check the level of washer liquid in washer tank (1) and if the level is low, remove cap (2) of washer tank (1) and add fluid via the opening.



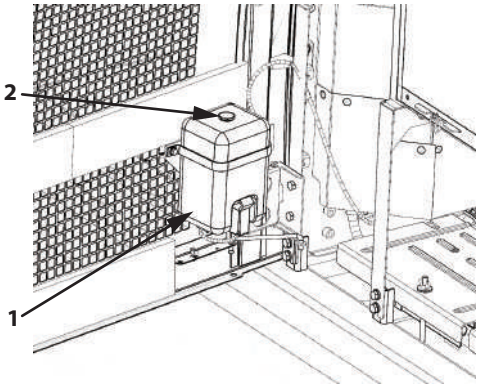
ZX135US-7H

MDHE-07-016-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-059-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDHE-07-017-1 ja

14 Check & Adjust Track Sag

--- every 50 hours

If the amount of sag is inappropriate, the tracks may flap around or come off. This in turn may damage the track itself and other parts.
As such issues will have an effect on the lifetime of the machine, be sure to adjust the sag of the tracks to a suitable amount.
To measure or adjust the tracks, park the machine on firm and level ground.

Procedure for Measuring Raised Tracks

1. Raise a track as illustrated at right to measure its sag, and support it securely with blocks or the like.

   CAUTION

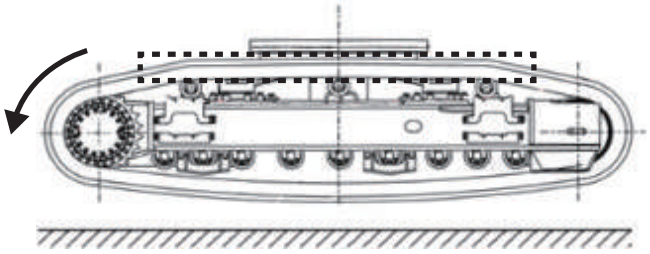
   Take care that no hands, feet, or other body parts are put beneath the track.

M104-07-067 ja

2. Remove any deposits on mating parts of the tracks and undercarriage (top/bottom rollers, idler, sprockets).

   IMPORTANT

   Accurate measurements cannot be taken if there are deposits on mating parts of the tracks and undercarriage (top/bottom rollers, idler, sprockets).

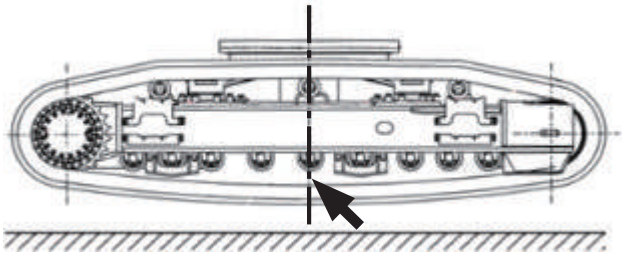


MDFY-07-149-1 ja

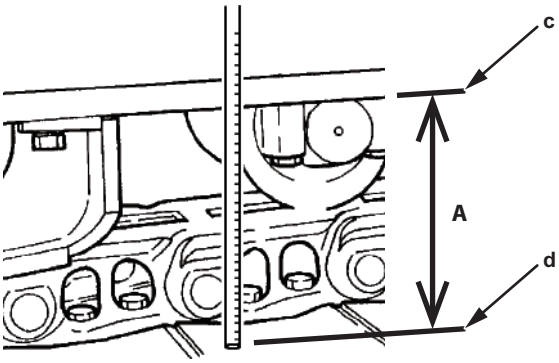
3. Rotate the track in reverse to eliminate track looseness on the upper side of the side frame.
4. As illustrated at right, take measurements midway between the reduction gear and the idler (bottom of side frame (c) to top of shoe (d)). (Dimension A in the illustration)

Model	Appropriate sag A
ZX135US-7H	250 to 280 mm (9.8 to 11.0 in)
ZX245USLC-7H	300 to 335 mm (22.8 to 13.2 in)
ZX345USLC-7H	340 to 380 mm (13.4 to 15.0 in)

If track sag is not within specifications, loosen or tighten the track.



MDFY-07-149-2 ja



MDFY-07-150-2 ja

Adjust Track Sag

1. Adjust the tracks one at a time, with the track in the air. When doing so, be sure to place blocks under the machine frame to support the machine.
2. After adjusting the sag on both track, rotate the tracks backward and forward to equalize the sag on both sides of the machine.
3. Recheck the track sag one more time. Readjust as necessary.

If raising a track to measure it is not possible, measure it via the “Simple Method” described below. However, we recommend using the “Measurement Procedure with Track Raised”. This is because the accuracy of sag adjustments made using “Simple Procedure” measurements are not as accurate as via the “Measurement Procedure with Track Raised”.

Simple Maintenance Procedure

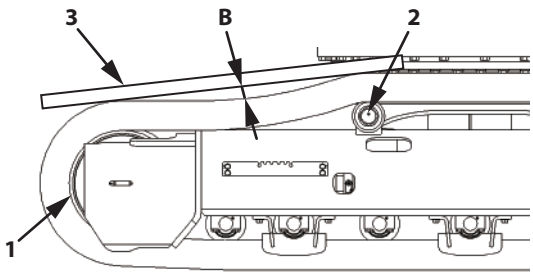
1. Remove any deposits on mating parts of the tracks and undercarriage (top/bottom rollers, idler, sprockets).

IMPORTANT

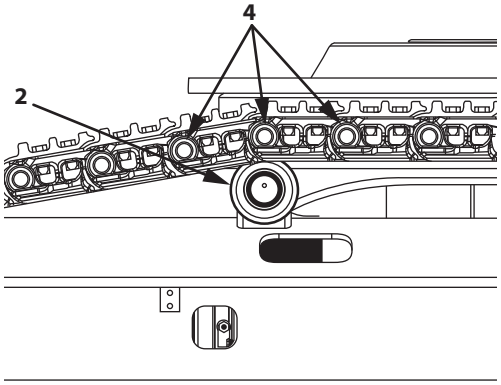
Accurate measurements cannot be taken if there are deposits on mating parts of the tracks and undercarriage (top/bottom rollers, idler, sprockets).

2. Move forward in the direction of idler (1), traveling a distance equivalent to at least the length of ground contact by the machine.
3. Stop the machine in a state where one of the track pins (4) is directly over upper roller (2).
4. As shown in the illustration to the right, place straight rod (3) (squared timber etc.) on the section of track between idler (1) and upper roller (2).
5. Measure the maximum sag between the upper surface of the track and the bottom surface of the rod. (Dimension B in the illustration)

Model	Correct Amount of Sag B
ZX135US-7H	20 to 40 mm (0.8 to 1.6 in)
ZX245USLC-7H	15 to 35 mm (0.6 to 1.4 in)
ZX345USLC-7H	15 to 35 mm (0.6 to 1.4 in)



MDFY-07-100-1 ja



MDFY-07-101-1 ja

Adjust Track Sag

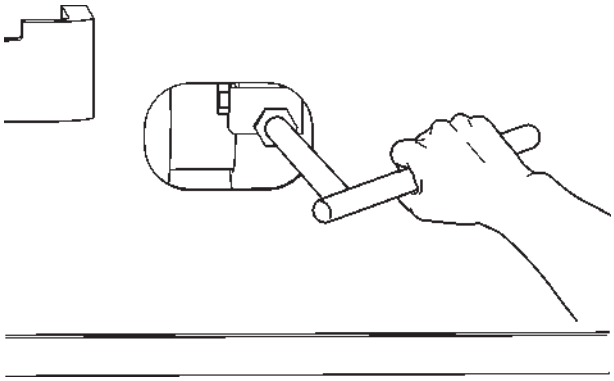
1. If track sag is not within the specified range, adjust it by loosening or tightening the track (refer to the procedures on the next page).
2. After adjusting the sag on both track, rotate the tracks backward and forward to equalize the sag on both sides.
3. Recheck the track sag one more time. Readjust as necessary.

CAUTION

When adjusting the sage with the track raised, be sure to place blocks under the machine frame to support the machine. During adjustment, never put hands, feet, or other parts of the body beneath the track.

Loosening the Track (Steel Crawler)

1. Use a 24 mm hex socket on the body of valve (1) and loosen the entire valve a little at a time; when grease is expelled, the track is loose.



MDAA-07-013 ja

CAUTION

- **The pressure inside the cylinder of the track adjuster is high. Do not loosen valve (1) quickly or loosen it too much as valve (1) may fly off or high-pressure grease in the adjusting cylinder may spout out. Slowly loosen valve (1) while keeping body parts and face away from valve. Never loosen grease fitting (2).**
- **Take care that no hands, feet, or other body parts are put beneath the track.**

IMPORTANT

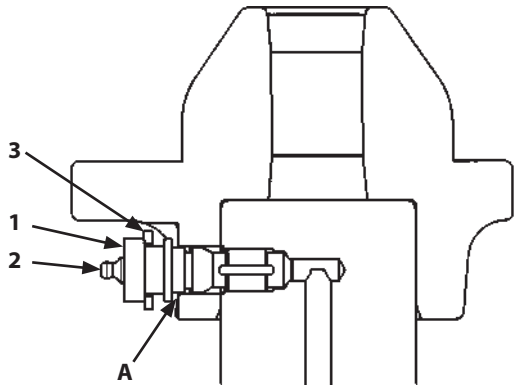
When gravel or mud is packed between sprockets and track links, remove it before loosening.

2. Between 1 to 1.5 turns of valve (1) are sufficient to loosen the track. When valve (1) comes in contact with stop plate (3), do not loosen the valve further. When valve (1) is loosened, grease is expelled from grease outlet (A).
3. If grease is not expelled readily, raise the track to be loosened and slowly rotate the track.
4. When proper track sag is obtained, turn valve (1) clockwise to the original condition.
   Tightening Torque: 90 N·m (9 kgf·m, 66 lbf·ft)

   Do not remove valve stop plate (3). Do not loosen bolt (4) while adjusting the track sag.

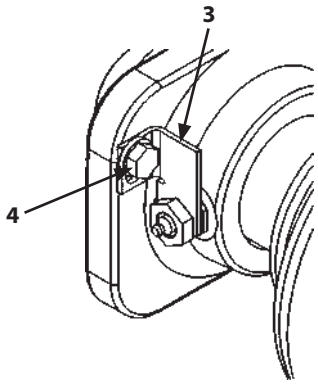
   CAUTION

   If grease is not expelled properly, contact Authorized Dealer.



MDAA-07-014-2 ja

A: Grease Outlet



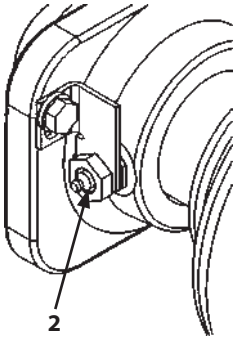
MDAA-07-057-3 ja

Tightening the Track (Steel Crawler)

CAUTION

It is abnormal if the track cannot be adjusted. A strong force acts on the spring in the track adjuster so the grease in the cylinder is at high pressure. Improper handling during adjustment or disassembly is extremely dangerous and could result in serious injury or death. Immediately consult Authorized Dealer for repairs.

To tighten the track, connect a grease gun to grease fitting (2) on the cylinder inside the side frame and add grease until the sag is within specifications.



MDAA-07-057-2 ja

15 Clean and Replace Air Conditioner Filter

Clean Circulating/Fresh Air Filters

Circulating Air Filter --- every 500 hours

Fresh Air Filter --- every 500 hours

Replace Circulating/Fresh Air Filters

Circulating Air Filter --- After cleaning 6 times or so

Fresh Air Filter --- After cleaning 6 times or so

Removing Fresh Air Filter

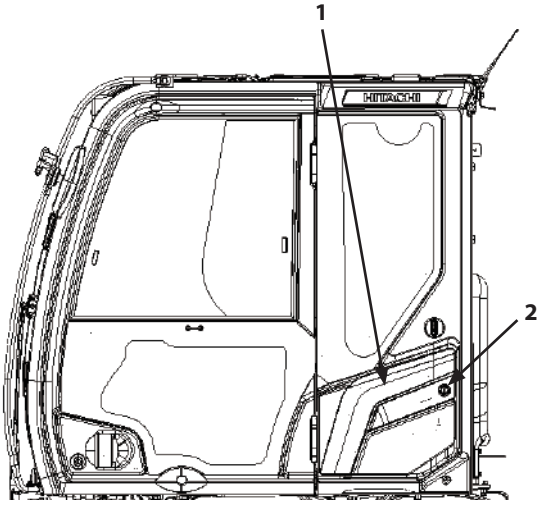
CAUTION

- **Dust goes flying if compressed air is used for cleaning. Getting dust in the eyes, on the skin or breathing it may be bad for the health. Only clean outside or in a well-ventilated place and wear the appropriate protective clothing (such as safety glasses, gloves, dust mask, etc.).**

IMPORTANT

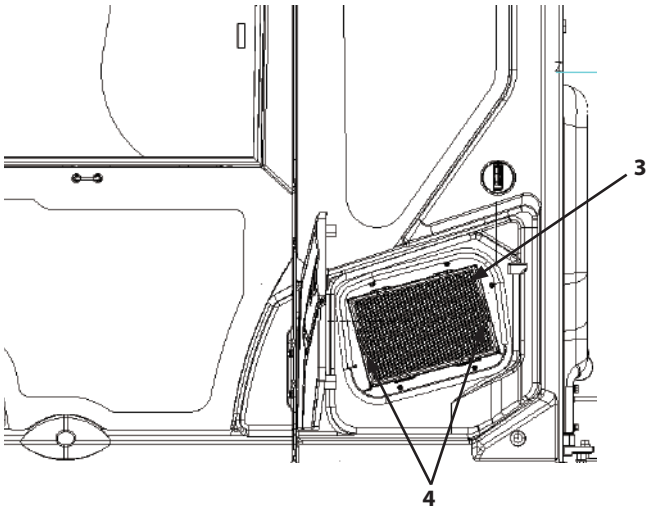
- **Cleaning with high-pressure air may cause damage, so only use at a pressure of 0.2 MPa (2 kgf/cm^2, 29 psi) or less.**
- **Repeated cleanings may result in deterioration of the filter and insufficient filtering. If deterioration of the filter is obvious, replace the filter.**

1. Insert the key into keyhole (2) on left cab side cover (1). Then, rotate the key counterclockwise to unlock the key. Open cover (1).



MDFY-07-039-1 ja

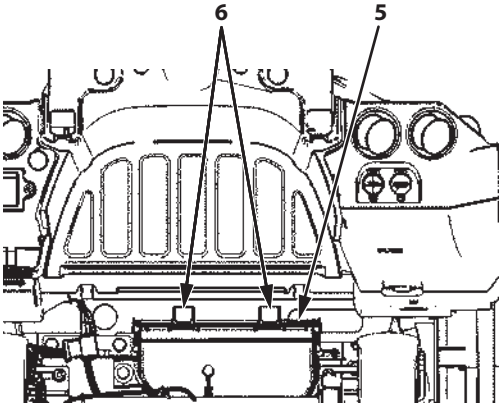
2. While pressing knobs (4) on both sides of fresh air filter (3) inward, remove it horizontally.



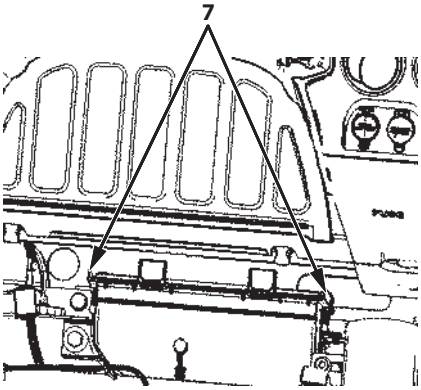
MDFY-07-040-1 ja

Removing Circulating Air Filter (ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H)

1. Circulating air filter (5) is located under the rear tray.
2. Grasp handles (6) and pull toward the rear tray to remove the filter.
3. Pull along guide (7) and toward yourself (up) to remove.



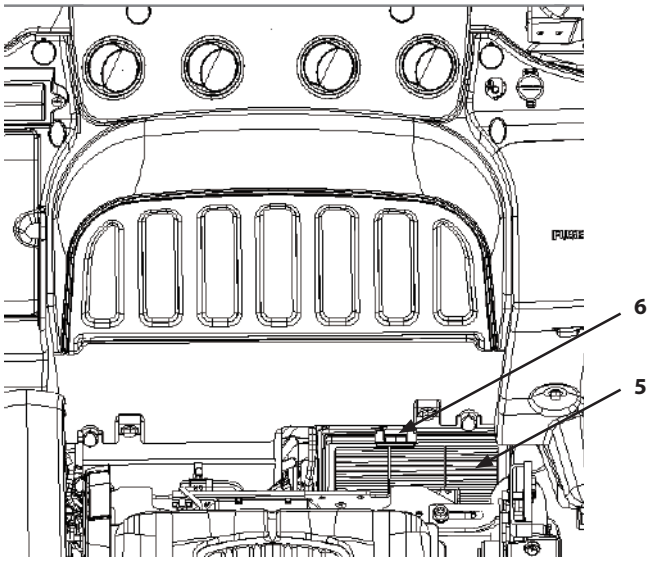
MDA4-07-060-1 ja



MDA4-07-061-1 ja

Removing Circulating Air Filter (ZX345USLC-7H)

1. Circulating air filter (5) is located under the rear tray.
2. Holding grips (6), pull them towards you to remove.



MDFY-07-041-1 ja

Cleaning

Clean the recirculation and fresh air filter elements.

Clean the circulating and fresh air filters with compressed air at 0.2 MPa (2 kgf/cm^2, 29 psi) or wash with water.

Washing procedure with water is as follows:

1. Use tap water.
2. Submerge the filters in water containing a neutral detergent for about 5 minutes.
3. Clean the filters with water again.
4. Dry the filters.

Installation

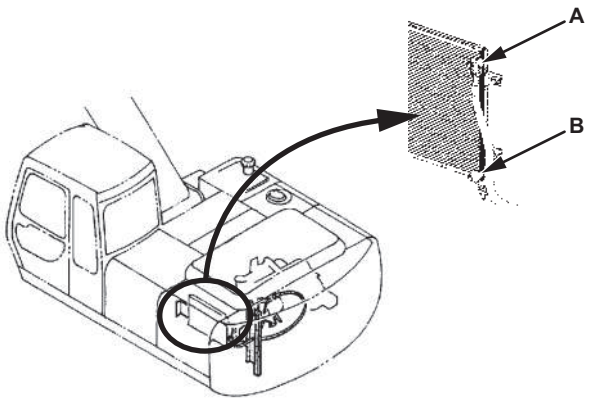
When installing the cleaned circulating/fresh air filters or new filters, follow the reverse order of the Removing Filter procedures described on the previous page.

16 Check Air Conditioner

--- every 250 hours or 3 months

Check pipe connections for refrigerant gas leakage

If oil seepage is found around pipe joints (A,B), it indicates possible gas leakage.



MDA4-07-062-1 ja

Check Refrigerant Level

Increase engine speed to 1500 min^{-1} (rpm) and operate the air conditioner for 2 to 3 minutes at max cooling 18 °C (64 °F) displayed on the monitor) and then check if cool air comes out from the vent in the cab.

Type and Amount of Refrigerant when Shipped

Model	Type	Refrigerant Qty.
ZX135US-7H	HFC134a	0.75±0.05 kg (1.65±0.11 lb)
ZX245USLC-7H	HFC134a	0.85±0.05 kg (1.87±0.11 lb)
ZX345USLC-7H	HFC134a	0.65±0.05 kg (1.43±0.11 lb)

IMPORTANT

For collection/refilling of refrigerant during inspections and maintenance (including disposal), contact a company certified to handle refrigerant or consult Authorized Dealer.

Check the condenser

If the condenser fins become clogged with dirt or insects, their cooling efficiency is compromised.
Be sure to keep it clean at all times. (Refer to the section Clean Radiator, Oil Cooler and Intercooler Core.)

Check compressor

After operating the air conditioner for 5 to 10 minutes, touch both the high pressure pipe and the low pressure pipe. If normal, the high pressure side pipe will be hot, and the low pressure side cold.

Check mounting bolts for looseness

Confirm that the compressor mounting bolts and other mounting/fastening bolts are securely tightened.

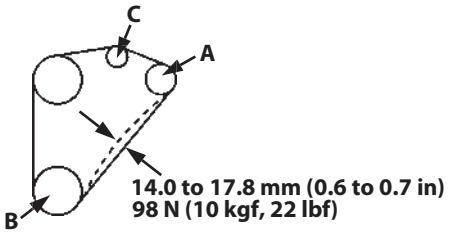
Inspect belt, check and adjust tension

--- Check every 250 hours

Check the compressor belt for wear and looseness.

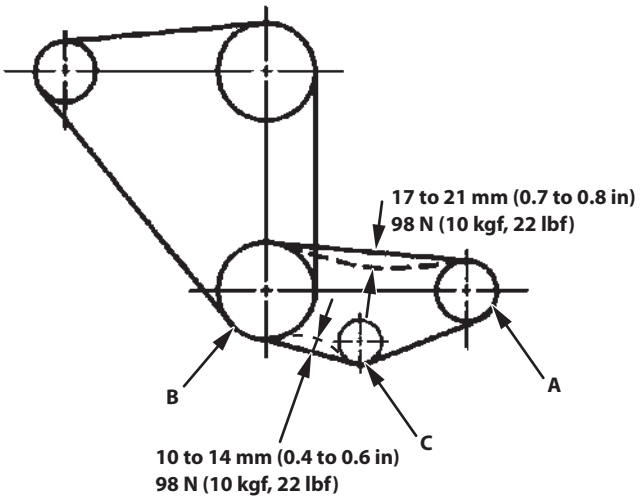
Check belt tension by pressing down in the middle with your thumb at a force of approximately 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf). Deflection must be within the value illustrated at right.

If anything abnormal is found, contact Authorized Dealer for a detailed inspection.



ZX135US-7H

MDHD-07-007-2 ja



ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H

M1GR-07-007-6 ja

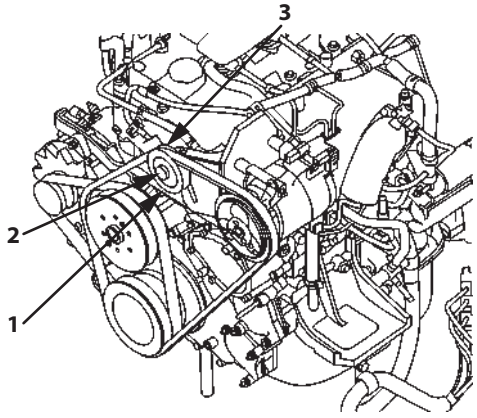
A	Air Conditioner Compressor Pulley	B	Crank pulley
		C	Tension pulley

Adjusting Compressor Belt Tension

1. Loosen lock bolt (2) of tension pulley (1).
2. Move tension pulley (1) by adjusting bolt (3) under tension pulley (1) until belt tension is correct.
3. Securely tighten bolt (2) of tension pulley (1).
4. After that, tighten adjusting bolt (3).

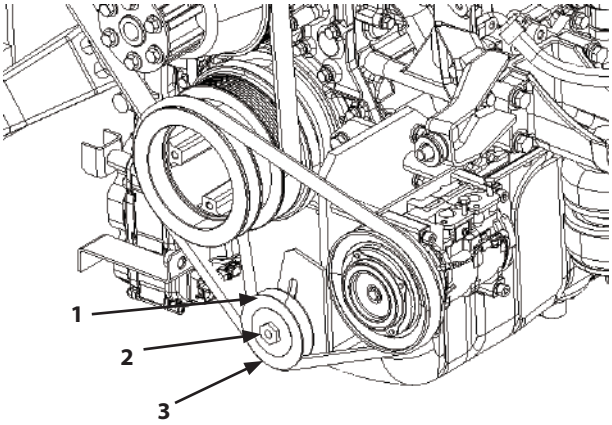
IMPORTANT

When a new belt is installed, be sure to re-adjust the tension after operating the engine for 3 to 5 minutes at slow idle speed to be sure that the new belt is seated correctly.



ZX135US-7H

M1U4-07-041-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H

MDFY-07-042-1 ja

17 Clean Cab Floor

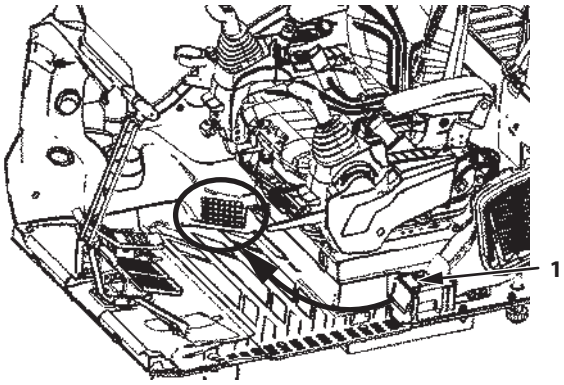
--- as required

IMPORTANT

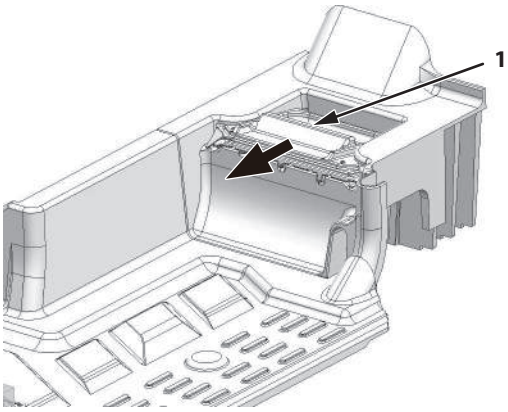
Water can be used for cleaning inside the cab only for the floor. Take care not to splash the surrounding area. Do not increase water spray speed by restricting the hose end, and do not use high pressure steam for cleaning. Be sure to completely remove any moisture from the surrounding area.

ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

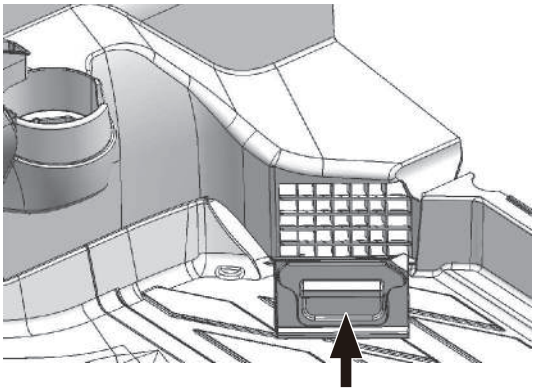
1. Park the machine according to the instructions in "Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance" (7-10).
   Before cleaning, remove water-resistant cover (1) and block the foot vent.
   Push water-resistant cover (1) into position so there is no gap with the right cover.



MDA4-07-063-1 ja

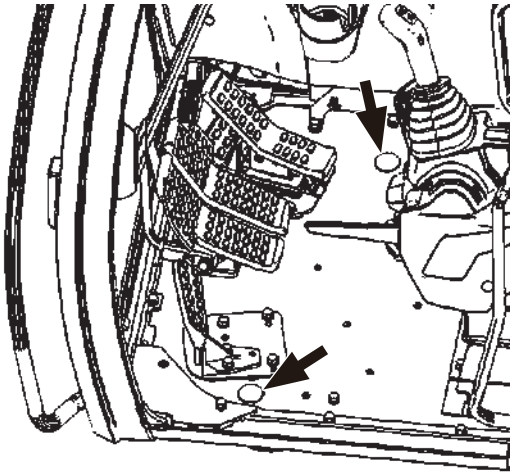


MDA4-07-123-1 ja



MDA4-07-124-1 ja

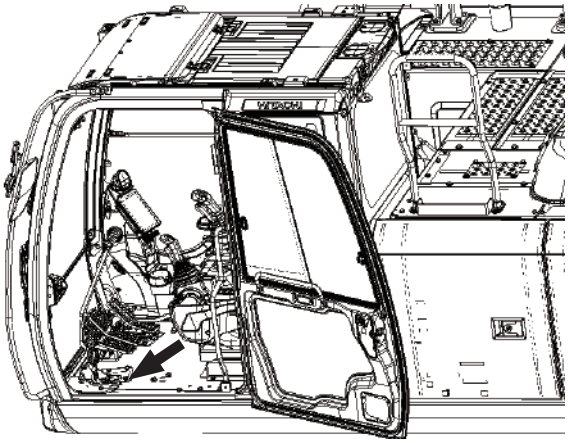
2. Sweep the cab floor clean using a brush, and brush dust from the cab floor while spraying water.
3. When cleaning the floor mat, sweep dust (water) along the grooves on the floor mat.
4. When cleaning after removing the floor mat, sweep dust (water) through the cleaning hole (2 locations).



MDA4-07-125-1 ja

ZX345USLC-7H

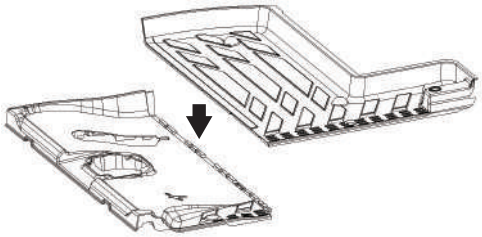
1. Park the machine according to the instructions in “Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance” (7-10).
2. Sweep the cab floor clean using a brush, and brush dust from the cab floor while spraying water.
3. When cleaning the floor mat, sweep dust (water) along the grooves on the floor mat.
4. When cleaning after removing the floor mat, sweep dust (water) through the cleaning hole (1 location) of the floor plate.



MDFY-07-043-1 ja

CAUTION

If the floor mat has been removed for cleaning, confirm that the connectors on the floor mat are securely engaged and that the floor mat is not interfering with any of the pedals.
If the floor mat is fitted incorrectly and interferes with the pedal, mistakes may occur when operating the machine. There is also a risk that it could snag when getting on and off the operator's station and pitch the operator from the seat.



MDFY-07-110 ja

18 Retighten Engine Cylinder Head Bolt

--- as required

Contact Authorized Dealer for check or repair.

19 Inspect and Adjust Valve Clearance

--- every 1000 hours

Contact Authorized Dealer for check or repair.

20 Measure Engine Compression Pressure

--- every 1000 hours

Contact Authorized Dealer for check or repair.

21 Check Starter and Alternator

---every 1000 hours

Consult Authorized Dealer for repairs.

22 Check and Clean EGR Valve

--- every 4500 hours

Contact Authorized Dealer for check or repair.

23 EGR Cooler Cleaning

--- every 4500 hours

Contact Authorized Dealer for check or repair.

24 Check Turbo Charger

--- every 4500 hours

Contact Authorized Dealer for check or repair.

25 Check and Clean Injector

--- every 4500 hours

Contact Authorized Dealer for check or repair.

26 Check Gas Damper

---as required

CAUTION

The gas damper is charged with high-pressure nitrogen gas. Inappropriate handling may cause explosion, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.

Gas dampers are used on the engine cover and the skylight of the cab. Contact Authorized Dealer immediately in any of the following situations.

- Cover or window cannot be opened easily
- It cannot keep itself open
- Oil or gas leak found

27 Tightening and Retightening Torque of Nuts and Bolts

--- every 250 hours (first time only, after 50 hours)

Tighten or retighten nuts and bolts used on this machine in accordance with the torque values shown in the following table. Bolts and nuts should be replaced with those of the same or higher grade.

Check tightness after the first 50 hours, then every 250 hours.

Locations to be retightened other than those in the table should be tightened according to the Tightening Torque Chart (7-163).

ZX135US-7H

No.	Place to Retighten	Bolt Dia	Qty.	Wrench size	Torque		
					N·m	(kgf·m)	(lbf·ft)
1.	Engine cushion rubber mounting bolts and nuts	16	4	24	235	(23.5)	(175)
2.	Engine bracket mounting bolts (pump side)	12	8	19	110	(11)	(81)
3.	Hydraulic oil tank mounting bolts	16	4	24	270	(27)	(200)
4.	Fuel tank mounting bolts	16	4	24	270	(27)	(200)
5.	Radiator mounting bolts (upper)	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Radiator mounting bolts (lower side)	12	3	19	90	(9)	(66)
6.	Pump mounting bolts	12	10	19	110	(11)	(81)
7.	Control valve mounting bolts	16	4	24	210	(21)	(155)
	Control valve bracket mounting bolts	16	5	24	270	(27)	(200)
8.	Swing device mounting bolts	20	10	30	500	(50)	(370)
9.	Swing motor mounting bolts (Hexagon wrench)	10	7	8	64	(6.4)	(47)
10.	Union joints for hydraulic hoses and pipes	–	–	17	25	(2.5)	(18.5)
		–	–	19	30	(3)	(22)
		–	–	22	40	(4)	(29.5)
		–	–	27	80	(8)	(59)
		–	–	27	95	(9.5)	(70)
		–	–	32	140	(14)	(103)
		–	–	36	180	(14)	(133)
		–	–	41	210	(21)	(155)
11.	Hycolin® tube mounting nuts	–	–	17	35	(3.5)	(26)
12.	Battery mounting nuts	10	4	17	50	(5)	(37)
13.	Cab mounting nuts	16	4	24	210	(21)	(155)
	Cab mounting anchor bolt	22	1	32	550	(55)	(55)
	Cab cushion rubber mounting bolt	10	16	17	65	(6.6)	(48)
14.	Cover mounting bolts	6	–	10	–	–	–
		8	–	13	–	–	–
		10	–	17	50	(5)	(37)
		12	–	19	90	(9)	(66)
15.	Constant torque clamp of low-pressure piping	–	4	8	14	(1.4)	(10.5)
	Low-pressure piping KW, Jubilee® clamp	–	9	7	6	(0.6)	(4.4)
		–	2	8	6	(0.6)	(4.4)
	T-bolt clamp of low-pressure piping	–	5	10	6	(0.6)	(4.4)

No.	Place to Retighten		Bolt Dia	Qty.	Wrench size	Torque		
						N·m	(kgf·m)	(lbf·ft)
16.	Swing bearing mounting bolts	(Upperstructure)	18	30	27	390	(40)	(290)
		(Track)	16	45	24	265	(26.5)	(195)
17.	Travel device mounting bolts		16	28	24	310	(31)	(230)
	Travel device cover mounting bolts		14	8	22	175	(17.5)	(129)
	Sprocket mounting bolts		16	32	24	265	(26.5)	(195)
18.	Upper roller mounting bolts		12	8	19	98	(9.8)	(72)
19.	Lower roller mounting bolts		16	56	24	300	(30)	(220)
20.	Track shoe mounting bolts		16	352	24	410	(41)	(302)
21.	Track guard mounting bolts		16	8	24	310	(31)	(230)
22.	Aftertreatment device mounting bolts	Rear	12	4	19	90	(9)	(66)
		Bottom	12	4	19	110	(11)	(81)
23.	DEF tank bracket mounting bolts		10	3	17	50	(5)	(37)
24.	Platform handrail mounting bolts		12	7	19	130	(13)	(96)
25.	Body top handrail mounting bolts		12	4	19	130	(13)	(96)
26.	Cab handrail mounting bolts		12	3	14	42 to 58	(4.2 to 5.8)	(31 to 43)
27.	Front attachment pin-retaining bolts		18	2	27	270	(400)	(40)

ZX245USLC-7H

No.	Place to Retighten		Bolt Dia	Qty.	Wrench size	Torque		
						N·m	(kgf·m)	(lbf·ft)
1.	Engine cushion rubber mounting bolts and nuts		22	4	32	550	(55)	(410)
2.	Engine bracket mounting bolts (pump side)		16	12	24	270	(27)	(200)
	Engine bracket mounting bolts (fan side)		10	8	17	65	(6.5)	(48)
3.	Hydraulic oil tank mounting bolts		16	4	24	270	(27)	(200)
4.	Fuel tank mounting bolts		16	6	24	270	(27)	(200)
5.	Radiator mounting bolts (left and right)		10	6	17	50	(5)	(37)
	Radiator mounting bolts (lower side)		16	3	24	270	(27)	(200)
6.	Pump mounting bolts		12	8	19	110	(11)	(81)
7.	Control valve mounting bolts		18	4	27	300	(30)	(220)
	Control valve bracket mounting bolts		16	4	24	270	(27)	(200)
8.	Swing device mounting bolts		20	14	30	500	(50)	(410)
9.	Swing motor mounting bolts (Hexagon wrench)		12	8	10	90	(9)	(66)
10.	Union joints for hydraulic hoses and pipes		–	–	17	25	(2.5)	(18.5)
			–	–	19	30	(3)	(22)
			–	–	22	40	(4)	(29.5)
						70	(7)	(52)
			–	–	27	95	(9.5)	(70)
			–	–	32	140	(14)	(103)
			–	–	36	180	(18)	(133)
			–	–	41	210	(21)	(155)
			–	–	50	350	(35)	(260)
11.	Hycolin® tube mounting nuts		–	–	17	35	(3.5)	(26)
12.	Battery mounting nuts		10	4	17	50	(5)	(37)
13.	Cab mounting nuts		16	4	24	210	(21)	(155)
	Cab mounting anchor bolt		22	1	32	550	(55)	(410)
	Cab cushion rubber mounting bolt		10	16	17	65	(6.5)	(48)
14.	Cover mounting bolts		6	–	10	10	(1)	(7.4)
			8	–	13	20	(2)	(15)
			10	–	17	50	(5)	(37)
15.	Constant torque clamp of low-pressure piping		–	8	10	14	(1.4)	(10.5)
	Flexible master coupling of low-pressure piping		–	1 pair	13	20.3 to 22.6	(2.1 to 2.3)	(15.0 to 16.5)
	T-bolt clamp of low-pressure piping		–	9	10	6	(0.6)	(4.4)
	Low-pressure piping KW, Jubilee® clamp		–	10	7	6	(0.6)	(4.4)
16.	Swing bearing mounting bolts	(Upperstructure)	20	37	30	510	(51)	(376)
		(Track)	20	36	30	500	(50)	(370)
17.	Travel device mounting bolts		20	28	30	630	(63)	(460)
	Travel device cover mounting bolts		14	8	22	180	(18)	(133)
	Sprocket mounting bolts		20	36	30	550	(55)	(410)
18.	Upper roller mounting bolts		16	16	24	270	(27)	(200)

No.	Place to Retighten		Bolt Dia	Qty.	Wrench size	Torque		
						N·m	(kgf·m)	(lbf·ft)
19.	Lower roller mounting bolts		18	64	27	460	(46)	(340)
20.	Track shoe mounting bolts		20	392	27	820	(82)	(605)
21.	Track guard mounting bolts		18	24	27	500	(50)	(50)
22.	Aftertreatment device mounting bolts		12	8	19	90	(9)	(66)
23.	DEF tank bracket mounting bolts		10	4	17	50	(5)	(37)
24.	Platform handrail mounting bolts	Body top	12	6	19	110	(11)	(81)
		Frame	14	4	22	180	(18)	(133)
25.	Fuel tank top guard rail mounting bolts	Fuel Tank	14	4	22	180	(18)	(133)
		Guard rail	12	2	19	90	(9)	(66)
26.	Cab handrail mounting bolts		12	3	14	42 to 58	(4.2 to 5.8)	(31 to 43)
27.	Front attachment pin-retaining bolts		18	2	27	400	(40)	(300)

ZX345USLC-7H

No.	Place to Retighten		Bolt Dia	Qty.	Wrench size	Torque		
						N·m	(kgf·m)	(lbf·ft)
1.	Engine cushion rubber mounting bolts and nuts		20	4	30	550	(55)	(410)
2.	Engine bracket mounting bolts (pump side)		12	12	19	110	(11)	(81)
	Engine bracket mounting bolts (fan side)		10	10	17	65	(6.5)	(48)
3.	Hydraulic oil tank mounting bolts		16	6	24	270	(27)	(200)
4.	Fuel tank mounting bolts		16	6	24	270	(27)	(200)
5.	Radiator mounting bolts (left and right)		10	6	17	50	(5)	(37)
	Radiator mounting bolts (lower side)		16	5	24	270	(27)	(200)
6.	Pump mounting bolts		12	13	19	110	(11)	(81)
7.	Control valve mounting bolts		18	4	27	300	(30)	(220)
	Control valve bracket mounting bolts		16	4	24	270	(27)	(200)
8.	Swing device mounting bolts		22	14	32	650	(65)	(480)
9.	Swing motor mounting bolts (Hexagon wrench)		12	8	10	90	(9)	(66)
10.	Union joints for hydraulic hoses and pipes		–	–	17	25	(2.5)	(18.5)
			–	–	19	30	(3)	(22)
			–	–	22	40	(4)	(29.5)
			–	–	27	95	(9.5)	(70)
			–	–	32	140	(14)	(103)
			–	–	36	180	(18)	(133)
			–	–	41	210	(21)	(155)
			–	–	50	260	(26)	(190)
11.	Hycolin® tube mounting nuts		–	–	17	35	(3.5)	(26)
12.	Battery mounting nuts		10	8	17	25	(2.5)	(18.5)
13.	Cab mounting nuts		16	4	24	210	(21)	(155)
	Cab mounting anchor bolt		22	2	32	550	(55)	(410)
	Cab cushion rubber mounting bolt		14	8	22	180	(18)	(133)
14.	Cover mounting bolts		8	–	13	20	(2)	(15)
			10	–	17	50	(5)	(37)
			12	–	19	90	(9)	(66)
15.	Constant torque clamp of low-pressure piping		–	8	8	14	(1.4)	(10.5)
	Flexible master coupling of low-pressure piping		–	1 pair	17	20.5 to 22.6	(2.1 to 2.3)	(15.0 to 16.5)
	Low-pressure piping KW, Jubilee® clamp	Radiator, Intercooler piping	–	10	7	6	(0.6)	(4.4)
		Radiator (engine/upper side) Intercooler (engine/counterweight side)	–	2	7	6.9	(0.7)	(5.1)
	T-bolt clamp of low-pressure piping		–	8	11	10	(1)	(7.4)
16.	Swing bearing mounting bolts	(Upperstructure)	27	36	41	1250	(125)	(920)
		(Track)	27	36	41	1230	(123)	(910)

No.	Place to Retighten		Bolt Dia	Qty.	Wrench size	Torque		
						N·m	(kgf·m)	(lbf·ft)
17.	Travel device mounting bolts		20	40	30	630	(63)	(460)
	Travel device cover mounting bolts		14	8	22	180	(18)	(133)
	Sprocket mounting bolts		22	44	32	680	(68)	(500)
18.	Upper roller mounting bolts		18	16	27	460	(46)	(340)
19.	Lower roller mounting bolts		22	64	32	840	(84)	(620)
20.	Track shoe mounting bolts		22	384	32	1128	(113)	(830)
21.	Track guard mounting bolts		22	24	32	750	(75)	(550)
22.	Aftertreatment device mounting bolts		12	18	19	90	(9)	(66)
23.	DEF tank bracket mounting bolts		10	4	17	50	(5)	(37)
24.	Platform handrail mounting bolts	Frame	14	6	22	180	(18)	(133)
		Body top, fuel tank top	12	7	19	110	(11)	(81)
25.	Body top handrail mounting bolts		12	6	19	110	(11)	(81)
26.	Cab handrail mounting bolts		10	3	17	50	(5)	(37)
27.	Front attachment pin-retaining bolts		22	2	32	750	(75)	(550)
	Boom end, arm cylinder bottom and rod pin-retaining bolts		18	5	27	400	(40)	(300)

Tightening Torque Chart

Bolt Dia. mm	Hexagon Bolt										Socket Bolt			
	10.9 Ⓣ T			8.8 Ⓗ H			7 M			Tool Wrench Size mm	Socket Bolt			Tool Wrench Size mm
	N·m	(kgf·m)	(lbf·ft)	N·m	(kgf·m)	(lbf·ft)	N·m	(kgf·m)	(lbf·ft)		N·m	(kgf·m)	(lbf·ft)	
6							3.3 to 4.2	(0.3 to 0.4)	(2.4 to 3.1)	10				5
8	30	(3.0)	(22)	20	(2.0)	(15)	10	(1.0)	(7.4)	13	20	(2.0)	(15)	6
10	65	(6.5)	(48)	50	(5.0)	(37)	20	(2.0)	(15)	17	50	(5.0)	(37)	8
12	110	(11)	(81)	90	(9.0)	(66)	35	(3.5)	(26)	19	90	(9.0)	(66)	10
14	180	(18)	(133)	140	(14)	(103)	55	(5.5)	(41)	22	140	(14)	(103)	12
16	270	(27)	(200)	210	(21)	(155)	80	(8.0)	(59)	24	210	(21)	(155)	14
18	400	(40)	(300)	300	(30)	(220)	120	(12)	(89)	27	300	(30)	(220)	14
20	550	(55)	(410)	400	(40)	(300)	170	(17)	(125)	30	400	(40)	(300)	17
22	750	(75)	(550)	550	(55)	(410)	220	(22)	(162)	32				
24	950	(95)	(700)	700	(70)	(520)	280	(28)	(205)	36				
27	1400	(140)	(1030)	1050	(105)	(770)	400	(40)	(300)	41				
30	1950	(195)	(1440)	1450	(145)	(1070)	550	(55)	(410)	46				
33	2600	(260)	(1920)	1950	(195)	(1440)	750	(75)	(550)	50				
36	3200	(320)	(2360)	2450	(245)	(1810)	950	(95)	(700)	55				

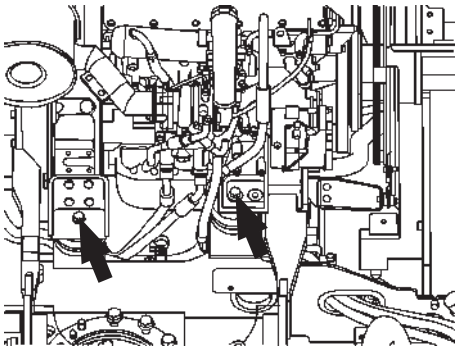
CAUTION

If mounting bolts for counterweights are loose, consult Authorized Dealer.

IMPORTANT

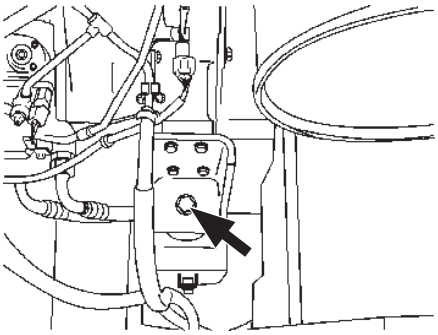
- **Apply lubricant (e.g. white zinc B dissolved into spindle oil) to new bolts and nuts before tightening them.**
- **Remove soil, dust, and/or dirt from the nut and bolt thread surfaces before tightening.**
- **Tighten the bolts and nuts to the specified torque. If tightened with excessively low or high torque, missing or breakage of nuts and/or bolts may result.**

1. Engine cushion rubber mounting bolts and nuts



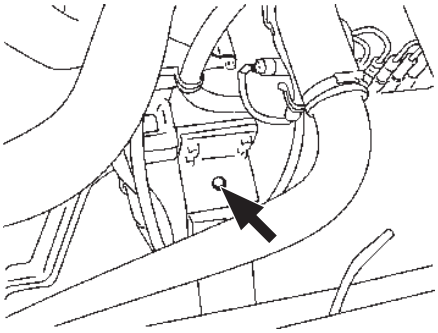
ZX135US-7H

M1U4-07-046-1 ja



Pump Side
ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H

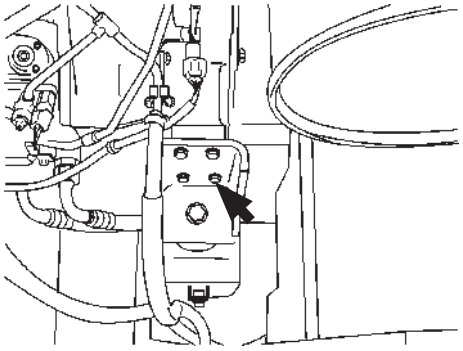
M1U1-07-115-1 ja



Fan Side
ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H

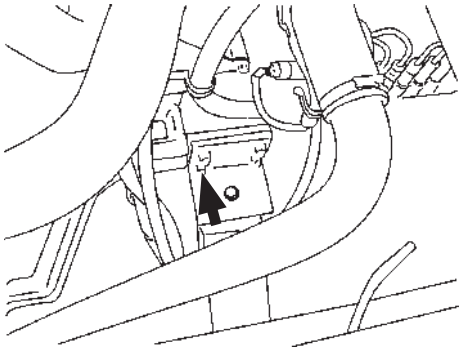
M1U1-07-114-1 ja

2. Engine bracket mounting bolts



Pump Side

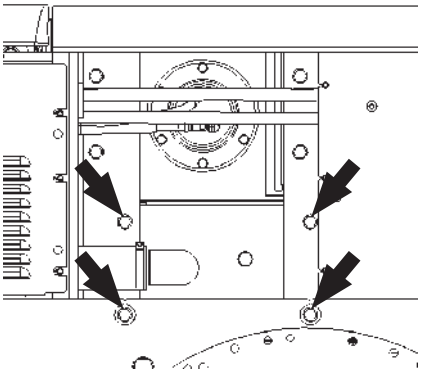
M1U1-07-040-2 ja



Fan Side

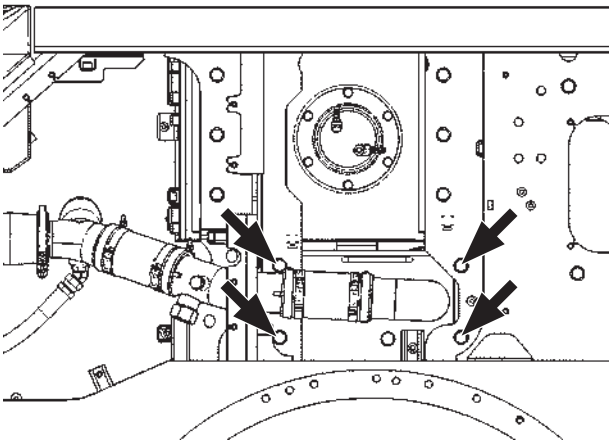
M1U1-07-034-2 ja

3. Hydraulic oil tank mounting bolts



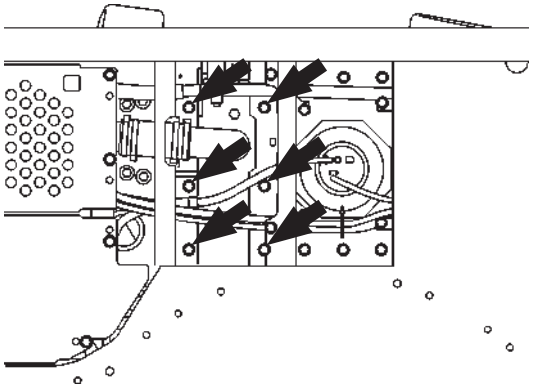
ZX135US-7H

MDCN-07-064-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

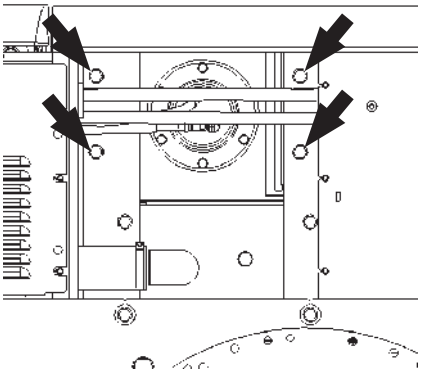
MDA4-07-069-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

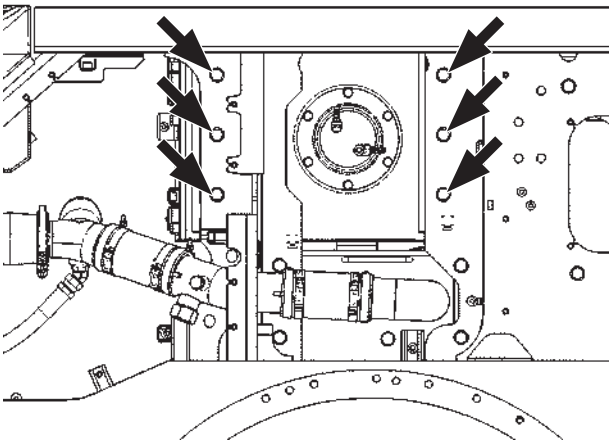
MDD5-07-022-1 ja

4. Fuel tank mounting bolts



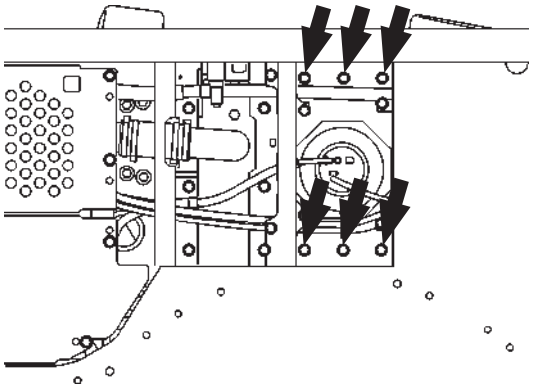
ZX135US-7H

MDCN-07-064-2 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

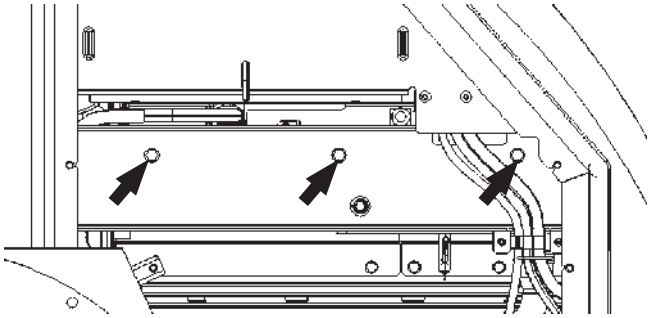
MDA4-07-069-2 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

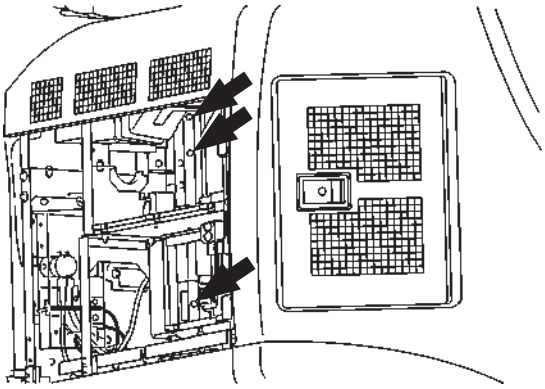
MDD5-07-022-2 ja

5. Radiator mounting bolt



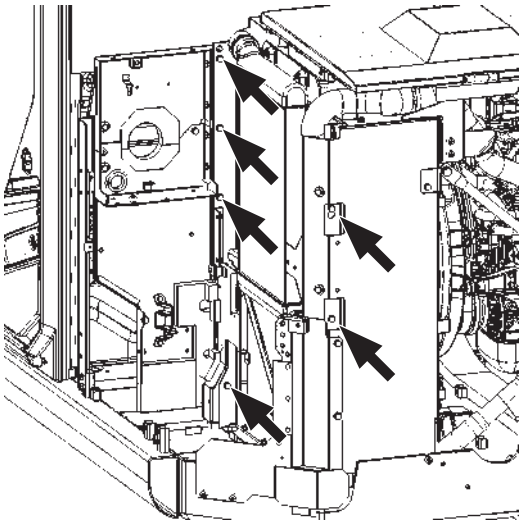
ZX135US-7H

MDCN-07-066-1 ja



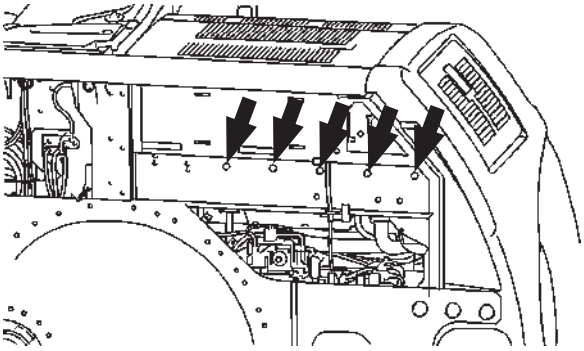
ZX345USLC-7H (L/R sides)

MDD5-07-023-1 ja



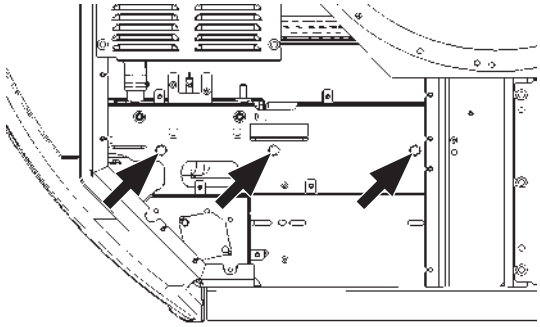
ZX245USLC-7H (L/R sides)

MDA4-07-073-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H (Lower part)

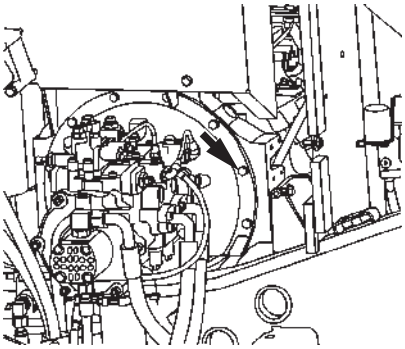
MDD5-07-024-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H (Lower part)

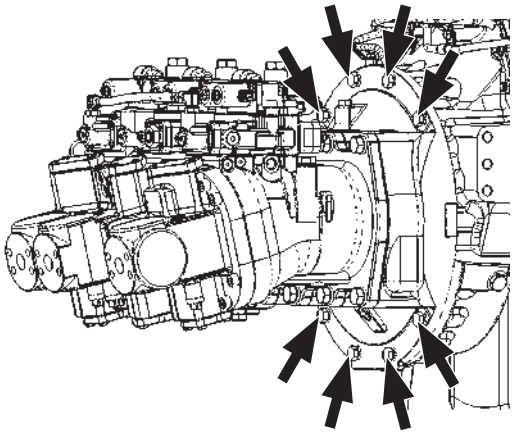
MDA4-07-074-1 ja

6. Pump mounting bolts



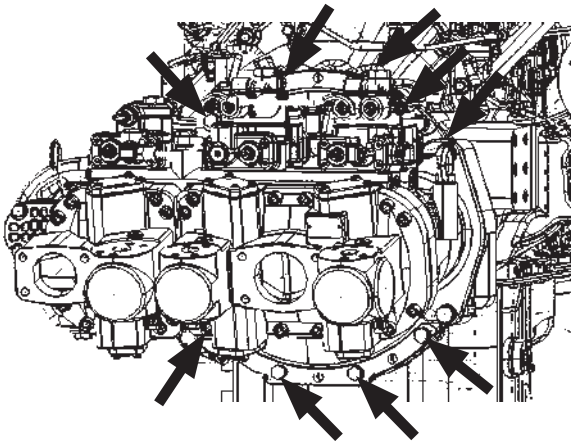
ZX135US-7H

M1U4-07-050-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

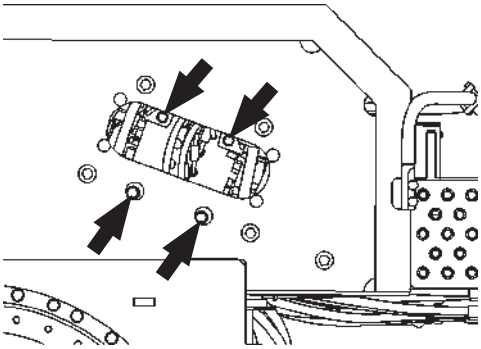
MDA4-07-076-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

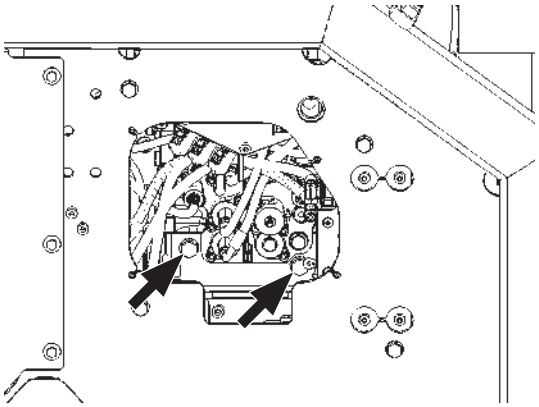
MDAA-07-110-1 ja

7. Control valve mounting bolts



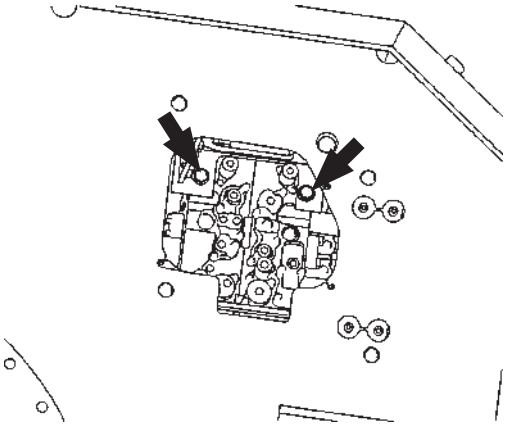
ZX135US-7H

M1U4-07-051-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

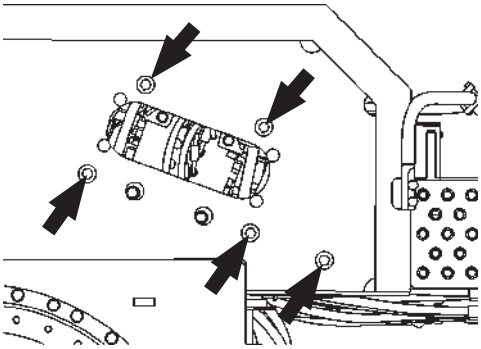
MDA4-07-078-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

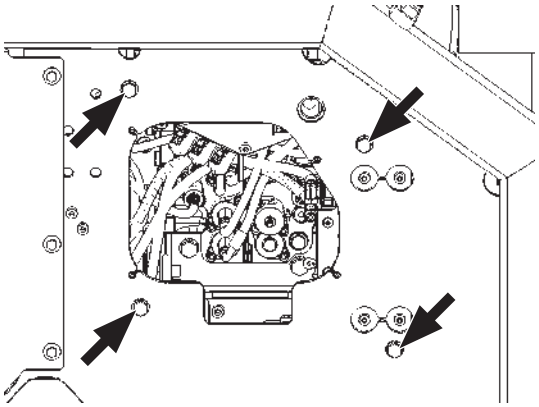
MDD5-07-025-1 ja

Control valve bracket mounting bolts



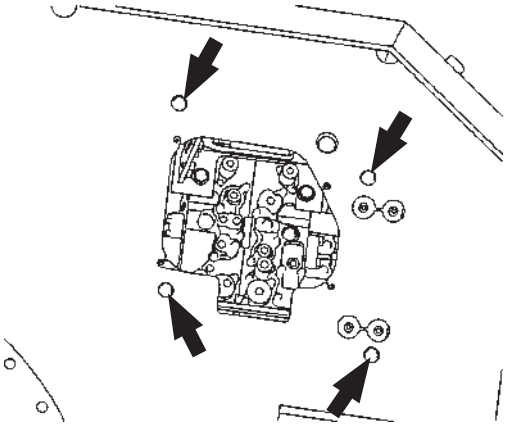
ZX135US-7H

M1U4-07-051-2 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

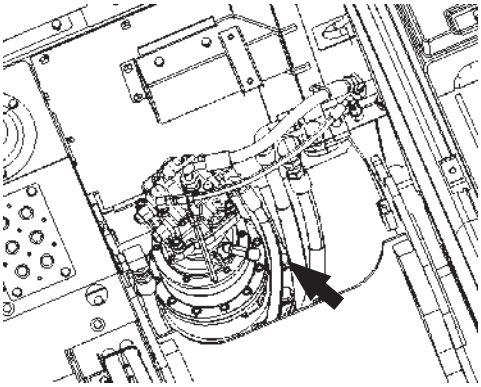
MDA4-07-078-2 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

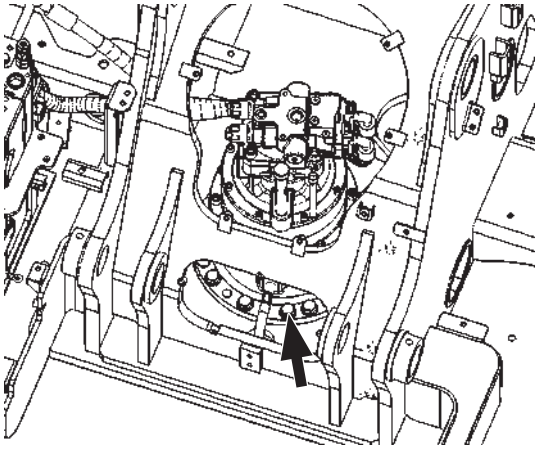
MDD5-07-025-2 ja

8. Swing device mounting bolts



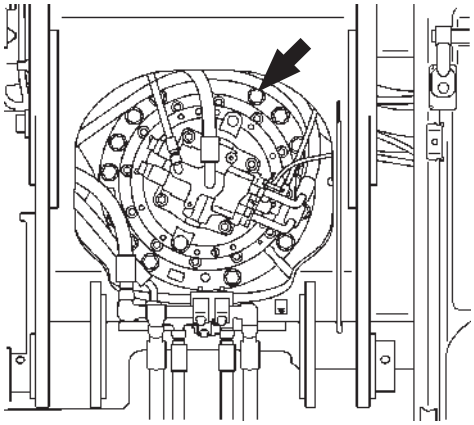
ZX135US-7H

MDCN-07-018-2 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

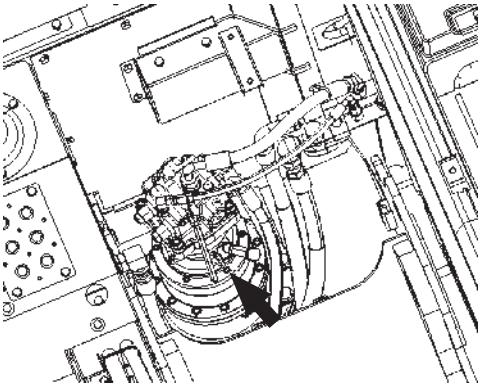
MDA4-07-081-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

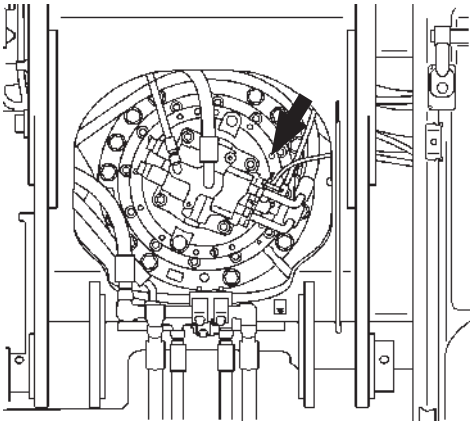
MDD5-07-026-1 ja

9. Swing motor mounting bolts



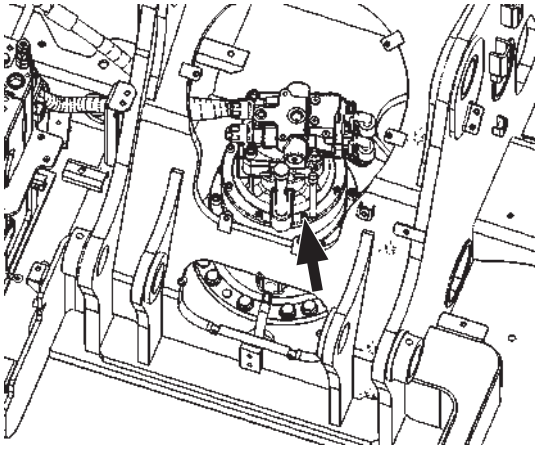
ZX135US-7H

MDCN-07-018-3 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

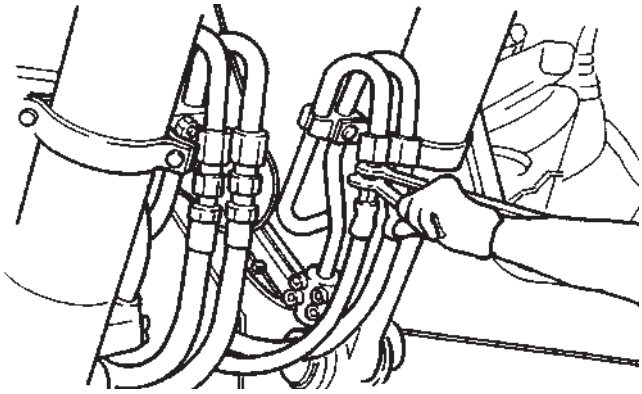
MDD5-07-026-2 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

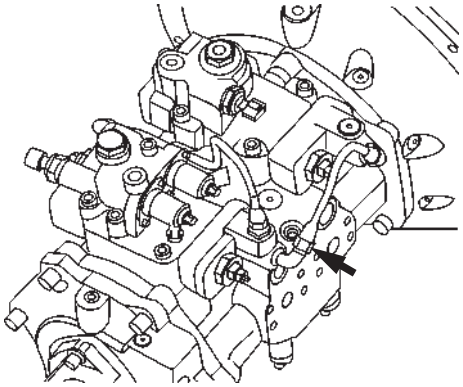
MDA4-07-081-2 ja

10. Union joints for hydraulic hoses and pipes



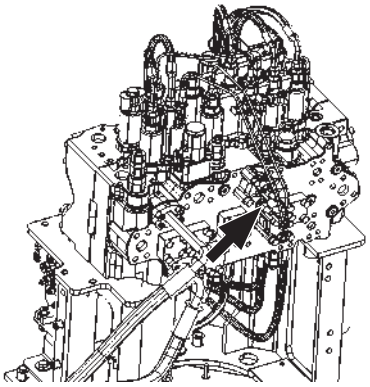
M104-07-079 ja

11. Hycolin® tube mounting nuts



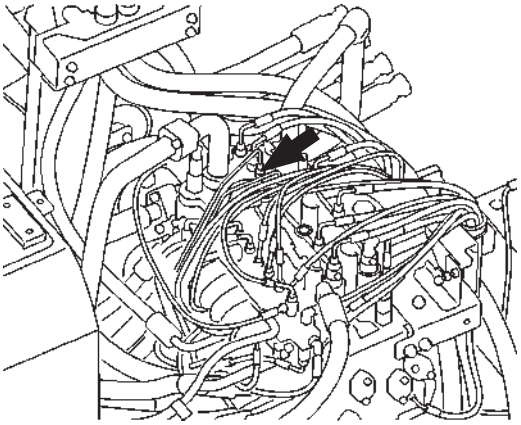
ZX135US-7H

M1U1-07-111-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

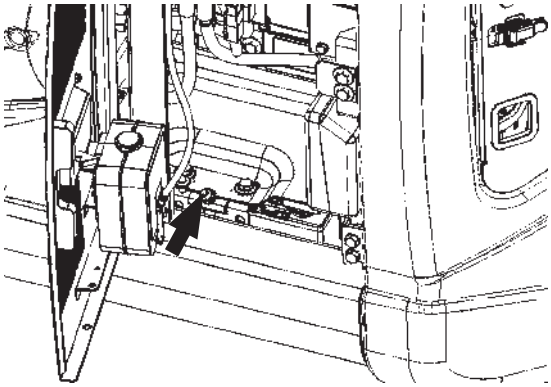
MDCN-07-071-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

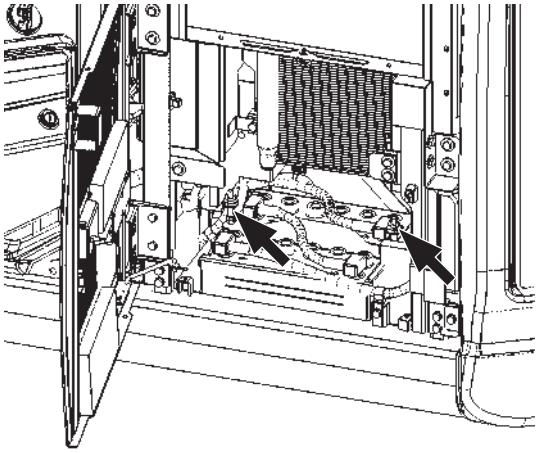
MDD5-07-027-1 ja

12. Battery mounting nuts



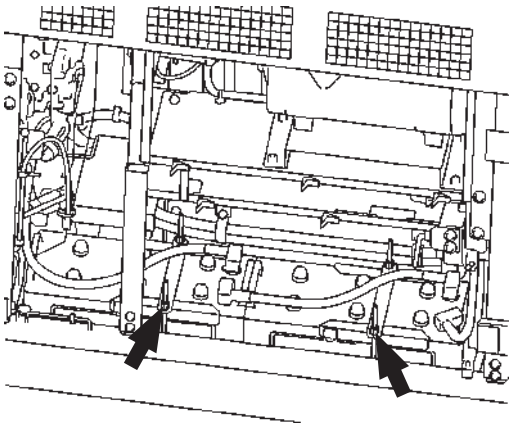
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-033-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

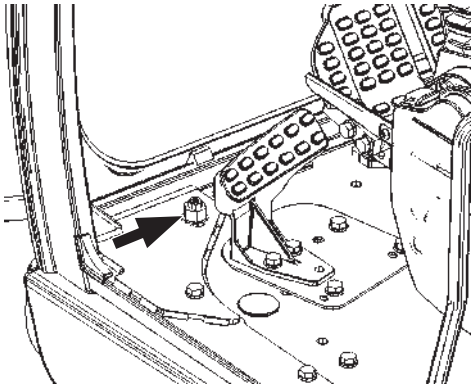
MDA4-07-083-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

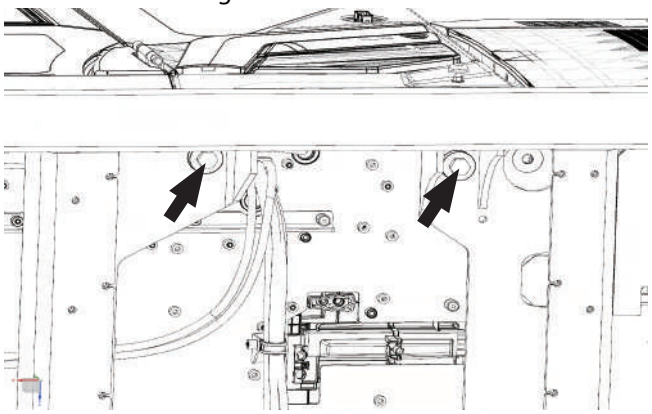
MDD5-07-028-1 ja

13. Cab mounting nuts



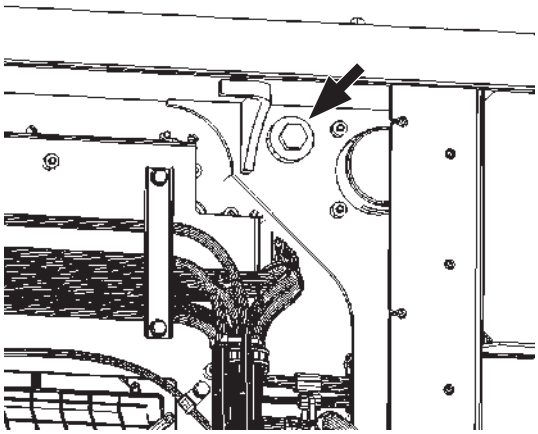
MDA4-07-084-1 ja

Cab mounting anchor bolt



ZX345USLC-7H

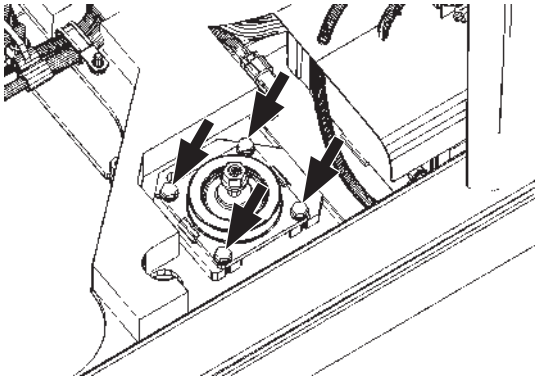
MDHE-07-018-1 ja



ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H

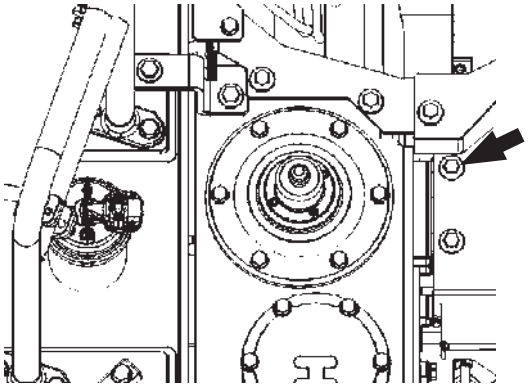
MDA4-07-085-1 ja

Cab cushion rubber mounting bolt



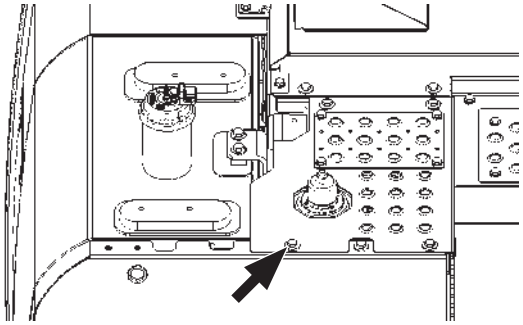
MDA4-07-086-1 ja

14. Cover mounting bolts



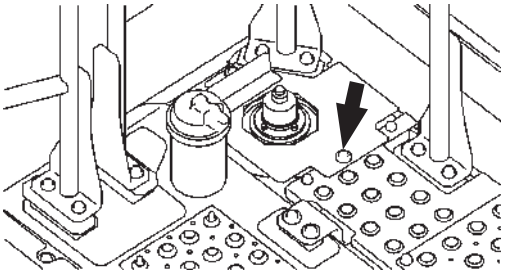
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-035-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

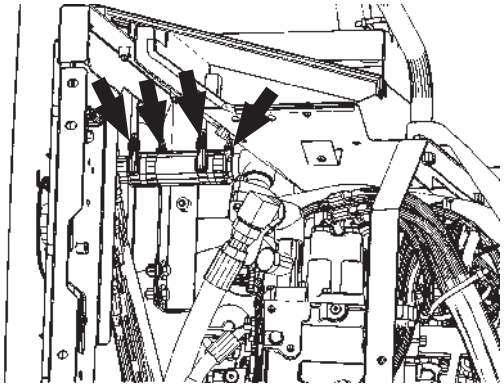
MDA4-07-088-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

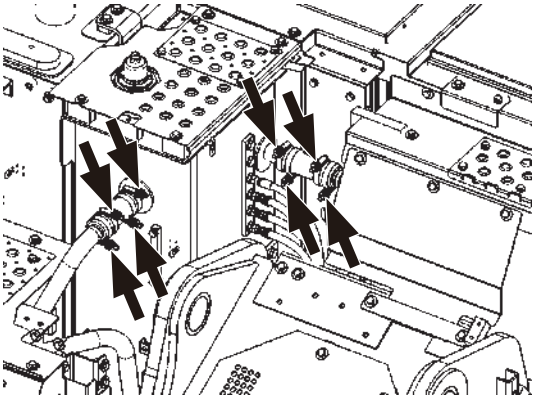
MDD5-07-011-1 ja

15. Constant torque clamp of low-pressure piping



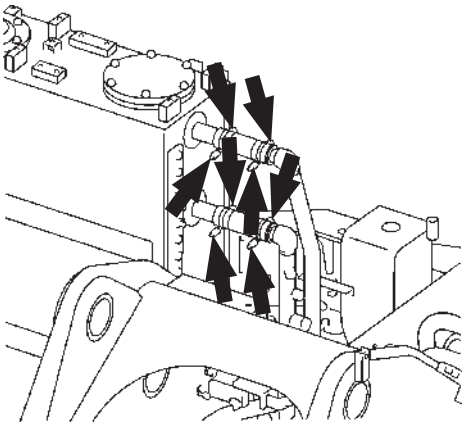
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-060-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

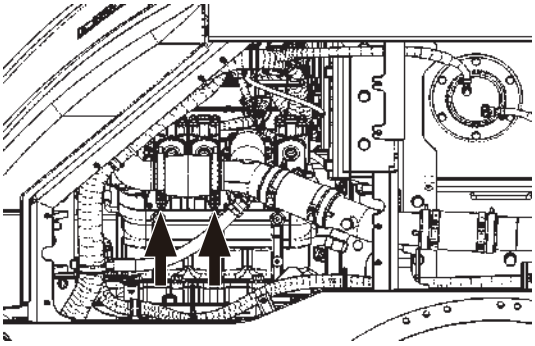
MDA4-07-090-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

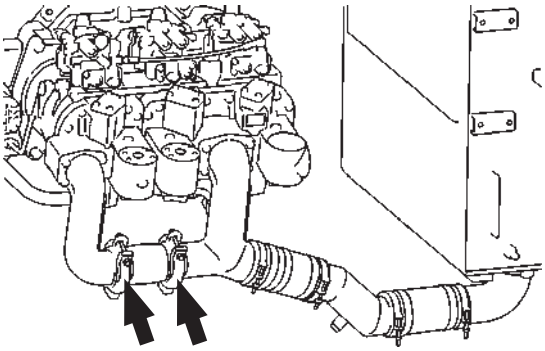
MDD5-07-029-1 ja

Flexible master coupling of low-pressure piping



ZX245USLC-7H

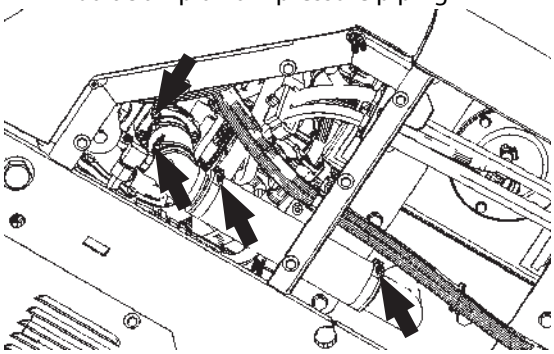
MDA4-07-091-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

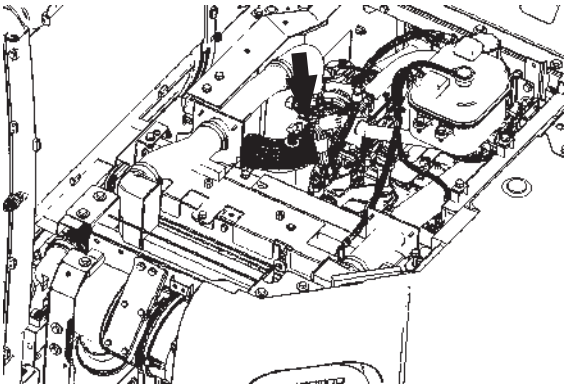
MDD5-07-030-1 ja

T-bolt clamp of low-pressure piping



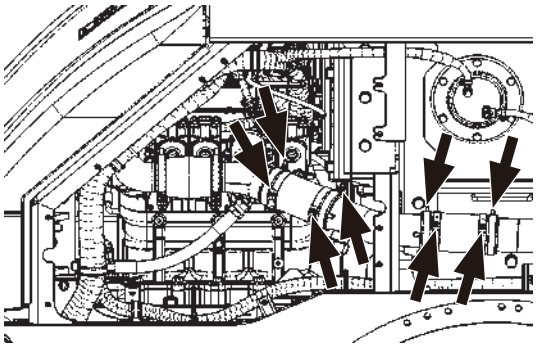
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-063-1 ja



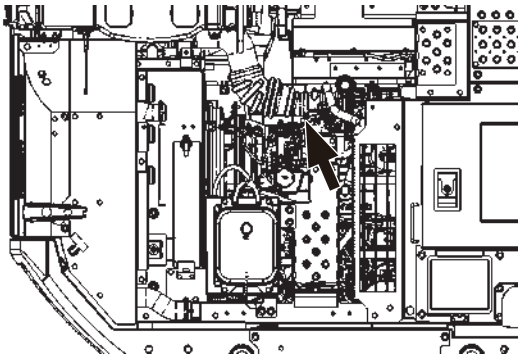
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-064-1 ja



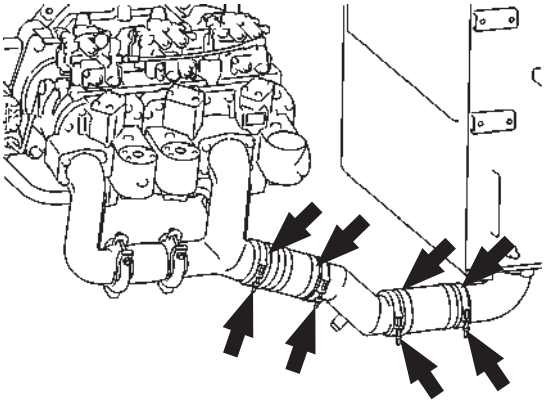
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-091-2 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

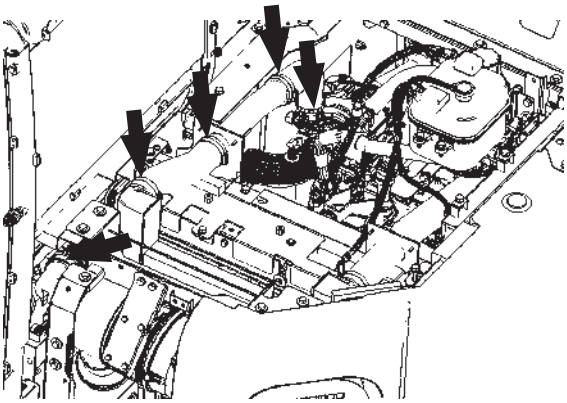
MDA4-07-092-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

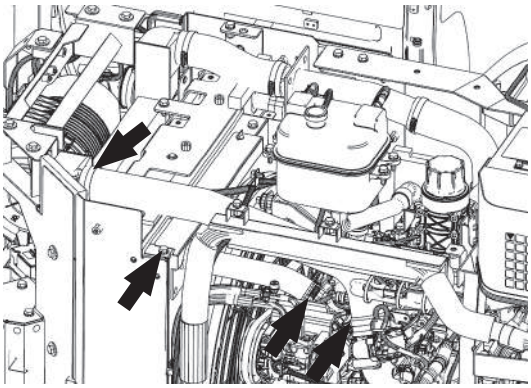
MDD5-07-030-2 ja

Low-pressure piping KW, Jubilee® clamp



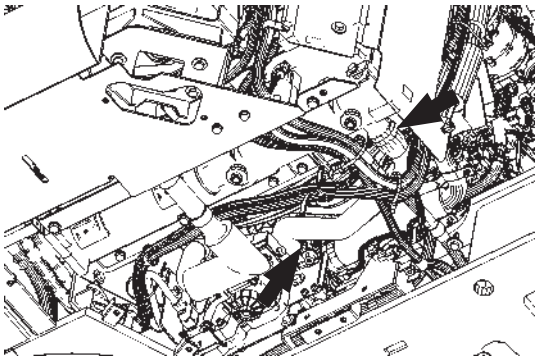
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-064-2 ja



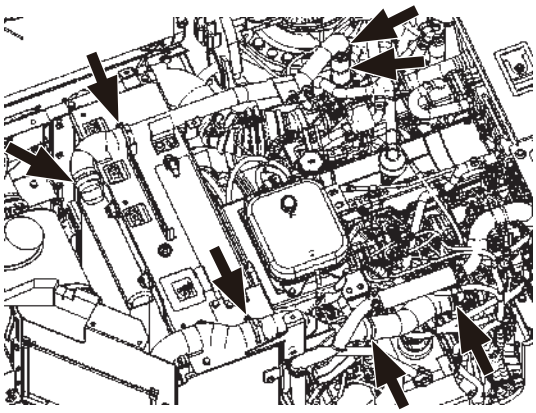
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-067-1 ja



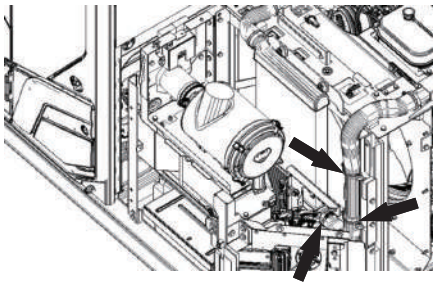
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-068-1 ja



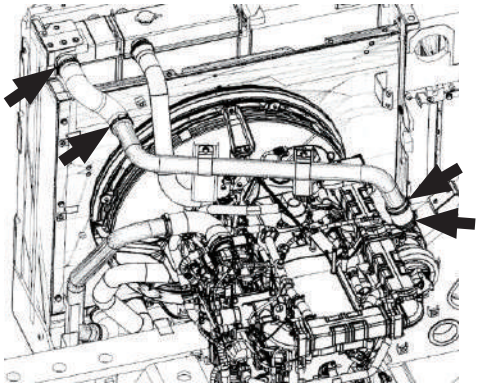
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-095-1 ja



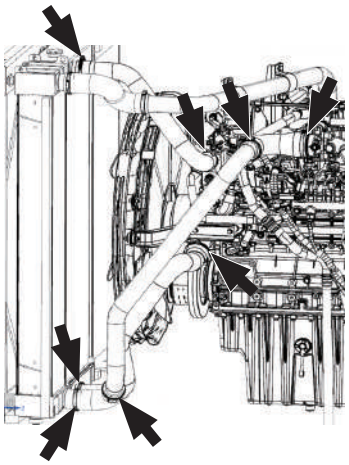
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-141-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

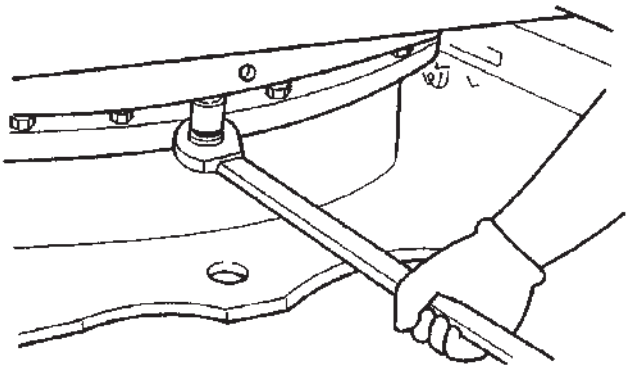
MDHE-07-021-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

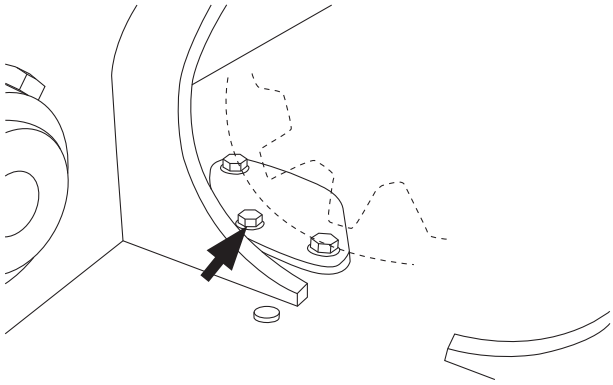
MDHE-07-022-1 ja

16. Swing bearing mounting bolts



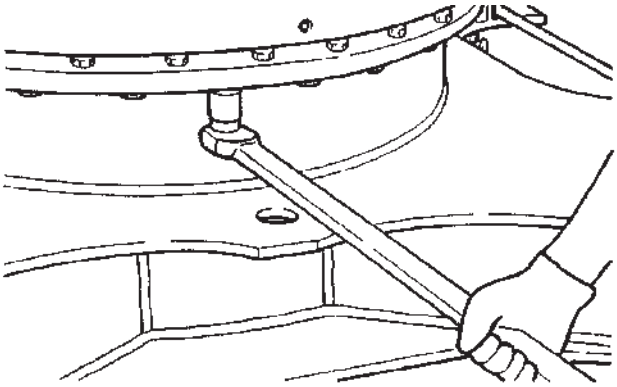
Upperstructure Side

M107-07-088 ja



Undercarriage Side
ZX135US-7H

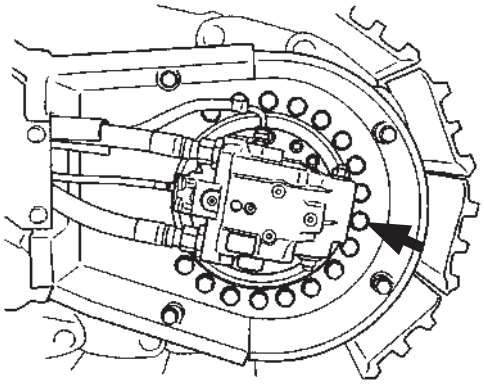
M1U1-07-113-1 ja



Undercarriage Side
ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H

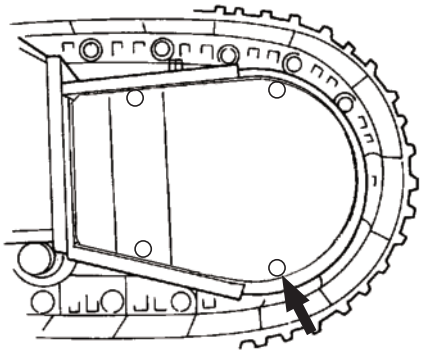
M107-07-089 ja

17. Travel device mounting bolts



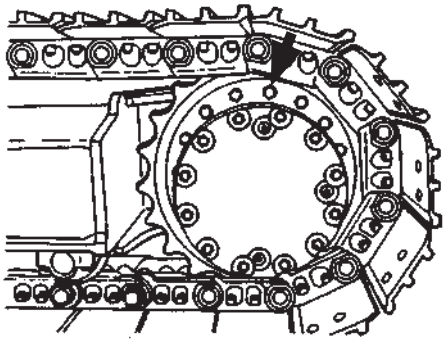
M164-07-005-1 ja

Travel device cover mounting bolts



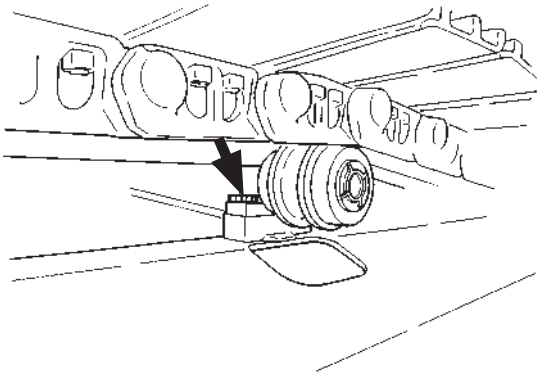
MDFY-07-035-1 ja

Sprocket mounting bolts



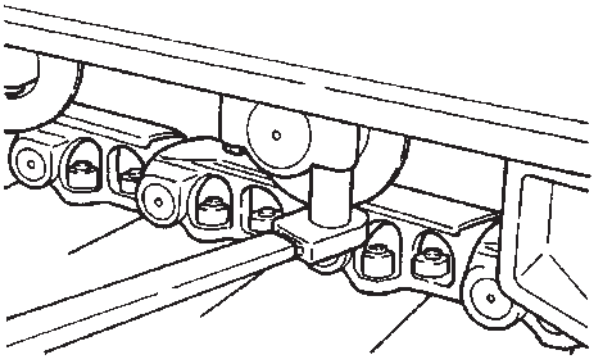
M154-07-050-1 ja

18. Upper roller mounting bolts



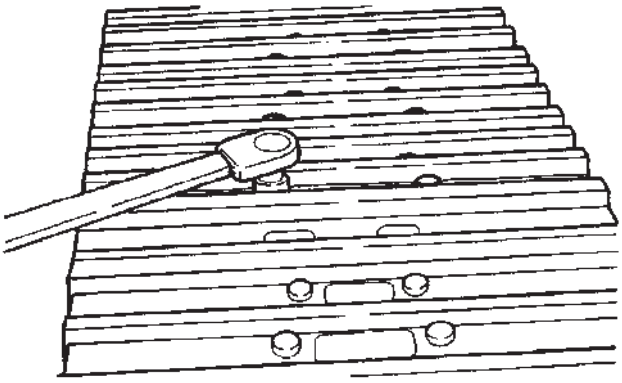
M157-07-224-1 ja

19. Lower roller mounting bolts



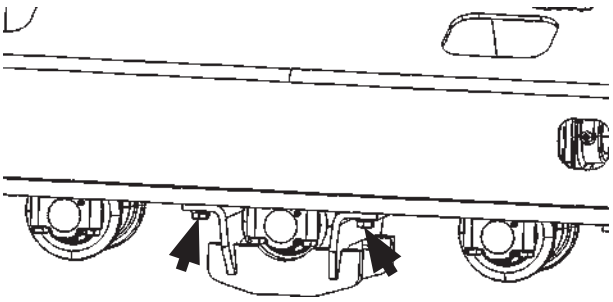
M107-07-092 ja

20. Track shoe mounting bolts



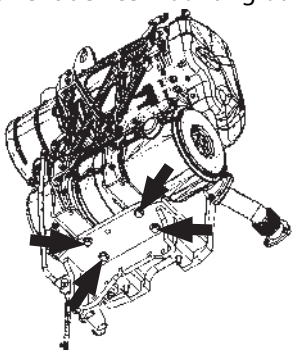
M107-07-093 ja

21. Track guard mounting bolts



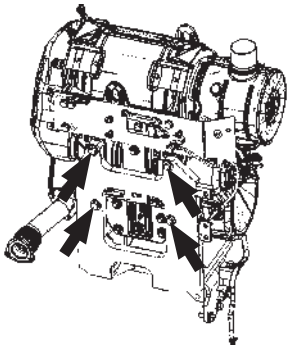
MDAA-07-058-1 ja

22. Aftertreatment device mounting bolts



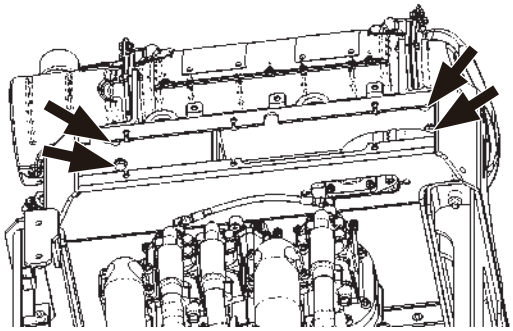
ZX135US-7H (Bottom)

MDC1-07-076-1 ja



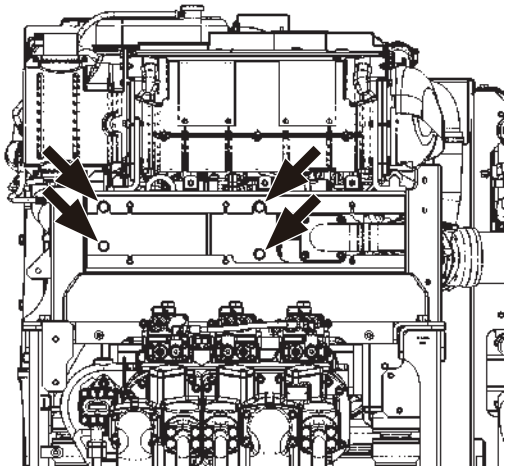
ZX135US-7H (Rear)

MDC1-07-075-1 ja



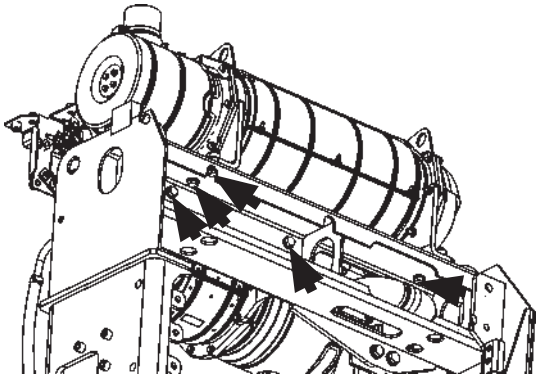
ZX245USLC-7H (Bottom)

MDA4-07-099-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H (Rear)

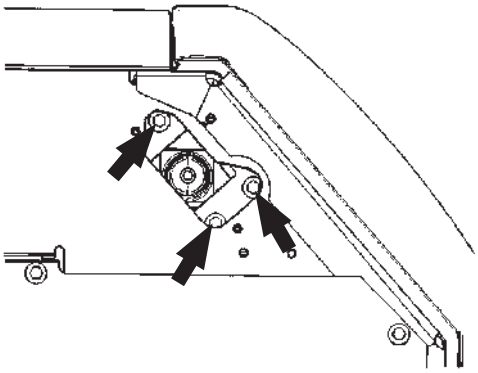
MDA4-07-098-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

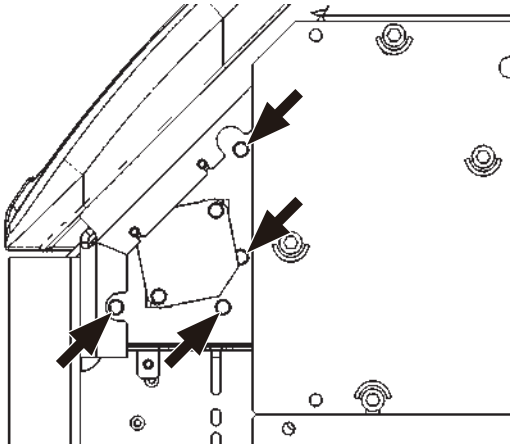
MDC1-07-049-1 ja

23. DEF tank bracket mounting bolts



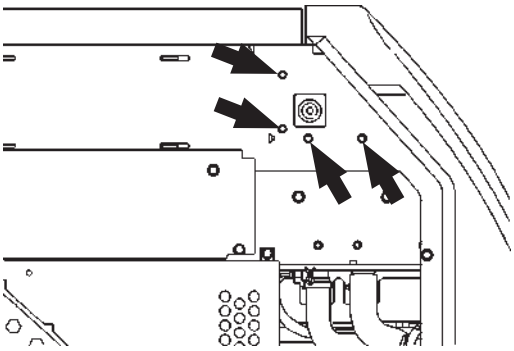
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-038-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

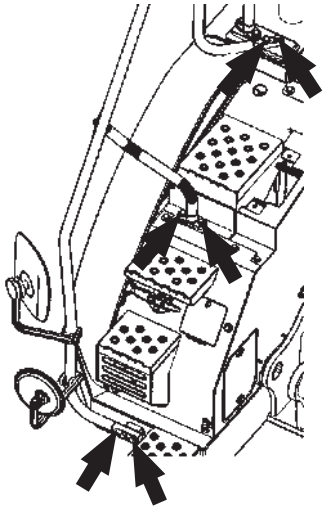
MDA4-07-100-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

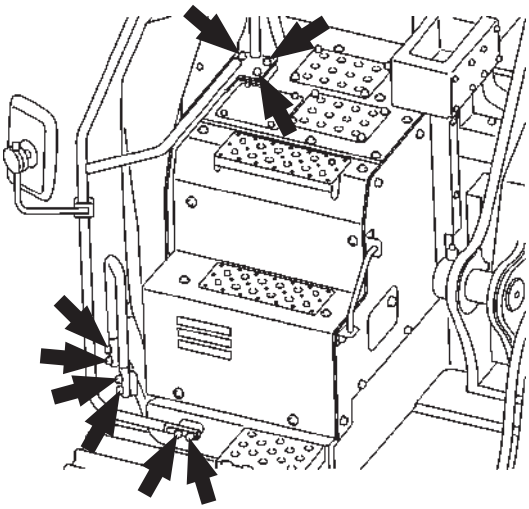
MDD5-07-032-1 ja

24. Platform handrail mounting bolts



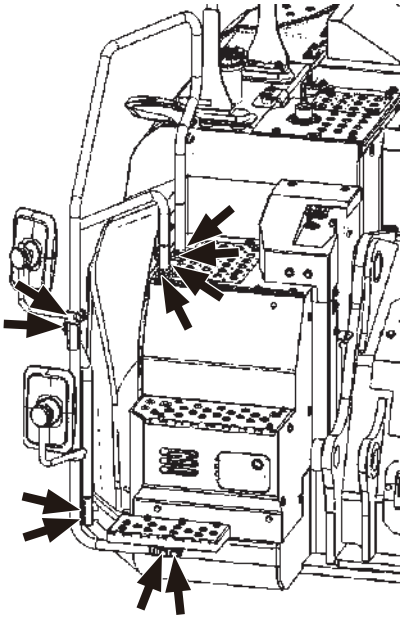
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-040-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

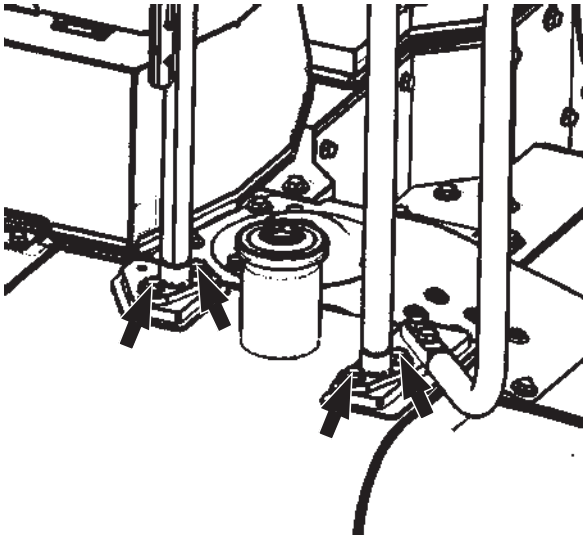
MDD5-07-033-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

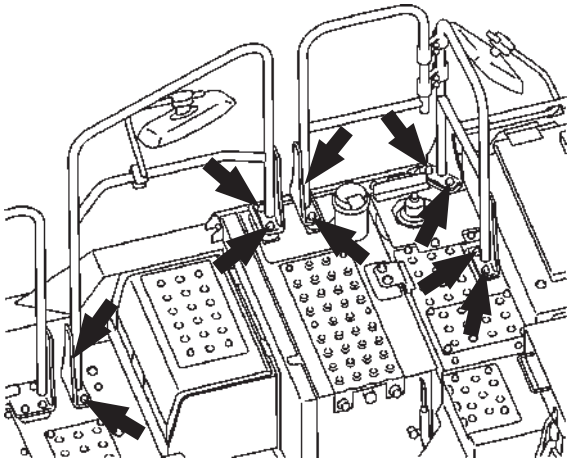
MDA4-07-104-1 ja

25. Tank top guard rail mounting bolts



ZX135US-7H

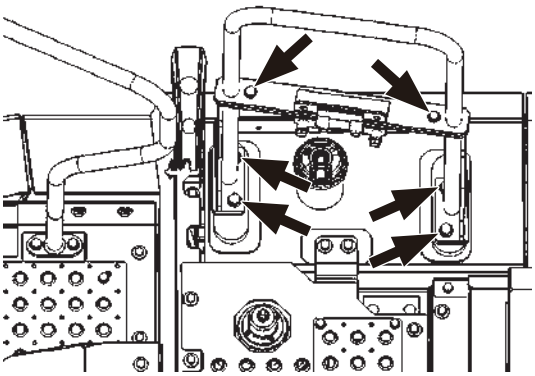
MDAT-07-042-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-034-1 ja

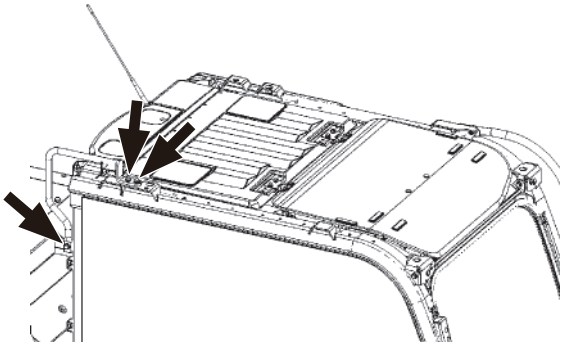
Fuel tank top guard rail mounting bolts



ZX245USLC-7H

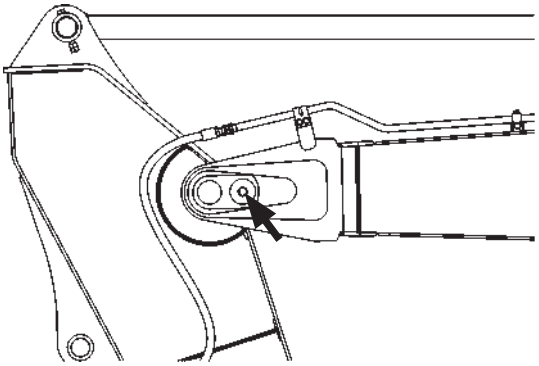
MDA4-07-112-1 ja

26. Cab handrail mounting bolts

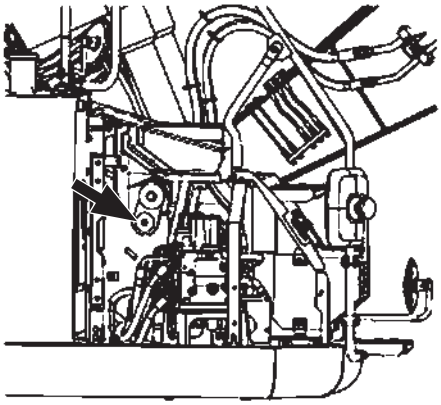


MDA4-07-121-1 ja

27. Front attachment pin-retaining bolts

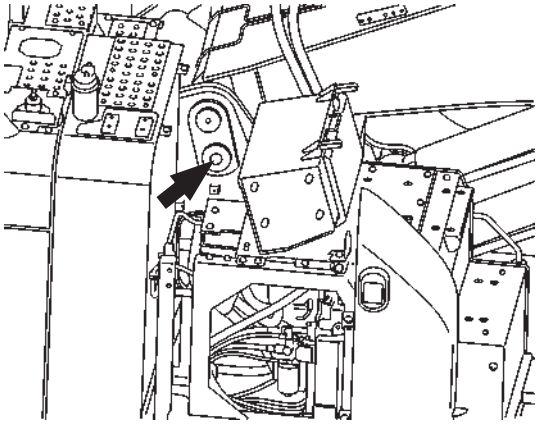


MDCS-07-004-1 ja



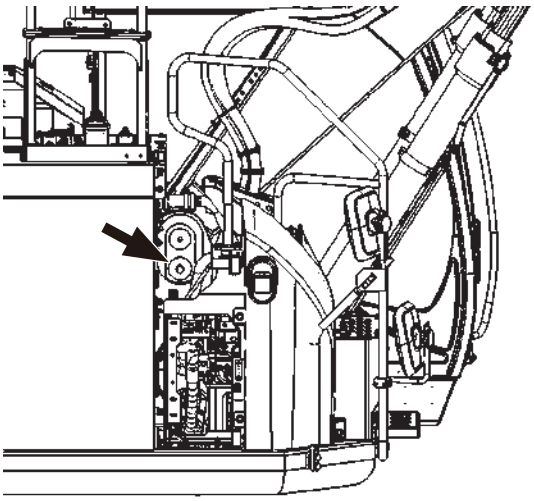
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-082-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

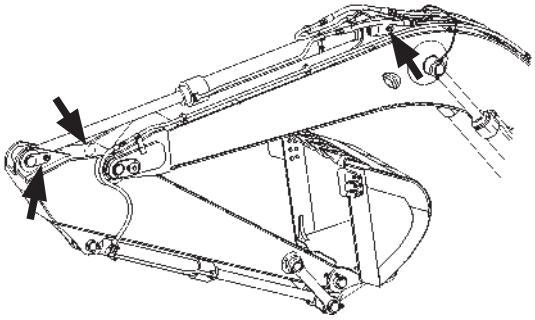
MDD5-07-035-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-105-1 ja

Boom end, arm cylinder bottom and rod pin-retaining bolts
(Boom top pin-retaining bolts: 3)



ZX345USLC-7H

MDCA-07-001-1 ja

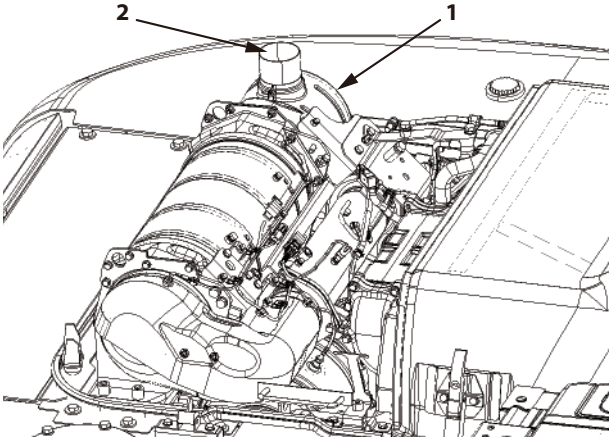
J. Aftertreatment Device

1 Check and Clean Aftertreatment Device

--- as required

IMPORTANT

- **Check and clean away any flammable materials in the area around the aftertreatment device (1).**
- **Condensation may blow out from exhaust outlet (2) of aftertreatment device (1) and black deposits may be observed; it is not a malfunction.**



MDFY-07-044-1 ja

Do not disassemble the base machine support parts and sensors.

When the machine is operated in dusty areas, refer to chapter 9 "Maintenance Under Special Environmental Conditions".

1. Open the engine cover.
2. Check the connector wire harnesses of exhaust temperature sensors, NOx sensor and dosing module for abnormalities.
3. Securely close the engine cover.
   Clean it if necessary.

K. Urea SCR System

WARNING

Fill specified DEF into the DEF tank.
If improper DEF is refilled, fire or system failure may result. If improper liquid is refilled in the DEF tank, consult Authorized Dealer for check or repair.

Specified DEF

Refill DEF which meets Japanese Industrial Standards (JIS K2247), International Organization for Standardization (ISO 22241) or Deutsche Industrie Normen (DIN 70070). If improper liquid (diesel oil, kerosene or gasoline) is refilled in the DEF tank, fire or system failure may result. The specified DEF is colorless and odorless solution (urea 32.5%, water 67.5%) which begins to freeze at -11 °C (12.2 °F). When storing unused DEF, it is recommended to store it within the temperature range of -10 to 30 °C (14 to 80 °F). It deteriorates down more readily at 40 °C (104 °F).

In some cases, specified area solution is referred to by one or more of these names:

- Aqueous Urea Solution 32
- AUS 32
- NOx Reduction Agent
- Catalyst Solution

CAUTION

- **DEF is colorless and harmless solution. It is harmless when contacting with the body, however, it may cause skin to become inflamed depending on the constitution of the individual. Flush DEF with clean water when it contacts on the skin.**
- **If you swallow DEF by mistake, drink 1 or 2 cups of water or milk and seek immediate medical attention.**
- **If DEF is accidentally splashed into eyes, flush with water for 15 minutes or longer and get emergency medical attention.**

IMPORTANT

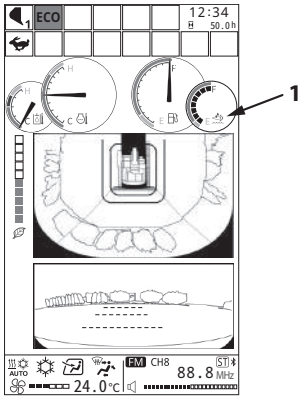
- **Use dedicated container recommended by the business entity who is handling DEF to store DEF. Do not use general container, a container used for other purpose and contaminated container because the quality of DEF deteriorates.**
- **The DEF is non-combustible, however, move DEF to a safe place when fire occurs.**
- **Wash out spilled DEF with clean water.**
- **Seal the container and store it in a well ventilated place. If DEF freezes, the quality does not change just after freezing.**
- **As long as sealed by an airtight stopper, unless water evaporates DEF will not deteriorate within the guarantee period.**
- **Do not pour waste DEF and its containers onto the ground, and do not allow waste to flow into rivers and/or lakes. When disposing DEF, make sure to let authorized industrial waste disposal contractor dispose of it appropriately.**

1 Check DEF

. . . Daily inspection

Park the machine on a firm, level surface and lower the bucket to the ground. Check the fuel level with DEF gauge (1).

If necessary, stop the engine and add DEF.



MDFY-MT-100-9 ja

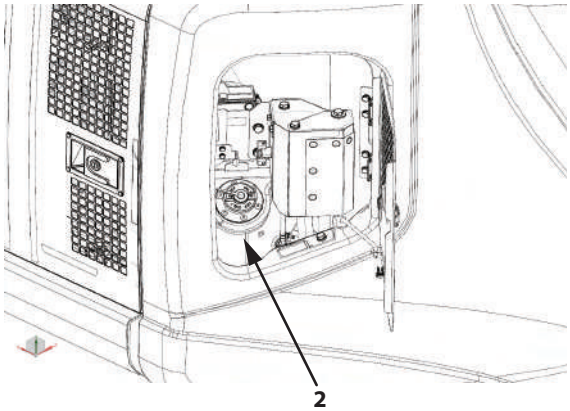
Refill DEF

CAUTION

- **Refill DEF which meets Japanese Industrial Standards (JIS K2247), International Organization for Standardization (ISO 22241) or Deutsche Industrie Normen (DIN 70070) in DEF tank (2). If low density DEF is refilled, alarm will be generated, restricting machine operation. Do not dilute DEF with water.**
- **Do not add any additives to the specified DEF. Similarly, do not use DEF that already has additives in it. Doing so may cause damage to the machine.**
- **Wear safety equipment such as safety glasses or goggles, rubber globes appropriate to the job. Wash DEF with clean water when it contacts on the skin. If DEF is accidentally splashed into eyes, flush with water for 15 minutes or longer and get emergency medical attention.**

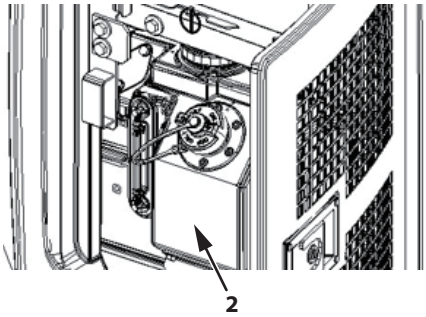
1. Park the machine according to the instruction on "Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance" .
2. DEF tank (2) is located in the cover at right front of the machine. Open the cover with the key. Holding the handle on the access cover, raise the cover until the cover is secured with catch.
   Prior to starting to refill, make sure no contaminants, such as sand or dust, are on the DEF refill container or the port of the DEF device.
3. Clean dust and mud around the filler port of DEF tank with clean cloth.

Model	DEF Tank Capacity
ZX135US-7H	13 L (3.4 US gal)
ZX245USLC-7H	27 L (7.1 US gal)
ZX345USLC-7H	16 L (4.2 US gal)



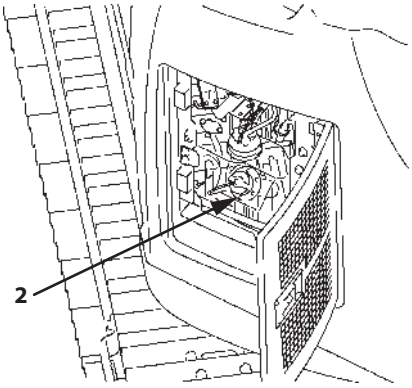
ZX135US-7H

MDHE-07-019-1 ja



ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-144-1 ja



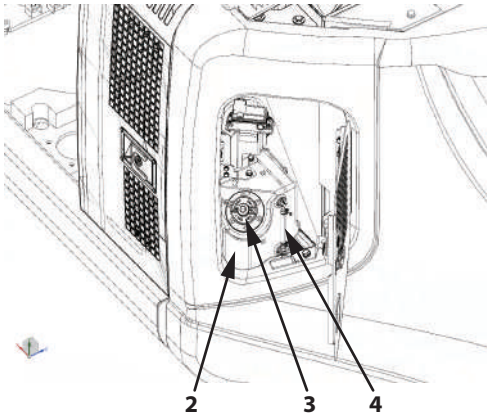
ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-037-1 ja

4. Remove cap (3) from DEF tank (2) and refill DEF. Be sure to stop refilling before the "F" line by checking the level gauge (4) float (A).

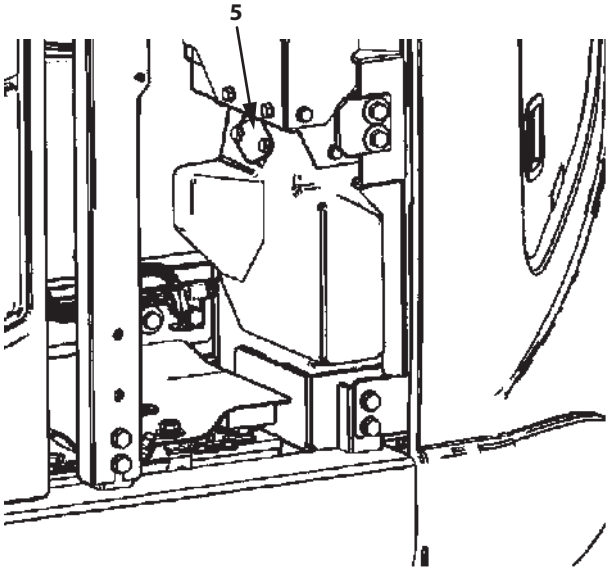
IMPORTANT

- **Make sure the containers and equipment used for refilling are free of contaminants, such as sand, mud and dirt. If any contaminants are present, either rinse them off with soft water or wipe them off with a clean cloth before refilling.**
- **Take care not to allow dust and/or water to enter the DEF tank when refilling.**
- **Put cap (3) of DEF tank (2) on the cap holder (3) to prevent the cap from contamination.**
- **If DEF is filled above the "F" line, the system may be damaged during operation or tank (2) may be broken when frozen.**



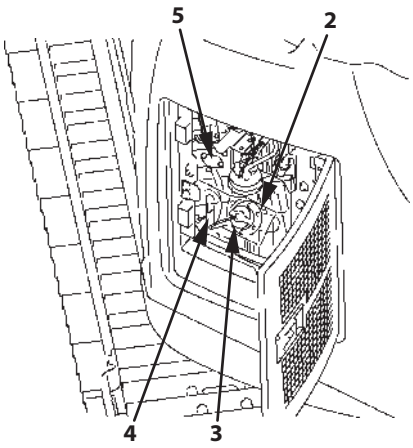
ZX135US-7H

MDHE-07-020-1 ja



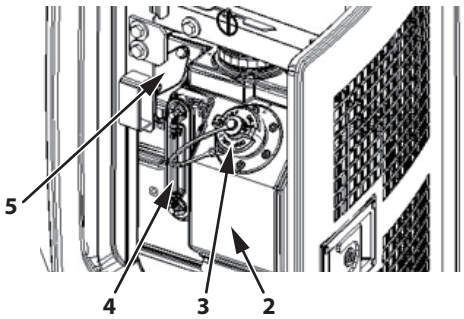
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-046-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-037-2 ja



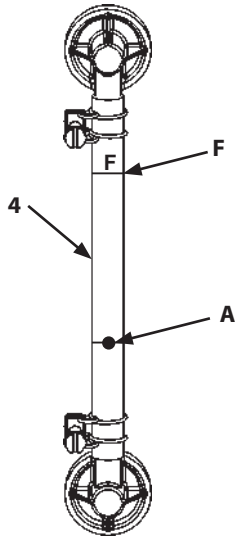
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-144-4 ja

5. Install cap (3) after refilling DEF. Close the tank cover and lock it with the key.

IMPORTANT

- **Do not get on top of DEF tank (2) or sensors and piping on the tank. Failure to do so may damage the machine.**
- **If it becomes necessary to refill DEF when cap (3) can not be emoved due to freezing, use emergency filler port (5).**
- **White deposits may be observed when DEF is dried naturally; it is normal. Wash out DEF deposits with soft water. Never use a high pressure washer.**



Level Gauge

MDC1-07-053-3 ja

NOTE

- *Wipe spilled DEF and wash spilled area with plenty of water.*
- *The sound of flowing water may be heard from the tank after the engine stops. It is the sound of returning DEF from piping to the tank, not a malfunction.*
- *DEF will freeze at low temperature, and deteriorate (ammonification) at high temperature. Store DEF at temperature between -10 and 40°C (14 and 104 °F).*
- *Use dedicated container (purchased container) to store or carry DEF. Alternatively use a polyethylene resin tank, or stainless steel tank.*

Extendable Filler Neck

When refilling DEF using a container with a short nozzle, use the extension filler neck attached to the machine for easy refilling.

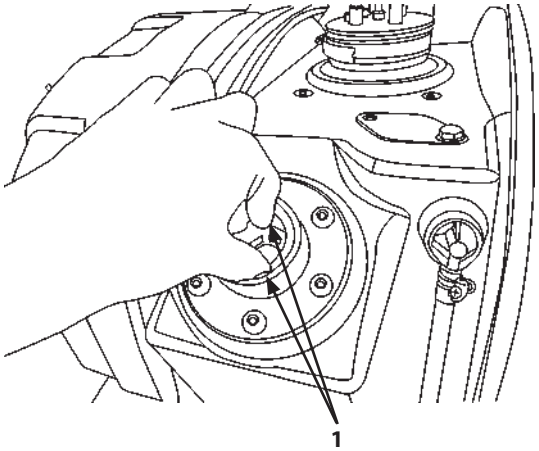
CAUTION

Wear safety equipment such as safety glasses or goggles, rubber gloves appropriate to the job. Wash off DEF with clean water if it comes in contact with skin. If DEF is accidentally splashed into the eyes, flush with water for 15 minutes or longer and get emergency medical attention.

IMPORTANT

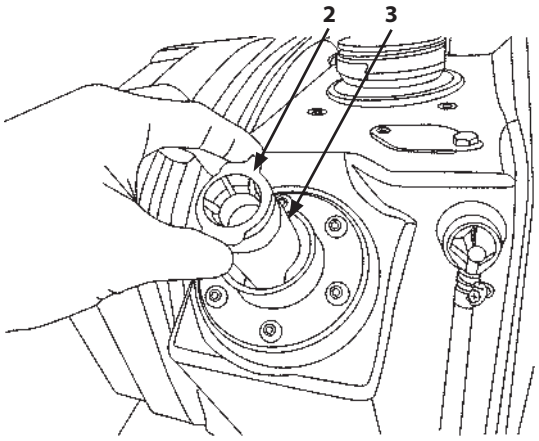
Take care that dust does not get in while working.

1. Hold projecting part (1) of adapter (2) with your fingers and twist clockwise 90 degrees.

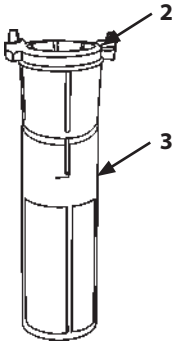


MDC1-07-031-1 ja

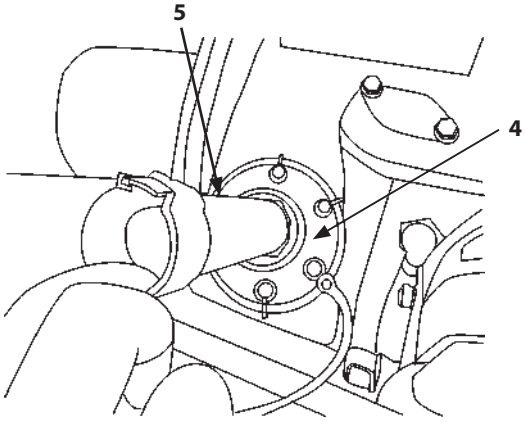
2. Pull out adapter (2) . Strainer (3) comes out with adapter (2) at the same time.



MDC1-07-032-1 ja



3. Install strainer (5) for the extension filler neck into holder (4) .

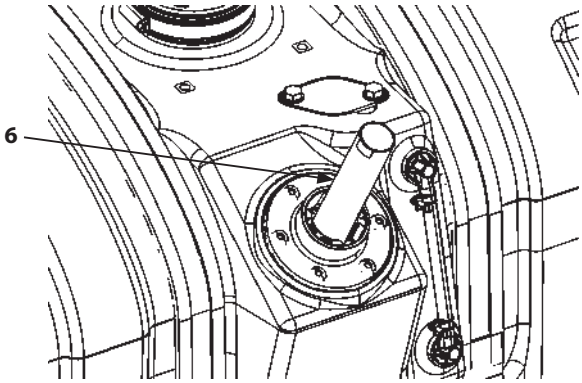


MDC1-07-033-1 ja

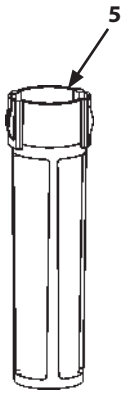
4. Insert extension filler neck (6) into the filler port, twist clockwise 90 degrees to lock in place and then fill with DEF.

   NOTE

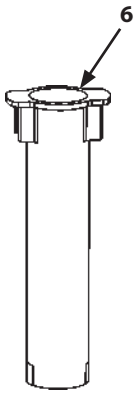
   After filling with DEF, remove extension filler neck (6) and twist counterclockwise 180 degrees to put it into strainer (5) .



MDC1-07-030-1 ja



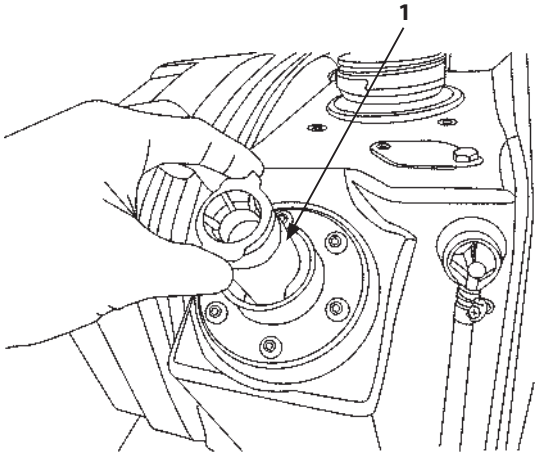
MJAG-07-071-1 ja



MJAG-07-070-1 ja

Clean Filler Port Strainer

Strainer (1) is provided on the filler port of the DEF tank. Clean strainer (1) if dirt or dust is observed.



MDC1-07-032-2 ja

CAUTION

Wear safety equipment such as safety glasses or goggles, rubber gloves appropriate to the job. Wash DEF with clean water when it contacts with the skin. If DEF is accidentally splashed into eyes, flush with water for 15 minutes or longer and get emergency medical attention.

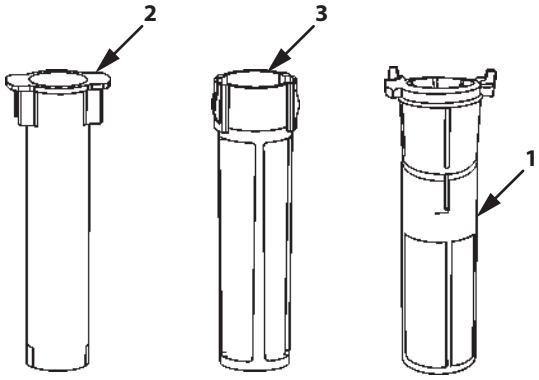
IMPORTANT

Take care not to allow dust to contaminate the area when carrying out the work.

1. Remove strainer (1) from the filler port of the DEF tank.
2. Clean strainer (1) with compressed air pressure (lower than 0.2 MPa (2 kgf/cm^2, 29 psi)) or tap water.
3. Install strainer (1) on the filler port of the DEF tank.

   NOTE

   If extendable filler neck (2) is used, clean strainer (3).



MDFY-07-104-1 ja

How to Change DEF

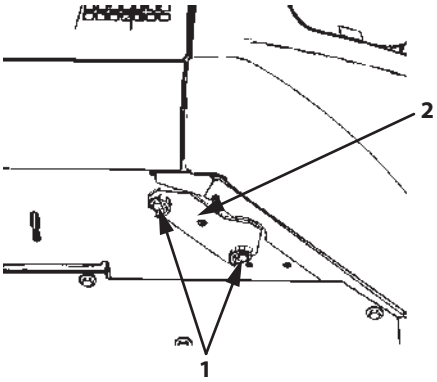
CAUTION

Wear safety equipment, such as safety glasses or goggles, rubber gloves appropriate to the job. Wash off DEF with clean water if it comes in contact with skin. If DEF is accidentally splashed into the eyes, flush with water for 15 minutes or longer and get emergency medical attention.

IMPORTANT

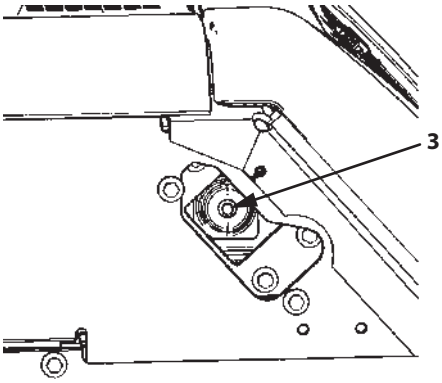
When contaminated or deteriorated DEF is used, malfunction may result. Change DEF periodically to keep the inside of the tank clean.

1. Remove bolts (1) and cover (2).
2. Place 70 liters (18.5 US gal) or larger capacity container under drain plug (3).
3. Slowly loosen drain plug (3) to drain DEF.
4. Tighten drain plug (3) after draining DEF.
   Wrench size: 13 mm
   Tightening Torque: 19.5 N·m (1.95 kgf·m, 14.5 lbf·ft)
5. Secure cover (2) with bolts (1) .



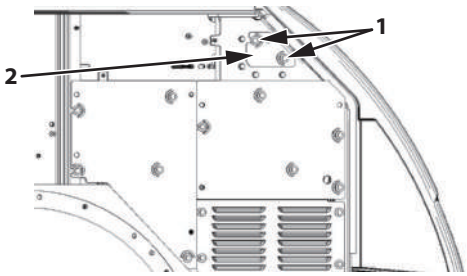
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-047-1 ja



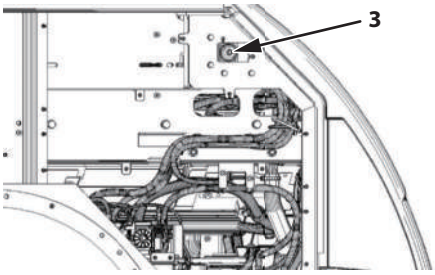
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-048-1 ja



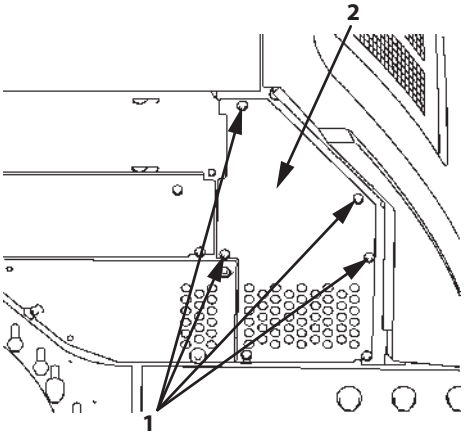
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-142-2 ja



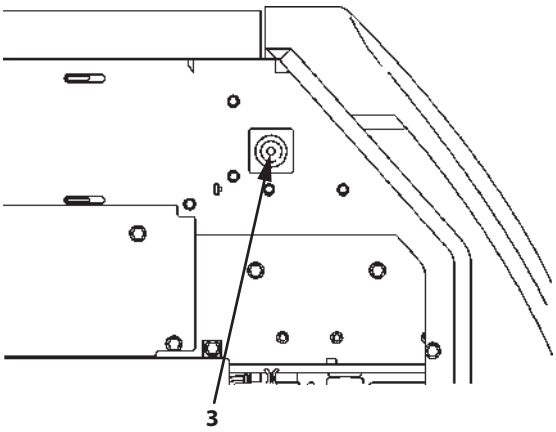
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-147-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-038-1 ja



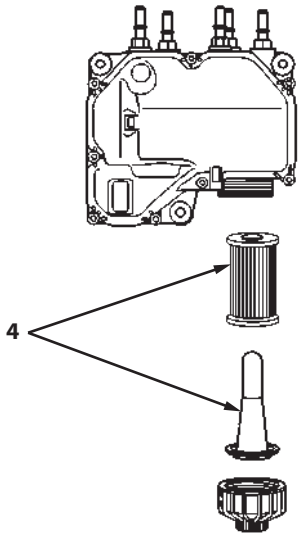
ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-039-1 ja

2 Replace DEF Supply Module Main Filter

--- every 4500 hours

A filter (4) is mounted in the DEF pump. Periodically replace filter (4).



MLAD-07-037-2 ja

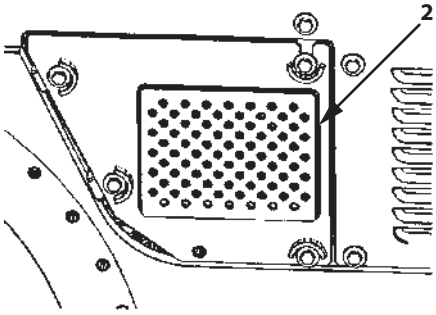
CAUTION

Wear safety equipment such as safety glasses or goggles, rubber gloves appropriate to the job. Wash DEF with clean water when it contacts with the skin. If DEF is accidentally splashed into eyes, flush with water for 15 minutes or longer and get emergency medical attention.

IMPORTANT

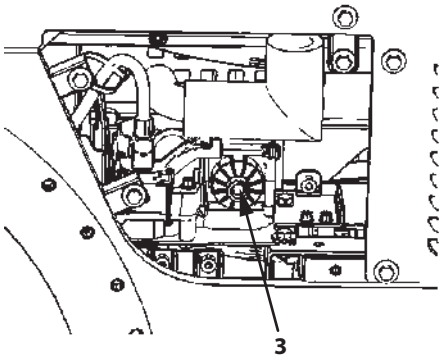
- **Take care not to allow dirt and/or water to enter the DEF tank while replacing filter (4).**
- **Check for leaks around the mounting position after replacement.**
- **White deposition may be observed when DEF is dried naturally; it is normal. Wash out DEF deposition with clean water. Never use a high pressure washer.**

1. Park the machine according to the instruction on Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance (7-10).
2. Remove cover (2).
3. Remove cap (3) from the DEF pump by using a 27 mm bihexagon wrench.
4. Pull out filter (4) inside the pump. As it is tightly mounted, it can not be pulled by hands. Use tools such as a pliers. Replace filter (4) assembly when replacing filter (4) of DEF supply module.
5. Install new filter (4), and tighten cap (3) with 20±5 N·m (2.0±0.5 kgf·m, 15±3.7 lbf·ft) torque.
6. Secure cover (2).



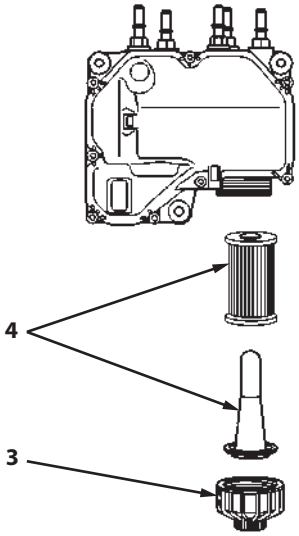
ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-051-1 ja

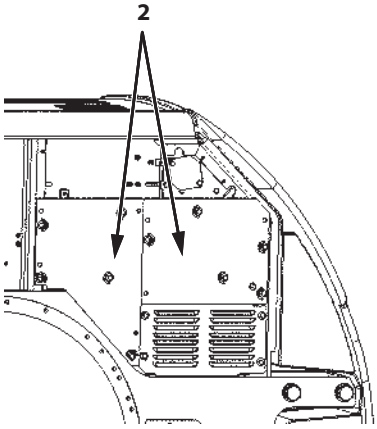


ZX135US-7H

MDAT-07-052-1 ja

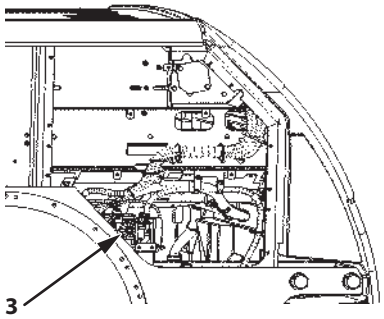


MLAD-07-037-3 ja



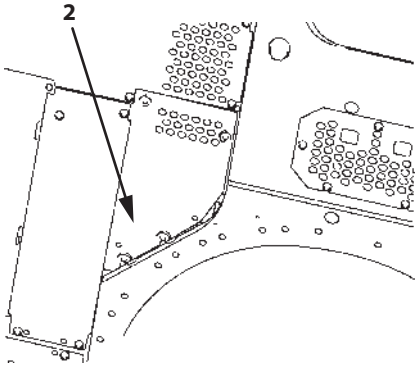
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-114-1 ja



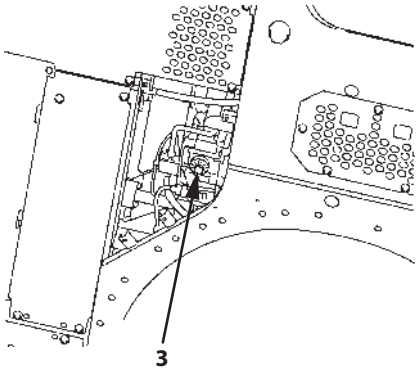
ZX245USLC-7H

MDA4-07-115-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-040-1 ja



ZX345USLC-7H

MDD5-07-041-1 ja

3 Replace DEF Tank Water Supply Inlet Filter

---every 4500 hours, or if DEF spills while filling

IMPORTANT

Replace the filter; do not clean it. Trying to clean and reuse it may cause a malfunction.

The filter inside the water supply inlet of the DEF tank must be replaced periodically. Contact Authorized Dealer when replacing the filter.

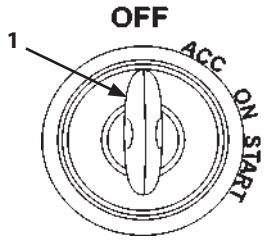
L. Aerial Angle

1 Daily Check of Camera Images used to Compose the Aerial Angle

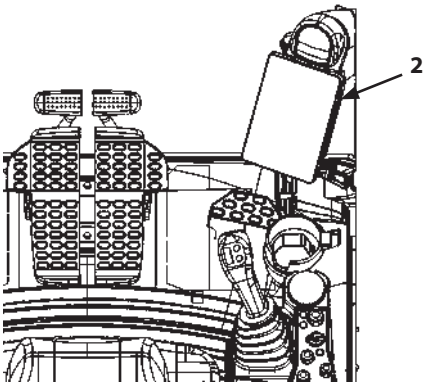
--- daily (before starting the engine)

Inspection Method

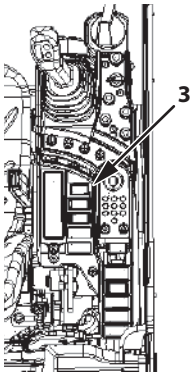
1. Turn key switch (1) to the ON position.
2. Push screen control switch (3) and check that the image changes on main monitor (2).
3. Set main monitor (2) to display the surrounding image and check that all the camera images are being output, and that there is no problem with visibility in the image.



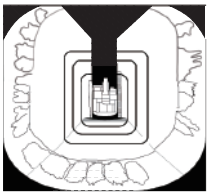
MDCD-01-030-2 ja



MDFY-01-028-2 ja



MDFY-01-117-1 ja



Surrounding Image

MDFY-07-107 ja

IMPORTANT

- **If the image is unclear, clean the lenses of the camera(s) and/or the monitor to make it clearer. Always ensure good footing when cleaning the cameras.**
- **If cleaning the camera lenses and monitor does not improve visibility, or if part of the image is missing, contact Authorized Dealer.**

NOTE

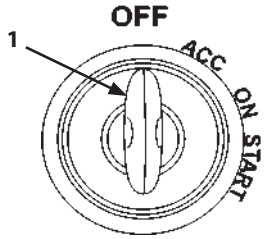
The surfaces of main monitor (2) and the camera lenses are made of plastic. When cleaning them, use a clean, water-dampened cloth and wipe lightly. Never use an organic solvent.

2 **Check Camera Images Used to Compose the Aerial Angle**

... after performing work that affects the installation position of the cameras

IMPORTANT

It may be necessary to reconfigure the cameras if any work is done that affects camera installation positioning (such as removing/reinstalling camera brackets, counterweights, or replacing a camera). Follow the inspection method below to check whether the camera images are being displayed normally.



MDCD-01-030-2 ja

Turn key switch (1) ON and check that there are no problems with the surrounding image using the following procedure.

Preparation for Check

1. Select a site with a firm and level surface.
2. Ensure that there is a space of 3 m (9 ft 10 in) around the machine.
3. For this check, 2 or 3 people are required. An operator is needed to check the images from inside the cab and a pointer (person walking around the machine). In some cases, a third person may be required to pass instructions from the operator to the pointer.
4. Before starting the collaborative check, meet to decide on matters such as how to signal to each other.
5. Lower the bucket to the ground and set pilot shut-off lever (2) to the LOCK position.

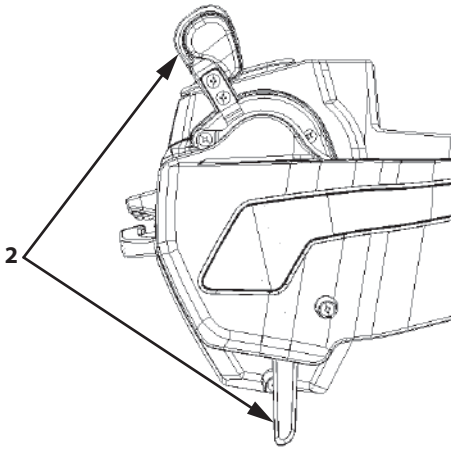
Inspection Method

1. Display the surrounding image.
2. The pointer walks along imaginary line (A) that is 1 m (3 ft 3 in) away from upperstructure (3).
3. The operator in the cab looks at the monitor image and checks whether the pointer is always visible.

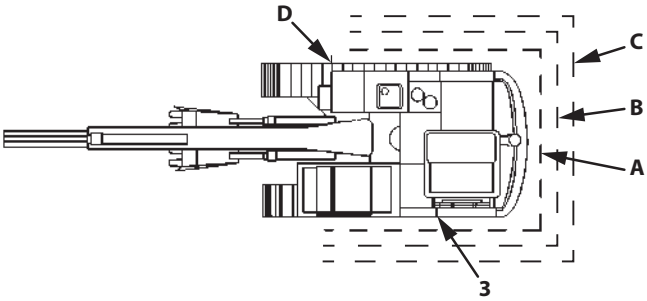
IMPORTANT

- **If the pointer disappears at any location, the camera configuration settings need to be reset. Consult Authorized Dealer.**
- **If the 1 m (3 ft 3 in), 3 m (9 ft 10 in) and 5 m (16 ft 5 in) guide lines are out of alignment, consult Authorized Dealer.**

SA-390 ja



MDFY-01-088-4 ja



MDFY-07-063-2 ja

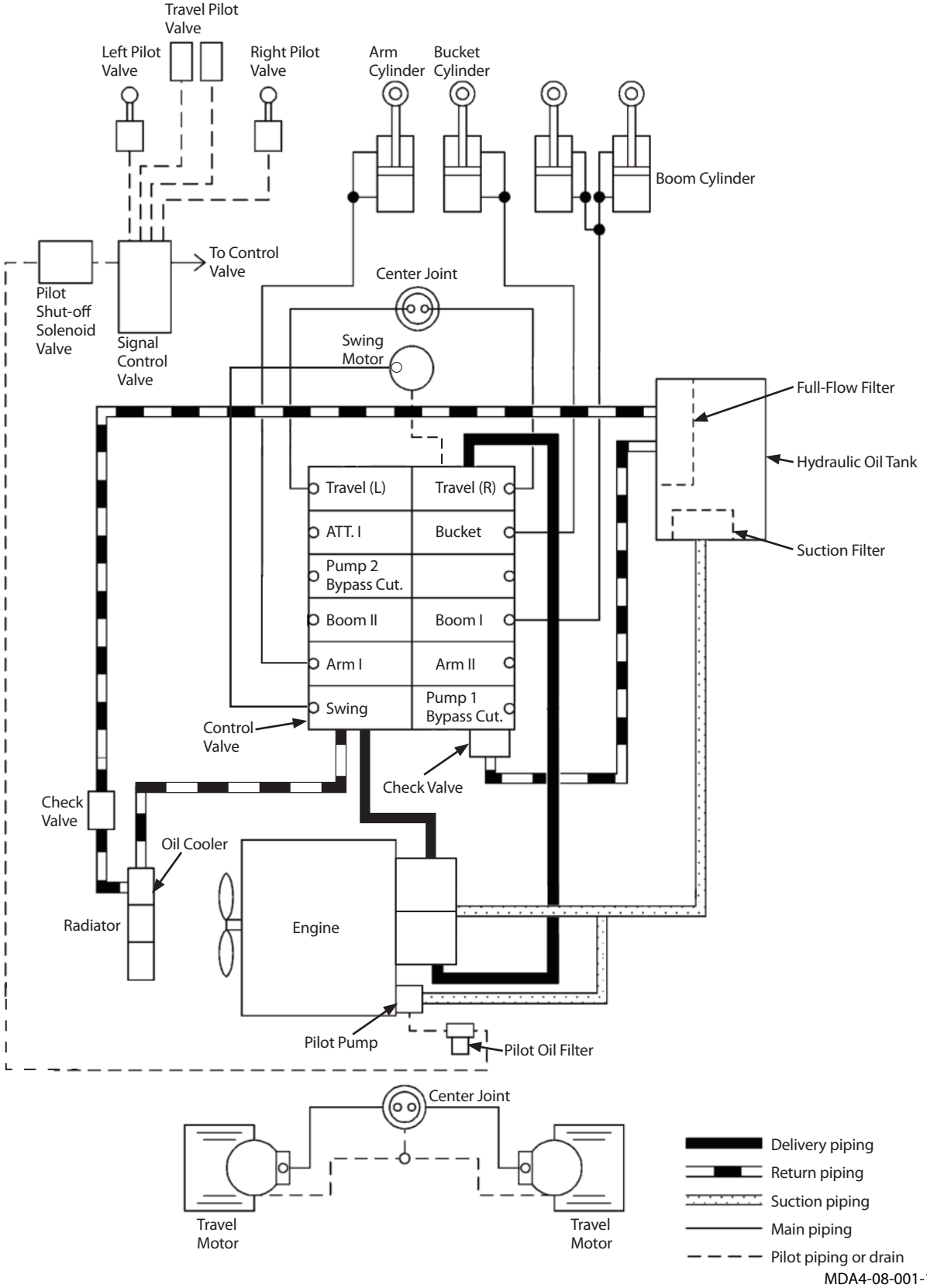
A: 1 m (3 ft 3 in) line B: 3 m (9 ft 10 in) line
C: 5 m (16 ft 5 in) line D: As far as tool box

Maintenance Under Special Environmental Conditions

Operating Conditions	Precautions for Maintenance		
Muddy Soil, Rainy or Snowy Weather	After Operation	:	Clean the machine and check for cracks, damage, loose or missing bolts and nuts. Lubricate all necessary parts without delay.
Near the Ocean	After Operation	:	The following salt pollution measures must be taken when the machine is operated at sea or near the coastline. (1) After completing the work, extend/retract the hydraulic cylinders several times to form an oil film on the rod surface. Store the machine with cylinders retracted as much as possible. (2) Thoroughly clean the machine with fresh water to wash off salt. (3) To prevent corrosion, perform touch up painting periodically on hose fittings, lubrication piping and inserting position of cover, where sea water is easily collected. (4) During storage of the machine, cover the machine with tarpaulin to prevent sea water from entering into the cab vent. Apply rust prevention oil (example: ANTIRUST P-1300NP-3 JX Nippon Oil & Energy Corporation) onto plated part of the cylinder rods.
Dusty Atmosphere	Radiator	:	Clean the radiator to prevent clogging of the radiator core.
	Engine, Aftertreatment Device	:	Clean earlier than the normal interval to prevent dust from sticking and accumulating. Inhibit the aftertreatment device regeneration according to the machine operating condition.
Rocky Ground	Tracks	:	Carefully operate while checking for cracks, damage and loose bolts and nuts. Loosen the tracks a little more than usual.
	Front Attachment	:	Standard attachment may be damaged when digging rocky ground. Reinforce the bucket before using it, or use a heavy duty bucket.
Falling Stones	Cab Head Guard	:	Provide a cab guard to protect the machine from falling stones. Consult Authorized Dealer.
Freezing Weather	Fuel/Lubricant	:	Use high quality and low viscosity fuel and oil.
	Engine Coolant	:	Be sure to use antifreeze.
	Battery	:	Fully charge the batteries at shorter intervals. If not fully charged, electrolyte may freeze.
	Track	:	Keep the tracks clean. Park the machine on a hard surface to prevent the tracks from freezing to the ground.
	DEF	:	May become frozen but the machine can be operated normally.

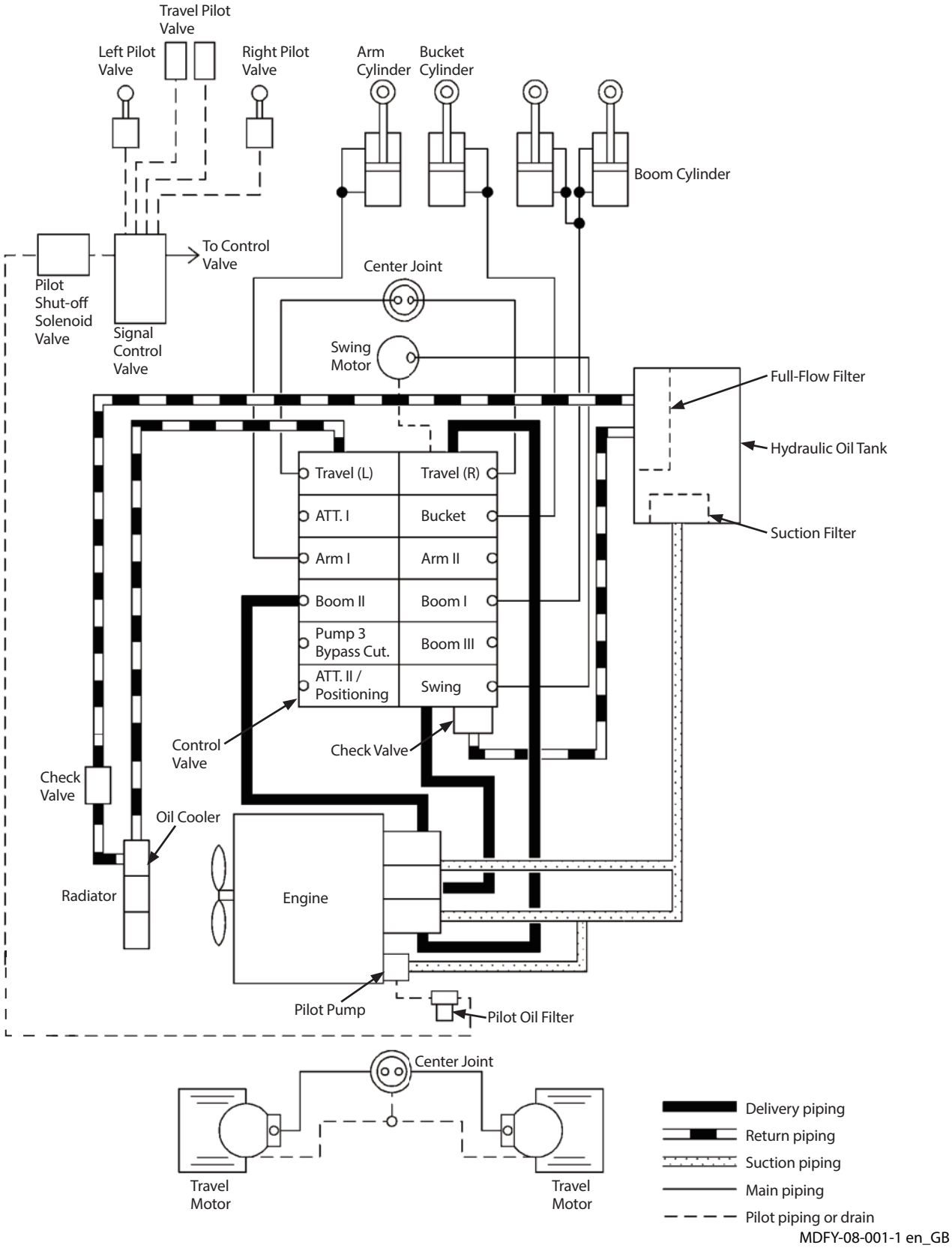
Hydraulic Circuit

ZX135US-7H



MDA4-08-001-1 en_GB

ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H



Storing the Machine

If the machine is to be stored for longer than 1 month, observe the following points before using it the next time.

Storing the Machine

Item	Remedy
Machine Cleaning	Wash the machine. Remove soil or other debris on the machine.
Lubrication/Greasing	Check lubricants for level and contamination. Fill up or change if necessary. Lubricate all grease points. Grease exposed metal surfaces that are subject to rust. (i.e. cylinder rods etc.)
Battery	Remove the batteries and store them in a dry, protected place after charging them fully. Put the battery disconnect switch in the OFF position (position c).
Coolant	Add anti-rusting agent. If storing in an extremely cold area, either add extra anti-freeze or drain coolant completely to avoid freezing. In this case, place a sign reading "NO COOLANT".
Dust and Moisture Protection	Store the machine in a dry storage area using a protective cover.
Tools	Inspect and repair, then store.
Lubrication Operation	If the oil film on the metal surfaces is lost, rust may form. This may cause abnormal wear of the machine when starting to operate the machine again. Operate the air conditioner and the following hydraulic functions at least once a month for lubrication. Be sure to check the coolant level and lubricant conditions before operating.
DEF	DEF may become ammonia when storing it under 40°C (104°F) for one month or longer. Change DEF if ammonia odor is observed upon opening the tank cap. Do not check the smell directly from the supply port or the breather.

NOTE

- *Lubricating operation means a series of warm-up, travel, swing and digging operations carried out repeatedly 2-3 times at slow speed.*
- *Lubricants deteriorate during long term storage of the machine, so check them thoroughly before using the machine again.*

Precautions for Disconnecting or Connecting Batteries

If the batteries are kept disconnected for more than one month or when the batteries are reconnected, contact Authorized Dealer. Resetting the information and/or the controller may be required.

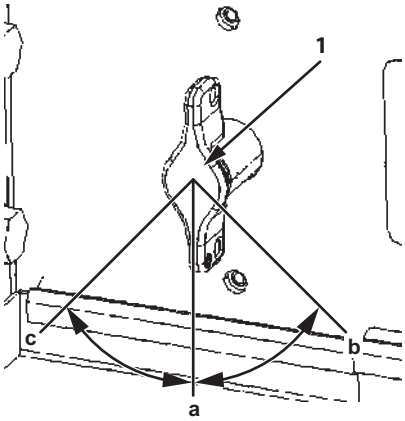
a: ON position

b: OFF position (with communication terminal power supply ON)

c: OFF position

Precautions for Simple Inspection of Air Conditioner

If a simple inspection comes due during long-term storage, contact Authorized Dealer.



MJAQ-01-001-1 ja

Troubleshooting

If any problems with the machine have occurred, repair immediately. Be sure to understand the cause of the problem and take necessary measures to prevent reoccurrence.

If it is difficult to determine the cause, or if measures marked with * must be taken, contact Authorized Dealer.

IMPORTANT

Never attempt to disassemble, adjust or repair hydraulic or electrical/electronic components.

Engine

Contact Authorized Dealer regarding engine troubleshooting.

Engine Auxiliaries

Problem	Cause	Solution
Batteries fail to charge	Damaged battery separator	Replace
	Faulty regulator	Adjust or replace:*1
	Faulty ground line	Repair*1
	Faulty alternator	Repair or replace*1
Batteries discharge quickly after being charged	Shorted cable	Repair or replace*1
	Plates inside the battery are shorting	Replace
	Increased sediment in battery	Replace
Coolant temperature is too high	Low coolant level	Refill
	Insufficient fan belt tension	Adjust
	Damaged rubber hose	Replace*1
	Faulty thermostat	Replace*1
	Faulty coolant temperature gauge	Replace*1
	Radiator and entire screen surface clogged	Clean

*1 Asterisk mark: Contact Authorized Dealer.

Impossible to Start the Engine

Problem		Cause	Solution
Engine will not start	Starter does not rotate or is not powerful.	Discharged battery	Charge or replace battery.
		Disconnected, loose, or corroded battery terminals	After repairing the corroded area, securely tighten the connectors.
		Pilot shut-off lever is in the UNLOCK position.	Set the pilot shut-off lever to LOCK position.
		Disconnected, loose, or corroded starter ground line terminals.	After repairing the corroded area, securely tighten the connectors.
		Faulty pilot shut-off lever electrical system	Repair
		Too high engine oil viscosity	Change engine oil with appropriate viscosity.
		Faulty starter and/or electrical system	Repair and replace*1
		Battery Disconnect Switch is in the OFF position	Turn the battery disconnect switch to the ON position
	Starter rotates.	No fuel	After checking that no fuel is leaking, refill fuel.
		Air in the fuel system	Bleed air.
		Clogged fuel main filter	Replace element
		Clogged fuel pre-filter	Replace element
		Frozen fuel	Warm the fuel pump with hot water or wait until the atmospheric temperature rises.
		Engine stop switch is ON	Turn the engine stop switch to the OFF position.
		Faulty preheat system	Repair and replace*1

Problem	Cause	Solution
Even though the engine is started, the engine stalls soon.	Too low idle speed	Repair and replace*1
	Clogged fuel main filter	Replace element.
	Clogged fuel pre-filter	Replace element.
	Faulty engine control system	Repair and replace*1
	Clogged air cleaner	Clean or replace the element.
	Faulty fuel system	Repair and replace*1
Engine runs irregularly.	Faulty fuel system	Repair and replace*1
	Water or air in the fuel system	Drain water or bleed air.
	Faulty engine control system	Repair and replace*1
	Clogged aftertreatment device	Repair and replace*1

*1 Marked: Consult Authorized Dealer.

Control Lever

Problem	Cause	Solution
Hard to move	Rusted joint	Grease or repair*1
	Worn pusher	Replace*1
Does not move smoothly	Worn pusher	Repair or replace*1
	Faulty pilot valve	Replace*1
Does not return to neutral	Faulty pilot valve	Replace*1
The lever is tilted in the neutral position due to increase in play	Worn joint	Repair or replace*1
	Faulty pilot valve	Replace*1

*1 Marked: Contact Authorized Dealer.

Hydraulic System

When the machine is stored without running for a long period, air mixed in hydraulic oil will separate and accumulate in the upper part of cylinders, causing a delay in the response time of machine movements and/or weak power.

If these symptoms appear, operate all actuators repeatedly several times.

Problem	Cause	Solution
No front attachment, swing, traveling functionality (Noise from pumps)	Faulty hydraulic pump	Repair or replace*1
	Lack of hydraulic oil	Refill
	Broken suction pipe and/or hose	Repair or replace*1
No front attachment, swing, traveling functionality (Hydraulic pump noise remains unchanged.)	Faulty pilot pump	Replace*1
	Faulty pilot shut-off solenoid valve	Replace*1
	Faulty wire harness (pilot shut-off solenoid valve) pilot shut-off lever switch.	Repair or replace*1
	Set the pilot shut-off lever to the LOCK position.	Turn to the UNLOCK Position.
No actuators have any power	Malfunction due to worn hydraulic pump	Replace*1
	Decreased main relief valve set pressure in the control valve	Adjust*1
	Lack of hydraulic oil	Refill
	Clogged suction strainer in the hydraulic oil tank	Clean
	Absorption of air from the oil suction side	Retightening
	Faulty pressure sensor	Replace*1
	Faulty solenoid valve	Replace*1
Only one side lever is inoperable or has no power	Faulty relief valve in the valve	Repair or replace*1
	Broken pipe and/or hose	Repair or replace*1
	Loose pipe line joint	Retightening
	Broken O-ring at pipe line joint	Replace*1
	Faulty hydraulic pump	Repair or replace*1
	Faulty pilot valve	Replace*1
	Faulty pilot circuit line	Repair or replace*1
	Faulty pilot solenoid valve	Repair or replace*1

Problem	Cause	Solution
Only one actuator is inoperable	Broken control valve spool	Replace*1
	Embedded foreign matter in valve spool	Repair or replace*1
	Broken pipe and/or hose	Repair or replace*1
	Loose pipe line joint	Retightening
	Broken O-ring at pipe line joint	Replace*1
	Broken actuator	Repair or replace*1
	Faulty pilot valve	Replace*1
	Faulty pilot circuit line	Repair or replace*1
	Faulty pilot solenoid valve	Repair or replace*1
One cylinder is inoperable or has no power	Broken oil seal in cylinder	Repair or replace*1
	Oil leak due to damage to cylinder rod	Repair or replace*1
	Faulty pilot valve	Replace*1
	Faulty pilot circuit line	Repair or replace*1
	Faulty pilot solenoid valve	Repair or replace*1
Hydraulic oil temperature increases	Stained oil cooler	Clean
	Insufficient engine fan belt tension	Adjust
Oil leak from low pressure hose	Loose clamps	Retightening
	Faulty suction manifold	Repair or replace*1

*1 Marked: Contact Authorized Dealer.

Drive Function

Problem	Cause	Solution
One or both side tracks are inoperable.	Damaged center joint	Repair or replace*1
	Incompletely released parking brake	Repair or replace*1
	Broken travel motor	Repair or replace*1
	Faulty pilot valve	Replace*1
	Faulty pilot circuit line	Repair or replace*1
Does not travel smoothly.	Overly tensioned or slackened crawler sag	Adjust
	Lack of lubricant in front idler and/or roller	Refill
	Deformed track frame	Repair or replace*1
	Embedded foreign matter such as rock fragments	Remove
	Dragging parking brake	Repair*1
Travel speed does not change	Faulty travel mode switch	Replace*1
	Faulty travel pressure sensor	Replace*1
	Pump 1 and 2 delivery pressure sensors	
	Pumps 1, 2 control pressure sensors	
	Poor contact in connector	Repair or replace*1
	Damaged wire harness	Repair*1
	Faulty controller (MC)	Replace*1
	Faulty solenoid valve	Repair or replace*1
	Faulty motor	Repair or replace*1

*1 Marked: Contact Authorized Dealer.

Swinging

Problem	Cause	Solution
Upperstructure does not swing	Faulty swing parking brake	Repair or replace*1
	Faulty swing parking brake release valve	Repair or replace*1
	Broken swing motor	Repair or replace*1
	Faulty pilot valve	Replace*1
	Faulty pilot circuit line	Repair or replace*1
Swing is not smooth.	Worn swing gear	Repair or replace*1
	Damaged swing bearing and bearing balls	Repair or replace*1
	Lack of grease	Refill
	Faulty combination valve	Repair or replace*1

*1 Marked: Contact Authorized Dealer.

Just after the control valve, swing motor relief valve and/or the swing motor is replaced, a noise may be emitted and/or operation may not be performed smoothly due to air trapped in the hydraulic circuit.

Slowly continue to operate the machine for approx. 10 minutes to bleed air.

After repair work is complete, be sure to check the oil level in the hydraulic oil tank. Refill hydraulic oil as needed.

Engine Speed

Problem	Cause	Solution
Even if operating the engine control dial, the engine speed does not change.	Blown fuse	Replace
	Faulty engine control dial	Replace*1
	Poor contact in connector	Repair or replace*1
	Damaged wire harness (between EC dial and MC, or MC and ECM)	Repair*1
	Faulty controller (MC, ECM)	Replace*1
	Performing manual regeneration	(Normal control)
Work mode does not change.	Faulty mode switch	Replace*1
	Poor contact in connector	Repair or replace*1
	Damaged wire harness (between MC and monitor)	Repair*1
	Faulty controller (MC)	Replace*1
	Faulty solenoid valve	Repair or replace*1
Auto-idle is inoperable or not released.	Faulty pressure sensor.	Replace*1
	Poor contact in connector	Repair or replace*1
	Damaged wire harness	Repair*1
	Faulty controller.	Replace*1
	Performing manual regeneration	(Normal control)

*1 Marked: Consult Authorized Dealer.

Pump control

Problem	Cause	Solution
Front attachment and/or travel speed is slow	Blown control fuse	Replace
	Poor contact in connector	Repair or replace*1
	Damaged wire harness	Repair*1
	Faulty controller	Replace*1
	Faulty pump solenoid valve	Replace*1
	Faulty pressure sensor	Replace*1

*1 Marked: Contact Authorized Dealer.

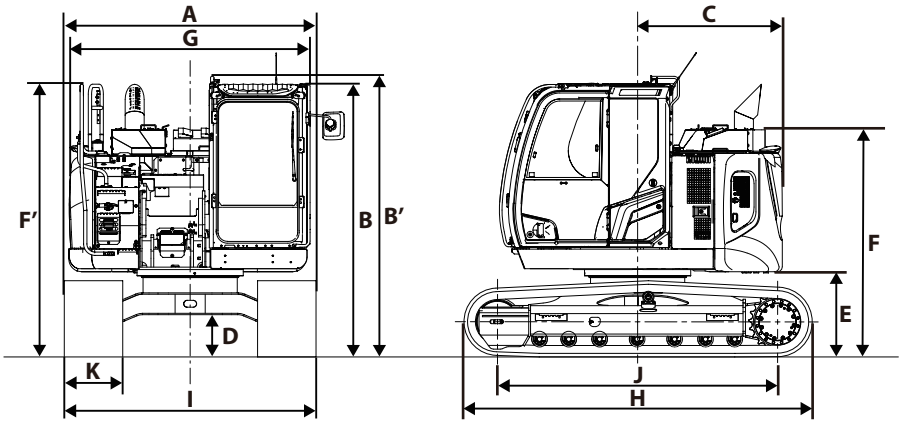
Others

The machine may have a noise, excessive vibration, and abnormal smell when any trouble occurs.
Always beware of the machine conditions during operation.

Specifications ZX135US-7H

Model	ZX135US-7H	
Type of Front Attachment	2.52 m (8 ft 3 in) Arm	3.01 m (9 ft 11 in) Arm
Standard Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	ISO 7451: 2007 0.52 m^3 (0.68 yd^3)	
Counterweight Weight	3500 kg (7800 lb)	
Operating Weight	14400 kg (31700 lb)	14500 kg (32000 lb)
Base Machine Weight	11700 kg (25800 lb)	
Engine Model	Isuzu AR-4JJ1XSA-02	
Engine Output	ISO 14396: 78.5 kW/2000 min^{-1}	
	ISO 9249: 74.9 kW/2000 min^{-1}	
Ground Pressure	38 kPa (0.39 kgf/cm^2, 5.5 psi)	
Swing Speed	13.5 min^{-1}	
Travel Speed (fast/slow)	5.5/3.3 km/h (3.4/2.1 mph)	
Gradeability	35 ° ($\tan\theta = 0.70$)	

Dimensions ZX135US-7H



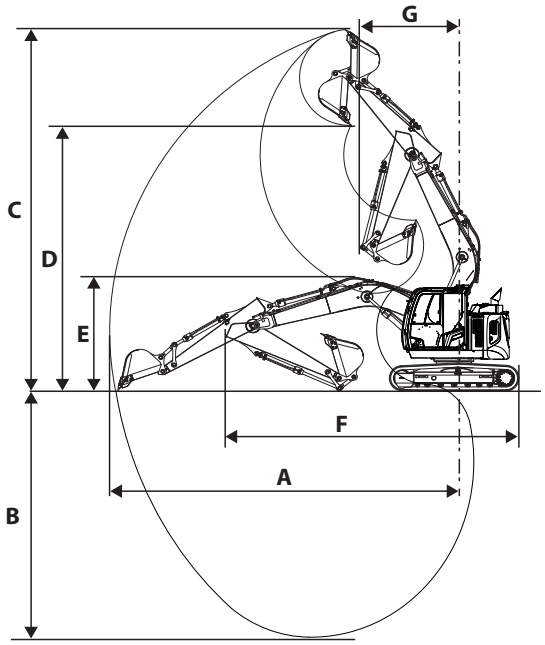
MDHE-12-001-2 ja

Model		ZX135US-7H
A:	Overall Width (Excluding rearview mirrors)	2590 mm (8 ft 6 in)
B:	Cab Height	2790 mm (9 ft 2 in)
B':	Cab Handrail Height	2870 mm (9 ft 5 in)
C:	Rear End Swing Radius	1490 mm (4 ft 11 in)
D:	Minimum Ground Clearance	410*1 mm (1 ft 4 in)
E:	Counterweight Clearance	840*1 mm (2 ft 9 in)
F:	Engine Cover Height	2320*1 mm (7 ft 8 in)
F':	Handrail Height	2810 mm (9 ft 3 in)
G:	Overall Width of Upperstructure	2480 mm (8 ft 2 in)
H:	Undercarriage Length	3580 mm (11 ft 9 in)
I:	Undercarriage Width	2590 mm (8 ft 6 in)
J:	Sprocket Center to Idler Center	2880 mm (9 ft 5 in)
K:	Track Shoe Width	600 mm (24 in) (Grouser Shoe)

NOTE

**1 The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.*

Working Ranges (Grouser shoe) ZX135US-7H



MDHE-12-006-1 ja

Item \ Category		2.52 m (8 ft 3 in) Arm		3.01 m (9 ft 11 in) Arm	
		Backhoe		Backhoe	
		mm	ft·in	mm	ft·in
A:	Maximum Digging Reach	8380	27' 6"	8850	29' 1"
B:	Maximum Digging Depth	5490	18' 1"	5980	19' 8"
C:	Maximum Cutting Height	9290	30' 6"	9680	31' 10"
D:	Maximum Dumping Height	6830	22' 5"	7230	23' 9"
E:	Overall Height	2930	9' 8"	2870*1	9' 5"*1
F:	Overall Length	7370	24' 3"	7400	24' 4"
G:	Minimum Swing Radius	2190	7' 3"	2540	8' 4"

NOTE

- *The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug(except Item E).*
- **1 The dimensions asterisked are for transport pin position.*

Shoe Types and Applications ZX135US-7H

Shoe Width		600 mm (24 in) Grouser Shoe	700 mm (28 in) Grouser Shoe
Application		For Weak Footing (Option)	For Weak Footing (Option)
Operating Weight	kg (lb)	14500 (32000)	14700 (32500)
Base Machine Weight	kg (lb)	11700 (25800)	11900 (26300)
Counterweight Weight	kg (lb)	3500 (7800)	3500 (7800)
Cab Height	mm (ft·in)	2790 (9' 2")	2790 (9' 2")
Minimum Ground Clearance	mm (ft·in)	410*1 (16")	410*1 (16")
Undercarriage Length	mm (ft·in)	3580 (11' 9")	3580 (11' 9")
Undercarriage Width	mm (ft·in)	2590 (8' 6")	2690 (8' 10")
Ground Pressure		38 kPa (0.39 kgf/cm^2, 5.5 psi)	33 kPa (0.34 kgf/cm^2, 4.8 psi)

NOTE

- *The Specifications for the front-end attachment is for 3.01 m (9 ft 11 in) arm with PCSA 0.52 m^3 (0.68 yd^3) bucket.*
- *600, 700 mm (24, 28 in) grouser shoe, should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.*
- **1 The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.*

Bucket Types and Applications ZX135US-7H

Bucket	Bucket Capacity $m^3(yd^3)$	Bucket Width mm (in)		Front-End Attachment	
	ISO7451:2007 (Heaped)	With side cutter	Without side cutter	2.52 m (8' 3") Arm	3.01 m (9' 11") Arm
Hoe Bucket	0.45 (0.59)	920 (36")	800 (32")	◉	○
	0.52 (0.68)	1010 (40")	890 (35")	◉	* ○
	0.59 (0.77)	1070 (36")	950 (37")	○	-
Reinforced Hoe Bucket	0.52 (0.68)	1010 (40")	890 (35")	◉	* ○
Reinforced Hoe Bucket	0.59 (0.77)	1070 (42")	950 (37")	○	-
One Point Ripper	-	-	-	△	-
Slope-Finishing Blade	-	1000 (39") × 1600 (63")		◇	◇
V-Type Bucket	-			○	○

NOTE

- *Symbols in the above table have the following meanings.*

  ◉ : *General excavating*

  ○ : *Light duty excavating*

  △ : *Rock digging*

  □ : *Loading work*

  ◇ : *Slope-finishing work*

  - : *Not applicable (not warrantable)*
- *Hoe bucket is applicable to the following types of work.*
  General excavating:
  For digging and loading operation of sand, gravel, clay, ordinary earth and so on.
  Light duty excavating:
  For digging and loading operation of dry, loosened earth, sand, mud and so on.
  Their bulk density shall be less than 1.60 t/m^3 (2700 lb/yd^3) as a standard.
  Loading:
  For loading operation of dry, loosened earth and sand.
  Their bulk density shall be less than 1.10 t/m^3 (1850 lb/yd^3) as as a standard.
  Rock digging:
  For digging/loading operation of mountain gravels, blasted rock, hard clay, soft rock and so on.
- ** Applicable only to 700 mm (28 in) grouser shoe.*

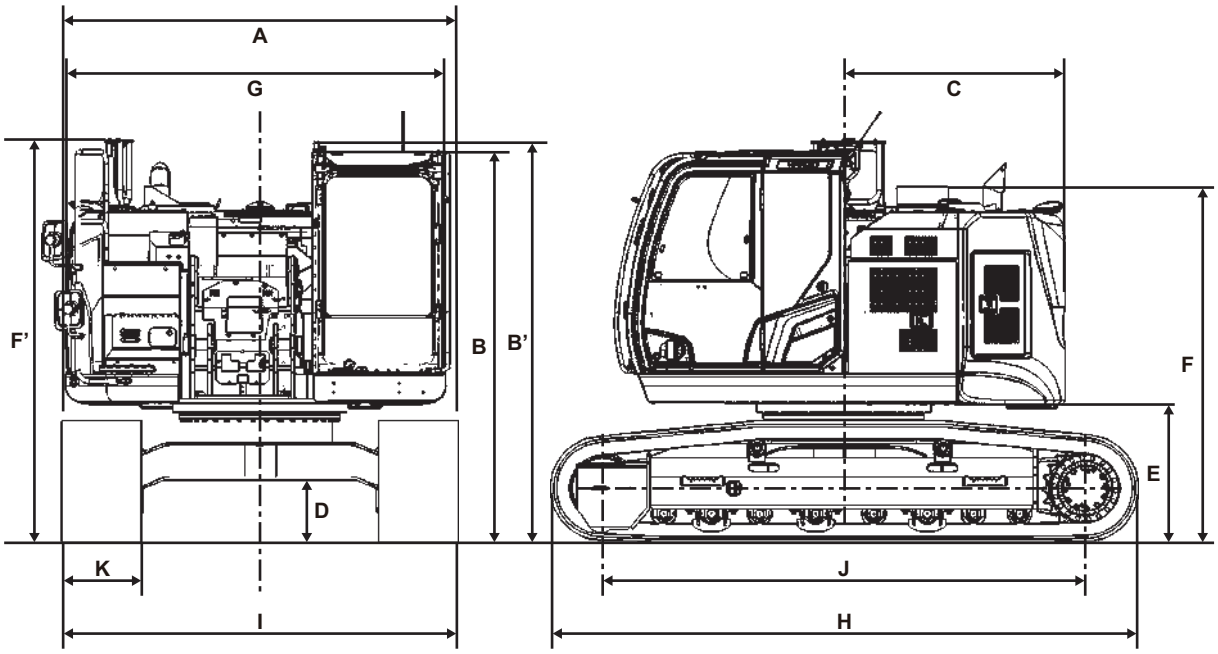
IMPORTANT

Using inapplicable buckets may cause serious damage to the front structure such as boom, arm and hydraulic cylinders.

Specifications ZX245USLC-7H

Model	ZX245USLC-7H
Type of Front Attachment	2.91 m (9 ft 7 in) Arm
Standard Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	ISO 7451: 2007 0.80 m^3 (1.05 yd^3)
Counterweight Weight	7280 kg (16100 lb)
Operating Weight	25900 kg (57100 lb)
Base Machine Weight	21500 kg (47400 lb)
Engine Model	Isuzu 4HK1
Engine Output	ISO 14396: 128.4 kW/2000 min^{-1}
	ISO 9249: 122 kW/2000 min^{-1}
Ground Pressure	40 kPa (0.41 kgf/cm^2, 5.8 psi)
Swing Speed	11.4 min^{-1}
Travel Speed (fast/slow)	5.5/3.5 km/h (3.4/2.2 mph)
Gradeability	35 ° ($\tan\theta = 0.70$)

Dimensions ZX245USLC-7H



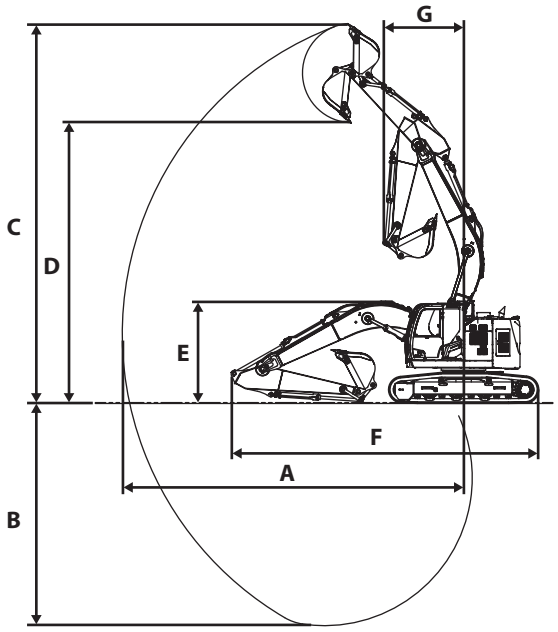
MDA4-12-003-1 ja

Model		ZX245USLC-7H
A:	Overall Width (Excluding rearview mirrors)	3190 mm (10 ft 6 in)
B:	Cab Height	2960 mm (9 ft 9 in)
B':	Cab Handrail Height	3040 mm (10 ft 0 in)
C:	Rear End Swing Radius	1680 mm (5 ft 6 in)
D:	Minimum Ground Clearance	450*1 mm (1 ft 6 in)
E:	Counterweight Clearance	990*1 mm (3 ft 3 in)
F:	Engine Cover Height	2670*1 mm (8 ft 9 in)
F':	Handrail Height	3050/3520 mm (10 ft 0 in / 11 ft 7 in)
G:	Overall Width of Upperstructure	2900 mm (9 ft 6 in)
H:	Undercarriage Length	4450 mm (14 ft 7 in)
I:	Undercarriage Width	3190 mm (10 ft 6 in)
J:	Sprocket Center to Idler Center	3660 mm (12 ft 0 in)
K:	Track Shoe Width	800 mm (31 in) (Grouser Shoe)

NOTE

**1 The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.*

Working Ranges (Grouser shoe) ZX245USLC-7H



MDA4-12-004-1 ja

Item \ Category		2.91 m (9 ft 7 in) Arm	
		Backhoe	
		mm	ft·in
A:	Maximum Digging Reach	10110	33' 2"
B:	Maximum Digging Depth	6610	21' 8"
C:	Maximum Cutting Height	11230	36' 10"
D:	Maximum Dumping Height	8290	27' 2"
E:	Overall Height	3050/3520*1	10' 0"/11' 7"
F:	Overall Length	9120	30' 0"
G:	Minimum Swing Radius	2380	7' 10"

NOTE

- **1 Body top guardrail height*
- *The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug (except Item E).*

Shoe Types and Applications ZX245USLC-7H

Shoe Width		600 mm (24 in) Grouser Shoe	700 mm (28 in) Grouser Shoe	800 mm (31 in) Grouser Shoe
Application		For Ordinary Ground (Option)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Weak Footing (Standard)
Operating Weight	kg (lb)	25300 (55800)	25600 (56500)	25900 (57100)
Base Machine Weight	kg (lb)	20900 (46100)	21200 (46800)	21500 (47400)
Counterweight Weight	kg (lb)	7280 (16100)	7280 (16100)	7280 (16100)
Cab Height	mm (ft·in)	2960 (9' 9")	2960 (9' 9")	2960 (9' 9")
Minimum Ground Clearance	mm (ft·in)	450*1 (18")	450*1 (18")	450*1 (18")
Undercarriage Length	mm (ft·in)	4450 (14' 7")	4450 (14' 7")	4450 (14' 7")
Undercarriage Width	mm (ft·in)	2990 (9' 10")	3090 (10' 2")	3190 (10' 6")
Ground Pressure		53 kPa (0.54 kgf/cm^2, 7.7 psi)	46 kPa (0.47 kgf/cm^2, 6.7 psi)	40 kPa (0.41 kgf/cm^2, 5.8 psi)

NOTE

- *The Specifications for the front-end attachment is for 2.91 m (9 ft 7 in) arm with PCSA 0.8 m^3 (1.05 yd^3) bucket.*
- **2 The Specifications for the front-end attachment is for 2.91 m (9 ft 7 in) arm with PCSA 1.2 m^3 (1.57 yd^3) bucket.*
- *Other than 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.*
  The shoe may bend, the shoe bolt may loosen, and other undercarriage parts (including track links and rollers) may also be damaged if traveling or digging on gravel or rocky ground.
- **1 The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.*

Bucket Types and Applications ZX245USLC-7H

Bucket	Bucket Capacity m^3 (yd^3)	Bucket Width mm (in) (With side cutter)	Application	Front-End Attachment
	ISO 7451: 2007 (Heaped)			2.91 m (9' 7") Arm
Hoe Bucket	0.80 (1.05) HD	1150 (45")		◉
	0.80 (1.05)	1140 (45")		◉
	0.91 (1.19)	1260 (50")		◉
	1.10 (1.44)	1440 (57")		□
Bucket reinforcement can be welded in four places upon customer's request	0.80 (1.05)	1140 (45")		◉
	0.91 (1.19)	1260 (50")		◉
Reinforced Hoe Bucket HD Type (Transverse-Type-Pin-Used Type)	0.80 (1.05)	1140 (45")		◉
V-Type Bucket	-	90 °	Excavating V-trenches	○
Ripper Bucket		800 (31.5") (Without side cutter)		-
One Point Ripper	-	-		-
Slope-Finishing Blade	-	1800 (70")	Bank cutting finish	◇

- Symbols in the above table have the following meanings.

NOTE

◉ : *General excavating*
○ : *Light duty excavating*
△ : *Rock digging*
□ : *Loading work*
◇ : *Slope-finishing work*
× : *Not applicable (not warrantable)*

- Hoe bucket is applicable to the following types of work.
  General excavating:
  For digging and loading operation of sand, gravel, clay, ordinary earth and so on.
  Light duty excavating:
  For digging and loading operation of dry, loosened earth, sand, mud and so on.
  Their bulk density shall be less than 1.60 t/m^3 (2700 lb/yd^3) as a standard.
  Loading:
  For loading operation of dry, loosened earth and sand.
  Their bulk density shall be less than 1.10 t/m^3 (1850 lb/yd^3) as a standard.
  Rock digging:
  For digging/loading operation of mountain gravels, blasted rock, hard clay, soft rock and so on.

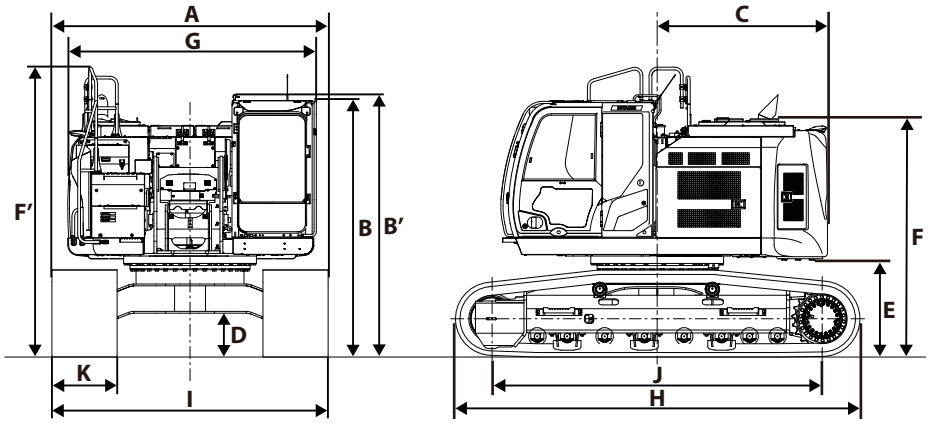
IMPORTANT

Using inapplicable buckets may cause serious damage to the front structure such as boom, arm and hydraulic cylinders.

Specifications ZX345USLC-7H

Model	ZX345USLC-7H	
Type of Front Attachment	3.11 m (10 ft 2 in) Arm	3.76 m (12 ft 4 in) Arm
Standard Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	ISO 7451: 2007 1.25 m^3 (1.64 yd^3)	
Counterweight Weight	8680 kg (19200 lb)	
Operating Weight	35900 kg (79200 lb)	36000 kg (79400 lb)
Base Machine Weight	29700 kg (65500 lb)	
Engine Model	Isuzu AQ-6HK1XASA-02S	
Engine Output	ISO 14396: 197 kW/1900 min^{-1}	
	ISO 9249: 186 kW/1900 min^{-1}	
Ground Pressure	50 kPa (0.51 kgf/cm^2, 7.3 psi)	51 kPa (0.52 kgf/cm^2, 7.4 psi)
Swing Speed	10.5 min^{-1}	
Travel Speed (fast/slow)	4.1/2.6 km/h (2.5/1.6 mph)	
Gradeability	35 ° ($\tan\theta = 0.70$)	

Dimensions ZX345USLC-7H



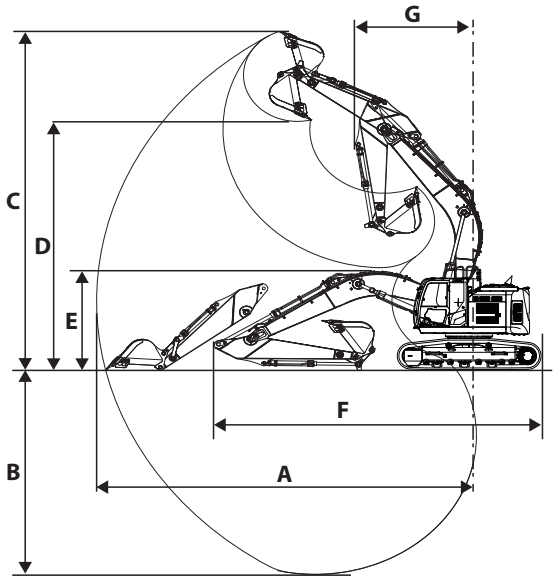
MDHE-12-003-2 ja

Model		ZX345USLC-7H
A:	Overall Width (Excluding rearview mirrors)	3390 mm (11 ft 2 in)
B:	Cab Height	3150 mm (10 ft 4 in)
B':	Cab Handrail Height	3230 mm (10 ft 8 in)
C:	Rear End Swing Radius	2090 mm (6 ft 11 in)
D:	Minimum Ground Clearance	500*1 mm (1 ft 8 in)
E:	Counterweight Clearance	1160*1 mm (3 ft 10 in)
F:	Engine Cover Height	2900*1 mm (9 ft 7 in)
F':	Handrail Height	3560 mm (11 ft 9 in)
G:	Overall Width of Upperstructure	3050 mm (10 ft 1 in)
H:	Undercarriage Length	4970 mm (16 ft 4 in)
I:	Undercarriage Width	3390 mm (11 ft 2 in)
J:	Sprocket Center to Idler Center	4050 mm (13 ft 3 in)
K:	Track Shoe Width	800 mm (31 in) (Grouser Shoe)

NOTE

*[*1] The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.*

Working Ranges (Grouser shoe) ZX345USLC-7H



MDHE-12-004-2 ja

Item \ Category		3.11 m (10 ft 2 in) Arm		3.76 m (12 ft 4 in) Arm	
		Backhoe		Backhoe	
		mm	ft·in	mm	ft·in
A:	Maximum Digging Reach	10900	35' 10"	11460	37' 8"
B:	Maximum Digging Depth	6920*1	22' 9"*1	7570*1	24' 10"*1
C:	Maximum Cutting Height	11410*1	37' 6"*1	11690*1	38' 5"*1
D:	Maximum Dumping Height	8380*1	27' 6"*1	8670*1	28' 6"*1
E:	Overall Height	3380	11' 1"	3420	11' 3"
F:	Overall Length	9980	32' 9"	9970	32' 9"
G:	Minimum Swing Radius	3400	11' 2"	3390	11' 2"

NOTE

- *[*1] Body top guardrail height*
- *The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug (except Item E).*

Shoe Types and Applications ZX345USLC-7H

Shoe Width		600 mm (24 in) Grouser Shoe	700 mm (28 in) Grouser Shoe	800 mm (31 in) Grouser Shoe
Application		For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Weak Footing (Option)
Operating Weight	kg (lb)	35000 (77200)	35600 (78500)	36000 (79400)
Base Machine Weight	kg (lb)	28700 (63300)	29300 (64600)	29700 (65500)
Counterweight Weight	kg (lb)	8680 (19200)	8680 (19200)	8680 (19200)
Cab Height	mm (ft·in)	3150 (10' 4")	3150 (10' 4")	3150 (10' 4")
Minimum Ground Clearance	mm (ft·in)	500*1 (1' 8")	500*1 (1' 8")	500*1 (1' 8")
Undercarriage Length	mm (ft·in)	4970 (16' 4")	4970 (16' 4")	4970 (16' 4")
Undercarriage Width	mm (ft·in)	3190 (10' 6")	3290 (10' 10")	3390 (11' 2")
Ground Pressure		66 kPa (0.67 kgf/cm^2, 9.6 psi)	57 kPa (0.58 kgf/cm^2, 8.3 psi)	51 kPa (0.52 kgf/cm^2, 7.4 psi)

NOTE

- *The Specifications for the front-end attachment is for 3.76 m (12 ft 4 in) arm with PCSA 1.25 m^3 (1.64 yd^3) bucket.*
- *700 mm (28 in) and 800 mm (31 in) grouser shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.*
- **1 The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.*

Bucket Types and Applications ZX345USLC-7H

Bucket	Bucket Capacity m^3 (yd^3)	Bucket Width mm (in)		Front-End Attachment	
	ISO7451:2007 (Heaped)	With side cutters	Without side cutters	3.11 m (10' 2") Arm	3.76 m (12' 4") Arm
Hoe Bucket	1.00 (1.31)	1260 (50")	1130 (44")	⦿	⦿
	1.10 (1.44)	1350 (53")	-	⦿	⦿
	1.25 (1.64)	1490 (59")	1360 (54")	⦿	⦿
	1.40 (1.83)	1630 (64")	1500 (59")	⦿	□
	1.62 (2.11)	1830 (72")	1700 (67")	×	×
Bucket reinforcement can be welded in four places upon customer' s request	1.10 (1.44)	1350 (53")	1220 (48")	⦿	⦿
	1.40 (1.83)	1630 (64")	1500 (59")	○	□
Rock Bucket	0.92 (1.20)	1180 (46")	1130 (44")	△	×
Ripper Bucket	0.80 (1.05)	-	1000 (39")	△	×
One Point Ripper	-	-		△	×

- Symbols in the above table have the following meanings.

NOTE

⦿ : *General excavating*
○ : *Light duty excavating*
△ : *Rock digging*
□ : *Loading work*
◇ : *Slope-finishing work*
× : *Not applicable (not warrantable)*

- Hoe bucket is applicable to the following types of work.
  General excavating:
  For digging and loading operation of sand, gravel, clay, ordinary earth and so on.
  Light duty excavating:
  For digging and loading operation of dry, loosened earth, sand, mud and so on.
  Their bulk density shall be less than 1.60 t/m^3 (2700 lb/yd^3) as a standard.
  Loading:
  For loading operation of dry, loosened earth and sand.
  Their bulk density shall be less than 1.10 t/m^3 (1850 lb/yd^3) as a standard.
  Rock digging:
  For digging/loading operation of mountain gravels, blasted rock, hard clay, soft rock and so on.

IMPORTANT

Using inapplicable buckets may cause serious damage to the front structure such as boom, arm and hydraulic cylinders.

Machine Capacities

Machine capacities is intended for applications other than lifting operation. It provides information relevant for the selection of suitable attachments, matching the machine's capacities. Please take into account the machine's intended use when selecting attachments to avoid misuse and potential damage to the machine.

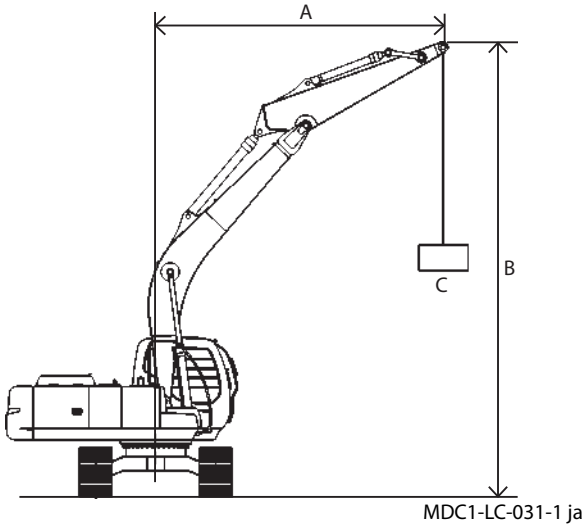
Conditions related to Machine Capacities

- Lifting capacity of the ZX series does not exceed 75 % of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87%of full hydraulic capacity. (ISO 10567)
- *Indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

  How to Use This Machine Capacities Chart
  - Net lifting capacities are equal to the values obtained by deducting the ATT mass from the values described in the table.
  - Capacities shown are metric measure.

  Symbols Used in This Book

A:	Load radius (m [ft])
B:	Load point height (m [ft])
C:	Machine capacities (kg [lb])
D:	Value at the maximum load radius (Machine capacities) (kg [lb])
E:	Value at the maximum load radius (reach) (m [ft])
	Rating over-front
	Rating over-side or 360 degrees
	Blade Up
	Arm
	Grouser Shoe

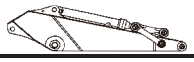
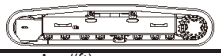


A: Load radius

B: Load point height

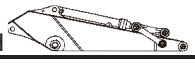
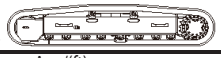
C: Machine capacities

ZX135US-7H (Mono block boom)

ZX135US-7H  2.52 m (8 ft 3 in),  500 mm (20 in)

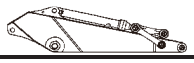
Unit:kg (lb)

B m/(ft)	A m/(ft) 1.5 (5)		3 (10)		4.5 (15)		6 (20)		7.5 (25)		9 (30)		D		E m/(ft)
10.5 (35)															
9 (30)															
7.5 (25)															
6 (20)					*3630 *(8060)	*3610 (7760)							*2400 *(5340)	*2400 *(5340)	5.5 (17.78)
4.5 (15)			*3900 *(8560)	*3900 *(8560)	*3880 *(8470)	3540 (7620)	3280 (7040)	2200 (4740)					*2220 *(4910)	1920 (4280)	6.48 (21.14)
3 (10)			*6580 *(14100)	6300 (13590)	*4690 *(10170)	3330 (7190)	3200 (6890)	2130 (4600)					*2220 *(4890)	1650 (3660)	6.99 (22.91)
1.5 (5)			*6740 *(16550)	5560 (11990)	4790 (10310)	3090 (6660)	3090 (6660)	2030 (4380)					*2340 *(5150)	1550 (3430)	7.15 (23.46)
0 (0)			*6100 *(14150)	5270 (11340)	4590 (9890)	2910 (6290)	3000 (6470)	1950 (4210)					2410 (5320)	1570 (3470)	6.98 (22.91)
-1.5 (-5)	*4690 *(10540)	*4690 *(10540)	*9010 *(19450)	5250 (11280)	4520 (9740)	2850 (6150)	2970 (6410)	1920 (4450)					2690 (5940)	1750 (3870)	6.46 (21.14)
-3 (-10)	*8580 *(19380)	*8580 *(19380)	*7340 *(15840)	5350 (11520)	4570 (9850)	2890 (6250)							3450 (7710)	2240 (4990)	5.47 (17.79)
-4.5 (-15)															
-6 (-20)															

ZX135US-7H  3.01 m (9 ft 11 in),  500 mm (20 in)

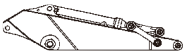
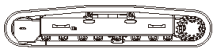
Unit:kg (lb)

B m/(ft)	A m/(ft) 1.5 (5)		3 (10)		4.5 (15)		6 (20)		7.5 (25)		9 (30)		D		E m/(ft)
10.5 (35)															
9 (30)															
7.5 (25)															
6 (20)					*3110 *(6900)	*3110 *(6900)	*2330	2240					*2050 *(4560)	*2050 *(4560)	6.11 (19.79)
4.5 (15)					*3400 *(7440)	*3400 *(7440)	*3310 *(7130)	2240 (4810)					*1920 *(4240)	1690 (3770)	6.99 (22.84)
3 (10)			*5250 *(10990)	*5250 *(10990)	*4240 *(9200)	3390 (7320)	3220 (6930)	2150 (4630)					*1910 *(4220)	1470 (3270)	7.47 (24.48)
1.5 (5)			*8350 *(17980)	5710 (12310)	4830 (10400)	3120 (6730)	3090 (6660)	2030 (4380)	2190 *(4430)	1420 (3070)			*2000 *(4420)	1390 (3060)	7.62 (25)
0 (0)			*6600 *(15300)	5260 (11320)	4590 (9880)	2900 (6260)	2980 (6420)	1930 (4160)					2160 (4770)	1400 (3090)	7.46 (24.48)
-1.5 (-5)	*4110 *(9240)	*4110 *(9240)	*8590 (19240)	5160 (11090)	4480 (9640)	2800 (6040)	2920 (6300)	1870 (4050)					2370 (5240)	1530 (3380)	6.97 (22.84)
-3 (-10)	*7170 *(16180)	*7170 *(16180)	*8040 *(17360)	5220 (11230)	4490 (9660)	2810 (6070)	2950	1900					2910 (6480)	1880 (4180)	6.07 (19.8)
-4.5 (-15)			*5290 *(11100)	*5290 *(11100)	*3190	2980							* 3180 *(6930)	2970 *(6800)	4.5 (14.43)
-6 (-20)															

ZX135US-7H  2.52 m (8 ft 3 in), 600 mm (24 in)

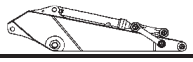
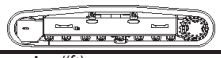
Unit:kg (lb)

B m/(ft)	A m/(ft) 1.5 (5)		3 (10)		4.5 (15)		6 (20)		7.5 (25)		9 (30)		D		E m/(ft)
10.5 (35)															
9 (30)															
7.5 (25)															
6 (20)					*3630 *(8060)	*3630 (7910)							*2400 *(5340)	*2400 *(5340)	5.5 (17.78)
4.5 (15)			*3900 *(8560)	*3900 *(8560)	*3880 *(8470)	3600 (7770)	3340 (7190)	2250 (4840)					*2220 *(4910)	1960 (4380)	6.48 (21.14)
3 (10)			*6580 *(14100)	6420 (13850)	*4690 *(10170)	3400 (7340)	3270 (7040)	2180 (4700)					*2220 *(4890)	1690 (3750)	6.99 (22.91)
1.5 (5)			*6740 *(16550)	5680 (12250)	4890 (10540)	3150 (6810)	3160 (6810)	2080 (4490)					*2340 *(5150)	1590 (3510)	7.15 (23.46)
0 (0)			*6100 *(14150)	5390 (11600)	4700 (10110)	2980 (6430)	3070 (6620)	2000 (4310)					2470 (5450)	1610 (3560)	6.98 (22.91)
-1.5 (-5)	*4690 *(10540)	*4690 *(10540)	*9010 *(19550)	5370 (11540)	4630 (9960)	2920 (6290)	3040 (6560)	1970 (4250)					2750 (6080)	1790 (3960)	6.46 (21.14)
-3 (-10)	*8580 *(19380)	*8580 *(19380)	*7340 *(15840)	5470 (11770)	4680 (10080)	2960 (6400)							3530 (7880)	2290 (5110)	5.47 (17.79)
-4.5 (-15)															
-6 (-20)															

ZX135US-7H  3.01 m (9 ft 11 in),  600 mm (24 in)

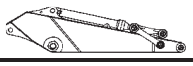
Unit:kg (lb)

B m/(ft)	A m/(ft) 1.5 (5)		3 (10)		4.5 (15)		6 (20)		7.5 (25)		9 (30)		D		E m/(ft)
10.5 (35)															
9 (30)															
7.5 (25)															
6 (20)					*3110 *(6900)	*3110 *(6900)	*2330	2280					*2050 *(4560)	*2050 *(4560)	6.11 (19.79)
4.5 (15)					*3400 *(7440)	*3400 *(7440)	*3310 *(7140)	2280 (4910)					*1920 *(4240)	1730 (3860)	6.99 (22.84)
3 (10)			*5250 *(10990)	*5250 *(10990)	*4240 *(9200)	3460 (7460)	3290 (7080)	2200 (4730)					*1910 *(4220)	1510 (3350)	7.47 (24.48)
1.5 (5)			*8350 *(17980)	5830 (12570)	4930 (10620)	3180 (6870)	3160 (6810)	2080 (4480)	2240 *(4430)	1460 (3140)			*2000 *(4420)	1420 (3140)	7.62 (25)
0 (0)			*6600 *(15300)	5380 (11580)	4690 (10100)	2970 (6410)	3050 (6570)	1970 (4260)					2220 (4890)	1440 (3170)	7.46 (24.48)
-1.5 (-5)	*4110 *(9240)	*4110 *(9240)	*8590 (19680)	5280 (11340)	4580 (9860)	2870 (6190)	2990 (6450)	1920 (4150)					2430 (5370)	1570 (3470)	6.97 (22.84)
-3 (-10)	*7170 *(16180)	*7170 *(16180)	*8040 *(17360)	5340 (11490)	4590 (9890)	2880 (6220)	3020	1950					2980 (6630)	1920 (4290)	6.07 (19.8)
-4.5 (-15)			*5290 *(11100)	*5290 *(11100)	*3190	3040							* 3180 *(6930)	3040 *(6930)	4.5 (14.43)
-6 (-20)															

ZX135US-7H  2.52 m (8 ft 3 in),  700 mm (28 in)

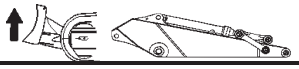
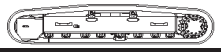
Unit:kg (lb)

B m/(ft)	A m/(ft) 1.5 (5)		3 (10)		4.5 (15)		6 (20)		7.5 (25)		9 (30)		D		E m/(ft)
10.5 (35)															
9 (30)															
7.5 (25)															
6 (20)					*3630 *(8060)	*3630 (8010)							*2400 *(5340)	*2400 *(5340)	5.5 (17.78)
4.5 (15)			*3900 *(8560)	*3900 *(8560)	*3880 *(8470)	3650 (7870)	3390 *(7220)	2280 (4910)					*2220 *(4910)	1990 (4450)	6.48 (21.14)
3 (10)			*6580 *(14100)	6500 (14030)	*4690 *(10170)	3450 (7440)	3320 (7140)	2210 (4770)					*2220 *(4890)	1720 (3810)	6.99 (22.91)
1.5 (5)			*6740 *(16550)	5760 (12430)	4960 (10690)	3200 (6910)	3210 (6910)	2110 (4560)					*2340 *(5150)	1620 (3570)	7.15 (23.46)
0 (0)			*6100 *(14150)	5470 (11780)	4770 (10270)	3030 (6530)	3120 (6720)	2030 (4380)					2510 (5540)	1640 (3620)	6.98 (22.91)
-1.5 (-5)	*4690 *(10540)	*4690 *(10540)	*9010 *(19550)	5450 (11720)	4700 (10120)	2960 (6400)	3080 (6660)	2000 (4320)					2790 (6180)	1820 (4030)	6.46 (21.14)
-3 (-10)	*8580 *(19380)	*8580 *(19380)	*7340 *(15840)	5560 (11960)	4750 (10230)	3010 (6500)							3580 (8000)	2320 (5190)	5.47 (17.79)
-4.5 (-15)															
-6 (-20)															

ZX135US-7H  3.01 m (9 ft 11 in), 700 mm (28 in)

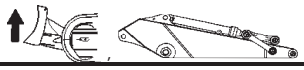
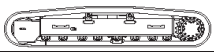
Unit:kg (lb)

B m/(ft)	A m/(ft) 1.5 (5)		3 (10)		4.5 (15)		6 (20)		7.5 (25)		9 (30)		D		E m/(ft)
10.5 (35)															
9 (30)															
7.5 (25)															
6 (20)					*3110 *(6900)	*3110 *(6900)	*2330	2320					*2050 *(4560)	*2050 *(4560)	6.11 (19.79)
4.5 (15)					*3400 *(7440)	*3400 *(7440)	*3310 *(7140)	2320 (4980)					*1920 *(4240)	1760 (3920)	6.99 (22.84)
3 (10)			*5250 *(10990)	*5250 *(10990)	*4240 *(9200)	3510 (7560)	3340 (7190)	2230 (4800)					*1910 *(4220)	1540 (3400)	7.47 (24.48)
1.5 (5)			*8350 *(17980)	5910 (12750)	5000 (10780)	3230 (6980)	3210 (6920)	2110 (4550)	2270 *(4430)	1490 (3200)			*2000 *(4420)	1450 (3200)	7.62 (25)
0 (0)			*6600 *(15300)	5460 (11760)	4760 (10260)	3020 (6510)	3100 (6680)	2010 (4330)					*2220 *(4890)	1460 (3230)	7.46 (24.48)
-1.5 (-5)	*4110 *(9240)	*4110 *(9240)	*8590 *(19710)	5360 (11530)	4650 (10010)	2920 (6290)	3040 (6560)	1950 (4220)					2470 (5460)	1600 (3530)	6.97 (22.84)
-3 (-10)	*7170 *(16180)	*7170 *(16180)	*8040 *(17360)	5420 (11670)	4660 (10040)	2930 (6320)	3070	1980					3030 (6740)	1960 (4360)	6.07 (19.8)
-4.5 (-15)			*5290 *(11100)	*5290 *(11100)	*3190	3090							*3180 *(6930)	3090 *(6930)	4.5 (14.43)
-6 (-20)															

ZX135US-7H  2.52 m (8 ft 3 in),  500 mm (20 in)

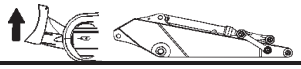
Unit:kg (lb)

B m/(ft)	A m/(ft) 1.5 (5)		3 (10)		4.5 (15)		6 (20)		7.5 (25)		9 (30)		D		E m/(ft)
10.5 (35)															
9 (30)															
7.5 (25)															
6 (20)					*3630 *(8060)	*3630 *(8060)							*2400 *(5340)	*2400 *(5340)	5.5 (17.78)
4.5 (15)			*3900 *(8560)	*3900 *(8560)	*3880 *(8470)	3790 (8180)	3280 (7050)	2380 (5130)					*2220 *(4910)	2080 (4650)	6.48 (21.14)
3 (10)			*6580 *(14100)	*6580 *(14100)	*4690 *(10170)	3590 (7750)	3200 (6900)	2310 (4980)					*2220 *(4890)	1800 (3990)	6.99 (22.91)
1.5 (5)			*6740 *(16550)	6010 (12970)	4790 (10330)	3340 (7220)	3090 (6670)	2210 (4770)					*2340 *(5150)	1700 (3750)	7.15 (23.46)
0 (0)			*6100 *(14150)	5730 (12320)	4600 (9900)	3170 (6840)	3000 (6480)	2130 (4590)					2410 (5330)	1720 (3800)	6.98 (22.91)
-1.5 (-5)	*4690 *(10540)	*4690 *(10540)	*9010 *(19480)	5700 (12260)	4530 (9750)	3110 (6700)	2970 (6410)	2100 (4540)					2690 (5950)	1910 (4230)	6.46 (21.14)
-3 (-10)	*8580 *(19380)	*8580 *(19380)	*7340 *(15840)	5810 (12500)	4580 (9870)	3150 (6810)							3460 (7720)	2440 (5440)	5.47 (17.79)
-4.5 (-15)															
-6 (-20)															

ZX135US-7H  3.01 m (9 ft 11 in),  500 mm (20 in)

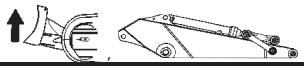
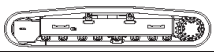
Unit:kg (lb)

B m/(ft)	A m/(ft) 1.5 (5)		3 (10)		4.5 (15)		6 (20)		7.5 (25)		9 (30)		D		E m/(ft)
10.5 (35)															
9 (30)															
7.5 (25)															
6 (20)					*3110 *(6900)	*3110 *(6900)	*2330	*2330					*2050 *(4560)	*2050 *(4560)	6.11 (19.79)
4.5 (15)					*3400 *(7440)	*3400 *(7440)	*3310 *(7140)	2420 (5200)					*1920 *(4240)	1840 (4100)	6.99 (22.84)
3 (10)			*5250 *(10990)	*5250 *(10990)	*4240 *(9200)	3650 (7870)	3220 (6940)	2330 (5020)					*1910 *(4220)	1610 (3570)	7.47 (24.48)
1.5 (5)			*8350 *(17980)	6160 (13290)	4830 (10410)	3370 (7280)	3100 (6670)	2210 (4770)	2190 *(4430)	1560 (3360)			*2000 *(4420)	1520 (3360)	7.62 (25)
0 (0)			*6600 *(15300)	5720 (12300)	4590 (9890)	3160 (6820)	2980 (6430)	2110 (4550)					2170 (4780)	1540 (3390)	7.46 (24.48)
-1.5 (-5)	*4110 *(9240)	*4110 *(9240)	*8590 (19270)	5610 (12070)	4480 (9650)	3060 (6600)	2930 (6310)	2050 (4430)					2370 (5250)	1680 (3710)	6.97 (22.84)
-3 (-10)	*7170 *(16180)	*7170 *(16180)	*8040 *(17360)	5680 (12210)	4490 (9680)	3070 (6630)	2960	2080					2910 (6490)	2050 (4580)	6.07 (19.8)
-4.5 (-15)			*5290 *(11100)	*5290 *(11100)	*3190	*3190							*3180 *(6930)	*3180 *(6930)	4.5 (14.43)
-6 (-20)															

ZX135US-7H  2.52 m (8 ft 3 in), 600 mm (24 in)

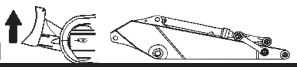
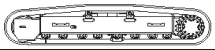
Unit:kg (lb)

B m/(ft)	A m/(ft) 1.5 (5)		3 (10)		4.5 (15)		6 (20)		7.5 (25)		9 (30)		D		E m/(ft)
10.5 (35)															
9 (30)															
7.5 (25)															
6 (20)					*3630 *(8060)	*3630 *(8060)							*2400 *(5340)	*2400 *(5340)	5.5 (17.78)
4.5 (15)			*3900 *(8560)	*3900 *(8560)	*3880 *(8470)	3870 (8340)	3320 (7130)	2440 (5240)					*2220 *(4910)	2130 (4750)	6.48 (21.14)
3 (10)			*6580 *(14100)	*6580 *(14100)	*4690 *(10170)	3660 (7910)	3240 (6980)	2360 (5100)					*2220 *(4890)	1850 (4090)	6.99 (22.91)
1.5 (5)			*6740 *(16550)	6150 (13260)	4850 (10450)	3420 (7380)	3130 (6750)	2260 (4880)					*2340 *(5150)	1740 (3840)	7.15 (23.46)
0 (0)			*6100 *(14150)	5860 (12610)	4650 (10020)	3240 (7000)	3040 (6560)	2180 (4710)					2450 (5400)	1770 (3900)	6.98 (22.91)
-1.5 (-5)	*4690 *(10540)	*4690 *(10540)	*9010 *(19550)	5840 (12550)	4580 (9870)	3180 (6870)	3010 (6490)	2150 (4650)					2720 (6030)	1960 (4330)	6.46 (21.14)
-3 (-10)	*8580 *(19380)	*8580 *(19380)	*7340 *(15840)	5940 (12790)	4630 (9990)	3220 (6970)							3500 (7810)	2490 (5570)	5.47 (17.79)
-4.5 (-15)															
-6 (-20)															

ZX135US-7H  3.01 m (9 ft 11 in),  600 mm (24 in)

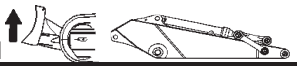
Unit:kg (lb)

B m/(ft)	A m/(ft) 1.5 (5)		3 (10)		4.5 (15)		6 (20)		7.5 (25)		9 (30)		D		E m/(ft)
10.5 (35)															
9 (30)															
7.5 (25)															
6 (20)					*3110 *(6900)	*3110 *(6900)	*2330	*2330					*2050 *(4560)	*2050 *(4560)	6.11 (19.79)
4.5 (15)					*3400 *(7440)	*3400 *(7440)	*3310 *(7140)	2470 (5310)					*1920 *(4240)	1880 (4200)	6.99 (22.84)
3 (10)			*5250 *(10990)	*5250 *(10990)	*4240 *(9200)	3720 (8030)	3260 (7020)	2380 (5130)					*1910 *(4220)	1650 (3660)	7.47 (24.48)
1.5 (5)			*8350 *(17980)	6300 (13580)	4890 (10530)	3450 (7440)	3130 (6750)	2260 (4880)	2220 *(4430)	1600 (3450)			*2000 *(4420)	1560 (3450)	7.62 (25)
0 (0)			*6600 *(15300)	5850 (12590)	4650 (10010)	3230 (6980)	3020 (6510)	2160 (4660)					2190 (4840)	1580 (3480)	7.46 (24.48)
-1.5 (-5)	*4110 *(9240)	*4110 *(9240)	*8590 (19500)	5750 (12350)	4540 (9770)	3130 (6760)	2960 (6390)	2100 (4550)					2400 (5320)	1720 (3810)	6.97 (22.84)
-3 (-10)	*7170 *(16180)	*7170 *(16180)	*8040 *(17360)	5810 (12500)	4550 (9800)	3140 (6790)	3000	2130					2950 (6570)	2110 (4690)	6.07 (19.8)
-4.5 (-15)			*5290 *(11100)	*5290 *(11100)	*3190	*3190							*3180 *(6930)	*3180 *(6930)	4.5 (14.43)
-6 (-20)															

ZX135US-7H  2.52 m (8 ft 3 in),  700 mm (28 in)

Unit:kg (lb)

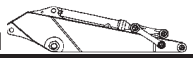
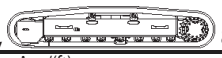
B m/(ft)	A m/(ft) 1.5 (5)		3 (10)		4.5 (15)		6 (20)		7.5 (25)		9 (30)		D		E m/(ft)
10.5 (35)															
9 (30)															
7.5 (25)															
6 (20)					*3630 *(8060)	*3630 *(8060)							*2400 *(5340)	*2400 *(5340)	5.5 (17.78)
4.5 (15)			*3900 *(8560)	*3900 *(8560)	*3880 *(8470)	*3880 (8440)	3370 *(7220)	2470 (5310)					*2220 *(4910)	2160 (4820)	6.48 (21.14)
3 (10)			*6580 *(14100)	*6580 *(14100)	*4690 *(10170)	3710 (8010)	3290 (7080)	2400 (5170)					*2220 *(4890)	1870 (4150)	6.99 (22.91)
1.5 (5)			*6740 *(16550)	6230 (13440)	4920 (10600)	3460 (7480)	3180 (6850)	2300 (4960)					*2340 *(5150)	1770 (3900)	7.15 (23.46)
0 (0)			*6100 *(14150)	5940 (12790)	4730 (10180)	3290 (7110)	3090 (6660)	2210 (4780)					2490 (5490)	1790 (3960)	6.98 (22.91)
-1.5 (-5)	*4690 *(10540)	*4690 *(10540)	*9010 *(19550)	5920 (12730)	4660 (10030)	3230 (6970)	3060 (6600)	2180 (4720)					2770 (6120)	1990 (4400)	6.46 (21.14)
-3 (-10)	*8580 *(19380)	*8580 *(19380)	*7340 *(15840)	6030 (12970)	4710 (10140)	3270 (7070)							3550 (7930)	2530 (5650)	5.47 (17.79)
-4.5 (-15)															
-6 (-20)															

ZX135US-7H  3.01 m (9 ft 11 in), 700 mm (28 in)

Unit:kg (lb)

B m/(ft)	A m/(ft) 1.5 (5)		3 (10)		4.5 (15)		6 (20)		7.5 (25)		9 (30)		D		E m/(ft)
10.5 (35)															
9 (30)															
7.5 (25)															
6 (20)					*3110 *(6900)	*3110 *(6900)	*2330	*2330					*2050 *(4560)	*2050 *(4560)	6.11 (19.79)
4.5 (15)					*3400 *(7440)	*3400 *(7440)	*3310 *(7140)	2500 (5380)					*1920 *(4240)	1910 *(4240)	6.99 (22.84)
3 (10)			*5250 *(10990)	*5250 *(10990)	*4240 *(9200)	3770 (8140)	3310 (7130)	2410 (5200)					*1910 *(4220)	1680 (3720)	7.47 (24.48)
1.5 (5)			*8350 *(17980)	6380 (13760)	4960 (10690)	3500 (7550)	3180 (6860)	2300 (4950)	2250 *(4430)	1630 (3500)			*2000 *(4420)	1590 (3500)	7.62 (25)
0 (0)			*6600 *(15300)	5930 (12770)	4720 (10170)	3280 (7080)	3070 (6620)	2190 (4730)					*2220 *(4890)	1600 (3540)	7.46 (24.48)
-1.5 (-5)	*4110 *(9240)	*4110 *(9240)	*8590 *(19710)	5830 (12540)	4610 (9920)	3180 (6860)	3010 (6500)	2140 (4620)					2440 (5400)	1750 (3870)	6.97 (22.84)
-3 (-10)	*7170 *(16180)	*7170 *(16180)	*8040 *(17360)	5890 (12680)	4620 (9950)	3190 (6890)	3040	2170					3000 (6680)	2140 (4760)	6.07 (19.8)
-4.5 (-15)			*5290 *(11100)	*5290 *(11100)	*3190	*3190							*3180 *(6930)	*3180 *(6930)	4.5 (14.43)
-6 (-20)															

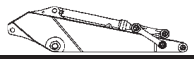
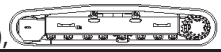
ZX245USLC-7H (Mono block boom)

ZX245USLC-7H  2.91 m (9 ft 7 in),  800 mm (31 in)

Unit:kg (lb)

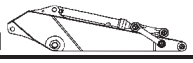
B m/(ft)	A m/(ft) 1.5 (5)		3 (10)		4.5 (15)		6 (20)		7.5 (25)		9 (30)		D		E m/(ft)
10.5 (35)															
9 (30)															
7.5 (25)					*5170 *(11420)	*5170 *(11420)	*5290 *(11500)	*5290 *(11500)					*4230 *(9420)	*4230 *(9420)	6.57 (21.19)
6 (20)					*5700 *(12390)	*5700 *(12390)	*5370 *(11770)	*5370 *(11770)	*4480	3880			*3980 *(8800)	3770 (8420)	7.62 (24.83)
4.5 (15)			*9950 *(21070)	*9950 *(21070)	*7170 *(15470)	*7170 *(15470)	*6010 *(13070)	5400 (11660)	*5430 *(11890)	3820 (8230)			*3950 *(8710)	3260 (7230)	8.26 (27.03)
3 (10)					*9200 *(19800)	7780 (16820)	*6910 *(14980)	5130 (11090)	*5820 *(12680)	3700 (7980)			*4080 *(8990)	3000 (6640)	8.58 (28.14)
1.5 (5)					*10800 *(23310)	7270 (15700)	*7740 *(16760)	4880 (10550)	5830 (12570)	3580 (7720)			*4390 *(9660)	2920 (6450)	8.63 (28.3)
0 (0)			*4480 *(10330)	*4480 *(10330)	*11330 *(24540)	7030 (15170)	7940 (17090)	4720 (10190)	5730 (12360)	3480 (7530)			4890 (10800)	2990 (6610)	8.39 (27.53)
-1.5 (-5)	*5870 *(13140)	*5870 *(13140)	*8930 *(20280)	*8930 *(20280)	*10950 *(23730)	6990 (15060)	7870 (16950)	4660 (10050)	5710 (12320)	3460 (7480)			5360 (11850)	3270 (7220)	7.86 (25.73)
-3 (-10)	*10290 *(23120)	*10290 *(23120)	*13490 *(29220)	*13490 *(29220)	*9710 *(20980)	7070 (15250)	*7190 *(15450)	4710 (10170)					*5770 *(12730)	3900 (8670)	6.94 (22.66)
-4.5 (-15)			*9690 *(20640)	*9690 *(20640)	*7110 *(15020)	*7110 *(15020)							*5470 *(11970)	*5470 *(11970)	5.46 (17.61)
-6 (-20)															

ZX345USLC-7H (Mono block boom)

ZX345USLC-7H  3.11 m (10 ft 2 in),  800 mm (31 in)

Unit:kg (lb)

B m/(ft)	A m/(ft) 1.5 (5)		3 (10)		4.5 (15)		6 (20)		7.5 (25)		9 (30)		D		E m/(ft)
10.5 (35)															
9 (30)															
7.5 (25)							*7830 *(17050)	*7830 *(17050)	*5660	*5660			*4830 *(10700)	*4830 *(10700)	7.68 (24.91)
6 (20)							*8750 *(19050)	*8750 *(19050)	*7890 *(16760)	6240 (13430)			*4670 *(10310)	*4670 *(10310)	8.54 (27.88)
4.5 (15)					*12750 *(27380)	*12750 *(27380)	*10050 *(21760)	8480 (18320)	*8680 *(18910)	6060 (13060)	*5160	4540	*4700 *(10360)	4480 (9930)	9.07 (29.68)
3 (10)					*16010 *(34400)	12110 (26170)	*11550 *(24970)	8030 (17350)	*9420 *(20470)	5830 (12590)	*7020 *(13480)	4440 (9580)	*4900 *(10790)	4220 (9310)	9.31 (30.53)
1.5 (5)					*15010 *(36110)	11430 (24660)	*12730 *(27550)	7650 (16530)	9470 (20410)	5630 (12150)	7240 *(14750)	4350 (9370)	*5280 *(11630)	4140 (9140)	9.3 (30.52)
0 (0)					*15970 *(37250)	11170 (24060)	13000 (27980)	7430 (16030)	9310 (20060)	5480 (11840)	*6330	4280	*5930 *(13090)	4260 (9400)	9.04 (29.64)
-1.5 (-5)			*10720 *(24250)	*10720 *(24250)	*17240 *(37420)	11140 (23990)	*12910 (27780)	7350 (15850)	9250 (19950)	5430 (11730)			*7070 *(15660)	4630 (10230)	8.49 (27.81)
-3 (-10)			*17160 *(38920)	*17160 *(38920)	*15240 *(32980)	11270 (24280)	*11600 *(25000)	7410 (15990)	*8610	5510			*8390 *(18500)	5420 (12050)	7.6 (24.81)
-4.5 (-15)			*15040 *(32170)	*15040 *(32170)	*11610 *(24750)	11580 *(24750)	*8420 *(17440)	7660 (16590)					*7890 *(17290)	7330 (16510)	6.21 (20.08)
-6 (-20)															

ZX345USLC-7H  3.76 m (12 ft 4 in), 800 mm (31 in)

Unit:kg (lb)

B m/(ft)	A m/(ft) 1.5 (5)		3 (10)		4.5 (15)		6 (20)		7.5 (25)		9 (30)		D		E m/(ft)
10.5 (35)															
9 (30)															
7.5 (25)									*5740 *(12080)	*5740 *(12080)			*3850 *(8530)	*3850 *(8530)	8.36 (27.18)
6 (20)							*7040 *(15380)	*7040 *(15380)	*6730 *(14530)	6340 (13650)	*4390	*4390	*3750 *(8280)	*3750 *(8280)	9.16 (29.91)
4.5 (15)					*10860 *(22730)	*10860 *(22730)	*9160 *(19850)	8650 (18660)	*8070 *(17490)	6140 (13240)	*6010 *(12320)	4600 (9890)	*3780 *(8340)	*3780 *(8340)	9.65 (31.59)
3 (10)					*14580 *(31350)	12470 (26930)	*10790 *(23340)	8170 (17640)	*8920 *(19380)	5890 (12710)	*7270 *(15060)	4470 (9630)	*3940 *(8680)	3850 (8520)	9.88 (32.39)
1.5 (5)					*17170 *(37060)	11620 (25070)	*12210 *(26420)	7730 (16700)	9500 (20480)	5650 (12200)	7250 (15620)	4340 (9360)	*4230 *(9320)	3780 (8350)	9.87 (32.38)
0 (0)			*6380 *(14470)	*6380 *(14470)	*17240 *(39280)	11190 (24110)	*13030 (28030)	7440 (16050)	9300 (20040)	5470 (11800)	7140 (15400)	4240 (9160)	*4720 *(10410)	3870 (8530)	9.62 (31.56)
-1.5 (-5)	*7100 *(15830)	*7100 *(15830)	*10080 *(22770)	*10080 *(22770)	*17780 *(38550)	11060 (23810)	12860 (27670)	7290 (15740)	9190 (19810)	5370 (11600)	*6530	4210	*5530 *(12240)	4150 (9160)	9.11 (29.85)
-3 (-10)	*10900 *(24400)	*10900 *(24400)	*14830 *(33570)	*14830 *(33570)	*16310 *(35300)	11110 (23930)	*12230 *(26430)	7290 (15740)	9200 (19850)	5380 (11630)			*7040 *(15670)	4740 (10510)	8.29 (27.08)
-4.5 (-15)			*18400 *(39500)	*18400 *(39500)	*13470 *(28900)	11340 (24440)	*10090 *(21490)	7440 (16090)					*7910 *(17410)	6020 (13490)	7.04 (22.86)
-6 (-20)															

Noise Level Inside of Cab

LpA: Noise level inside of cab (ISO 6396: 2008))

	LpA [dB(A)]
ZX135US-7H	71
ZX245USLC-7H	69
ZX345USLC-7H	71

Long Arm

Long Arm Operation --- If Equipped

ZX135US-7H

1. The optional [3.01 m (9' 11")] long arm is only for light works such as loam loading, sludge handling, etc.. Do not use it for heavy works such as digging gravel. When the arm is used for digging, apply shallow cut to the ground to avoid tough digging, or arm damage may result.
2. When the machine is equipped with the [3.01 m (9' 11")] long arm, the hoe-bucket size must be limited to the followings due to stability and strength of the machine;
   * PCSA 0.45 m^3 (0.59 yd^3)
   * PCSA 0.52 m^3 (0.68 yd^3)
   * with 700 mm (28 in) shoe
3. When the machine is equipped with the long arm, connect the arm cylinder end to:

   Pin bore A (when the machine is in operation)
   Pin bore B (when the machine is transported)

M163-05-001-1 ja

IMPORTANT

Connect the arm cylinder rod end to pin bore B only when the machine is transported. Do not operate the digging or loading function with the arm cylinder connected to pin bore B as the bucket may hit the cab accidentally with this connection.

When transporting the machine, follow the procedure shown below to convert it into the transporting posture.

(a) Position the bucket cylinder without the bucket to fully contraction. Position the bucket cylinder with the bucket to fully extended.
(b) Position the arm cylinder with rod retracted a little from the fully extended position.
(c) Lower the boom until the arm top comes into contact with the ground.

Without hose-rupture safety valve

Unit: mm (ft•in)

Arm Cyrinder Rod End Connected To:	Height of Front Attachment (H)	
	Without Bucket	With Bucket
Pin Bore A	3150 (10' 4")	3280 (10' 9")
Pin Bore B	2830 (9' 3")	2850 (9' 4")

Dimensions include shoe lug height.

Blade

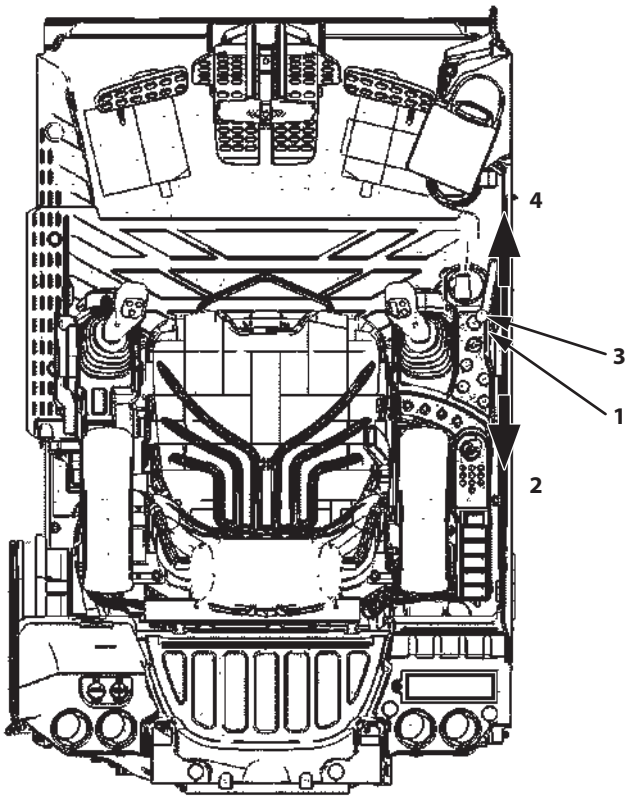
Blade Lever

ZX135US-7H

Use blade lever (1) on the operator's right to raise and lower blade.

When the lever is released, it automatically returns to neutral, keeping the blade in its position until the lever is operated again.

1- Blade Lever
2- Blade Raise
3- Neutral
4- Blade Lower



MDA4-13-14-1 ja

Precautions for Blade Operation

This blade is designed as a light service attachment for the hydraulic excavator. Please keep the following points in mind:

M155-14-008-1 ja

1. This blade is designed to be used for dozing work only. Do not attempt to dig deeply with the blade. Doing so will damage not only the blade but the undercarriage as well.
2. Do not apply intensive or uneven loads. Never apply high-speed impact to the blade by running the machine into a load.
3. Jacking up the machine with this blade, the surface beneath the blade comes under high pressure, increasing the risk of surface collapse.

   Always be sure that the surface is strong enough to support the weight of the machine during operation.

   Avoid dangerously uneven distribution of weight on the blade by maintaining even contact between the blade and the ground.
4. Never use this blade as an outrigger.
5. Avoid contact between the bucket and the blade while digging.

Avoid Hitting Blade with Front-End Attachment

When operating the machine with the blade positioned towards the front, the bucket or boom cylinder may come into contact with the blade if you are not careful. Be sure to prevent this from happening.

MZX5-13-025 ja

MZX5-13-026 ja

Avoid Hitting Blade with Bucket

When operating the machine with the blade positioned towards the front, the bucket or boom cylinder may come into contact with the blade if you are not careful. Be sure to prevent this from happening.

MZX5-13-026 ja

Avoid Striking the Blade into a Rock

Do not attempt to strike large rocks with the blade, as doing so will damage the blade and the blade cylinders, shortening their operating lives.

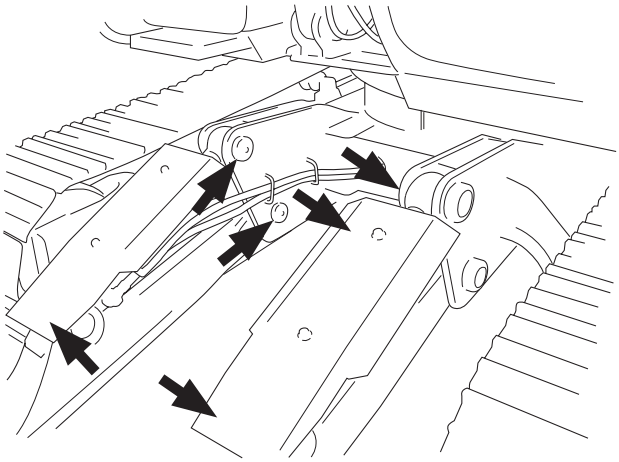
MZX5-13-027 ja

Blade Maintenance

Greasing --- every 250 hours

Lubricate all fittings shown in the figure.

- Blade Joint Pins (2 points)
- Blade Cylinder Rod (2 points)
- Blade Cylinder Bottom (2 points)



M175-13-002-1 ja

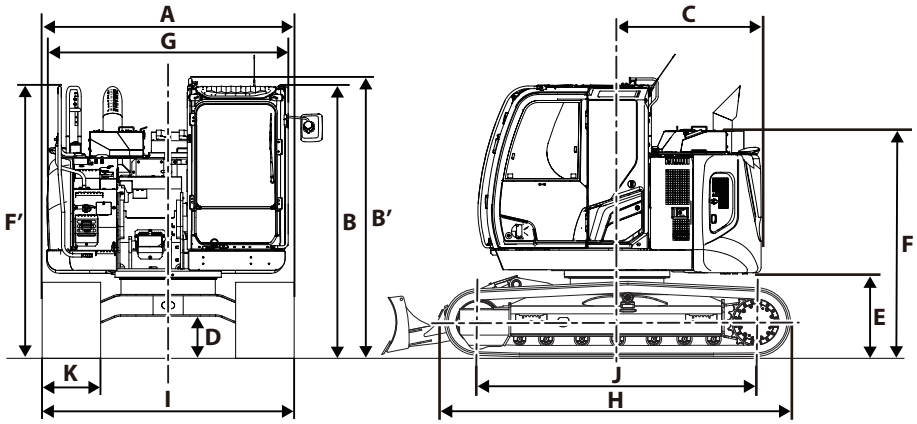
Transportation Figure for Machine Equipped with Blade

When transporting the machine equipped with a blade and a long arm front attachment on a trailer, place the blade in the opposite position toward the front attachment. Otherwise, the bucket may come in contact with the blade

M175-13-005 ja

Specifications

ZX135US-7H with Blade



MDHE-13-001-2 ja

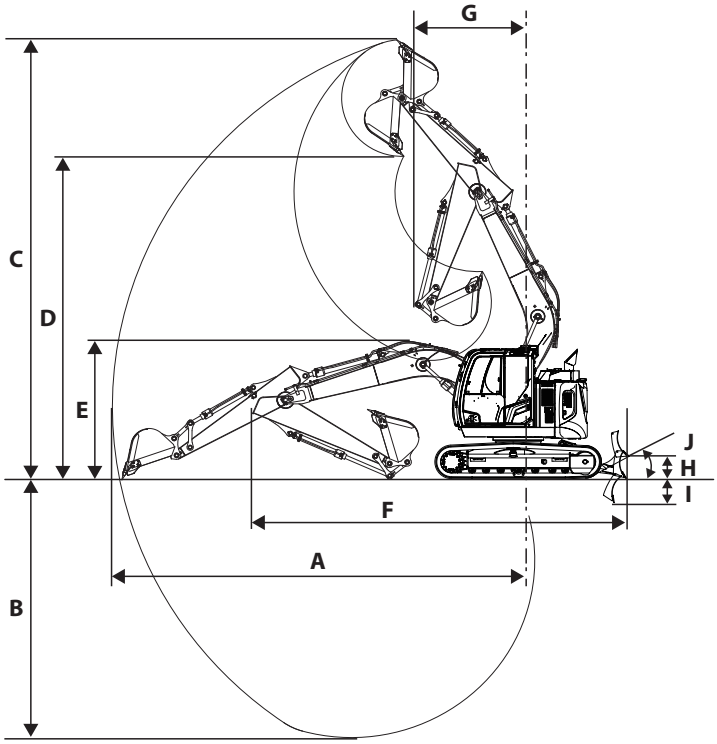
Model	ZX135US-7H with Blade	
Type of Front-End Attachment	2.52 m (8 ft 3 in) Arm	3.01 m (9 ft 11 in) Arm
Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	ISO 7451: 2007 0.52 m^3 (0.68 yd^3)	
Counterweight Weight	3500 kg (7800 lb)	
Operating Weight	15600 kg (34400 lb)	
Base Machine Weight	12800 kg (28200 lb)	
Engine Type	Isuzu AR-4JJ1XSA-02	
Engine Power	ISO 14396: 78.5 kW/2000 min^{-1}	
	ISO 9249: 74.9 kW/2000 min^{-1}	
A: Overall Width (Excluding back mirrors)	2590 mm (8 ft 6 in)	
B: Cab Height	2790 mm (9 ft 2 in)	
B': Cap Top Handhold Height	2870 mm (9 ft 5 in)	
C: Rear End Swing Radius	1490 mm (4 ft 11 in)	
D: Minimum Ground Clearance	410 mm[*1] (1 ft 4 in)	
E: Counterweight Clearance	840 mm[*1] (2 ft 9 in)	
F: Engine Cover Height	2320 mm[*1] (7 ft 8 in)	
F': Body Top Handrail Height	2810 mm (9 ft 3 in)	
G: Overall Width of Upperstructure	2480 mm (8 ft 2 in)	
H: Undercarriage Length	3580 mm (11 ft 9 in)	
I: Undercarriage Width	2590 mm (8 ft 6 in)	
J: Sprocket Center to Idle Center	2880 mm (9 ft 5 in)	
K: Track Shoe Width	600 mm (24 in) (Grouser Shoe)	
Ground Pressure	41 kPa (0.42 kgf/cm^2, 5.9 psi)	
Swing Speed	13.5 min^{-1}	
Travel Speed (fast/slow)	5.5/3.3 km/h (3.4/2.1 mph)	
Gradeability	35 ° (tanθ = 0.70)	

NOTE

*[*1] The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.*

Working Ranges (Grouser shoe)

ZX135US-7H with Blade



MDHE-13-002-2 ja

Model		ZX135US-7H with Blade	
Item / Category		2.52 m (8 ft 3 in) Arm	3.01 m (9 ft 11 in) Arm
A : Maximum Digging Reach	mm (ft·in)	8380 (27' 6")	8850 (29' 1")
B : Maximum Digging Depth	mm (ft·in)	5490 (18' 1")	5980 (19' 8")
C : Maximum Cutting Height	mm (ft·in)	9290 (30' 6")	9680 (31' 10")
D : Maximum Dumping Height	mm (ft·in)	6830 (22' 5")	7230 (3' 9")
E : Overall Height	mm (ft·in)	2930 (9' 8")	2870*1(9' 5")
F : Overall Length	mm (ft·in)	8010 (26' 3")	8030 (26' 4")
G : Minimum Swing Radius	mm (ft·in)	2190 (7' 3")	2540 (8' 4")
H : Max. Raising Height	mm (ft·in)	460 (1' 6")	
I : Max. Digging Depth	mm (ft·in)	540 (1' 9")	
J : Blade Angle	degree	26 °	

NOTE

- *The dimensions do not"clude the height of the shoe lug (except Item E).*
- **1 The dimensions asterisked are for transport pin position.*

Shoe Types and Applications

ZX135US-7H with Blade

Shoe Width		500 mm (20 in) Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24 in) Grouser Shoe	700 mm (28 in) Grouser Shoe
Application		For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Weak Footing (Option)
Blade width	mm (ft·in)	2490 (8' 2")	2690 (8' 10")	2690 (8' 10")
Operating Weight	kg (lb)	15300 (33700)	15600 (34400)	15900 (35100)
Base Machine Weight	kg (lb)	12500 (27600)	12800 (28200)	13000 (28700)
Counterweight Weight	kg (lb)	3500 (7800)	3500 (7800)	3500 (7800)
Cab Height	mm (ft·in)	2790 (9' 2")	2790 (9' 2")	2790 (9' 2")
Minimum Ground Clearance	mm (ft·in)	410*1 (1' 4")	410*1 (1' 4")	410*1 (1' 4")
Undercarriage Length	mm (ft·in)	3580 (11' 9")	3580 (11' 9")	3580 (11' 9")
Undercarriage Width	mm (ft·in)	2490 (8' 2")	2690 (8' 10")	2690 (8' 10")
Ground Pressure		48 kPa (0.49 kgf/cm^2, 7.0 psi)	41 kPa (0.42 kgf/cm^2, 5.9 psi)	36 kPa (0.37 kgf/cm^2, 5.2 psi)

NOTE

- *The specifications for the front-end attachment are for a 3.01 m (9 ft 11 in) arm with PCSA 0.52 m^3 (0.68 yd^3) standard bucket.*
- *600 mm (24 in) and 700 mm (28 in) grouser shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.*
- **1 The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.*

Attachment Pedal

1-Pedal Travel Operation (Optional)

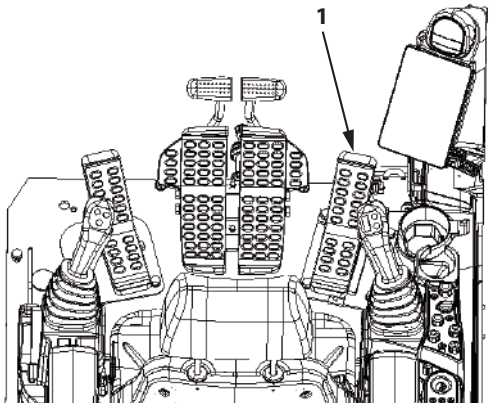
1-Pedal Straght Travel Operation is designed and adjusted to support long distance travelling in a same direction. 1-pedal travel is performed with pedal (1) at the right front of the operator's seat as illustrated at right.

WARNING

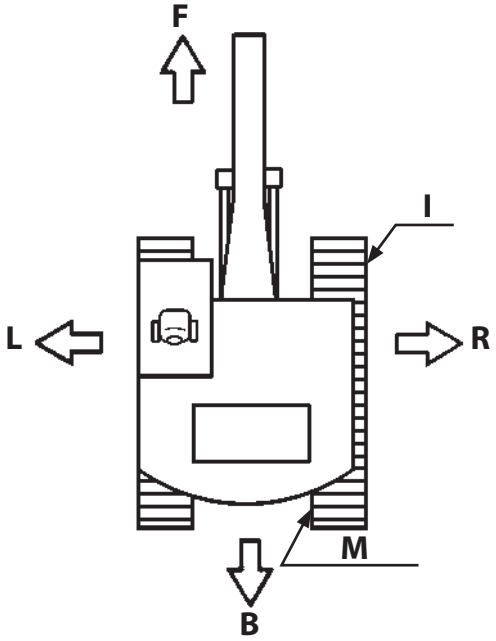
If travel motor (M) is located at the front of the machine, the machine will move in the reverse direction to that shown on the operation instruction decal. Normal travel operation is when travel motor (M) is at the rear, and the front idler (I) is at the front of the machine.

NOTE

- *An arrow mark (1) is affixed on the inside surface of the side frame to indicate the front of the machine.*
- *Due to the characteristics of the attachment pedal, it is not suitable for operation other than long distance travelling. For other operations, use travel lever or travel pedal.*
- *A travel control lever damper is provided on this machine to ensure smooth travel operation. Therefore, the travel control lever or pedal may become heavier in extreme cold ((-20°C (-4°F) or less). This is caused by an increase in oil viscosity, not a malfunction.*

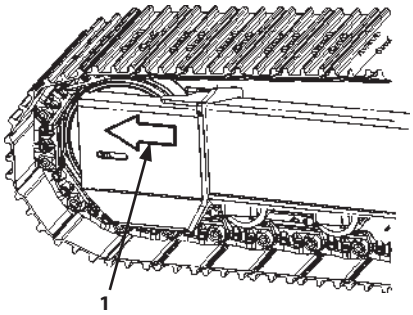


MDFY-13-006-2 ja



M104-01-038-3 ja

I	Front Idler	B	Rear
M	Travel Motor	R	Right
F	Front	L	Left

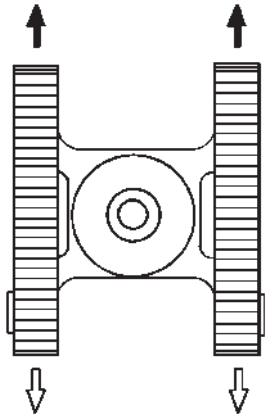


M178-03-001-2 ja

CAUTION

When not operating attachment pedal (1), put pedal lock (2) in the LOCK position. Do not place your foot on pedal (1) when pedal (1) is not in use. Put the pilot shut-off lever in the LOCK position before changing the position of pedal lock (2).

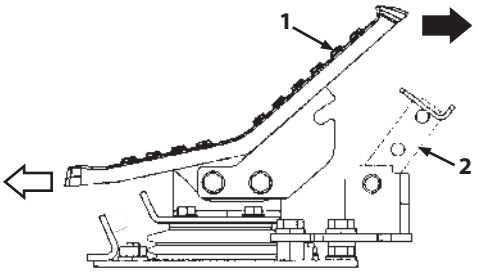
- Forward/Reverse Travel
  1. Lower pedal lock (2) toward the front to its UNLOCK position.
  2. Press pedal (1) forward to move the machine forward. Press pedal (1) back to reverse the machine. For both forward and reverse travel, the speed will change relative to how much the pedals are pressed.
  3. Removing the foot from pedal (1) stops the machine.
  4. When not operating pedal (1), put pedal lock (2) in the LOCK position.



Forward/Reverse Travel

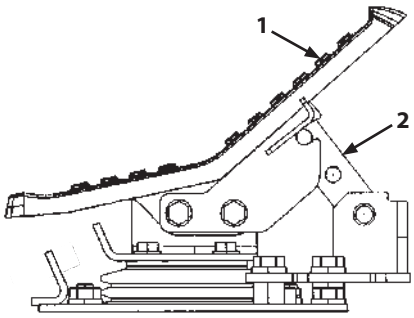
MDHD-13-004 ja

- Steering Operation
  Pedal (1) cannot control steering. Read the “Driving Instructions” before steering the machine.



Unlocked Attachment pedal

MDHD-13-006-1 ja



Locked Attachment pedal

MDHD-13-005-1 ja

Control Lever (2 Way Multi Valve)

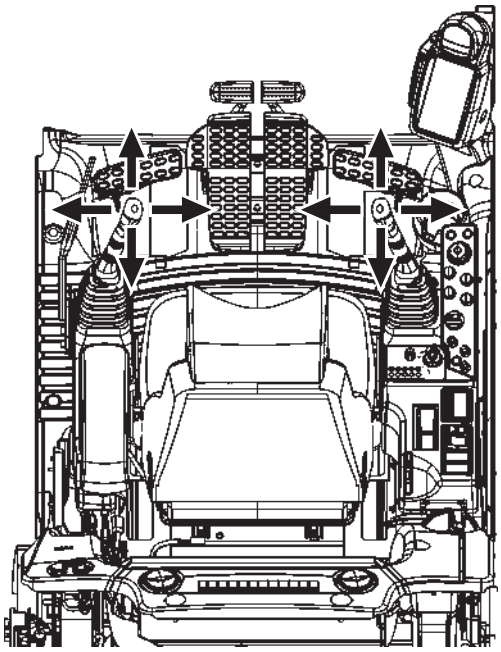
The control lever operation pattern is selected to one of two patterns, ISO pattern and SAE pattern by shifting selector valve (1).

CAUTION

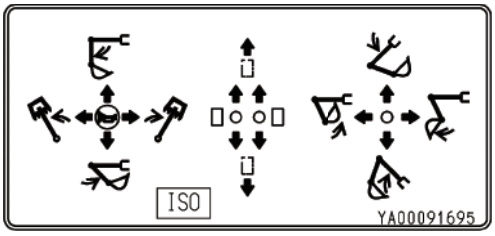
To prevent a serious accident or personal injury and/or death from occurring due to erratic machine movement, follow the instructions below.

- **Appoint a coordinator responsible to selection of the multi control lever operation pattern.**
- **Attach a lock (2) to selector valve (1). Prohibit that no personnel other than the coordinator change the control lever operation pattern.**
- **After changing the control lever operation pattern, check that the direction of the machine movement agrees with the control lever operation pattern described on the operation instruction decal. Be sure to change the operation instruction decal to that matching the new machine control lever operation pattern. The control lever operation pattern decal is affixed on the right side of the operator' seat as illustrated to the right.**
- **Never attempt to change the control lever operation pattern without stopping the engine. The machine may be unexpectedly moved, possibly resulting in personal injury or death. Whenever changing the control lever operation pattern, lower bucket to the ground, stop the engine. Then, rotate selector valve (1) to the desired control lever operation pattern position and lock the valve up.**
- **After changing the control lever operation pattern, make it rule for the coordinator to instruct the operator the new control lever operation pattern.**
- **Rule that the coordinator is responsible to retain and stow the key for selector valve lock (2).**
- **Never place any part of body beyond window frame. It could be crushed by the boom if boom control lever is accidentally bumped or otherwise engaged. If window is missing or broken, replace immediately. Prevent possible injury from unexpected machine movement.**
  Make sure you know the location and function of each control before operating.

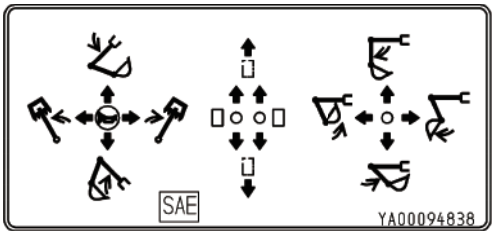
When a lever is released, it will automatically return to neutral, and that machine function will stop.



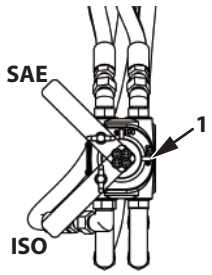
MDAA-01-343-2 ja



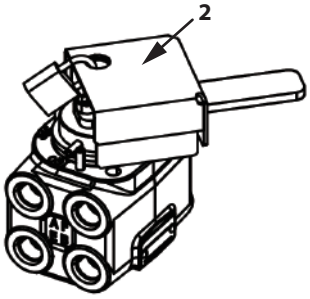
SSYA00091695 ja



SSYA00094838 ja



MDHD-13-001-1 ja



MDHD-13-002-1 ja

Hydraulic Breaker, Crusher, Quick Coupler

Selecting a Breaker or Crusher

When mounting a breaker or crusher on the hydraulic shovel, it is necessary to consider the stability of the base machine, as well as requirements of the breaker or crusher, such as oil pressure and amount.

When selecting a breaker or crusher, consult Authorized Dealer.

Precautions for Operation

When using a breaker or crusher, do so according to the "Breaker and Crusher Instruction Manual".

Follow the precautions to avoid damage to the body of the machine or to the breaker or crusher.

When the breaker or crusher is changed, make sure there is no risk related to the field of vision.

Warnings about the Piping of Breakers and Crushers

Take care when connecting/disconnecting the hoses of hydraulic breaker or crusher to the pipes at the end of the arm so no dirt or debris gets on or inside hoses or pipes.

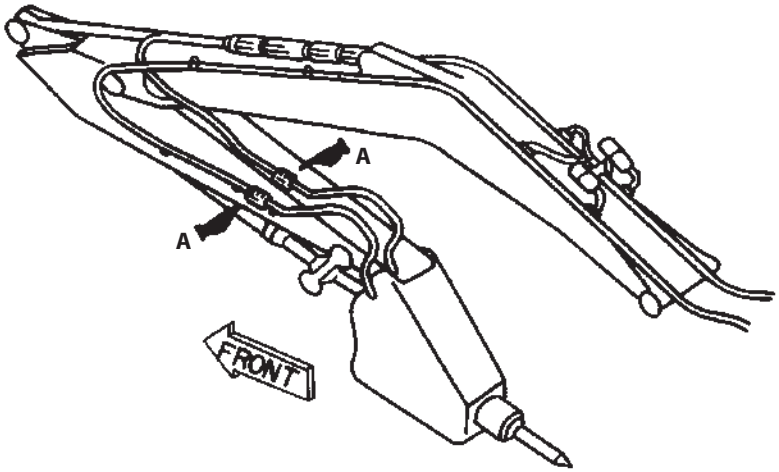
When a breaker or crusher is not attached to the machine, always put a cap or plug on the ends of the pipes at the end of arms and the ends of hoses of the breaker or crusher, to avoid dirt/debris from getting on or in them.

Always keep spare caps and plugs in the tool box, so they will not be lost.

Prior to starting work, check for looseness of bolts on the clamps holding pipes and for oil leaks from connections of pipes and hoses.

Piping for Breaker and Crusher

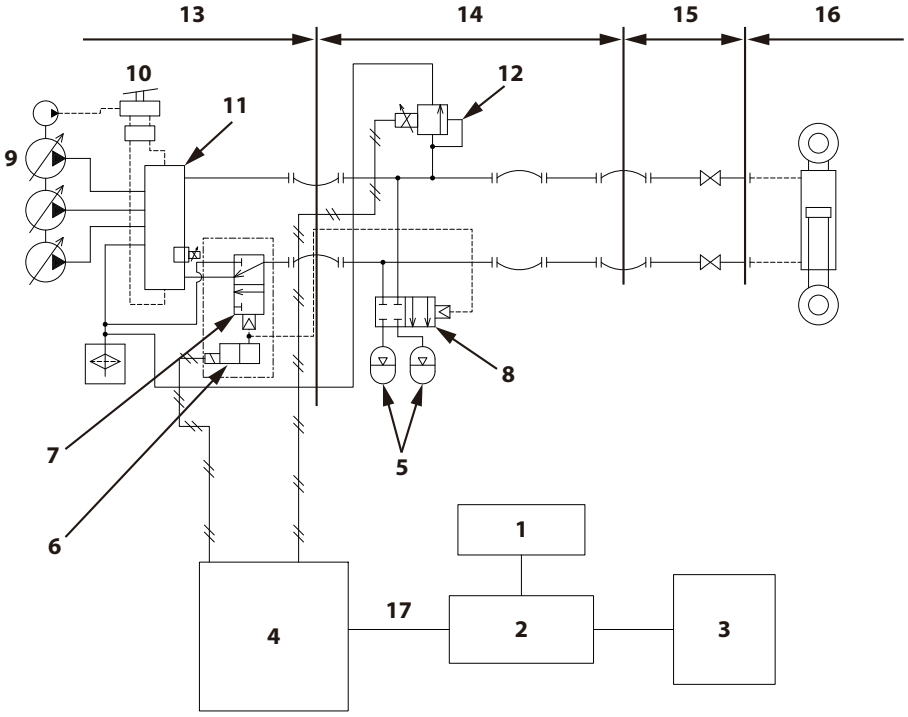
- Layout of Stop and Selection Valves



MDFY-13-001-1 ja

Stop Valve A		
Valve Operation	Closed	Open
Description	When mounting/removing attachments or when not in use	When using an attachment

- Image of Hydraulic Circuit



MDFY-13-030-1 ja

1	Monitor	6	Solenoid valve	11	Control valve	16	Attachments
2	Monitor controller	7	Selector valve	12	Breaker relief valve	17	CAN
3	Switch box	8	Accumulator stop valve	13	Base Machine		
4	Main controller	9	Pump	14	Boom		
5	Accumulator	10	Control pedal	15	Arm		

Breaker Relief Valve Pressure Adjustment

The relief pressure settings of solenoid valves vary with breakers.

Before using a breaker, check its specifications and contact Authorized Dealer to have the pressure adjusted.

Precautions for Breaker Operation

WARNING

When working with a hydraulic breaker mounted, the machine becomes less stable because the attachment is heavy; this is the opposite of when using a bucket. Note that it is also extremely dangerous because materials go flying, such as sand and fragments of rock and metal. In addition to safety measures to prevent turning over and to protect from flying debris, follow the precautions below and work safely.

Crashing into Crushed Materials Not Allowed

Hydraulic breakers are heavier than buckets, so they drop faster and require caution for this reason.

If a hydraulic breaker crashes into crushed material, it will damage the front and/or upperstructure of the machine.

MZX5-13-019 ja

Moving Crushed Materials Not Allowed

Do not move crushed materials or the like with the hydraulic breaker.

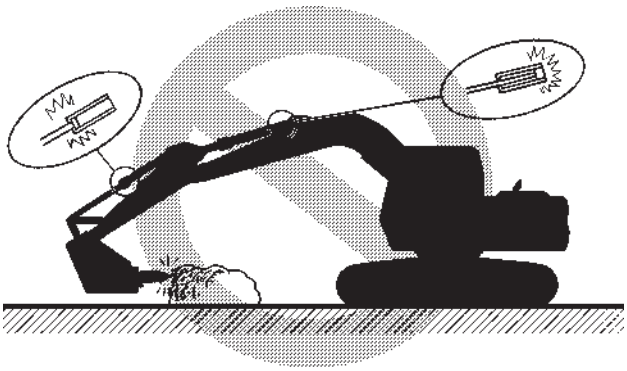
In particular, do not use swiveling force to move crushed materials. Doing so may cause damage to the boom and/or arm, as well as the hydraulic breaker.

MZX5-13-020 ja

Avoid operating breaker at cylinder stroke end

Leave at least 100 mm (3.9 in) of room at the end of the stroke of the machine's cylinders when striking with it.

Striking with cylinders at the end of their stroke will cause damage to the cylinders, arm and/or boom.



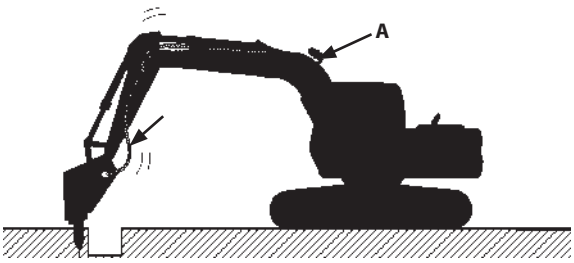
MZX5-13-021 ja

Stop operation if hydraulic hoses jump abnormally.

It may be caused by a drop in gas pressure in the accumulator (A) or damage.

Continuing to use it as-is results in massive shock, damage to the pump and a negative impact on the machine.

Immediately contact Authorized Dealer.



M104-05-058-2 ja

Never use in Water

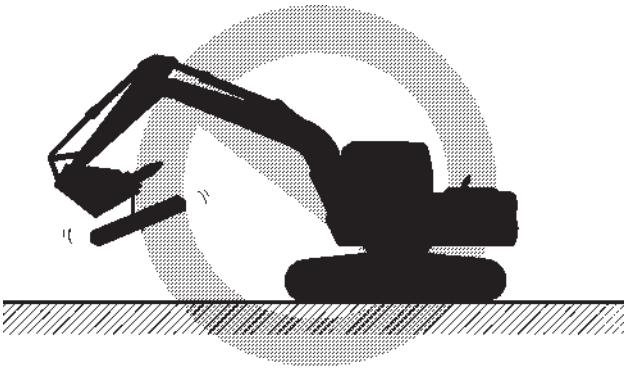
Doing so causes rust on the hydraulic breaker and damage to the seals.

As such, rust, debris and water may get into the hydraulic oil, which will cause damage to the machine's hydraulic equipment.

MZX5-13-017-2 ja

Never use for Sling Loads

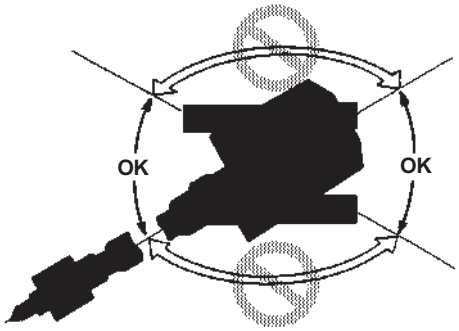
Using a hydraulic breaker for sling loading is prohibited.



MZX5-13-022 ja

Use while Facing Side of Machine Prohibited

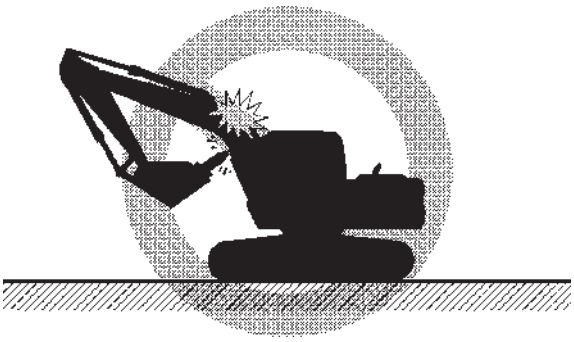
Do not do any work while facing the side of the machine. Doing so may cause the machine to tip over and decreases the life of the undercarriage.



MZX5-13-023-1 en_GB

Operate the chisel carefully to avoid hitting the machine.

Be careful when crowding the hydraulic breaker as its chisel may hit the boom.

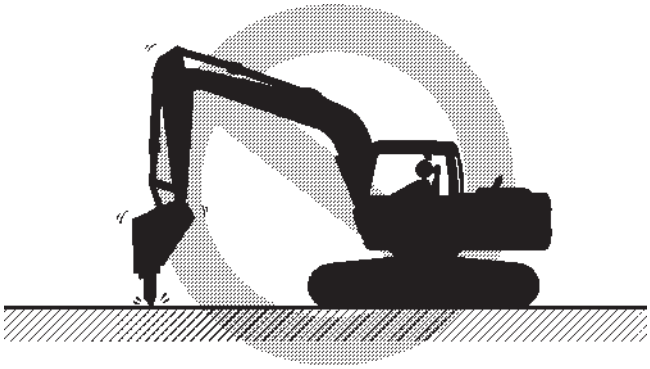


Warning about Touching the Boom

MZX5-13-024-2 ja

Never Operate Breakers with Arm in Vertical Attitude

This causes vibration to the arm cylinder and causes oil leaks.



MZX5-13-006 ja

Align the Direction of Pressing the Hydraulic Breaker with the Direction of Penetration of the Chisel (Axially)

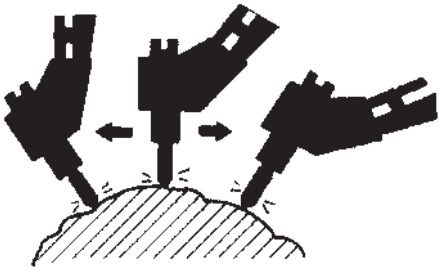
Failure to do so causes damage to the chisel and/or scoring of pistons.

MZX5-13-007 ja

Do not operate the breaker continuously for longer than one minute.

Pounding too long causes abnormal wear of the chisel.

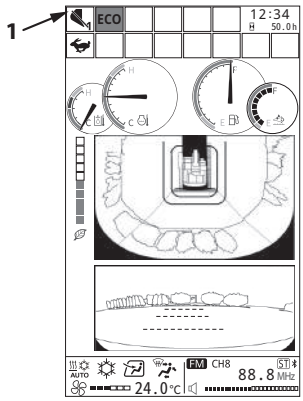
If a rock does not break, change the point where the chisel is making contact.



M147-05-015-2 ja

IMPORTANT

If use of the breaker is continued for longer than one minute, a diagonal line will be displayed in operation mode display portion (1) of the monitor screen and a buzzer will sound. If this occurs, stop work immediately, wait for a short time and then start work again.

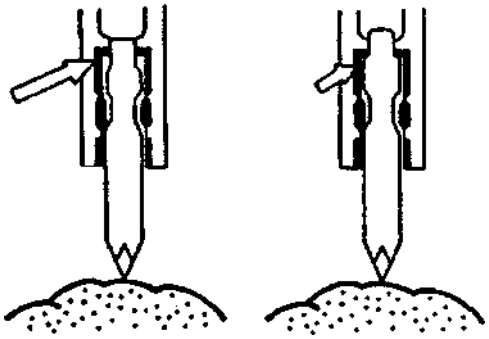


MDFY-MT-136-1 ja

Always Press Against Object

Press the attachment against an object before operating it.

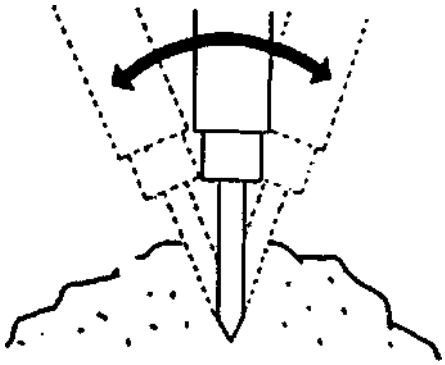
Operating while not touching an object increases the oil temperature and may lead to puncturing the accumulator.



M116-05-013 ja

Never Pry

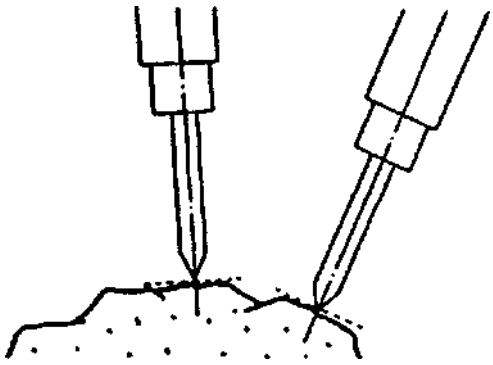
Prying with the chisel leads to wear and/or breaking of the chisel and bushings.



M116-05-014 ja

Impact the working surface at a right angle.

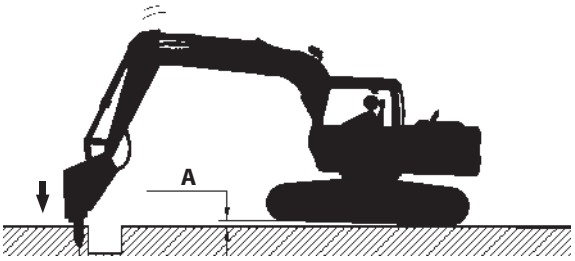
Impact at other than a right angle leads to breaking of bolts and/or the chisel.



M116-05-015 ja

Raising the Front Part of the Undercarriage by Pressing Down the Breaker May Cause Damage to the Front Attachment

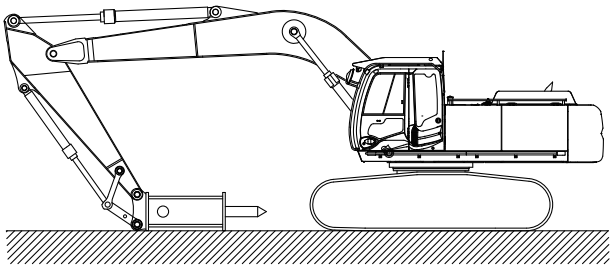
Never raise the front edge (A) of the undercarriage higher than 150 mm (6 in) by pressing the breaker down.



M147-05-016-3 ja

Machine storing position with breaker

After operating the machine, be sure to place the breaker horizontally on the ground. Do not leave cylinders at their stroke end position. Failure to do so may damage the cylinder.



MJAD-05-001 ja

Do Not Pull the Arm to the Stroke End with Maximum Speed

Excessive power occurred inside may damage the arm cylinder.

Change Hydraulic Oil and Replace Full-Flow Filter Element

Hydraulic breaker operation results in faster contamination of the hydraulic system, and faster deterioration of hydraulic oil.

Failure to comply with proper maintenance intervals may result in damage to the base machine and the breaker.

Change the hydraulic oil and the full-flow filter element in order to extend the service life particularly of the hydraulic pump. (Refer to the section "Hydraulic System" in the "MAINTENANCE" chapter.)

Change intervals differ depending on the brand of hydraulic oil used. Refer to the "Hydraulic System" in the "MAINTENANCE" chapter.

NOTE

Hydraulic oil filter restriction alam indicator is optional. If a filter-paper element is used, this indicator does not operate. (Refer to the section "Hydraulic System" in the "MAINTENANCE" chapter.)

Cautions on Crusher Operation

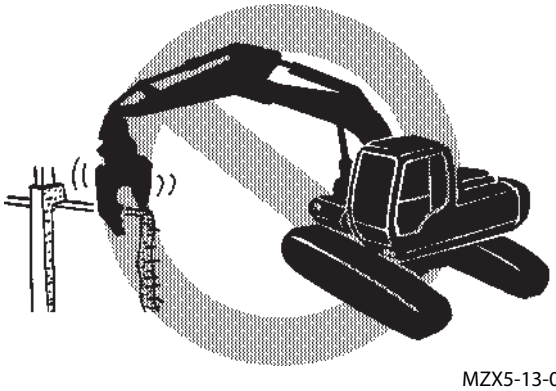
Heed the following points to avoid damage to the front-end and to prevent the machine from tipping over.

WARNING

When working with a crusher mounted, the machine becomes less stable because the attachment is heavy; this is the opposite of when using a bucket. It is extremely hazardous due to crushed material falling and scattering and the potential to tip over. In addition to normal safety measures, follow the precautions below and work safely.

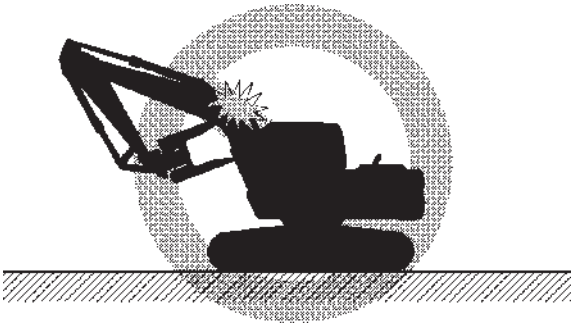
- Do not lift the machine when the bucket cylinder is in its fully extended or retracted positions. Doing so may damage parts of the front attachment. The bucket cylinder is particularly susceptible to damage when fully extended.
  Be particularly careful during work like demolition of foundations with a crusher.
- Do not lift the machine when the arm cylinder is fully extended. Doing so will damage the arm cylinder.
- Do not make abrupt start or stop operations with the front-end when a heavy attachment like a crusher is mounted on it. Doing so may damage parts of the front attachment.
- Work in the forward/reverse direction of the tracks. Working lateral to the track makes the machine unstable and may cause it to tip over.

MZX5-13-008 ja



MZX5-13-009 ja

- Be careful when crowding the crusher as it may hit the boom.
- Do not pull the arm to the stroke end with maximum speed.
  Excessive power occurred inside may damage the arm cylinder.



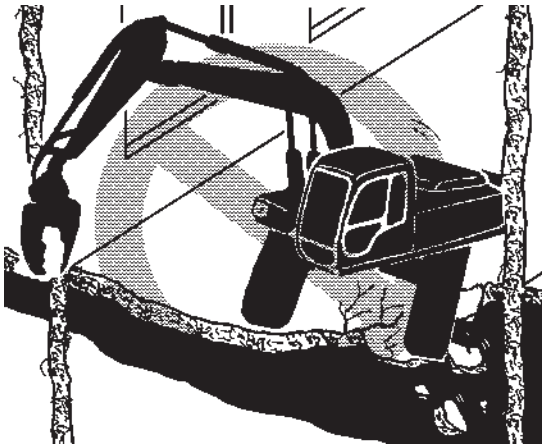
Warning about Touching the Boom or Cab

MZX5-13-010-2 ja

- When crushing high places, such as a ceiling, take care that crushed material does not fall on the machine.

MZX5-13-011 ja

- Before working on the floor of a building, check and make sure it is strong enough.
  Some working methods result in a greater load on the floor than the machine's own weight.
- Keep the body horizontal and stabilize its footing while working. Do not drive onto glass or work on a slope.
- Do not use the crusher to move or load crushed materials.
- Hydraulic oil tends to get contaminated when changing attachments, such as crusher and bucket, or hydraulic breaker and another attachment. Change the hydraulic oil and full-flow filter element at the same frequency (hours) as the hydraulic breaker.



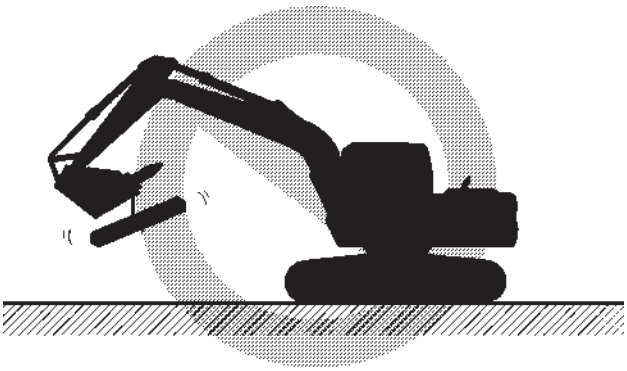
MZX5-13-012 ja

- Remove the crusher from the machine during transport. Do not leave the bucket cylinder fully extended during transport. (Vibration during transport causes the same condition as if it is being lift up, which damages the front attachement.)

Never Use a Hydraulic-Driven Attachment (Breaker, Crusher, etc.) for Slinging Work

Before doing slinging work, detach the hydraulic-driven attachment (breaker, crusher, etc.).

The attachment may operate suddenly during slinging work, resulting in personal injury.



MZX5-13-022 ja

Attachment

Allowable Weight Limits of Installed Attachment

WARNING

- **Before installing attachments such as hydraulic breaker, crusher (concrete crusher), or pulverizer, and quick coupler, take machine controllability into account when selecting the weight of the attachment by referring to the table below.**
- **When an attachment other than the standard bucket is installed on the machine, the machine stability will be different.**
  If a heavy attachment is used, not only will controllability be affected but also machine stability will be reduced, possibly causing safety hazard.
- **According to the specifications of installed attachment and the base machine, the machine weight may exceed the allowable maximum operating weight of the ROPS, making the ROPS unable to assure the protective function for operator. Refer to the ROPS certification affixed in the cab for the allowable maximum operating weight.**

IMPORTANT

As attachments such as breaker, crusher, and pulverizer are heavier than a standard bucket, do not perform the arm roll-in operation at maximum speed and/or to the stroke end of the cylinders.
Doing so may damage the arm cylinder.

Unit: kg (lb)

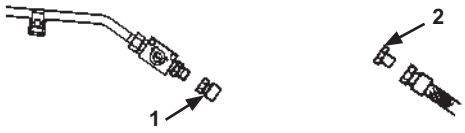
Specification	Base Machine		Breaker		Crusher/Pulverizer	
	Model	Arm	Std.Weight	Max.Weight	Std.Weight	Max.Weight
Std. Model	ZX135US-7H	Std.	1000 (2210)	1100 (2430)	1200 (2650)	1400 (3090)
	ZX245USLC-7H	Std.	1750 (3860)	1950 (4300)	2100 (4630)	2450 (5400)
	ZX345USLC-7H	Std.	2400 (5300)	2650 (5850)	2900 (6400)	3400 (7500)

- Breaker operation speed is faster than crusher operation, so the recommended maximum weights for breakers are lower than those for crushers.
- Avoid installing an attachment with a long overall length. Damage to the front attachment may result.
- When an attachment of the maximum weight is installed, always operate the attachment over the front or rear side of the machine. Avoid operating the attachment at maximum reach.
- Crushers are heavier than breakers. Slowly move the control lever when operating a crusher.
- Always contact Authorized Dealer before installing attachments of other manufacturers.
- When operating the machine with attachment heavier than standard bucket, do not pull the arm to the stroke end with maximum speed. Excessive power occurred inside may damage the arm cylinder.

Attachment Connections

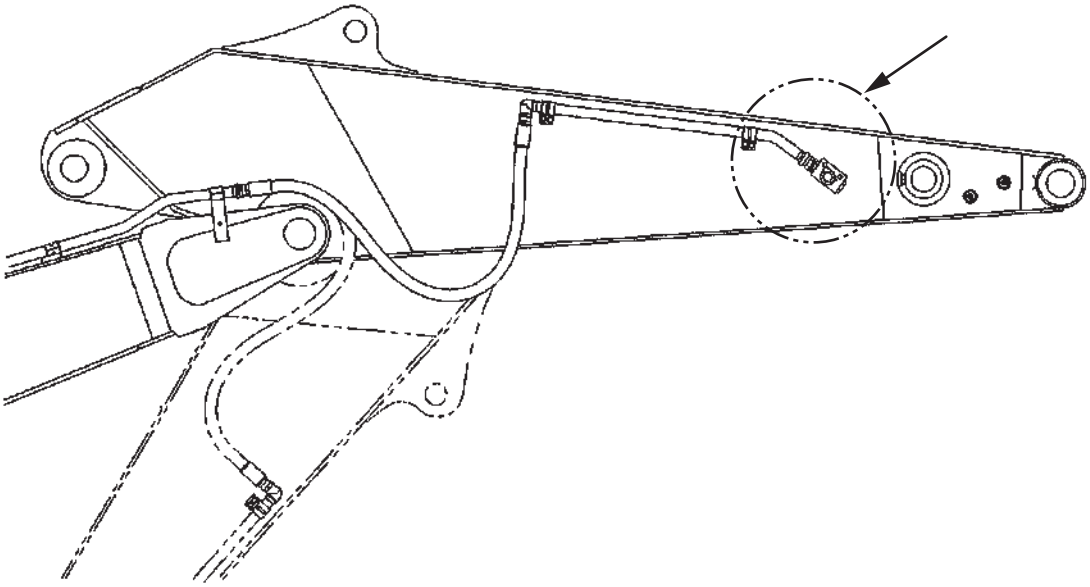
This describes the connection parts between arm tip pipes and the pipes of each attachment.

When attachments are removed, always put a cap (1) or plug (2) on the ends of the arm tip pipe and attachment pipe, to prevent dirt from getting on or in them.



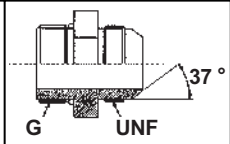
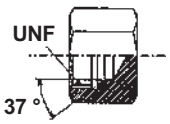
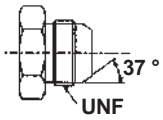
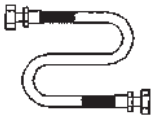
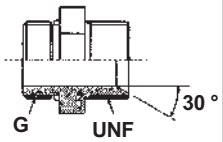
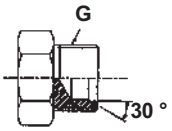
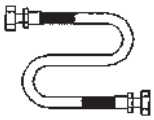
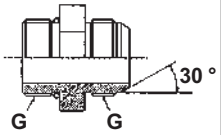
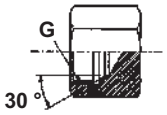
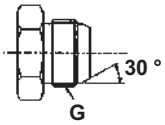
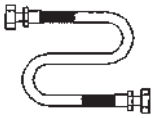
M175-05-005-3 ja

	Bolt Dia	Tightening Torque
G1	JIS B2351 O-type G1	210 N·m (21 kgf·m, 155 lbf·ft)
G1-1/4	JIS B2351 O-type G1-1/4	340 N·m (34 kgf·m, 251 lbf·ft) (ZX245USLC-7H, right-side piping only)



MDFY-13-015-1 ja

Table of Parts Numbers (Put the parts number of the maker of the attachment being used in the empty spaces.)

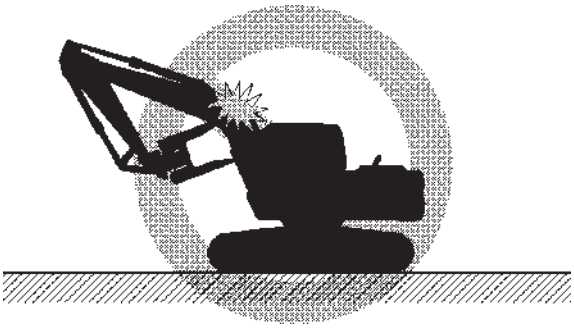
	Adapter Code	Adapter	Cap	Plug	Hose
Part Shape	G-UNF Male				
ZX135US-7H	G1-1-1/16UN	4456399	4222711	4222264	
ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H left side piping	G1X1-5/16UN	4214444	4222712	4222265	
ZX245USLC-7H right-side piping	G1-1/4X1-5/16UN	4314094			
Part Shape	G-G30 ° Female				
ZX135US-7H	G1-G3/4	4129457	9718916	4222047	
ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H left side piping	G1XG1	4042034	9718917	4168177	
ZX245USLC-7H right-side piping	G1-1/4XG1	4317614			
Part Shape	G-G30 ° Male				
ZX135US-7H	G1-G3/4	4456120	4222715	4222044	
ZX245USLC-7H, ZX345USLC-7H left side piping	G1XG1	4456118	4222716	4222045	
ZX245USLC-7H right-side piping	G1-1/4XG1	4653961			

Precautions when Retracting the Arm and Bucket

When an attachment whose overall length is longer than a standard bucket is attached

WARNING

When an attachment (such as breaker, crusher, quick coupler, etc.) whose overall length is longer than a standard bucket is attached, the attachment may interfere with the cab or boom. Be careful not to hit the cab or boom with the tip of the attachment when retracting the arm.



MZX5-13-010-2 ja

How to Use Quick Couplers

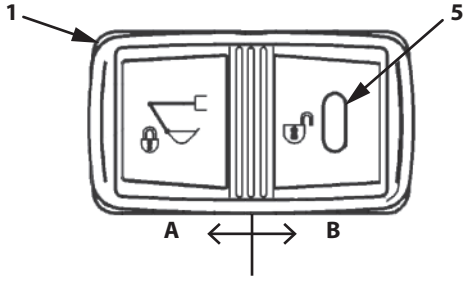
Quick couplers are controlled with quick coupler switch (1) and the right control lever.

WARNING

Make sure no one can approach the work area when attaching/detaching an attachment.

IMPORTANT

Do not operate the attachment while operating the quick coupler. Hydraulic oil might splash from the quick coupler.



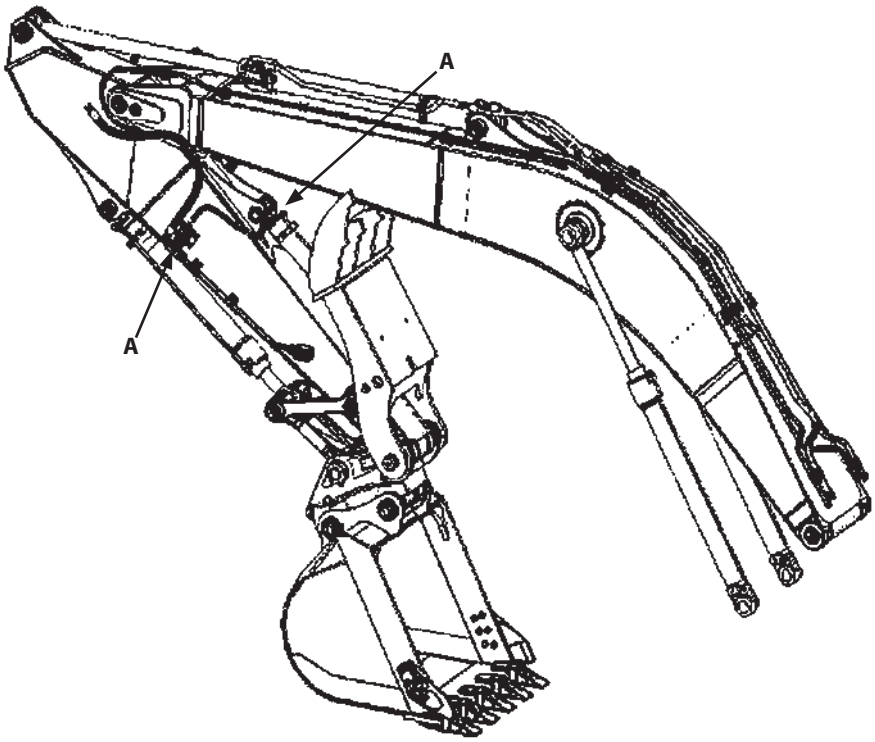
MDFY-01-182-2 ja

A: LOCK
B: UNLOCK

Thumb and Quick Coupler

Thumb and Quick Coupler

- Layout of Stop Valve and Selector Valve



MDHD-13-007-1 ja

Stop Valve A		
Valve Operation	Closed	Open
Work Condition	When the thumb is not in use	When the thumb is in use

WARNING

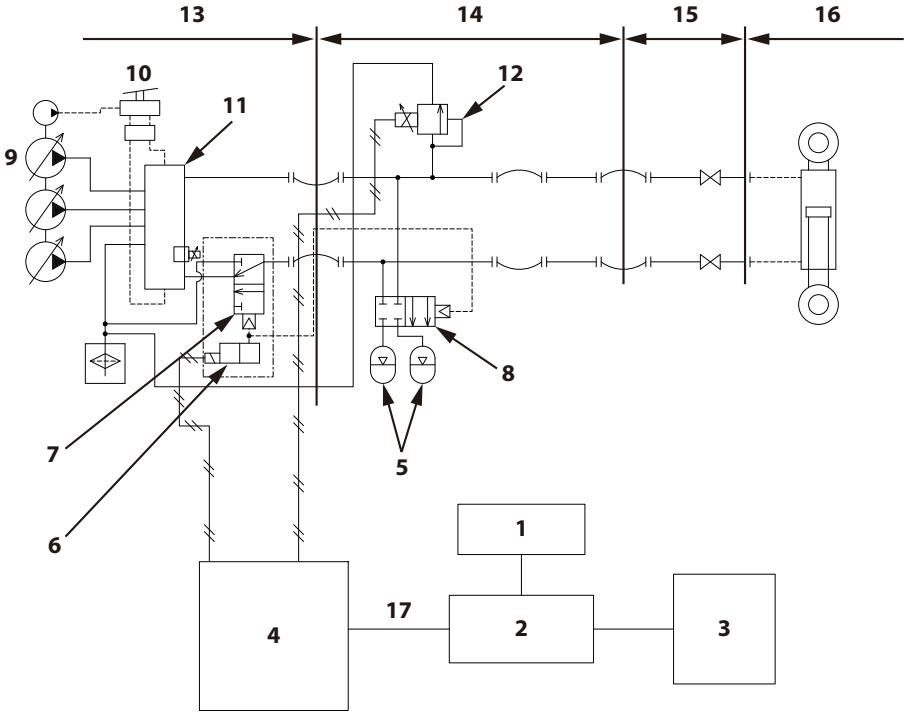
Operate the stop valve before switching to work mode.
Switching to work mode without operating the stop valve may make the thumb move unexpectedly, possibly resulting in damage to the machine.

IMPORTANT

If the system is switched from the breaker mode to the thumb mode, switch to work mode before operating the stop valve.

- Image of Hydraulic Circuit

  Thumb

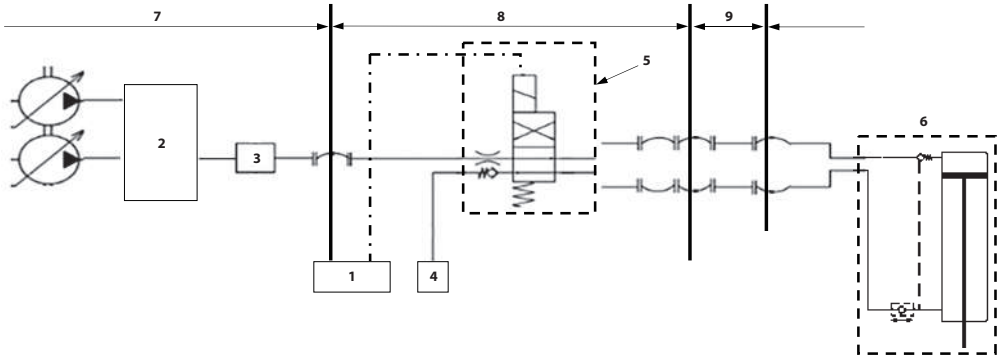


MDFY-13-030-1 ja

1	Monitor	6	Solenoid Valve	11	Control Valve	16	Thumb
2	Monitor Controller	7	Selector Valve	12	Breaker Relief Valve	17	CAN
3	Switch Box	8	Accumulator Stop Valve	13	Base Machine		
4	Main Controller	9	Pump	14	Boom		
5	Accumulator	10	Control Pedal	15	Arm		

- Hydraulic Circuit Image Quick Coupler

  ZX135US-7H

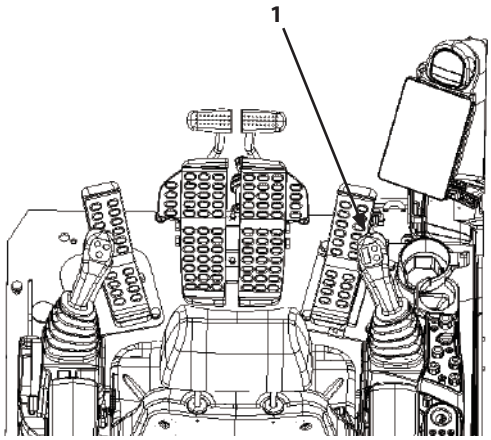


MDHE-13-005-1 ja

1-	Quick Coupler Switch	4-	Oil Tank	7-	Base Machine
2-	Control Valve	5-	Open/Close Valve	8-	Boom
3-	Check Valve	6-	Quick couplers	9-	Arm

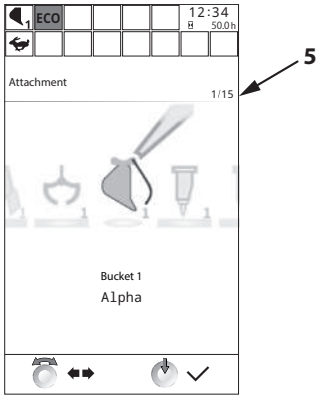
Attachment Switch

The thumb is operated with attachment switch (1) as illustrated at right.



MDFY-13-006-4 ja

1. Select the thumb on work mode screen (5) of the monitor. Refer to the section on “Attachments” in chapter 5 of Operating the Machine for information on setting the work mode.



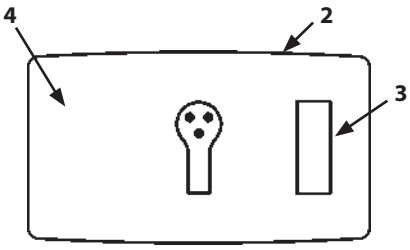
MDHD-MT-002-1 en_GB

CAUTION

When there is no need to use the electrical control (attachment switches), turn them OFF to avoid operating it accidentally.

IMPORTANT

The attachment switches (1) are operable only when indicator (3) of electrical control main switch (2) is lit.



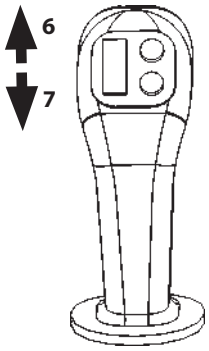
MDAA-01-311-6 ja

How to Use Screens

Turning electrical control main switch (2) ON (indicator (3) side) will cause indicator (3) to light up. When indicator (3) is lit, the attachment function is enabled and the attachment switches (1) can be used. To disable this function, set electrical control main switch (2) to the "OFF" side (4). The indicator (3) goes off, and the attachment switches (1) are disabled.

2. Moving attachment switch (1) toward direction (6) closes the thumb, and moving it toward direction (7) opens the thumb.

   6. Closes the thumb
   7. Opens the thumb



MCGB-01-030-12 ja

MDHD-13-042-1 ja

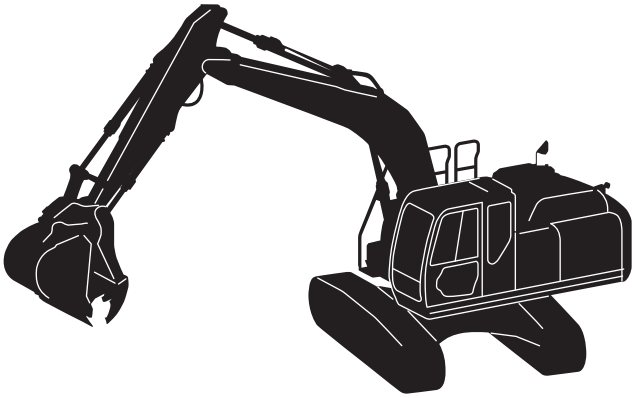
Precautions During Operation

Heed the following points to avoid damage to the front attachment and to prevent the machine from tipping over.

WARNING

When working with a thumb and quick coupler mounted, the machine becomes less stable because the front attachment is heavy. Work is extremely hazardous because clinched material may fall and scatter, and a machine tip over is possible. In addition to normal safety measures, follow the precautions below and work safely.

- Do not make abrupt swinging, or and start or stop operations with the front attachment. Doing so may damage the parts.
- Work in the forward/reverse direction of the tracks. Working laterally to the track makes the machine unstable and may cause it to tip over.

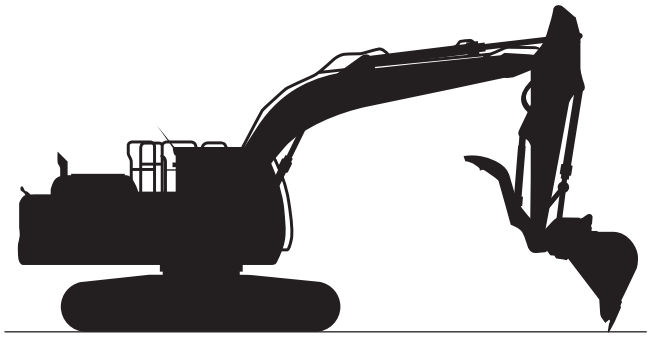


MDHD-13-043 ja

- Be careful when operating the bucket and thumb as they may hit the boom or cab.
- Do not perform the arm roll-in operation at maximum speed and/or to the stroke end of the cylinders. Excessive force produced inside of the arm cylinder may damage the arm cylinder.

MDHD-13-044 ja

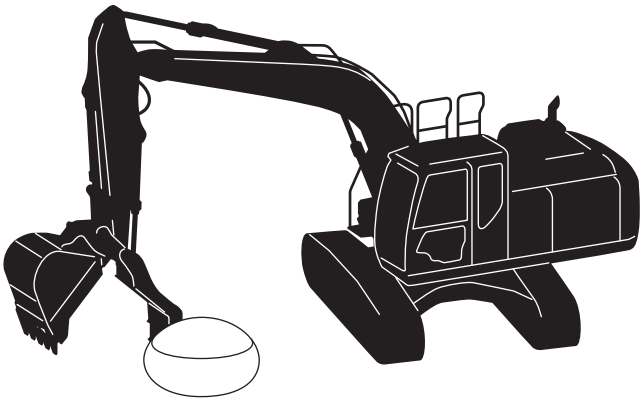
- When the thumb is not in use, store it in the upright position.



MDHD-13-045 ja

- Do not use the cylinder force of the front attachments for shoving work such as jacking up the machine using the thumb, or slamming down the thumb with the bucket empty. Doing so may bend the thumb or cause damage to parts.
- Do not employ digging or falling forces to thrust with the thumb, and do not pluck things out with the thumb. Doing so may damage parts.
- Do not use the swing force to nudge rocks or other objects. Doing so may damage the thumb and front attachment and shorten the life of the swing system.
- Do not grab burning objects.
- When handling a long object, grab the object at its center, not its end. This prevents the thumb and bucket from twisting.

MDHD-13-046 ja



MDHD-13-047 ja

- Be careful not to hit anything with the cylinder for the thumb, as any contact may damage the cylinder.

MDHD-13-048 ja

- The quick coupler and thumb may hit each other when the bucket is not mounted.

MDHD-13-056 ja

- When parking or transporting, store the thumb in the upright position.

  IMPORTANT

  Use maintenance pins to prevent the thumb from dropping.

MDHD-13-049 ja

- Before swinging, preferably travel to level ground before swinging the upperstructure.
  If swinging is unavoidable, place the arm near vertical and keep the bucket 200 to 300 mm (A) above the ground. Swinging and front attachment movements should be performed slowly and carefully.

MDHD-13-050-1 ja

How to Use the Quick Couplers

Precautions when Retracting the Arm and Bucket

When an attachment whose overall length is longer than a standard bucket is attached

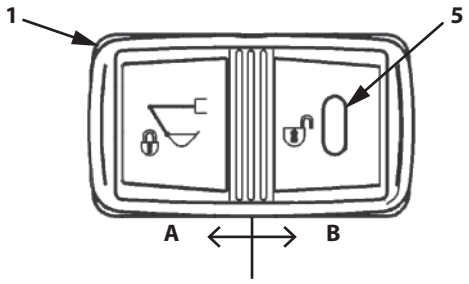
WARNING

When an attachment (such as breaker, crusher, quick coupler, etc.) whose overall length is longer than a standard bucket is attached, the attachment may interfere with the cab or boom. Be careful not to hit the cab or boom with the tip of the attachment when retracting the arm.

MDHD-13-051 ja

Quick couplers are controlled with quick coupler switch (1) and the right side control lever.

Refer to the separate quick coupler operator's manual.



MDFY-01-182-2 ja

A: LOCK

B: UNLOCK

WARNING

Do not allow anyone near the work area when attaching/removing the bucket.

IMPORTANT

When operating the quick coupler, use an engine speed of 50% or less.

NOTE

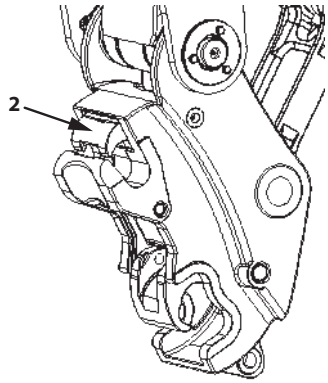
When the key is turned ON, the buzzer sounds twice.

Installation of Bucket

WARNING

Never attempt to work beneath the quick coupler under any circumstances.

1. Check that hook (2) of the quick coupler is visible.
2. Position the arm vertical and bring the quick coupler to the fully crowded position.

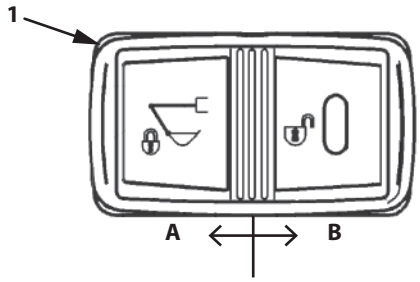


MDHD-13-020-1 ja

3. Make sure quick coupler switch (1) is pressed to the UNLOCK side (B) and the buzzer is sounding without performing the bucket crowd operation.

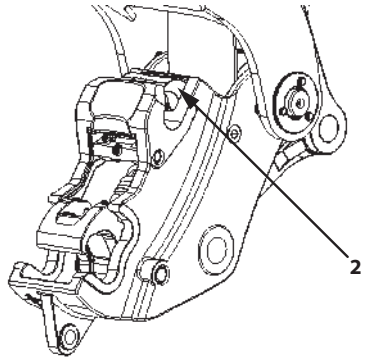
   NOTE

   Place the quick coupler in the fully crowded position before operating quick coupler switch (1). If the quick coupler is not fully crowded, hook (2) retraction cannot be performed.



MDFY-01-182-4 ja

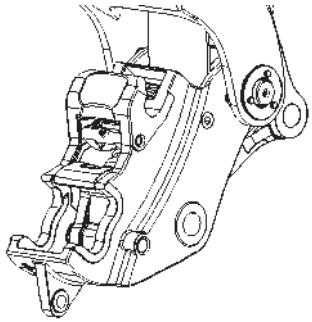
4. Perform the bucket crowd operation and retract hook (2).



Fully Crowded Position

MDHD-13-021-1 ja

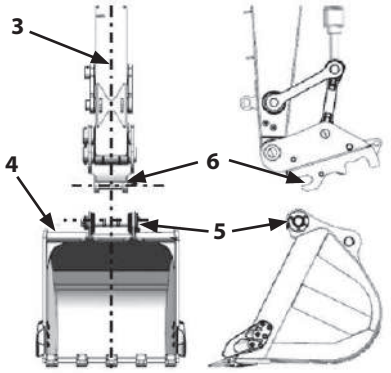
5. Confirm that hook (2) is fully retracted in the quick coupler.



Hook Stored

MDHD-13-022 ja

6. Move the position of the machine until arm (3) is centered with bucket (4), and coupler hook (6) and bucket pin (5) are seated level.

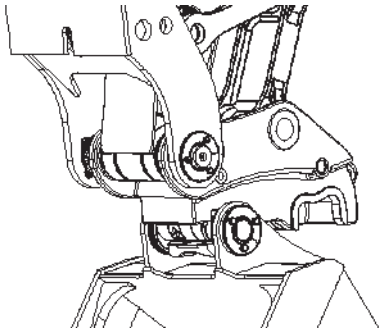


MDHD-13-023-1 ja

7. Fully insert bucket pin (5) into coupler hook (6).

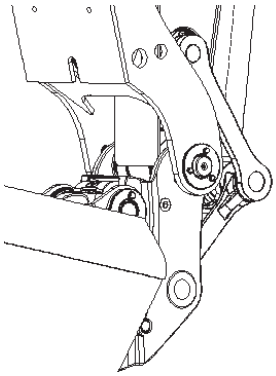
IMPORTANT

Make sure that bucket pin (5) is fully inserted into coupler hook (6).



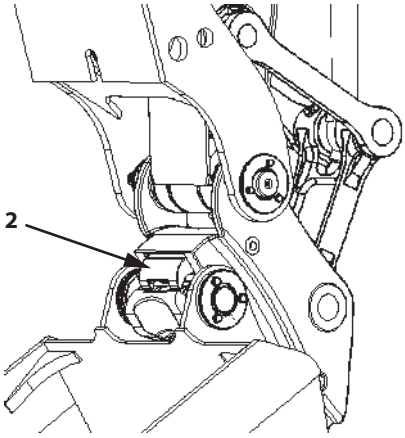
MDHD-13-024 ja

8. Place the quick coupler into the fully crowded position, press quick coupler switch (1) to LOCK (A), perform the bucket crowd operation and deploy hook (2).



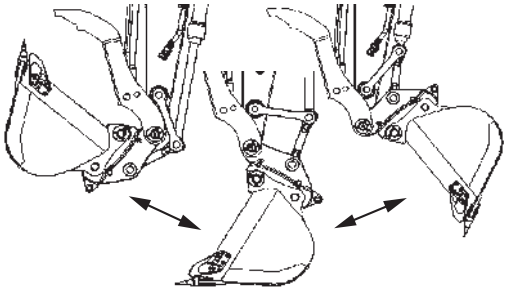
MDHD-13-025 ja

9. Move the bucket to check that hook (2) is deployed.



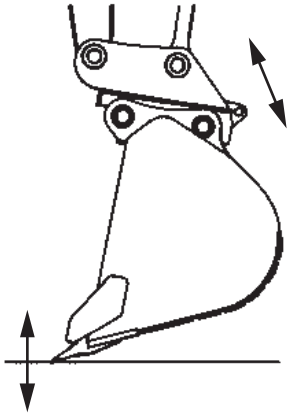
MDHD-13-026-1 ja

10. Move the bucket 2 or 3 times through fully dumped⇔fully crowded positions and check for any problems with the bucket installation.



MDHD-13-027 ja

11. If no problems were found after performing step 10, check for any problems while the bucket is loaded.



MDHD-13-028 ja

IMPORTANT

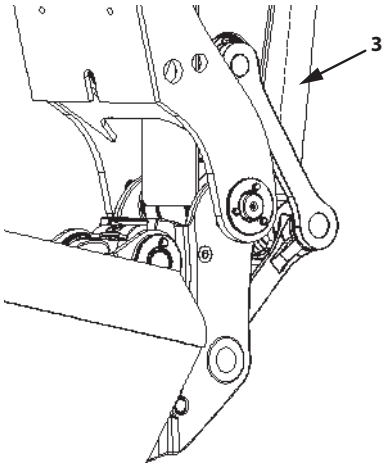
- **Install the bucket with the quick coupler and perform a connection test on it before starting work.**
- **If a problem is found in the installation check of steps 10 and 11, remove the bucket following the proper procedure, and start the connection procedure from the beginning.**

Removal of Bucket

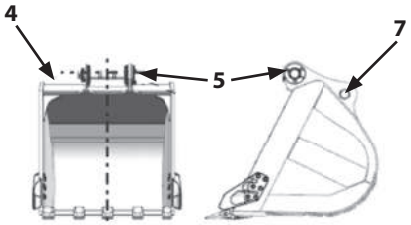
1. Place arm (3) vertical and bring the quick coupler to the fully crowded position.

   IMPORTANT

   Be careful not to let bucket (4) hit the cab, boom or tracks.

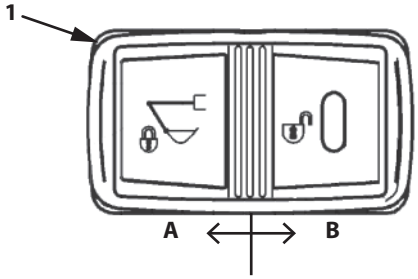


MDHD-13-029-1 ja



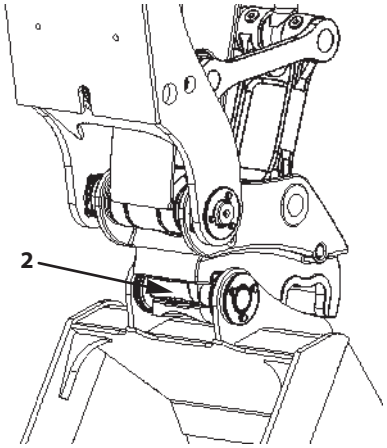
MDHD-13-052-1 ja

2. Make sure quick coupler switch (1) is pressed to UNLOCK (B) and the buzzer is sounding.
3. Perform bucket (4) crowd operation and retract the hook.



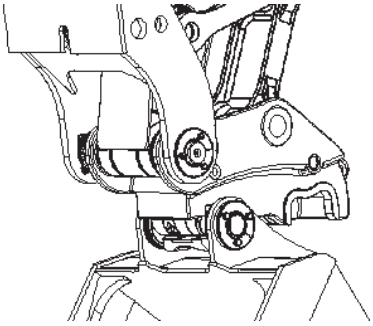
MDFY-01-182-4 ja

4. With bucket (4) slightly off the ground, place the coupler in the position shown at right and make sure hook (2) is retracted.



MDHD-13-030-1 ja

5. Dump the quick coupler and remove pin (7) of bucket (4) from the quick coupler.
6. Remove pin (5) of bucket (4) from coupler hook (6).



MDHD-13-031 ja

Inspection and Maintenance

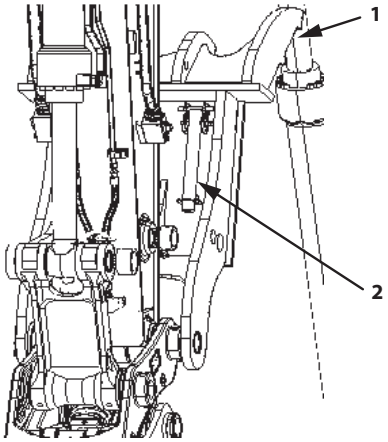
Before inspecting and performing maintenance on thumb (1) while it is in the upright position, use maintenance pin (2) to prevent the thumb from dropping.

How to use the maintenance pin

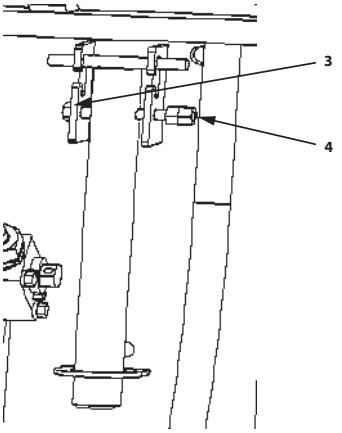
1. Remove nut (3) and bolt (4) to take out maintenance pin (2).
2. Place the thumb in the upright position.
3. Insert maintenance pin (2) into thumb (1) and arm bracket (5).
4. Prevent maintenance pin (2) from being disconnected by using nut (3) and bolt (4).

IMPORTANT

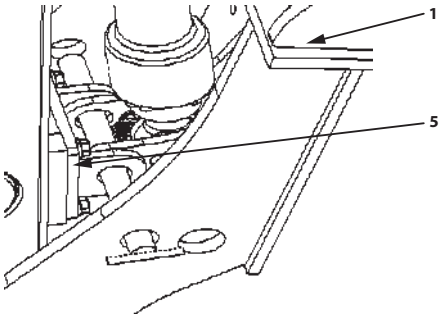
Only use maintenance pin (2) during inspection and maintenance, or when parking the machine. Performing work with maintenance pin (2) inserted will damage the pin and bracket.



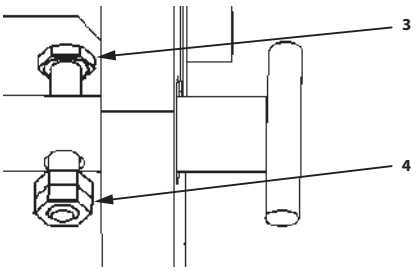
MDHD-13-032-1 ja



MDHD-13-033-1 ja



MDHD-13-034-1 ja

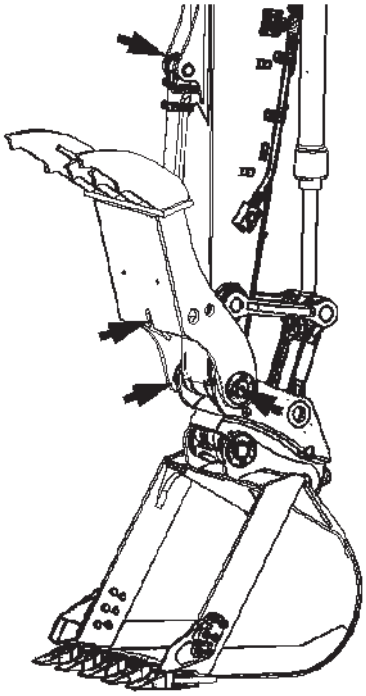


MDHD-13-035-1 ja

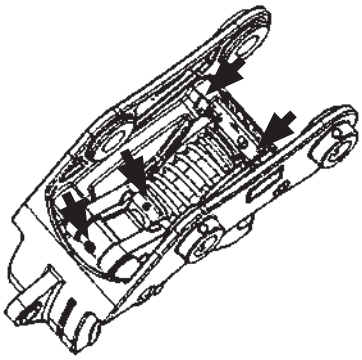
Inspection and Maintenance

A. Greasing

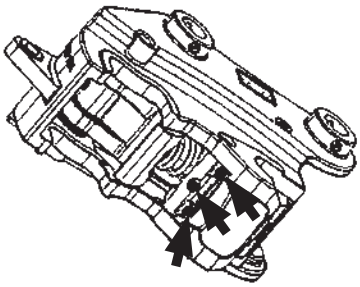
Joint pin
--- every 500 hours (250 hours for the first inspection)
Quick couplers
--- every 500 hours



MDHD-13-053 ja



MDHD-13-054-1 ja



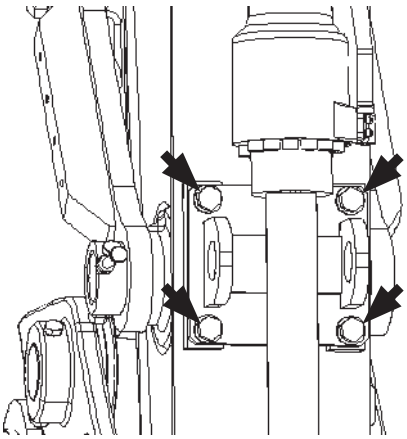
MDHD-13-055-1 ja

B. Tightening and Retightening Stopper of Bolt

--- every 250 hours

NOTE

Screw size: M20
Wrench size: 30
Torque: 400N・m (40kgf・m, 300lbf・ft)

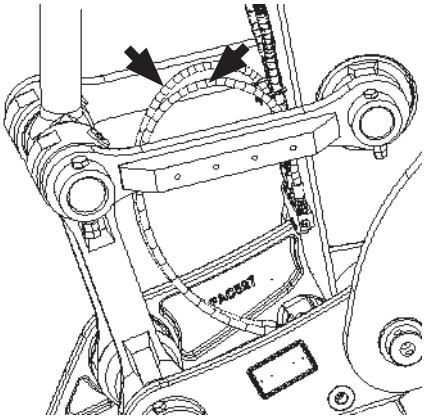


MDHD-13-037-1 ja

C. Inspection of Hose Protector

--- daily inspection

Inspect the hose protector for tears or damage before working.



MDHD-13-038-1 ja

- Refer to the separate quick coupler operator's manual for information on inspection and maintenance of the quick coupler.

D. Inspection and Replacement of Bucket Teeth

--- daily

List of Consumable Parts

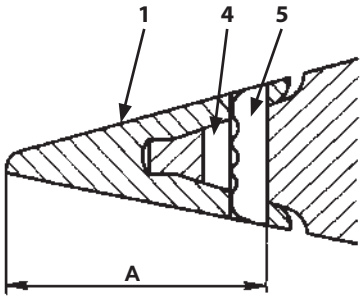
		Part No.	Qty.
Tooth	POINT;TOOTH	YA00094709	5
	PIN;LOCK	4480042	5
	RUBBER;LOCK	4480011	5
Side Cutter	CUTTER;SIDE(R)	2015428	1
	CUTTER;SIDE(L)	2015429	1
	WASHER;SPRING	A590920	8
	NUT	J951020	8
	BOLT	J932060	8

Check bucket teeth (1) for wear and looseness.

Replace if wear is beyond the service limit shown below.

A (mm)

Model	New	Service Limit
ZX135US-7H	166	85



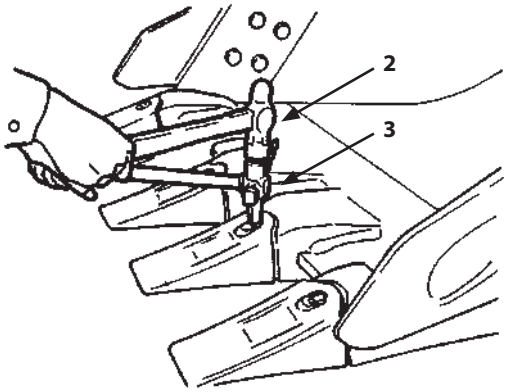
M104-07-056-1 ja

Replacement Procedure

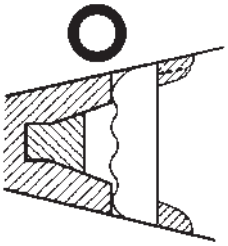
CAUTION

- **Guard against injury from flying pieces of metal.**
- **Wear hard hat or safety glasses, and safety equipment appropriate to the job.**

1. Use hammer (2) and drift (3) to drive out lock pin (5). Take care not to damage lock rubber (4).
2. Inspect the lock pin (5) and lock rubber (4) after removing them. As shown in the diagram, short lock pins (5) and damaged lock rubber (4) must be replaced with new ones.

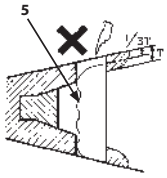
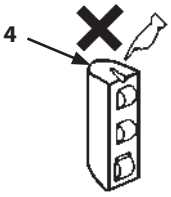
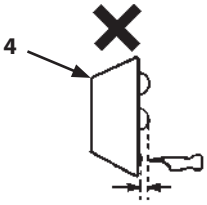


M104-07-116-1 ja

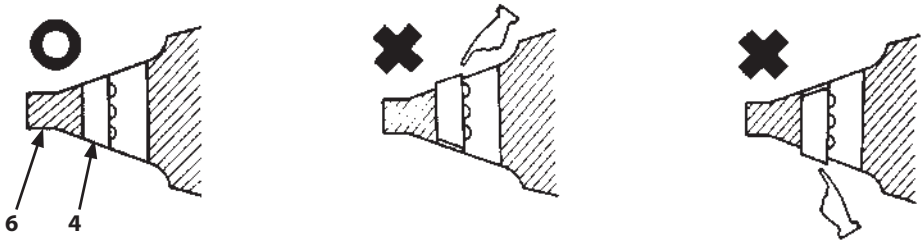


M104-07-118-2 ja

Examples of Defective Lock Pins (5) & Lock Rubbers (4)

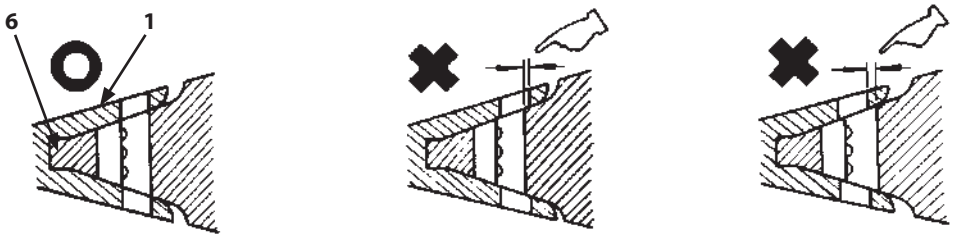
		
Lock pin (5) is too short	Steel ball may come out from the cracked rubber	Pressing on the protruding steel ball makes it sink in.

3. Clean shank (6) surface.
4. Install lock rubber (4) into shank (6) hole as shown.



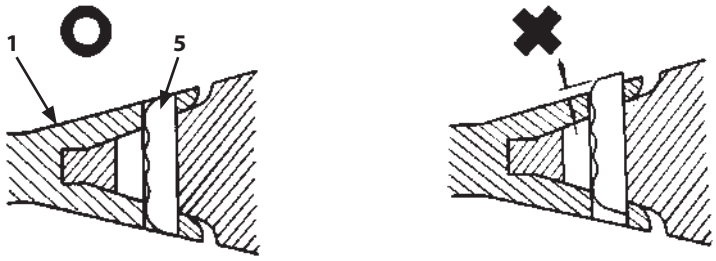
M104-07-060-2 ja

5. Position new tooth (1) over shank (6)



M104-07-061-2 ja

6. Drive lock pin (5) in so it is flush with the surface of tooth (1).

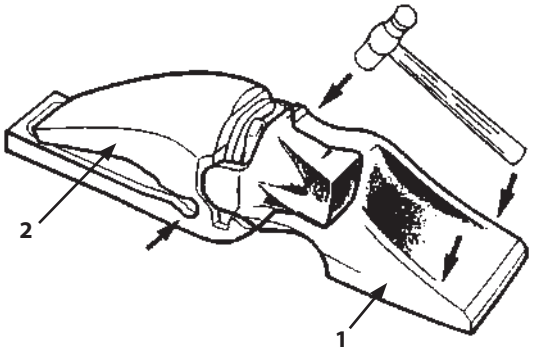


M104-07-062-2 ja

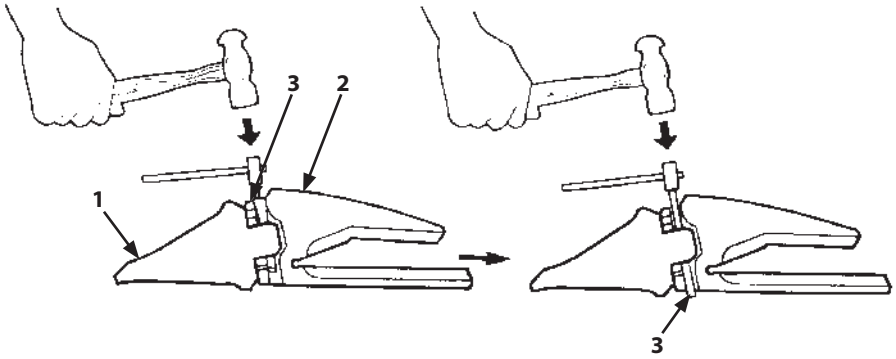
Replacement Guide

Guide to Replacing Teeth

1. Preparations for removing tooth point
   Hit the left and right top ends and the left and right lugs of tooth (1) alternately with a hammer knock off pebbles, soil, etc., stuck in the gap between tooth (1) and adapter (2).
2. Pin Removal
   Remove pebbles, dirt, etc., completely from the gap between lock pin (3) and adapter (2). Place pin-removing jig on the top end of lock pin (3) and hit it with hammer to remove lock pin (3).
   When driving out lock pin (3), first hit with a shorter jig until top end of lock pin (3) comes to the upper end position of the lug of tooth (1) and then use the longer jig to remove lock pin.



M116-07-125-1 ja



M116-07-126-1 ja

3. Tooth Removal
   Turn tooth (1) to the left and pull it out while twisting it.

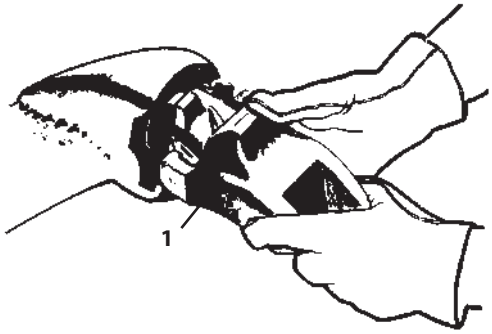
IMPORTANT

Also check that lock pin (3) has no cracks. If cracked, replace it with a new one. Lock pin (3) can be reused several times per normal tooth (1), but check whether it can be reused when replacing a tooth (1).

M113-07-078-1 ja

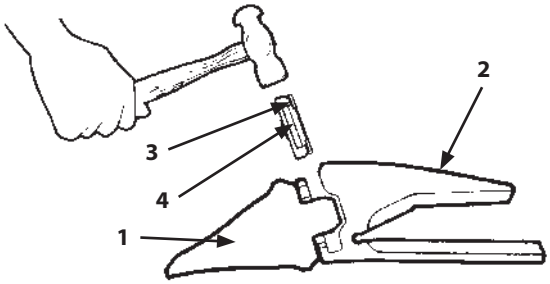
Tooth Mounting Guide

1. Mounting the tooth
   Clean the nose mating part. In particular, clean off any dirt or debris from the tip of adapter (2) nose. Also check that lock pin (3) has no cracks.
   If pebbles, dirt, etc., are stuck to adapter nose, tooth (1) will not go in properly and pin (3) cannot be driven in.
   Insert tooth (1) slowly while twisting and turning it to the right. Insert until the tip of the nose of adapter (2) touches tooth (1).

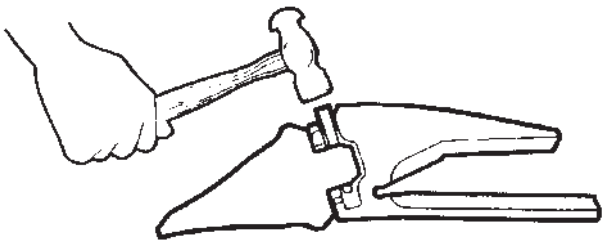


M113-07-080-1 ja

2. Inserting the lock pin
   Insert lock pin (3) with take-up (4) facing toward adapter (2) nose.
   Hammer it in with tooth (1) pressed in.
   Make sure the top of lock pin (3) (when new) is flush with the surface of the nose.
   (The take-up of lock pin (3) is shaped to fit into the groove of the tooth lugs.)



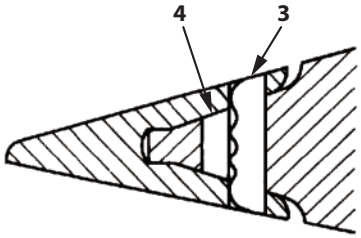
M173-07-001-2 ja



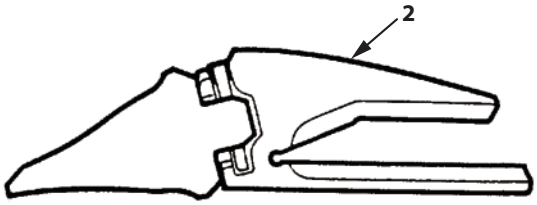
M116-07-128-1 ja

Other Precautions

1. Since lock rubber (4) is susceptible to oil-based corrosion, do not use grease, oil or other oily materials when inserting lock pin (3).
2. If mounting welding-type nose and adapter (2) onto the bucket, lock pin (3) should be removed from the nose before preheating and welding. If the lock pin is left in place, the heat will spoil lock rubber (4).



M104-07-056-2 ja

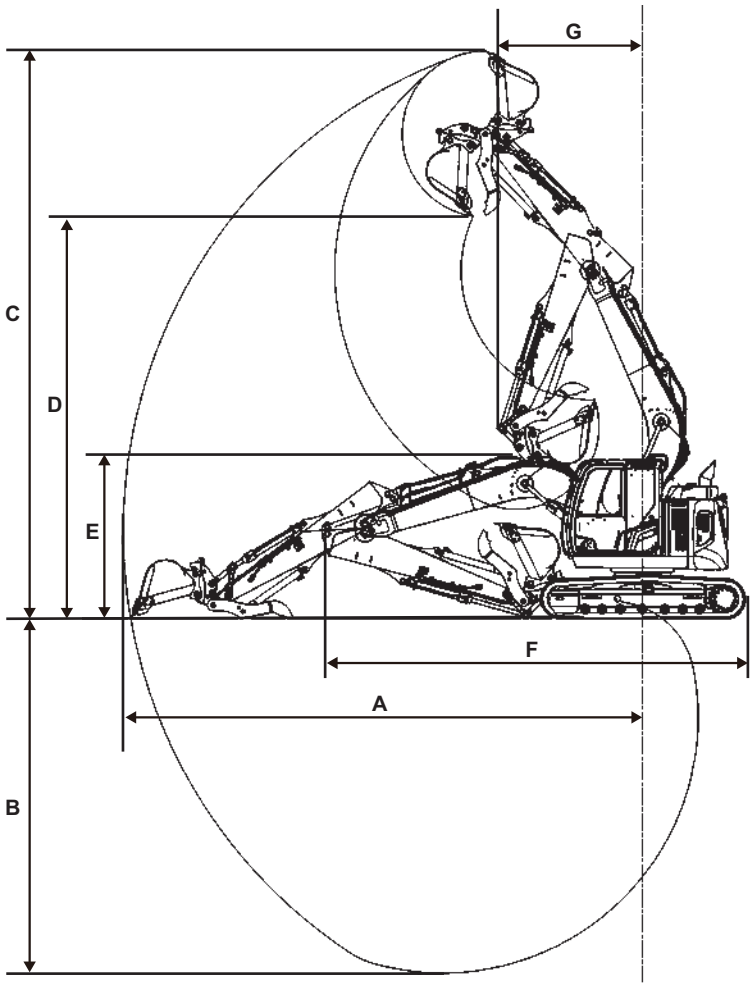


M116-07-124-3 ja

Specifications ZX135US-7H with Thumb and Quick Coupler

Model		ZX135US-7H
Type of Front Attachment		3.01 m Arm with Thumb and Quick Coupler
Standard Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	$m^3(yd^3)$	0.54(0.71)
Counterweight Weight	kg(lb)	3550(7800)
Operating Weight	kg(lb)	15200(33600)
Base Machine Weight	kg(lb)	11700(25800)
Engine Model	-	Isuzu AR-4JJ1XSA-02
Engine Output	kW/min^{-1}	ISO 14396: 78.5/2000
		ISO 9249: 74.9/2000
Track Shoe Width	mm(in)	600(24)(Grouser shoe)
Ground Pressure	kPa	39.6(0.40kg/cm^2, 5.74psi)
Swing Speed	min^{-1}	13.5
Travel Speed (fast/slow)	km/h	5.5/3.3 (3.4/2.1mph)
Gradeability	°(tanθ)	35 (0.70)
Quick Coupler	No.	YA00087298
	kg(lb)	200 (441)
Thumb Assy	kg(lb)	370 (820)

Working Ranges (Grouser Shoe) ZX135US-7H



MDHE-13-003-1 ja

Model		ZX135US-7H	
Item / Category		3.01 m (9 ft 11 in) Arm	
		Thumb・QuickCoupler	
		mm	ft・in
A:	Maximum Digging Reach	9070	29' 9"
B:	Maximum Digging Depth	6190	20' 4"
C:	Maximum Cutting Height	9910	32' 6"
D:	Maximum Dumping Height	7020	23' 1"
E:	Overall Height*1	2870	9' 5"
F:	Overall Length*1	7390	24' 3"
G:	Minimum Swing Radius	2540	8' 4"

The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug (except Item E).

*1The dimensions asterisked are for transport pin position.

Bucket Types and Applications ZX135US-7H for Thumb and Quick Coupler

Bucket	Bucket Capacity $m^3(yd^3)$	Bucket Width mm (in)		Bucket Weight kg(lb)
	ISO7451:2007 (Heaped)	With side cutter	Without side cutter	
Hoe Bucket	0.54(0.71)	1034(41)	914(36)	420(930)

NOTE

Their bulk density shall be less than 920kg/m^3(1550lb/yd^3) as a standard.

INDEX

Symbols

12 V Power Supply Socket....1-138
12/24V Power Socket....1-138
24 V Power Supply Socket....1-140

A

About Aftertreatment Device....1-3
Actual Operation....1-54
Adjust Bucket Linkage....7-129
Adjust the Operator's Seat....S-6
Adjusting Console Height....1-166
Adjusting Operator's Seat and Console....1-166
Adjusting the Operator's Seat (Air Suspension Type)....1-167
Aerial Angle....1-171,7-208
Aftertreatment Device....1-30
Aftertreatment Device Condition Indicator....1-30
Aftertreatment Device Manual Regeneration Request....1-31
Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibit....1-82
Air Conditioner Compressor ON/OFF Switch....1-101
Air Conditioner ON/OFF....1-95
Air Conditioner Operation (Monitor)....1-91
Air Conditioner Operation (When Operating with Monitor)....1-94
Air Conditioner Operation (When Operating with Switches)....1-92
Alarm Display and Description of Alarms....1-22
Alarms Occurrence Screen....1-22
Allocation to Numeric Keypad (Monitor)....1-118
AM/FM Switching....1-114
Angle Adjustment of Seat Surface....1-168
Armrest (Optional)....1-169
as required....7-140
Attachment Adjustment....1-38
Attachment Connections....13-24
Attachment Name Input....1-84
Attachment Operation....1-52
Attachment Pedal....13-8
Attachment Selection....1-37
Attachment Settings....5-20
Attachments....1-37,5-15
Attachments Display....1-19
Audio Operation....1-105
AUTO Settings....1-100
Auto Shut-Down....1-80,5-8
Auto-Idle ON/OFF....5-7
Auto-Idle Switch....1-124
Auto-Presetting Stations (AM/FM)....1-116
AUTO/OFF Switch....1-92
AUX Function Lever 1 (Standard)....1-134
AUX Function Lever 2 (Optional)(Except ZX345USLC-7H)....1-135
Avoid Accidents from Reversing and Swing Operation....S-16
Avoid Applying Heat to Lines Containing Flammable Fluids....S-35
Avoid Heating Near Pressurized Fluid Lines....S-35
Avoid High-Pressure Fluids....S-31
Avoid Injury from Attachment Falling Accident....S-29
Avoid Injury from Rollaway Accidents....S-15
Avoid Power Lines....S-20
Avoid Tipping....S-18
Avoid Undercutting....S-18

B

Back Switch (Monitor)....1-12
Backrest Adjustment....1-168
Basic Operation of Multi-Function Monitor....1-11
Basic Screen (Illustration Content)....1-18
Battery....7-113
Battery Disconnect Switch....1-186
Before Starting the Engine....3-3
Beware of Asbestos and Silica Dust and Other Contamination....S-36
Beware of Exhaust Fumes....S-34
Bleed Air from Hydraulic System....7-64
Bleeding Air from the Fuel System....7-83
Bluetooth® Connection....1-119
Boom Raise Speed Priority....1-44,5-20
Brand Names of Recommended Hydraulic Oil....7-26
Breaker Operation....1-51
Breaker Relief Valve Pressure Adjustment....13-14
Brightness Adjustment Procedure....1-69
Bucket Types and Applications ZX135US-7H....12-5
Bucket Types and Applications ZX135US-7H for Thumb and Quick Coupler....13-52
Bucket Types and Applications ZX245USLC-7H..12-10
Bucket Types and Applications ZX345USLC-7H..12-16

C

Cab Door Release Lever....1-154
Camera Direction Guide Icons....1-178
Caution with an Overhead Obstacle....S-20
Change Coolant....7-105
Change Engine Oil....7-42
Change Hydraulic Oil....7-61
Check Air Conditioner....7-150

Check and Clean EGR Valve.....7-155
Check and Clean Injector.....7-156
Check Camera Images Used to Compose the Aerial Angle.....7-209
Check for Oil Leaks:.....S-32
Check for Short circuits:.....S-32
Check Heat Shields:.....S-33
Check Hydraulic Oil Level.....7-59
Check Key Switch:.....S-33
Check Starter and Alternator.....7-155
Check the Blowby Hose.....7-47
Check Turbo Charger.....7-155
Check Windshield Washer Fluid Level.....7-140
Choosing Tracks with Bluetooth®.....1-121
Circulating/Fresh Air Control Switch.....1-93
Circulation Air Mode.....1-97
Clean Air Conditioner Condenser.....7-111
Clean and Replace Air Conditioner Filter.....7-146
Clean Cab Floor.....7-153
Clean Drink Holder.....7-133
Clean Filler Port Strainer.....7-201
Clean Fuel Oil Cooler.....7-111
Clean Mobile Phone (Smartphone) Holder.....7-132
Clean Radiator, Oil Cooler and Intercooler Core. 7-107
Clean Rain Visor.....7-138
Clean Storage Pocket.....7-134
Clean up Flammable Materials:.....S-33
Clock (2).....1-20
Confirm Direction of Machine Travel.....S-12
Console and Seat Fore-Aft Adjustment.....1-167
Control Lever.....1-134
Control Lever (ISO Pattern).....5-1
Control Lever Auto-Lock.....1-144
Coolant Temperature Gauge.....1-21
Cooling System.....7-99
Correct Maintenance and Inspection Procedures...7-1

D

Daily Check of Camera Images used to Compose the Aerial Angle.....7-208
Date and Time.....1-64
Date Setting Procedure.....1-66
DEF Gauge.....1-21
DEF Level Alarm.....1-21
Defogging the Windows.....1-103
Dig with Caution.....S-19
Dimensions ZX135US-7H.....12-2
Dimensions ZX245USLC-7H.....12-7
Dimensions ZX345USLC-7H.....12-13
Discrepancies between Image and Actual Road Surface.....1-179
Display.....1-63
Display Language List.....1-72
Display of Other Errors.....1-29
Displaying the Basic Screen.....1-13
Dispose of Waste Properly.....S-38
Drain Fuel Tank Sump.....7-80
Drain Intercooler (Only ZX135US-7H).....7-111
Drink Holders.....1-149
Drive Machine Safely.....S-13

E

Eco Gauge.....1-77
EGR Cooler Cleaning.....7-155
Electrical Main Switch.....1-133
Electrical System.....7-112
Emergency Exit.....1-184
Engine Auto-Stop at Extremely Low Temperatures.....3-16
Engine Control Dial.....1-124
Engine Output Restriction Suspend.....1-35
Engine Speed Control.....5-5
Engine Stop Switch.....1-146
Ensure Safety Before Leaving or Standing up from Operator's Seat.....S-6
Evacuating in Case of Fire.....S-34
Explanation of Displayed Items.....1-109
Extending the Password Duration Time.....1-15

F

Facilities in Operator's Station.....1-138
Fan Level.....1-98
Fan Switch.....1-93
Fasten Your Seat Belt.....S-6
Fastening the Machine for Transport.....6-5
Follow Safety Instructions.....S-2
For Rapid Cooling.....1-102
Fore-Aft Adjustment of Seat Surface.....1-168
Front Speed Adjustment for Heavy Load.....5-20
Front Speed Adjustment for Heavy Load (ECO)(PWR)(H/P).....1-46
Fuel Consumption.....1-50
Fuel Gauge.....1-20
Fuel System.....7-77
Fuse Box.....1-150

G

Gear Oil in Travel Device.....7-55
General Precautions for the Cab.....S-5
Getting ON and OFF the Machine.....1-2
Grease Cab Door Hinge.....7-138

Grease Console Height Adjustment Pin.....7-139

H

Handle Chemical Products Safely..... S-38
Handle Fluids Safely–Avoid Fires..... S-24
Handling the Cab Door and Window.....1-154
Home Switch (Monitor)..... 1-12
Horn Switch.....1-136
Hour Meter (1).....1-20
How to Change DEF..... 7-202
How to Lower Boom in Case of Emergency and When Engine Stops (Without hose-rupture safety valve).....5-29
How to Lower Front Equipment and Attachment in Case of Emergency and When Engine Stops (With hose-rupture safety valve)(Optional)(ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H) 5-31
How to Use Quick Couplers.....13-26
How to Use the Quick Couplers..... 13-35
Hydraulic Oil Temperature..... 1-78
Hydraulic System..... 7-57

I

Image to Left Side + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear..... 1-177
Image to Right Side + Image to Rear..... 1-178
Information..... 1-48
Input Password..... 1-14
Inspect and Adjust Valve Clearance..... 7-155
Inspect Machine..... S-4
Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting..... 1-62,3-1
Inspect V-belt.....7-102
Inspection and Maintenance..... 13-41
Inspection and Maintenance Intervals.....7-6
Install OPG (Operator Protective Guard)..... S-11
Installation and Adjustment of Mirrors..... 1-180
Installation of Bucket..... 13-36
Installing a Fire Extinguisher (Optional).....1-153
Intended Use.....1

J

Jump Starting..... S-8

K

Keep People Clear from Working Area.....S-17
Keep Riders off Machine..... S-8
Key Switch.....1-128

L

Language Setting Procedure.....1-71
Layout.....7-3
Layout of Equipment in Operator's Station (Illustration Contents)(ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H).....1-5
Layout of Equipment in Operator's Station (Illustration Contents)(ZX345USLC-7H).....1-8
Lifting Machine..... 6-7

M

Machine Capacities.....12-18
Machine Icon.....1-176
Magazine Rack.....1-147
Main Menu Display..... 1-17
Maintenance.....1-55
Maintenance Guide Table..... 7-6
Maintenance Notice.....1-56
Manual Regeneration Procedure..... 1-32
Meter..... 1-75
Mirror Installation Locations (ZX135US-7H)..... 1-181
Mirror Installation Locations (ZX245USLC-7H).... 1-182
Mirror Installation Locations (ZX345USLC-7H).... 1-183
Mode Switch.....1-92
Monitor Display.....1-108
Monitoring..... 1-61
Move and Operate Machine Safely.....S-7
Multi Function Monitor.....1-10

N

Name of Components..... 1-1,1-89
Name of Components and Control Guide (Switches).....1-106
Net Hooks.....1-148
Never Move an Object Sideways with the Bucket 5-25
Never Position the Bucket Over Anyone..... S-17
Never Ride Attachment..... S-39
Never Undercut a High Bank..... S-19
Never use Wide Track Shoes on Rough Ground.... 5-26
Noise Level Inside of Cab.....12-27
Notes on Aftertreatment Device..... S-39
Notes on Protection by Operator's Station when the Machine Rolls Over..... S-41
Numeric Keypad.....1-12
Numeric Keypad Allocation (Switches)..... 1-107

O

Object Handling..... S-21
Off-Season Air Conditioner Maintenance..... 1-104

Open and Closing the Ceiling Sunshade..... 1-162
Opening and Closing the OPG Front Guard (Optional)..... 1-164
Opening and Closing the OPG Head Guard (Optional)..... 1-165
Opening and Closing the Overhead Window (Clear Hatch)..... 1-163
Opening and Closing the Roll Screen (for Front and Right Windows) (Optional).....1-159
Opening and Closing the Roll Screen (for Rear Window) (Option)..... 1-162
Opening and Closing Upper Front Window.....1-155
Opening Side Window..... 1-158
Opening/Closing and Removing Cab Inside Window.....1-155
Operating Backhoe..... 5-21
Operating in Water or Mud.....4-8
Operating the Audio System from the Multi-Monitor..... 1-110
Operation Information.....1-49
Overload Alarm Switch (Optional) (ZX135US-7H, ZX245USLC-7H).....1-132

P

Pairing with Bluetooth® Device.....1-119
Park Machine Safely..... S-23
Parking..... 4-9
Parking the Machine on Slopes.....4-9
Password Change (Optional)..... 1-86
PBLI (Push Button Low Idle)..... 1-79
Perform Job Site Risk Assessment Beforehand.....S-10
Perimeter Lights Switch (Option)..... 1-131
Periodic Replacement of Parts..... 7-23
Pilot Accumulator Function (Optional).....5-27
Pilot Shut-off Lever..... 1-143
Pilot Shut-Off lever.....5-2
Piping for Breaker and Crusher (Demolition Machine) (Std Machine Option).....13-13
Power Boost Switch..... 1-136,5-18
Power Mode.....5-19
Power Mode Switch.....1-125
Practice Maintenance Safely.....S-26
Precautions During Operation..... 13-32
Precautions for After Operations..... 5-33
Precautions for Communication Terminal.....S-39
Precautions for Communication Terminal Equipment S-40
precautions for crusher operation..... 13-21
Precautions for Handling Accumulator and Gas Damper.....S-36
Precautions for Lightning..... S-21
Precautions for Operations.....S-9
Precautions for Welding and Grinding.....S-35
Precautions when Retracting the Arm and Bucket.....13-26
Preparation for Inspection and Maintenance.....7-10
Prepare for Emergencies.....S-3
Prevent Battery Explosions.....S-37
Prevent Burns..... S-30
Prevent Fires..... S-32
Prevent Parts from Flying.....S-29
Priority (Arm Roll-In) (Except ZX135US-7H).....1-40
Priority (Arm Roll-Out)..... 1-42
Procedure for Setting Display Mode.....1-67
Product Identification Number..... 1
Prohibition of Sudden Control Operations when Traveling at High Speed.....4-10
Prohibition of Traveling for Long Periods..... 4-10
Protect Against Flying Debris and Falling Object. S-22
Provide Signals for Jobs Involving Multiple Machines.....S-11
Pump Flow Rate Adjustment.....1-38
Pump Transmission.....7-49

Q

Quick Coupler Switch.....1-132
Quick Wiper..... 1-137

R

Raising One Track Using the Boom and Arm..... 4-6
Rear Light Switch (Optional)..... 1-131
Recognize Safety Information..... S-1
Recommended Engine Oil.....7-24
Recommended Grease..... 7-24
Recommended Oil Viscosity.....7-27
Recommended Transmission Oil..... 7-25
Refueling.....7-78
Remaining Time and Maintenance Interval.....1-58
Removal of Bucket..... 13-39
Remove Paint Before Welding or Heating..... S-36
Removing and Storing Lower Front Window.....1-157
Replace Battery..... 7-117
Replace DEF Tank Water Supply Inlet Filter..... 7-207
Replace Engine Oil Filter.....7-42
Replace Oil Separator Element..... 7-48
Replace Pilot Oil Filter..... 7-68
Replace Rubber Hoses Periodically..... S-31
Required fuel specification.....7-77
Restriction of Attachment Installation.....S-11
Retracting the Arm and Bucket..... 5-25
Retrieval.....4-7

Room Light Switch....1-142
Rotating Lamp Switch (Optional)....1-131

S

Safety Signs....S-54
Screen Description....1-175
Seat Belt....1-170
Seat Heater Switch....1-130
Seat Height and Seat Cushion Angle Adjustment....1-167
Seat Only Fore-Aft Adjustment....1-167
Security Functions (Optional)....1-14
Selecting Stations from Channel List (AM/FM)....1-117
Selecting the Air Vents....1-96
Selector/Set Switch....1-12
Service Air Conditioning System Safely....S-37
Setting Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibition....1-82
Settings....1-74
Shoe Types and Applications ZX135US-7H....12-4
Shoe Types and Applications ZX245USLC-7H....12-9
Shoe Types and Applications ZX345USLC-7H....12-15
Shovel....5-22
Source Selection and Audio Screen Display....1-111
Specifications ZX135US-7H....12-1
Specifications ZX135US-7H with Thumb and Quick Coupler....13-50
Specifications ZX245USLC-7H....12-6
Specifications ZX345USLC-7H....12-12
Start the Engine Only from Operator's Seat....S-7
Stay Clear of Moving Parts....S-28
Storing the Machine....10-1
Sub Meter Selection....1-75
Summary....1-10
Support Machine Properly....S-28
Surrounding Image....1-175
Surrounding Image + Image to Rear....1-177
Surrounding Image + Image to Right Side + Image to Rear....1-177
Swing Reduction Gear....7-51
Switch Operation....1-187
Switch Operation Guide....1-106
Switch Panel (Content of Illustration)....1-123
Switch Panels (for Options)....1-129
Switches for Multi-Function Monitor Operation....1-11
Switching the Monitor Display....1-174

T

Table of Alarm Descriptions....1-23
Temperature Control....1-99
Temperature Control Switch....1-92
Thumb and Quick Coupler....13-27
Tightening and Retightening Torque of Bolts and Nuts....7-157
Time Adjustment Procedure....1-64
tips for optimal air conditioner usage....1-102
Toggling Auto Shut-Down ON/OFF and Changing the Setting Time....1-81
Tone Control....1-114
Transport Safely....S-25
Travel Alarm (Optional)....4-4
Travel Alarm Deactivation Switch....1-131
Travel Mode Switch....1-124,4-3
Travel Operation....1-53
Traveling on Soft Ground....4-5
Troubleshooting....1-60,11-1
Tuning (AM/FM)....1-115

U

Understand Signal Words....S-1
Unit Setting Procedure....1-73
Unloading....6-6
Urea SCR System....7-194
Urea SCR System and EGR Device Alarm List....1-28
USB Power Supply....1-141
Use Handrail and Steps....S-5
Using Booster Battery....3-11
Using the Auto Air Conditioner....1-88
Using the Seat Belt....1-170
Using the Track Frame Shackle Hole....5-26

V

Volume Control....1-113

W

Warming-Up Operation....5-3
Warn Others of Service Work....S-27
Wear Appropriate Clothing....S-3
Wide View Wiper (Parallel Link Wiper) Maintenance (ZX135US-7H (Optional))....7-135
Wiper/Washer Switch....1-126
Work Light Switch....1-125
Working Ranges (Grouser shoe) ZX135US-7H....12-3
Working Ranges (Grouser Shoe) ZX135US-7H....13-51
Working Ranges (Grouser shoe) ZX245USLC-7H....12-8
Working Ranges (Grouser shoe) ZX345USLC-7H 12-14

MEMO